



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

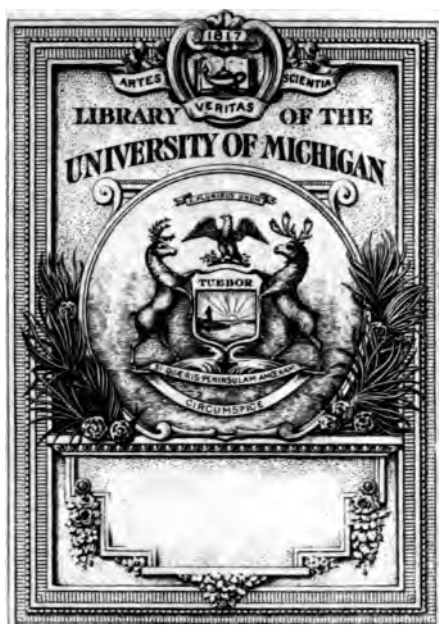
Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>



PF
3111
.T455

A
PRACTICAL
GERMAN GRAMMAR

BY
CALVIN THOMAS
*Professor of Germanic Languages and Literatures in the
University of Michigan*



NEW YORK
HENRY HOLT AND COMPANY
F. W. CHRISTERN
BOSTON: CARL SCHOENHOF

COPYRIGHT, 1895,
BY
HENRY HOLT & CO.

Staple
of the
book

PREFACE.

THIS book is divided, on purely pedagogical grounds, into two parts. Part I is designed as a beginner's manual, and embodies those ideas of method which commend themselves to the author after some fifteen years of constant attention to the subject. I am of the opinion that learners who have passed the age of childhood should have grammar-lessons from the first, or at least after a sufficient preliminary drill upon pronunciation. At the same time it has to be remembered that the object of study is the language, not the grammar. The latter is only the means to an end. The learner should accordingly begin at once to read, hear and use the language, letting the grammatical text-book save his time by systematizing his knowledge and showing him what to look for. This means that the beginner's grammar-lessons should deal only with matters that are of fundamental importance and should avoid all confusing details. And the knowledge gained should be applied at once in the reading, memorizing and repetition of appropriate exercises upon the language.

Part I of this work, therefore, aims to present the fundamental facts of the grammar without omitting anything necessary, or including anything unnecessary, to a bird's-eye view of the subject such as will fit the learner to begin reading easy prose. All minutiae of grammatical scholar-

ship, word-lists that do not need to be learned; and syntactical principles that can best be studied in connection with the reading of literature, are postponed to Part II. The order of presentation is that usually followed in scientific grammars, it being my conviction that for students who have reached the high-school age, a systematic treatise has decided advantages over a lesson-book in which the matter is presented in arbitrary installments.

Great care has been bestowed upon the exercises, since it is here, as it seems to me, that the existing grammars fail to meet the present demand. What the learner of a living language most needs to develop is a sensitive and trustworthy *feeling* for the language. This is of more importance than anything else, whatever the object in view may be—whether speaking, writing, reading, or scholarship. From this it follows that he should occupy his mind and store his memory with nothing but natural forms of expression as they occur in use. Anything else is not German. He should be taught that the sentence, not the word, is the real unit of language, and that he must learn German by learning sentences such as Germans use. He should not waste his time upon mechanical Ollendorffian preparations, such as are never heard or seen outside the school-room, nor should he get the idea that he can make German of his own by piecing together words with the help of his grammar and dictionary. His task, and his ideal of progress, should be simply to reproduce, orally and in writing, what he hears and reads; first to reproduce it intelligently, with the aid of his grammar, and then to reproduce it frequently, until it becomes second nature. This means that for a long time his efforts at translating from English into German should be confined to easy variations upon a German original. I am fully persuaded that the disconnected, vacuous, often puerile, sentences with which the most of the school grammars require the beginner to concern himself, do more harm than good. They blight the sense

for idiom, lead to mechanical habits of translating, which are difficult to break up, and furnish nothing valuable for the memory to appropriate.

I have tried, therefore, to prepare a series of graduated exercises, containing nothing that is not at least decent every-day German, and to give them a small measure of connected human interest. The task was difficult on account of the necessary limitations of vocabulary and grammatical gradation. Not being to the manner born in German, I have submitted the exercises to various German friends, among whom I am under special obligations to Mr. Ernst Voss, Mr. E. H. Mensel and Mr. E. C. Roedder, of the University of Michigan. Remediable defects which may have escaped these gentlemen, as well as myself, I shall be glad to correct as they are pointed out to me. Mr. Mensel and Mr. Roedder have also read the proofs of Part II.

Part II is devoted to the less fundamental matters of grammatical scholarship, and is meant to be used for systematic study, and for reference, in connection with the reading of German authors. For reasons that are implied in what is said above, it contains no exercises. After the essentials of the grammar as set forth in Part I are thoroughly mastered, further progress will best be insured, for some time to come, by systematic grammar-lessons illustrated and enforced from day to day by thorough drill upon the text read. I am strongly of the opinion that this drill ought to be carried on chiefly, if not entirely, in the German language. The pupil's time is better spent in learning to express himself, under the guidance and stimulus of the teacher's questions, about that which he is reading, and which has for him a living interest, than in translating out-of-the-way indigestible sentences from English into German. The translation of connected English into German belongs to a later stage of study than that of which I now speak, and should presuppose a considerable time spent in reading.

In the preparation of Part II I have of course profited by the labors of preceding grammarians, among whom I owe special acknowledgments to Andresen, Blatz, Brandt, Heyse, von Jagemann, Krause, Sanders, Vernaleken, Whitney, Wunderlich and Wustmann. While the examples of Part I are from the language of every-day life, those of Part II are mainly from the classics. I have relied for them primarily upon my own reading and notes, and secondarily upon the Grimm Dictionary; but I have not scrupled to borrow a needed illustration from any of my predecessors. It may not be superfluous to remark that my work is not a historical nor a comparative grammar, but a grammar of late modern German. I have indulged but sparingly in historical commentary, and hardly at all in comparisons from other languages than English. I have, however, for pedagogical reasons that I trust will be generally approved, drawn attention from the first to the subject of cognates. Throughout my aim has been 'practical'; that is, I have purposed to make a serviceable working grammar for students and teachers, and have subordinated all other considerations to that purpose.

C. T.

UNIVERSITY OF MICHIGAN,
JUNE, 1895.

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

PART FIRST.

	PAGE
INTRODUCTORY	1
PRONUNCIATION	6
Vowels	7
Diphthongs	12
Consonants	14
Accentuation	20
THE PARTS OF SPEECH AND THEIR VARIATIONS. . .	25
THE ARTICLE : DECLENSION	26
THE NOUN : DECLENSION	29
Strong Declension	31
Weak Declension	44
Mixed Declension	48
Declension of Proper Names	52
THE ADJECTIVE : DECLENSION AND COMPARISON	54
The Numerals	70
THE PRONOUN : DECLENSION	75
Personal, Reflexive, and Intensive Pronouns	75
Possessive Pronouns	79
Demonstrative and Determinative Pronouns	86
Relative Pronouns	90
Interrogative Pronouns	94
Indefinite Pronouns and Pronominal Adjectives	97
THE VERB : CONJUGATION	102
Weak Conjugation	110
Strong Conjugation	115
Modal Auxiliaries and <i>wijfen</i>	125
Passive Voice	134
Reflexive Verbs	139
Impersonal Verbs	141
Compound Verbs	144
THE PARTICLES	152

PART SECOND.

	PAGE
PRELIMINARY.....	177
THE ARTICLES : USE.....	179
THE NOUN.....	186
Rules for Gender	186
Syntax of Number... ..	192
Syntax of the Cases.....	194
Supplementary Details on Declension.....	219
THE ADJECTIVE : SYNTAX.....	230
Use of the Numerals.....	239
THE PRONOUN : SYNTAX.....	240
Personal Pronouns.....	240
Possessive Pronouns.....	245
Demonstrative Pronouns	247
Interrogative Pronouns.....	249
Relative Pronouns ..	250
Indefinite Pronouns.....	252
THE VERB.....	256
Supplementary Details on Conjugation.....	256
Use of the Modal Auxiliaries... ..	271
Impersonal Verbs.....	276
Compound Verbs.....	277
Use of the Passive Voice	280
Syntax of Number and Person... ..	282
Use of the Tenses.....	283
Use of the Modes.....	286
Use of the Infinitive.....	295
Use of the Participle.....	300
THE ADVERB : SYNTAX.....	303
THE PREPOSITION : SYNTAX.....	307
THE CONJUNCTION : SYNTAX.....	319
THE INTERJECTION.....	326
WORD-FORMATION	327
Derivation of Nouns.....	328
Derivation of Adjectives.....	332
Derivation of Verbs... ..	336
Derivation of Pronouns and Particles ..	341
WORD-COMBINATION.....	342
Compound Nouns... ..	342
Compound Adjectives.....	344
Compound Verbs, Pronouns, and Particles.....	346

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

ix

	PAGE
THE SENTENCE.....	346
Dependent Clauses.....	348
WORD-ORDER.....	351
Position of Adjuncts.....	358
APPENDIX I: ORTHOGRAPHY.....	365
APPENDIX II: ENGLISH-GERMAN COGNATES.....	368
APPENDIX III: THE GERMAN SCRIPT.....	377
VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES... ..	381
INDEX.....	403

GERMAN GRAMMAR.

PART FIRST.

INTRODUCTORY.

1. **German and English.** German and English are sister languages. Both are descended from a language spoken, centuries before the Christian era, by a European people whose exact place of abode is not known with certainty. In time this people spread far and wide over north-central Europe, and there its various tribes became known to the Romans under the collective name of *Germani*. In the fifth century, A. D., *Germani* from the northwestern lowlands occupied Britain and introduced there their own language, which came to be known as 'English.' The descendants of the continental *Germani* that have remained in the old home now speak various languages, of which the most important is the one called 'German' by us, but *Deutsch* by those who use it. It is the language of the entire German Empire, of a large part of Austria and Switzerland, and of numerous colonies.

1. *Deutsch* is the same word as our 'Dutch,' but the latter term has come to be applied exclusively to the language of Holland. Dutch is not German, nor a dialect of German, but a distinct language.

2. Owing to this common origin German and English have in common a great many words that belonged to the

language from which both have descended. Such words are called 'cognates.' Cognates may resemble each other closely in form and meaning, or they may not. Thus the German word *Bruder* is cognate with *brother* and means *brother*, while *Baum* is cognate with *beam*, but means *tree*.

3. On the other hand, in spite of this common origin, German grammar seems at first to have little resemblance to English grammar. This is because English has lost nearly all of those grammatical distinctions which were once common to both languages, whereas German has preserved them much more fully.

2. **The German Alphabet.** The Germans often print their language in Roman letters like those employed for English; more commonly, however, they use the so-called 'German' characters, which developed out of the Roman previous to the invention of printing. The letters and their German names are as follows :

German form.	Roman form.	German name.	German form.	Roman form.	German name.
À, a	A, a	ah	Ń, n	N, n	en
ß, b	B, b	bay	Ō, o	O, o	oh
Ĉ, c	C, c	tsay	Ŕ, p	P, p	pay
Ď, d	D, d	day	Œ, q	Q, q	koo
Ė, e	E, e	ay	Ŗ, r	R, r	er (<i>very</i>)
Ĝ, f	F, f	eff	Š, ſ, s	S, s	ess
Ĥ, g	G, g	gay	Ŧ, t	T, t	tay
Ĥ, h	H, h	hah	U, u	U, u	oo
Ĥ, i	I, i	ee	Ŧ, v	V, v	fow (<i>fowl</i>)
Ĥ, j	J, j	yot	Ŧ, w	W, w	vay
Ĥ, k	K, k	kah	Ŧ, x	X, x	ix
Ĥ, l	L, l	el	Ŧ, y	Y, y	ipsilon
Ŧ, m	M, m	em	Ŧ, z	Z, z	tset

1. Of the two forms ſ and s, the latter, called 'final s,' is used at the end of a word, or of a stem-syllable; elsewhere the 'long s,' is used. Thus: *das, the, dasſelbe, the same*; *weiſe, wise, but Weiſheit, wisdom*.

a. The form *ß* is used also in foreign words and proper names before other consonants than *p* or *t*; thus *Presbyter*, *Discours*, *Bismarck*, but *Respekt*, *Mythist*.

2. To the above list of alphabetic characters should be added: (1) the digraphs *ch* = *ch*, *ck* = *ck*, *ng* = *ng*, *pf* = *pf*, *ph* = *ph*, *ss* = *ss*, *th* = *th*, and *tz* = *tz*; (2) the trigraph *sch* = *sch*; (3) the diphthongs *ai* = *ai*, *au* = *au*, *ei* = *ei*, *eu* = *eu*, and (4) the umlauts *ä* = *ä* or *æ*, *ö* = *ö* or *œ*, *ü* = *ü* or *ue*, and *äu* = *äu* or *æu*.

a. The digraphs, trigraph and diphthongs are named by combining the names of their component parts (thus *ch* is called *tsay-hah*); the umlauts by pronouncing the sounds they denote, or by saying 'a-umlaut,' 'o-umlaut,' etc. They are also called 'modified a,' 'modified o,' etc.

3. The character *ß*, called *ess-tset*, takes the place of *ss* at the end of a word and of *ff* before *t* or after a long vowel or a diphthong; thus, *wissen*, *to know*, but *wußte*, *knew*, and *ich weiß*, *I know*; *Schuß*, *shot* (with short *u*), plural *Schüsse*, but *Fuß*, *foot* (with long *u*), plural *Füße*. In Roman letters *ß* appears variously as *ss*, *sz* or *sz*. The official rules (see below) prescribe *sz*.

3. Orthography. There has long been in German, as in English, more or less difference of usage in the spelling of certain words and classes of words. In recent years several of the German governments have adopted official rules regulating doubtful points. This official spelling is taught in the schools and has made its way largely into books and journals, though the older spelling is also in very general use. This grammar will follow the rules of the Prussian spelling-book. (See Appendix I.)

4. Initial Capitals. German, like English, uses a capital letter at the beginning of sentences, lines of poetry, direct quotations, proper nouns and most adjectives derived from them, and adjectives of title. The important principles peculiar to German are as follows:

1. Every noun and word used as a noun begins with a capital; as *das Haus*, *the house*; *das Schöne*, *the beautiful*; *das Geben*, *giving*; *etwas Gutes*, *something good*.

a. But a noun-form not used substantively takes a small initial ; as *Abend*, *evening*, but *abends*, *in the evening* ; *Paar*, *pair*, but *ein paar Minuten*, *a few minutes*. The same is true of nouns forming a part of certain phrases ; as *Teil*, *part*, but *teilnehmen*, *participate* ; *Statt*, *place*, but *stattfinden*, *take place*.

2. The pronoun *Sie*, meaning *you*, and its possessive *Ihr*, meaning *your*, are given a capital to distinguish them from *sie*, *they* or *she*, and *ihr*, *their* or *her*. The rule applies to all the case-forms of *Sie* and *Ihr*, but not to the reflexive *sich*. With regard to *du*, *thou*, *dein*, *thy*, and their case-forms, usage varies ; but they should at any rate be capitalized in letters.

3. Adjectives denoting nationality take a small initial ; as *die deutsche Sprache*, *the German language* ; *das amerikanische Volk*, *the American people*.

5. **Syllabication.** Words are divided at the end of a line in accordance with the following principles :

1. Between two vowels any simple consonantal sign, or any combination (except *ng*) denoting a simple consonantal sound, goes with the following vowel. Examples : *ge-ben*, *se-hen*, *la-schen*, *grü-ßen*, *ha-schen*, *rei-zen*, *He-re*, *Stä-dte* ; but *fin-gen*, *Sun-ger*.

2. Of two or more consonants occurring between two vowels only the last goes with the following vowel. Examples : *Al-ter*, *Ap-fel*, *krat-zen*, *Knos-pe* or *Knos-pe*, *Stück-fe* (for *Stück-fe*, *f* being always resolved into *f-f*).

3. Excepted from these rules are (1) compounds, which should keep their parts intact, and (2) cases in which a strict application of the rules would result in breaking up a natural sound-group ; thus *dar-in*, not *da-rin*, *therein* ; *Baum-ast*, not *Bau-mast*, *branch of a tree* ; *ge-pflegt*, not *gepf=legt*, from *pflegen*. So also one writes *A-pri-lose*, *As-tro-nom*, *Mi-tro-stop*, *Di-stink-tion*.

6. **Punctuation.** The ordinary marks of punctuation are the same in German as in English, but the comma is used more freely to set off subordinate clauses of all kinds. The hyphen is a double stroke (=) and is employed, in addition to the uses familiar in English, to take the

place of a suppressed member of a compound ; thus *Land- und Wassertiere*, *land-animals and water-animals*. In ordinary compounds the hyphen is not used ; e. g., *Fenster-scheibe*, *window-pane*. Quotation-marks ordinarily appear thus : „*Ende gut, alles gut*“, *all's well that ends well*. Emphasis is indicated by spaced type ; e. g., *bedenke erst das Wie, dann das Warum*, *think first of the HOW, then of the WHY*.

7. The German Script. There is a peculiar script, or written alphabet, which is employed by most Germans in their ordinary writing, though they also read and write the Roman script. The letters are as follows : *

Capital.	Small.	Roman.	Capital.	Small.	Roman.	Capital.	Small.	Roman.
A	a	a	J	j	j	P	p	p
B	b	b	K	k	k	T	t	t
L	l	l	L	l	l	U	u	u
D	d	d	M	m	m	V	v	v
E	e	e	N	n	n	W	w	w
F	f	f	O	o	o	X	x	x
G	g	g	P	p	p	Y	y	y
H	h	h	Q	q	q	Z	z	z
I	i	i	R	r	r	-ß	sz	sz

* It is not at all important that a beginner learn the German script at once, though he should certainly learn it sooner or later. Script texts for practice in reading will be found in an Appendix.

PRONUNCIATION.

8. The Standard. Since German has a long history and is spoken over a large area, the pronunciation of the language naturally varies considerably in different localities. This is especially true of the uneducated, whose local dialects differ greatly from one another and from the speech of the educated. The standard at which a student should aim is not the dialect of any one locality, but rather the average pronunciation of educated Germans, as heard in their use of the *Schriftsprache*, or standard literary language. This language, as printed, is substantially the same everywhere. In pronouncing it the aim of the best speakers is to avoid all local dialect whatsoever.

9. Learning to Pronounce. The beginner in German is sure to pronounce at first with a marked English 'accent,' which it should be his aim to get rid of. This can be done only by long practice in the imitation of good models. Even then, unless the practice begins in infancy, one's foreign 'accent' never disappears entirely, though it is possible for almost any one, by careful attention to the subject, to acquire a pronunciation that will not offend even a fastidious German ear. What is called 'accent,' or 'brogue,' is mainly due to slight errors in adjusting the organs of speech to the foreign sounds. Hence it is a great help in learning to pronounce to know just how the foreign sounds are produced and how they differ from the English sounds with which they are most likely to be confounded.

1. We will therefore proceed to describe the German sounds in detail ; but since several of them do not exist in English, we cannot describe them adequately by means of English key-words. Moreover, the pronunciation of English itself differs very greatly in different parts of the English-speaking world. These facts necessitate the use of a few technical terms which the student should master

if he is not already familiar with them. First, however, attention may be called to

10. A General Rule. Excepting *h*, medial or final, and *e* in the digraph *ie* = long *i*, there are no silent letters in genuine German words. Every letter is to be pronounced; e. g., the *R* in *Rnabe*, the *G* in *Gnabe*, and the final *t* in both.

THE VOWELS.

11. Rounded Vowels. Let the learner begin to pronounce *ah*, and then, while uttering a continuous vowel-sound, gradually round the cheeks to the position required for the *oo* of *pool*. He will thus produce a series of vowel-sounds as follows: (1) *a* in *ah*; (2) *aw* in *awe*; (3) a short *o*-sound not heard in standard English, but common in German; (4) *o* in *note*; (5) *u* in *full*; (6) *oo* in *pool*. This process is called 'rounding'; and since rounding brings the lips closer together, a vowel which is more 'rounded' is also said to be 'closer' or 'less open.'

12. Fronted and Raised Vowels. Returning to the *ah* position, pronounce a continuous vowel-sound while gradually raising the front part of the tongue to the position required for the *ee* in *eel*. A series of vowel-sounds will be produced as follows: (1) *a* in *ah*; (2) *a* in *hat*; (3) *e* in *met*; (4) *ay* in *day*; (5) *i* in *it*; (6) *ee* in *eel*. This process is called 'fronting,' and involves also an act of 'raising.' The *e* in *met* is said to be 'higher' than the *a* in *hat*, and 'lower' than the *i* in *it*. And since raising the tongue closes the air-passage above it, a vowel that is 'higher' is also said to be 'more close,' and one that is 'lower' is also called 'more open.'

13. Slurred Vowels. In English we tend to pass very lightly over any vowel in the syllable next after a strongly accented syllable. By this process, which is called 'slurring,' we deprive the vowel of its distinctive character, and convert it into an 'obscure' sound resembling that

of *u* in *but*. Note the identical sound of the unaccented *a*, *e*, *i*, *o*, *u* in the penult of *separate*, *celery*, *visible*, *ebony*, *awfully*.

1. In German no vowel except unaccented *e* should ever be slurred.

14. Quantity of Vowels. The quantity of a sound, properly speaking, is simply the relative length of time taken in uttering it; in common usage, however, the words 'long' and 'short' imply quality as well as quantity, a short vowel being usually more open than the corresponding long. In German, as in English, vowel-quantity is often indicated by the spelling of the word. The important rules are these :

1. A vowel doubled or followed by *h* is thereby shown to be long. Examples : *Naß*, *Ahle*, *Beet*, *geht*, *ihn*, *Stuhl*, *kühn*.

a. The only vowels ever doubled are *a*, *e* and *o*, and even with these the inserted *h* is the more usual device for indicating length. Long *i* appears as *ih* only in some pronouns and proper names ; elsewhere usually as *ie*.

b. Vowels brought together by composition are not to be regarded as doubled vowels, but are pronounced separately ; e. g., *beehren*, i. e., *be-ehren*, to honor.

2. An accented vowel that ends a syllable, or is followed by a single consonant, is generally long ; if followed by two consonants, it is short ; thus the vowel is long in *du*, *Plan*, *rot*, but short in *dumm*, *Band*, *Kost* ; it is long in the accented syllable of *We'sen*, *ho'len*, *Gebe't*, *Verbo't*, but short in that of *we'ssen*, *fo'llen*, *gebe'ttet*, *versto'rben*. But a long stem-vowel remains long in derived forms ; thus the first vowel being long in *le'gen*, *lay*, and *e'bel*, noble, it is also long in *legte*, *laid*, and *edler*, nobler.

a. A syllable ending in a vowel is said to be 'open' ; one ending in a consonant, 'closed'. It is an important rule that the vowel of an accented open syllable is long.

b. Observe, however, that *dh*, *ng* and *sch*, though each denotes a simple consonantal sound, cannot be doubled. Before *dh* the vowel may be short, as in *bräden*, or long, as in *brädeh*. Before *sch* it is short, as in *mißden* (unless it

be a diphthong, as in *rauf(d)en*. Before *ng* it is always short. $\text{ẓ} = \text{tʃ}$, $\text{ẓ} = \text{jʃ}$ and $\text{đ} = \text{ff}$ count as two consonants. Before ß the vowel may be short, as in *Ruß*, *füßte*, or long, as in *Gruß*, *grüßte*.

c. Other exceptions to the rule in § 14, 2, are not uncommon, especially among monosyllables; thus the vowel is short in *an*, *mit*, *ob*; long in *Bart*, *Magd*, *stets*; long in *düster*, *Wüste*; short in *Gramma'tik*, *Rapi'tel*.

15. **Ä.** Ä has but one sound, which, however, may be long or short. Long *a* is like *a* in *ah*; short *a* is the same sound uttered quickly. *

1. Ä should never be raised, rounded or slurred. Thus pronounce the *a* of *man*, *als*, *langsam*, each time as a quick *a* in *ah*, not like the sounds heard in *man*, *alter*, *handsome*.

16. **É.** É has three sounds: (1) an open short sound like that of *e* in *met*; (2) a close long sound like that of *ay* in *day*; (3) an 'obscure' sound more or less like that of *a* in *mature*. The first two are heard in accented, the third in unaccented, syllables.

1. Do not change the quality of open short *e* before *r*: pronounce *der*, *Her*, *Her*; with the vowel as in *herring*, not as in *her*.

2. Do not make a diphthong of close *e* by raising it during the act of utterance, thus giving it a vanishing *i*-sound. (Many speakers of English habitually make a diphthong of the so-called 'long *a*' in *day*, *fate*).

3. Do not fail to slur unaccented *e*: make *De'te* rhyme with *Mecca*, not with *flecky*; *be'te* with *data*; *e'del* with *ladle*; *gu'tem* with *shoot'em*; *lei'ten* with *frighten*; *Ẓi'mmer* with *glimmer*. Give the same sound also in *ha'ndeln*, *ha'ndelte*, *wa'ndern*, *wa'nderte*. The obscure sound is heard especially when final, or before *l*, *m*, *n*, *r*, and in final *eß* (*neues* rhyming with *joyous*). In other positions unaccented *e* sometimes approaches the sound of open *e* or *i*; thus make *betest* rhyme with *latest*, *redet* with *made it*. So also be in *bee'i'ten*.

4. Final *e* is never silent except in some borrowed words, as *Revue* (= *Reviü*).

* For examples to practice on see Exercise I below.

17. **ɜ**. **ɜ** has two sounds: (1) an open short, like that of *i* in *bit*; (2) a close long, like that of *i* in *police*.

1. Do not slur unaccented *i*, nor change its character before *r*: distinguish between *ɜ*irtin, *shepherdess*, and *ɜ*irten, *shepherds*, and make neither of them rhyme with *certain*.

2. Long *i* usually appears as *ie*; e. g., in *tief*, *nieder*, rhyming with *chief*, *feeder*. At the end of borrowed words this *ie* is generally accented, and has then its regular sound; e. g., *Chemie'*, *Harmonie'*, *Philosophie'*. But some words throw the accent back; the *ie* is then pronounced in two syllables as *i-e* (*e* obscure); thus *ɜ*ami'lie (*ɜ*a-mi'-li-e), *ɜ*i'lie (*ɜ*i'-li-e), *ɛ*tu'die (*ɛ*tu'-di-e).

a. A similar difference appears in borrowed words in *ier*. The most make this syllable rhyme with *cheer*, as *ɔ*ffi'zie'r, *Barbie'r*; but others drop the *r* and separate *ie* into *i-e'*, as *Vanquie'r* (*Van-ti-e'*), *Portie'r* (*Por-ti-e'*).

18. **o**. **o** has two sounds: (1) an open short, not heard in standard English, but intermediate in roundness between the *aw* of *awe* and the *o* of *note*; (2) a close long, like the *o* of *note*.

1. Do not fail to round short *o* and do not round it too much: *toll* must not rhyme with *doll*, nor with *toll*, but lie between the two.

2. Do not make a diphthong of long *o* by rounding it during the act of utterance, thus giving it a vanishing *u*-sound. (Many speakers of English habitually make a diphthong of the 'long *o*' in *note*, *know*).

3. Do not slur unaccented *o*: pronounce *Do'ttor* with two short *o*'s, not with the sounds heard in *doctor*.

19. **u**. **u** has two sounds: (1) an open short, like that of *u* in *full*; (2) a close long, like that of *oo* in *pool*.

1. Never give to *u* the sound of English *u* in *union*, *cube*.

2. Do not slur unaccented *u*: pronounce *ɜ*o'tus, *ɔ*lo'bus with a duly rounded short *u*.

20. *ŷ*. *ŷ* occurs only in proper names and borrowed words, and has the sound of *ü* (§ 24).

1. But it is also proper to give to *ŷ* the sound of *i*, especially in common words and where it is not accented; e. g., *ŷhl'nder*, *tall hat*.

21. The Umlauts, or Modified Vowels. The term umlaut is applied to a peculiar modification of the vowels *a*, *o*, *u* and the diphthong *au*, due originally to the influence of an *i* or *j* in the next syllable. The effect of this *i* or *j* was to make the preceding vowel more like itself, i. e., to raise and front it.

1. The sign of umlaut was at first an *e* written above the vowel affected, but in time this *e* became reduced to two dots; thus: *ä*, *ö*, *ü*, *äu*. In the old spelling *Ä*, *Ö*, *Ü* and *Äu* were often written *Æ*, *Ō*, *Ū*, *Æu*. In Roman letters one often sees *æ*, *œ*, *ue* and *æu*.

2. Umlaut was once a living principle in English. We owe to it such variations as *man*—*men*, *mouse*—*mice*, *full*—*fill*, *cool*—*chilly*.

22. *Ä*. *Ä* has two sounds: (1) an open short, identical with open short *e*, as in *Ände*, which rhymes exactly with *Ende*; (2) an open long, like that of *ei* in *their*, as in *Väter*. The latter is more open than close *e*, but not quite so open as short *e*.

1. Distinguish between *Ähre*, *honor*, and *Ähre*, *ear of corn*; between *mähren*, *increase*, and *Mähren*, *mares*.

23. *Ö*. *Ö* has two sounds, neither of which is heard in English: (1) an open short, (2) a close long. To get the long sound, as in *Öhle*, pronounce the *ay* of *day* with the lips in position for the *o* of *pole*. The sound is a rounded long *e*, or a fronted long *o*. The open short sound is the same, only a little less rounded.

1. Do not fail to round *ö* properly: distinguish between *kennen*, *know*, and *können*, *be able*; between *Öhlen*, *caves*, and *hehlen*, *hide*.

2. Do not fail to front *ö* properly : distinguish between *konnte*, *was able*, and *könnte*, *might be able* ; between *hohlen*, a case-form of *höhle*, *hollow*, and *Höhlen*, *caves*.

24. *ü*. *ü* has two sounds, neither of them heard in English : (1) an open short, (2) a close long. To get the latter, as in *über*, pronounce the *ee* of *eel* with the lips in position for the *oo* of *pool*. The sound is a rounded long *i* or a fronted long *u*. The short sound is similar, but a little opener.

1. Do not fail to round *ü* properly : distinguish between *liegen*, *lie (recline)*, and *lügen*, *lie (speak falsely)* ; between *Kissen*, *cushion*, and *küssen*, *kiss*.

2. Do not fail to front *ü* properly : distinguish between *mußte*, *had to*, and *müßte*, *would have to* ; between *Flüsse* and *Fluß*, both case-forms of *Fluß*, *river*.

25. **Nasal Vowels.** These occur only in words borrowed from the French ; but since the words containing them are both numerous and common, the sounds require explanation. A vowel is made nasal by lowering the veil of the palate during the act of utterance, thus allowing the vocal current to vibrate in the nasal passage. There are four such vowels having respectively the tongue-position of (1) *a* in *man*, as in *Bassi'n* ; (2) *a* in *ah*, as in *Comme'nt* ; (3) *aw* in *awe*, as in *Ballo'n* ; (4) *u* in *but*, as in *Parfu'm*.

1. In German, as in English, speakers unacquainted with French often pronounce the nasal vowels as ordinary oral vowels followed by *ng* ; calling *Bassin*, *bassa'ng*, *Saison*, *sayzo'ng*, etc. But this is not to be approved.

THE DIPHTHONGS.

26. **Nature of the Diphthongs.** The German diphthongs are combinations of certain vowels with a short *i* or *u*. The first element is always phonetically an *a*-sound or an *o*-sound, *ei* being pronounced as *ai*, and *eu* as *oi*. Thus the five signs *ai*, *au*, *ei*, *eu* and *äu* really represent but three different diphthongs, *äu* being the same as *eu*.

27. Ai. Ai consists of short a plus short i. Its sound is like that of *i* in *pine*, when the English diphthong is pronounced with a quick *a*, as in *ah*, for its first element.

1. In French words *ai* has the sound of *ä*, as in *Affai're*, *Saïson'*.

28. Au. Au consists of short a plus short u. Its sound is that of *ow* in *now*, as pronounced with a quick *a*, as in *ah*, for its first element.

1. Do not raise the first element of *au* to a sound like that of *a* in *man*. (This is a very common pronunciation of the *ow* in *now*).

2. In French words *au* and *eau* have the sound of *o*, as in *Chaussee'*, *Plateau'*.

29. Ei. Ei is pronounced like *ai*.

1. *Ei* and *ay* were once common for *ei* and *ai*, but are now used only in proper names.

30. Eu. Eu consists phonetically of short *o* plus short *i*. Its sound is like that of *oi* in *oil*, save that the first element is a little more rounded.

1. Pronounce *eu* with a pure short *o* as its first element, not exactly as in English *oil*, which is usually made to sound like *aw-il*.

31. Äu. Äu is the umlaut of *au* and has the sound of *eu*.

32. Non-diphthongal Combinations. The above are all of the true diphthongs that occur in German, but there are certain other vowel-combinations that require notice. Except in the interjections *hui* and *pfui*, pronounced *hwee*, *pfwee* (but see § 49), *ua*, *ue*, *ui* and *uo* occur in native German words only after *q*; for their sound see under *q* (§ 50). In French words the *u* of these combinations is usually silent, as in *Guita'rre*, *Bouque't*. *Di* and *ou* occur mostly in French words, *oi* sounding like *wah*, as in *Toile'tte*, and *ou* like long *u*, as in *Tour*, *Bouque't*.

THE CONSONANTS.

33. Definitions. A 'stop' is a consonantal sound produced by a complete closure of the oral passage at some point, as *k, d, p*; it consists always of a slight explosion and cannot be prolonged. A 'spirant' is produced by a *nearly* complete closure, as *s, v, th*; it is made by the rubbing of the breath against the walls of a narrow gateway and can always be prolonged. The term 'spirant,' however, is not applied to *l, r, m, n* or *ng*, though these can be prolonged. *L* and *r* are called 'liquids,' *m, n* and *ng* 'nasals.'

1. A consonantal sound produced with the vocal chords vibrating, as *g, d, z, v*, is said to be 'voiced'; if produced with the chords quiescent, as *k, t, s, f*, it is 'voiceless.'

2. A consonant produced between the back part of the tongue and the opposite portion of the soft palate, as *g* in *go*, *ck* in *duck*, is called a 'guttural'; produced in a similar way, but farther forward, it is a 'palatal'; produced between the fore part of the tongue and the upper teeth or gums, as *d, th, s*, it is a 'dental'; produced between the lips, as *p, b*, it is a 'labial' or 'bilabial,' and produced between the lips and teeth, as *f, v*, a 'labio-dental.'

34. General Rules. Of the two following rules, the first is applicable to English as well as German, the second to German only:

1. Doubled consonants are to be pronounced like the corresponding single consonants; e. g., the *tt* in *bitter* just like the *t* in *mit*.

a. The doubling of a consonant is simply a device (as in English) to indicate that the preceding vowel is short. The only consonants never doubled are *ch, j, {ch, v and w.*

b. The rule does not apply to consonants brought together by composition; pronounce the *tt* in *mitteilen* as in *cat-tail*, not as in *bitter*.

2. A voiced consonant when final becomes voiceless; thus *ab*, as if written *ap*; *Tod*, as if *Tot*.

a. In applying this rule a consonant is to be understood as 'final' not only when it ends a word, but when it ends a stem-syllable that is followed by a suffix beginning with a consonant; e. g., *lieblich*, *Mädchen* (pronounce *liep=lich*, *Mät=chen*).

35. B. *B* has two sounds: (1) when initial or medial, that of *b* in *by*, as in *beben*, *albern*; (2) when final, that of *p* in *pen*, as in *ab*, *lieblich*.

36. C. *C* occurs only in borrowed words and has three sounds: (1) before low vowels (*a, o, u, au*) and before consonants, that of *k*, as in *Café*, *Clique*; (2) before high vowels (*e, i, y, ä, ö*), that of *ç* = *tʃ*, as in *Ceder*, *Cylin'der*; (3) before *e* in a few French words, that of voiceless *s*, as in *Chance*.

1. A foreign *c* which is to sound like *f* is often written *f*, and one which is to sound like *ç* is written *ç*. In some cases, however, usage is unsettled and the official rules are not consistent. Thus we have *Ceder* or *Zeber*; *Rarger* or *Carcer*; *Rommo'de* but *Couve'rt*.

2. *Cf* always sounds like *f*.

37. Ch. *Ch* has in native German words two sounds, neither of them heard in English: (1) after a low vowel (*a, o, u, au*), that of a guttural spirant, as in *Dach*, *auch*; (2) after a high vowel (*e, i, ä, ö, ü, eu, äu*) or a consonant, that of a palatal spirant, as in *ich*, *durch*. To pronounce *Dach* utter English *dock*, but without the complete closure necessary for the final click. Instead of the click let the breath make an audible sound of rubbing or rasping. To pronounce *ich* press the tip of the tongue firmly against the lower teeth and try to say *ish*.

1. Avoid making guttural *ch* either a *f* or a silent *h*: distinguish the final sounds of *roch*, *roh* and *Roß*.

2. Avoid making palatal *ch* either a *f* or an *sh*: distinguish the final sounds of *bich*, *bis* and *Zisch*.

3. In words from the Greek *ch* before *a, o, l* or *r* is usually pronounced like *f*, as in *Chara'ter*, *Chor*, *Chro'nis*; before *e* or *i*, like *ch* in *ich*, as in *Chemie*, *Chiru'rg*.

4. In words from the French *ch* sounds like *ʃ*, as in *Cha'mois*, *Chauffee'*.

5. *Ch* belonging to one and the same stem sounds like *ʃ*, as in *Fuchʃ*, *Dŕŕŕ*; but when the *h* belongs to a suffix *ch* has its separate spirant sound, as in *wachjam*.

38. *D*. *D* has two sounds: (1) when initial or medial, that of *d* in *do*, as in *du*, *Widder*; (2) when final that of *t* in *to*, as in *Tod*, *lŕndlich*, *Wŕldnis*.

1. *Dt* sounds like *t*, as in *Stadt*.

39. *F*. *F* is always like English *f* in *for*; e. g., *falʃ*, *offen*, *tief*.

40. *G*. *G* has in native German words five sounds: (1) when initial, or before a consonant, or doubled, that of a guttural stop like English *g* in *go*, as in *gehen*, *Gŕŕŕ*, *Dogge*; (2) when final after a low vowel (*a*, *o*, *u*), that of a voiceless guttural spirant = guttural *ch*, as in *Tag*, *flog*, *ʃug*; (3) when final after a high vowel (*e*, *i*, *ei*) or a consonant, that of a voiceless palatal spirant = palatal *ch*, as in *Kŕnig*, *Teig*, *Berg*; (4) when medial after a low vowel, that of a voiced guttural spirant, as in *Tage*, *Lauge*; (5) when medial after a high vowel or a consonant, that of a voiced palatal spirant, as in *Kŕnige*, *Beschŕftigung*, *Berge*.

1. There is good usage in favor of pronouncing final *g* always as *f* and medial *g* as *g* in *go*, but the weight of authority is in favor of the pronunciation described above. The voiced spirants are somewhat difficult. To get the *g* in *lagen* first pronounce *laŕen*; then learn to voice the spirant by keeping up the glottal buzz of the *a*. By placing the finger against the glottis (just above the 'Adam's apple') the buzz will be distinctly felt if the consonant is properly voiced.

2. In words from the French *g* before *e* has usually the sound of *z* in *azure*, as in *Genie'*, *Paŕŕa'ge*, *Dra'nge*; and *g* with following *n* that of *ni* in *union*, as in *Champa'gner*.

41. *H*. *H* at the beginning of a word or a suffix sounds like *h* in *his*, as in *Herr*, *Freiheit*; after a vowel it is silent

and serves to indicate that the vowel is long, as in *Ähle*, *feh'r*. Between vowels *h* has the effect of a diæresis; thus *ruhig* = *ru'ig*.

42. *J*. *J* has the sound of *y* in *yes*, as in *je*, *Jahr*.

1. In a few French words *j* sounds like *z* in *azure*; e. g., *Journa'l*.

43. *Q*. *Q* has the sound of *k* in *kiss*, as in *fahl*, *Glüd* (*d* being written for double *f*).

44. *L*. *L* is like, or at least very nearly like, the ordinary English *l* in *let*; e. g., *leben*, *Ball*.

1. Do not drop *l* in any position; e. g., not in *half*, *Qualm*, *Palme*.

2. In words from the French *ll* sounds like *lli* in *William*, as in *Bille't*, *Bouillo'n*.

45. *M*. *M* is always like English *m* in *met*, as in *mehr*, *Rehm*.

46. *N*. *N* is regularly like English *n* in *no*, as in *nie*, *an*.

1. *N* before *t* sounds, as in English, like *ng*; thus *finfen* = *fingfen*, just as in English *think* = *think*.

2. In words from the French *n* after a vowel (except between vowels) is not pronounced as a consonant, but serves to indicate nasality in the vowel (§ 25); e. g., *Sais'o'n*.

47. *Ng*. *Ng* is not a compound of *n* and *g*, but a simple sound. It is always like *ng* in *singer*, never like *ng* in *linger*. Examples: *lang*, *länger*. Pronounce separately in compounds, as *u'n-ger'n*, *a'n-geht*.

48. *P*. *P* is always like *p* in *pen*, as in *Pech*, *Mappe*.

1. *P*h occurs only in borrowed words (except *Eph'e'u*, *ivy*.) and sounds like *f*, as in *En'lp'h*, *Philosophie'*.

49. *Pf*. *Pf* is not exactly *p* plus *f*. To pronounce it begin as for a *p* and then convert the *p* into an *f* before the closure is complete. Examples: *Pflan'ze*, *empfinden*, *Pfropf*.

50. Q. *Q* occurs, as in English, only before *u*, the combination *qu* being pronounced like *kw*, the *w* denoting here a bilabial spirant (§ 58). Examples: *Quelle, erqui'den*.

1. German *qu* is not exactly like *qu* in *quit*, nor like *kw* in *black vest*. It differs from the former in that the lips are less rounded, and from the latter in that the sound is produced between the lips and not between the upper teeth and lower lip.

51. R. There are two modes of pronouncing *r*. The 'lingual' or 'trilled' *r* is made by vibrating the tip of the tongue; the 'guttural' or 'uvular' *r* by raising the back part of the tongue until it meets the soft palate and forcing the breath through the narrow gateway thus formed, with an accompanying vibration or flapping of the uvula.

1. The learner should at least begin with the lingual *r*, which is not so very different from the ordinary English initial *r*, as in *red*. In pronouncing it, however, let the vibratory trill be always distinctly heard. This caution is especially important for those who in speaking English habitually drop *r* after a vowel, making, e. g., no distinction between *farther* and *father*, but giving both as *fathuh*.

2. The guttural *r* is rapidly superseding the trilled *r*, and is the one now used by the majority of Germans. It is, however, very difficult to acquire after childhood.

52. S. *S* has three sounds: (1) when final, or medial with a consonant following, that of *s* in *sit*, as in *das, ist*; (2) when initial before a vowel, or between two vowels, that of *z* in *zeal* (only a little less forcibly voiced), as in *Seele, Rose, langsam*; (3) before *p* or *t* at the beginning of a word, that of a quickly uttered *sh* = *ʃ*, as in *Stand, Sprache*.

1. The voiced *ʃ* is never doubled, whence *ff* and *ß* are always voiceless.

2. A voiced *ʃ* occurring between vowels, as in *Rose, Nase, Weise*, becomes voiceless in derivatives such as *Röslein, Räschen, Weisheit*; i. e., it is there 'final' (§ 34, 2, a), and hence written *s*.

53. **Sch.** Sch sounds like *sh* in *ship*, as in *ſchnell*, *Kaufſch*.

1. But where *sch* begins a suffix, as in *Räſſchen*, from *Raſe*, *sch* has its separate palatal sound.

54. **T.** T in native German words has always the sound of *t* in *tin*, as in *mit*, *tretēn*.

1. In words from the Latin *t* before unaccented *i* sounds like *ts*; e. g., *Ratio'n*, *partia'l*; but not when following *j*, as in *beſtia'liſch*.

55. **Th.** Th has always the sound of *t*, never that of English *th* in *this* or in *thin*; e. g., *thun*, *Theologie'*.

1. Th appears (1) in some foreign words like *Thee*, including Greek words, in which it represents *θ*; (2) in a few German words as a sign of vowel-length, *th* before the vowel being used instead of *h* after it; e. g., *thun* instead of *tuhn*, *Thor* instead of *Tohr*.

56. **Z.** Z is simply double *z* and has the same sound, namely, that of *ts*; e. g., *Schätz*, *ſitzen*.

57. **B.** B has in native German words the sound of *f*, as in *Bater*, *vor*.

1. But in words from the French or Latin, except when final, *b* sounds like *v* in *vat*, as in *Baſe*, *ſulver* (but like *f* in *brav*, *Crediti'b*).

58. **W.** W has two sounds: (1) when initial, or after a vowel, that of a labio-dental spirant like *v* in *vat*, as in *Welle*, *Wöwe*; (2) after a consonant, that of a bilabial spirant, as in *jwei*, *Schwelle*.

1. The bilabial *w* sounds at first much like English *w* in *win*, but differs from it in that the lips are less rounded and that it is a true spirant rather than a semivowel. The student will do best to pronounce *jwei*, *Schwelle*, as also *Quelle*, at first with a *v*-sound rather than a *w*-sound, the latter being the harder to correct. In large parts of Middle and South Germany the bilabial *w* is the only one used.

59. **X.** X is always like English *x*; e. g., in *Xrt*, *Xenien*.

60. **ß.** ß has always the sound of *ts* in *fits*, as in *zu*, *ſerz*, *ſitzen* (*ß* being the written form of *ßz*).

ACCENTUATION.

61. Kinds of Accent. Accent is special stress in pronunciation. Word-accent is special stress upon one or more syllables of a word; sentence-accent (often called 'rhetorical accent,' or simply 'emphasis') is special stress upon one or more words of the sentence.

1. Accent is either strong or weak, and there are different degrees of weakness; thus in *constitutionality* the strong stress is upon *al*, and there is a weak stress upon *tu*, and a still weaker one upon *con*. Such shades and more are heard also in German, but the beginner may safely ignore all but two and think of every syllable as having either chief stress (´), weak stress (˘), or no stress at all; e. g., *Freu'de*, joy; *freu'dlo's*, joyless; *Freu'dlo'sigk'eit*, joyfulness.

62. Simple Words. An uncompounded word, if of native German stock, has the chief stress on the root-syllable, and not on any suffix; e. g., *ha'ndeln*, act; *ha'n-delte*, acted; *Re'niginnen*, queens; *Alt'ertümer*, antiquities.

1. Exceptions are verbs in *ie'ren* and nouns in *ei*; e. g., *studie'ren*, study; *marſchie'rt*, marched; *Malerei'*, painting.

2. There are also a few other anomalous exceptions, as *lebe'ndig*, living, from *le'ben*; *wahrha'ftig*, true, from *wa'hrhaft*.

63. Compounds. German forms compounds very freely and in great variety, and their accent cannot be brought under any simple rules. The beginner will do best to be guided at first by English analogy, which will cover multitudes of cases; e. g., *Frei'dt'u'g*, freight-train; *Blu'menga'rten*, flower-garden; *ſe'ſta'nd*, mai'n-la'nd; *ro't-fa'rbig*, red-colored; *Bergi'm'einn'i'dt*, forget-me-not. Then let the following points be noted:

1. Compound particles generally accent the second member; as *heiau'f*, (here)up; *daru'nter*, thereunder; *ſtroma'b*, downstream.

2. The six prefixes *be*, *ent* (emp), *er*, *ge*, *ver* and *zer* are never accented.

3. The prefix *un*, *un*, is very often, but not always, accented; e. g., *u'ntru*, *untru'e*; *u'ngern*, *unwi'llingly*; but *une'ndlich*, *une'nding*.

64. Borrowed Words. These are apt to accent the ultima, the following examples being each typical of many: *Partie'*, *party*; *Portio'n*, *portion*; *Musi't*, *music*; *Stude'nt*, *student*; *partia'l*, *partial*; *Regime'nt*, *regiment*; *absolu't*, *absolute*; *religiö's*, *religious*.

1. Exceptions occur principally among Latin words in *or*, *el*, *er*, *ium*; as *Do'ktor* (plural *Dokto'ren*), *doctor*; *Kör'per*, *body*; *Ti'tel*, *title*; *plausi'bel*, *plausible*; *Stru'dium*, *study*.

EXERCISE I.

PRONUNCIATION OF VOWELS.

NOTE.—Accent the first syllable unless the accent is marked. Words connected by an English hyphen are to be carefully distinguished in pronunciation.

Long a.—*Al*, *Hahn*, *Draht*, *lahm*, *Fraß*, *Bart*, *Papst*.

Short a.—*Als*, *balb*, *Band*, *Gast*, *Ball*, *hart*, *Lamm*.

Obscure e.—*Habe*, *Gatte*, *Gema'hl*, *Gesa'ng*, *Kaba'le*, *Mantel*, *alt*, *Garten*, *Vater*, *handeln*, *handelte*.

Short e and ä.—*Es*, *Ende*, *Hände*, *gefä'ult*, *Äpfel*, *Blätter*, *Ärger*, *Er'bh'e'r'r*, *A'bende'ssen*, *Be'ttde'de*.

Long e.—*Beere*, *fehlen*, *Ehre*, *beben*, *Gebe't*.

Long ä.—*Väter*, *Thäler*, *gähren*; *Ähre* – *Ehre*, *Mähren* – *mehren*, *Säle* – *Seele*, *währen* – *wehren*.

Short i.—*Ist*, *mit*, *irren*, *Gebi'ss*, *Inse'tt*, *gebi'ssen*.

Long i and ie.—*Mir*, *Igel*, *ihnen*, *hier*, *viel*, *gebie'nt*.

Long o.—*Boot*, *Dhr*, *ohne*, *Moos*, *rot*, *gelo'bt*, *Ratio'n*.

Short o.—*Toll*, *Boß*, *fort*, *Dogge*, *Gosse*, *Folge*, *Morgen*, *verdo'rben*, *gefo'unt*, *Offizie'r*.

Long u.—*Du*, *thun*, *Fuhn*, *Ruhe*, *Bude*, *Gruß*, *gebu'hlt*.

Short u.—*Ruß*, *Brust*, *dunkel*, *Du'send*, *gemu'rrt*.

Short ö.—*Böde*, *Körner*, *Töpfer*, *Förster*, *Gewö'lte*; *können* – *kennen*, *Hölle* – *Helle*, *könnte* – *konnte* – *kennte*.

Long ö.—Öl, böse, hören, gekrö'nt, größer; Öhnen – sehnen, lesen – lösen, böte – Vöte – Veete – bäte, Möhren – Mähren – mehren – Möhren.

Short ü.—Büden, müssen, mürbe, Hülle, bürgen; Küste – Rüste, mußten – müßten – mißten, Kusse – küssen – Rissen.

Äi and ei.—Bai, Hain, Beil, keimen, Ei'telkei't; sei – ste, lieblich – leiblich, reiten – rieten.

Au.—Baum, aus, Maul, fausen, au'fgebau't.

Eu and äu.—Freude, Bäume, Beute, Mäuse, Eule; baute – Beute, heute – haute.

Nasal vowels.—Comme'nt, Pensio'n (on not nasal), Ora'nge, Bantie'r (r silent), Bassi'n, Gami'n, Ballo'n, Garço'n, Parfu'm, Trente-et-u'n.

EXERCISE II.

PRONUNCIATION OF CONSONANTS.

B, voiced.—Bibel, beben, Ebbe, Gebo't, Verba'nd.

B, voiceless.—Ab, ob, liebt, lieblich, lie'brei'ch, Lo'bre'de.

C = k.—Casus, Coder, Coufi'ne, Carrie're, Coupé.

C = ç.—Circus, Cessio'n, Cicero, Ciga'rre, Cyli'nder, centra'l.

Ch as voiceless guttural spirant.—Ach, auch, Buch, doch, lachen, machen, suchen, beda'cht, Rau'chlo'ch; wachen – waschen, roch – roh – Roß, rauhen – rauchen – rauschen.

Ch as voiceless palatal spirant.—Echt, ich, Bäche, Bücher, euch, reich, leuchtet, dächtet, durch, Kech, mancher, Mädchen, griechisch; dich – dick, Löcher – Leder, Kirche – Kirsche, frisch – rächen – Reden.

Ch = t.—Chaos, Chara'tter, Chor, Cholera, chroma'tisch, Chronologie'.

Ch = sh.—Cha'mois, Champa'gner, Chaussee', charma'nt, Chica'ne, chofie'ren.

Chs = x.—Achse, Dachs, Däse; wachsen – waschen – wachen.

D, voiced.—Du, denn, edel, oder, Widder, gere'bet.

D, voiceless.—Eid, Tod, und, Abend, redlich, Mädchen, bere'dsam.

G as voiced guttural stop.—Ganz, Gruß, Flagge, glühen.

G as voiceless guttural spirant.—Tag, Bug, flog, flug, Magd, ragt, wagt, getau'gt, genu'g, Besu'gnis.

G as voiceless palatal spirant.—König, einig, ruhig, Teig, fliegt, beugt, sägt, lügt, Balg, Berg, genü'gt.

G as voiced guttural spirant.—Tage, Bogen, Augen, flogen, trugen, lagen, Tugend, Jugend, Lauge, Tau'geni'dhts.

G as voiced palatal spirant.—Könige, einige, ruhige, fliegen, beugen, sägen, lügen, Bälge, Berge, Morgen, Beschä'ftigung.

G as voiced sch.—Baga'ge, Eta'ge, Passa'ge, Genie', Gelee', Genda'rm, Dra'nge.

Ng.—Eng, bang, lang, fingen, Finger, Sänger.

Pf.—Pfahl, Pflanze, Apfel, hüpfen, Pfro'pfenzie'her.

Qu.—Quart, Quelle, quer, erqui'den.

R.—Er, der, her, rot, rügen, Brot, größer, hart, Herz, Dirne, Fürsten, härter, veri'tren.

S, s, voiced.—Saal, Seele, Sohn, Besen, Busen, grausam, Rose, Rätzel, Nase, Trübsal, Hö'rsaa'l.

S, ss, s, voiceless.—Ist, Ast, Rest, kispeln, als, das, Faß, besser, größer, Kösslein, Näschen; reisen – reißen, weisen – weißen.

Sp, st, initial.—Stark, Stände, Sprache, spülen, Bau'stei'n, Sta'hlsti'ch, Spru'chspre'cher, Gei'sterspu'l.

Sch.—Schelle, Schimpf, Marsch, löschen, rauschen.

T, Th.—Tau, Tod, treu, Rat, thun, Thor, Theologie'.

T = z.—Ratio'n, Portio'n, partia'l, Patie'nt, Curtius.

V = f.—Vater, viel, vor, Vogel, brav, relati'v.

V = w.—Vase, Verb, viole'tt, Pulver, revidie'ren.

W as labio-dental voiced spirant.—Wachs, Wage, Wehen, weise, Wurst, Löwe, verwi'rtt, gewa'ndt.

W as bilabial voiceless spirant.—Dwall, zwei, Zwerg, Zwi'n, Schmulst, schwarz, geschwo'llen, verschwi'nden.

Z, z.—Zu, Zucker, Schmerz, erzä'hlen, sitzen, schwagen; Spaß – Spaß; reizen – reisen – reißen.

EXERCISE III.

PRONUNCIATION OF CONNECTED DISCOURSE.

NOTE.—This exercise is intended to cultivate fluency in reading. Practice upon it until it can be read without hesitation. To assist the beginner the emphatic words (those that bear the sentence-accent) are here printed in spaced type, though that would not ordinarily be done.

Guten Morgen! *Good morning!*

Wie befinden Sie sich? *How do you do?*

Danke, recht gut. *Very well, thank you.*

Und wie geht es Ihnen heute? *And how are you to-day?*

So ziemlich; nur habe ich ein wenig Kopfschmerz. *Pretty well; only I have a little headache.*

Das thut mir leid; es ist doch nicht schlimm? *I am sorry for that; it isn't bad, I hope?*

O nein! es wird auch schon besser. *Oh no; it is getting better, too, already.*

Aber wo gehen Sie jetzt hin? *But where are you going now?*

Ich gehe nur spazieren; kommen Sie mit. *I am only taking a walk; come along.*

Sehr gern; aber sagen Sie mir erst, wie viel Uhr es ist. *With pleasure; but tell me first what time it is.*

Oh, Sie haben noch Zeit genug; es ist erst halb neun. *Oh, you have still time enough; it is only half-past eight.*

Schönes Wetter heute, nicht wahr? *Fine weather to-day, isn't it?*

Prächtig; wir haben nur selten solche Herbsttage. *Splendid; we but rarely have such autumn days.*

Sehen Sie nur dorthin; ist das nicht eine herrliche Aussicht? *Just look yonder; isn't that a glorious view?*

Wunderschön! ich glaube, ich könnte sie stundenlang betrachten. *Wonderfully fine; I believe I could look at it for hours.*

Was treiben Sie denn eigentlich in der letzten Zeit? *What are you doing, pray, these days?*

Ich lerne jetzt Englisch. Das ist meine Hauptbeschäftigung. *I am learning English now. That is my principal occupation.*

Da haben Sie gewiß genug zu thun. Englisch lesen ist zwar leicht, aber die Aussprache ist fürchterlich. *Then you certainly have enough to do. To be sure it is easy to read English, but the pronunciation is fearful.*

THE PARTS OF SPEECH AND THEIR VARIATIONS.

65. Inflection. Of the nine parts of speech—they are the same in German as in English—the article, noun, adjective, pronoun and verb are subject to inflection; that is, variation of form to denote different grammatical relations. The uninflected parts of speech, or ‘particles,’ are the adverb, preposition, conjunction and interjection.

66. Declension. The inflection of the article, noun, adjective and pronoun is called ‘declension.’ Declension shows how a word varies for gender, number and case.

67. Conjugation. The inflection of the verb is called ‘conjugation’; it shows how a verb varies for voice, mode, tense, person and number.

68. Gender. There are three genders, the masculine, feminine and neuter, which may or may not correspond to the sex of the object designated.

1. For example, *Weib, woman*, is neuter, *Stein, stone*, is masculine, and *Rose, rose*, is feminine. This gender which is out of relation to sex is sometimes called ‘grammatical,’ in distinction from ‘natural,’ gender.

69. Number. There are two numbers, the singular and the plural.

70. Case. There are four cases: the nominative, which is the case of the subject; the genitive, corresponding to the English possessive, or objective with *of*; the dative, corresponding to the English objective with *to* or *for*, and the accusative, which is the case of the direct object.

1. This is only a rough general statement. Each of the cases has its peculiar uses, which are expressed in English in various ways. (See §§ 241–72.)

71. Variations of the Verb. The verb has an active and a passive voice, and each voice has four modes, viz.: the indicative, the subjunctive, the conditional and the imperative. There are two infinitives and two participles, a present and a perfect. The indicative and subjunctive mode have each six tenses, viz.: the present, the preterite, the perfect, the pluperfect, the future and the future perfect. Each tense has two numbers, a singular and a plural, and each number has a first, second and third person.

THE ARTICLE.

72. The Definite Article. The definite article *der* is declined fully in the singular to agree with the case and gender of its noun; in the plural it varies for case only, not for gender. The declension is as follows:

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	M. F. N.
Nom., <i>the,</i>	der	die	das	die
Gen., <i>of the,</i>	des	der	des	der
Dat., <i>to the,</i>	dem	der	dem	den
Acc., <i>the,</i>	den	die	das	die

1. Certain case-forms of *der* often combine with certain prepositions into one word. Thus we have *am* for *an dem*, *im* for *in dem*, *zu* for *zu der*, *auf* for *auf das*, etc.

2. The use of *der* corresponds in general to that of *the*, but with many exceptions. Sometimes it is used where English does not use *the*, and again it is omitted where *the* is required. Often it takes the place of an English possessive. (See Part II, §§ 223-9.)

73. The Indefinite Article. The indefinite article *ein*, *a*, *an*, is declined in the singular only, the forms being as follows :

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom., <i>a</i> ,	ein	eine	ein
Gen., <i>of a</i> ,	eines	einer	eines
Dat., <i>to a</i> ,	einem	einer	einem
Acc., <i>a</i> ,	einen	eine	ein

1. In the phrases *ein paar*, *a few*, and *ein wenig*, *a little*, *ein* is uninflected ; e. g., in *ein paar Minuten*, *in a few minutes*.

2. The use of *ein* corresponds in the main to that of *a*, but it is sometimes omitted where *a* is required in English.

EXERCISE IV.

READING LESSON: SENTENCES SHOWING THE USE OF THE ARTICLE.

[Learn the present indicative of *haben*, *to have*, and of *sein*, *to be*, viz.: *ich habe*, *I have* ; *du hast*, *thou hast* ; *er hat*, *he has* ; *wir haben*, *we have* ; *ihr habt*, *ye have* ; *sie haben*, *they have* ; *Sie haben*, *you have* ; *ich bin*, *I am* ; *du bist*, *thou art* ; *er ist*, *he is* ; *wir sind*, *we are* ; *ihr seid*, *ye are* ; *sie sind*, *they are* ; *Sie sind*, *you are*.]

Der Mann ist ein Engländer¹. — Das Buch ist interessant. — Die Feder gehört² dem Lehrer. — Haben Sie einen³ Bleistift oder eine⁴ Feder in⁴ der Tasche⁵? — Sehen⁶ Sie den Mann da im Garten? — Der Mann ist wohl Lehrer⁷; er hat immer⁸ ein Buch in der Hand. — Die Zeit⁹ ist lang, aber das Leben⁹ ist kurz.

VOCABULARY.

NOTE.—English cognates are printed in **black letter**, and put in [] when they are not in common use or do not properly translate the German cognate. Italics mean that the word so printed is borrowed from the same source as the German equivalent; *m.* means masculine noun; *f.*, feminine noun; *n.*, neuter noun. The other abbreviations will be readily understood.

aber, *conj.*, but, however.
 Blei'sti'ft, *m.*, lead-pencil.
 Buch, *n.*, book.
 da, *adv.*, there.
 E'nglä'nder, *m.*, Englishman.
 Feder¹⁰, *f.*, pen, feather.
 Garten, *m.*, garden, [yard].
 gehören, *v.* (*dat.*), belong to.
 Ha'nd, *f.*, hand.
 immer, *adv.*, always.
 in, *prep.* (*dat.* and *acc.*), in,
 into.
 intere'ssa'nt, *adj.*, interesting.

kurz, *adj.*, short, [cut].
 lang, *adj.*, long.
 Leben, *n.*, life, [live].
 Lehrer, *m.*, teacher.
 Mann, *m.*, man.
 oder, *conj.*, or.
 sehen, *v.*, see.
 Ta'sche, *f.*, pocket.
 und, *conj.*, and.
 wohl, *adv.*, probably, I pre-
 sume, well.
 Zeit¹⁰, *f.*, time, [tide].

NOTES.—¹ Engländer; pronounce E'ng-lä'nder without slurring the ä; not 3'ng-länder, nor 3'ng-gländer. — ² gehört, belongs to; the verb is 3. pers. sing., and governs the *dat.* — ³ einen, eine; the article has to be repeated because the nouns are of different gender. — ⁴ in; in governs the *dat.* when it means *in*, the *acc.* when it means *into*. — ⁵ in der Ta'sche, in your pocket; der takes the place of an Eng. possessive, there being no doubt as to whose pocket is meant. So one says: ich habe es in der Ta'sche, I have it in my pocket. This use of der is most common with nouns denoting a part of the body, or of the clothing, or a near relative. — ⁶ Sehen Sie, do you see; German gets along without an auxiliary corresponding to our do. — ⁷ Lehrer, a teacher; a noun denoting vocation and standing alone in the predicate is used without ein. — ⁸ hat immer; note that the German says *has always* instead of *always has*. — ⁹ die Zeit, das Leben, not *the time*, *the life*, but simply *time*, *life*. Der is commonly used with any noun having a general or abstract sense (the so-called 'generic article'). Die Zeit might, however, mean *the time* if it referred to a particular time. — ¹⁰ Feder, Zeit; observe the cognates *feather*, *tide*. Cognates have regular correspondences of sound; e. g., Ger. d corresponds regularly to Eng. *th*, as in du = *thou*, and Ger. initial t to Eng. *t*, as in zwei = *two*. Let the learner discover other similar rules for himself. (See Appendix II.)

THE NOUN.

74. Variations of the Noun. The declension of a noun shows how it varies its form for case and number. The endings of declension are applied to the 'stem,' which for practical purposes may be regarded as identical with the nominative. The nominative never has a case-ending.

1. The plural of some nouns is further characterized by umlaut of the root-vowel, as in *Baum, tree*, but *Bäume, trees*. A few such umlauted plurals exist in modern English, as *foot-feet, mouse-mice*. In German they are far more numerous.

2. Nouns are divided into declensions with reference to their form and gender. It is of importance to remember the gender of every noun learned.

75. The Determination of Gender. The gender of a noun depends, first, upon its *meaning*. Names of males, of the seasons, months and days of the week are in general masculine. Names of females, flowers, trees and German rivers are mostly feminine, and names of metals and countries are mainly neuter. But these rules are not without exception.

1. If a noun has more than one syllable its gender can often be told with certainty from its *ending*. The most helpful rules of this kind will be given as they are needed.

2. In very many cases, however, particularly of monosyllables, the gender of a noun cannot be told either from its meaning or from its form, but must be learned from the dictionary.

3. Compound nouns have the gender of their final element; e. g., *der Fruchtgarten, the fruit-garden*; *die Gartenfrucht, the garden-fruit*. But there are a few exceptions to this rule.

4. Some words have two genders, sometimes with difference of meaning ; e. g., *das* or *der* *Büch*, *the desk* ; *der* *Thor*, *the fool* ; *das* *Thor*, *the gate*.

DECLENSION.

76. Systems of Declension. There are three declensions, the Strong, the Weak and the Mixed, the basis of classification being as follows :

1. A noun is of the Strong Declension if its genitive singular has the ending (e)s, or no ending at all, and its nominative plural is *not* formed by means of the ending (e)n.

2. A noun is of the Weak Declension if its genitive singular and its nominative plural are both formed by means of the ending (e)n.

3. A noun is of the Mixed Declension if its genitive singular has the ending (e)s and its nominative plural the ending (e)n.

77. General Rules. The following general rules, applicable to all declensions alike, will be helpful :

1. Feminine nouns do not vary in the singular.
2. The dative plural always ends in n.
3. The nominative and accusative singular of a **strong** noun are always alike.
4. The nominative, genitive and accusative plural of any noun are always alike.

78. Classes of Strong Nouns. Nouns of the strong declension are subdivided, with reference to the formation of the nominative plural, into three classes, the First Class having no ending in the nominative plural, the Second Class the ending e, and the Third Class the ending er.

FIRST CLASS, STRONG DECLENSION.

79. Membership. The first class embraces: (1) all masculine and neuter nouns ending in *el*, *en*, *er*, together with the two feminines *Mutter* and *Tochter*; (2) diminutives in *chen* and *lein*, which are always neuter; (3) neuter nouns having the prefix *ge* and the suffix *e*.

1. Some additional members of the first class, of less importance to remember, are mentioned in Part II, § 274. Note that the class contains, in general, no monosyllables, no words accented on the last syllable, and only two feminines.

80. The Singular Cases. The genitive singular adds *s* (never *es*) to the nominative; the other cases have no distinctive ending, but are like the nominative.

81. The Plural Cases. Most nouns of the first class have the nominative plural like the nominative singular, as *das Fenster, the window*, *die Fenster, the windows*; *der Bürger, the citizen*, *die Bürger, the citizens*. A certain few, however, modify the root-vowel, as *der Vater, the father*, *die Väter, the fathers*; *der Vogel, the bird*, *die Vögel, the birds*.

1. The nouns that have or may have umlaut as a plural-sign number nearly thirty. The list * embraces the most of the modifiable masculines, the two feminines *Mutter* and *Tochter*, and one neuter, viz., *Kloster, convent*.

2. The dative plural adds *n* unless the stem already ends in *n*; thus from *Vogel* the dative plural is *Vögeln*, but from *Mädchen, Mädchen*.

* For word-lists that are useful for reference, but do not need to be committed to memory, see Part II.

82. Examples.

1. Without plural-sign : Kasten, *box* ; Gebäude, *building* ;
Fräulein, *young lady*, *Miss*.

Singular.

Nom.	der Kasten	das Gebäude	das Fräulein
Gen.	des Kastens	des Gebäudes	des Fräuleins
Dat.	dem Kasten	dem Gebäude	dem Fräulein
Acc.	den Kasten	das Gebäude	das Fräulein

Plural.

Nom.	die Kasten	die Gebäude	die Fräulein
Gen.	der Kasten	der Gebäude	der Fräulein
Dat.	den Kasten	den Gebäuden	den Fräulein
Acc.	die Kasten	die Gebäude	die Fräulein

2. With umlaut as plural-sign : Vater, *father* ; Mutter,
mother ; Kloster, *convent*.

Singular.

Nom.	der Vater	die Mutter	das Kloster
Gen.	des Vaters	der Mutter	des Klosters
Dat.	dem Vater	der Mutter	dem Kloster
Acc.	den Vater	die Mutter	das Kloster

Plural.

Nom.	die Väter	die Mütter	die Klöster
Gen.	der Väter	der Mütter	der Klöster
Dat.	den Vätern	den Müttern	den Klöstern
Acc.	die Väter	die Mütter	die Klöster

EXERCISE V.**READING LESSON*: STRONG NOUNS, FIRST CLASS.**

Ich schreibe¹ diesmal² aus einem Dörfchen³ im Harzgebirge.⁴
Ich besuche⁵ hier einen Onkel, einen Bruder⁶ des Vaters.⁷ Die
Bewohner des Dörfchens sind meistens Arbeiter. Der Onkel ist

* From this point on the reading lessons will take, for the most part, the form of letters, or extracts from letters, which may be thought of as written by a German-American boy who goes to Germany for study and travel.

Schriftsteller⁹ und wohnt nur im Sommer hier. Das Leben der Dorfbewohner ist nicht sehr interessant. Ich gehe morgen nach⁹ Göttingen.¹⁰

VOCABULARY.

NOTE.—The abbreviation *s.* after a noun means 'strong'; *w.*, 'weak'; *mx.*, 'mixed.' The figure gives the class. If a noun has umlaut as plural-sign the fact will always be indicated. Thus *Bruder, m. s. 1 (pl. ü)*, is to be read: *Bruder*, masculine noun, strong declension, first class, plural *Brüder*.

Arbeiter, *m. s. 1*, working-man.

aus, *prep. (dat.)*, from, out of.
besuchen, *v.*, visit, [-seek, be-seech].

Bewohner, *m. s. 1*, inhabitant.

Bruder, *m. s. 1 (pl. ü)*, brother.

diesmal, *adv.*, this time, [-mole].

Dorfbewohner, *m. s. 1*, villager.

Dörfchen, *n. s. 1*, little village, [thorp-].

Gebirge, *n. s. 1*, mountains;

Harzgebirge, Harz Mts.

gehen, *v.*, go.

hier, *adv.*, here.

Leben, *n. s. 1*, life, [live].

meistens, *adv.*, most-ly.¹¹

Morgen, *m. s. 1*, morning; as
adv., morgen, to-morrow.

nach, *prep. (dat.)*, after, to, [nigh].

nicht, *adv.*, not, [naught].

nur, *adv.*, only, just.

Onkel, *m. s. 1*, uncle.

schreiben, *v.*, write, [shrive, scribe].

Schri'fts'te'ller, *m. s. 1*, writer, author.

sehr, *adv.*, very, [sore].

Sommer, *m. s. 1*, summer.

wohnen, *v.*, dwell, live.

NOTES.—¹ *Ich schreibe, I write.* The verb-form given in the vocabulary is always the infinitive, which generally ends in *en*. To get the stem of the present tense, drop the *en*; then add *e* to the stem for the 1. pers. sing., *t* for the 3. pers. sing., and *en* for the 1. or 3. pers. plu. Thus, *ich schreibe, I write*; *er schreibt, he writes*; *wir schreiben, we write*; *sie schreiben, they write*.—² *diesmal*; note the cognate of *mal*. The parent-word meant *spot, mark, birth-mark, thing to remember, or remember by*; hence, in German, *occasion, time*.—³ *Dörfchen*, diminutive of *Dorf, village*, which is cognate with *thorp*, now preserved in proper names only. Observe that the suffixes *chen* and *lein* when appended to a noun cause umlaut of the root-vowel. The suffix *chen* is cognate with *kin* in *lambkin*.—⁴ *Gebirge*, from *Berg, mountain*. The

prefix *ge* here denotes a number or mass taken together; hence 'collection of mountains,' 'mountain-range.'—⁵ *Ich besuche, I am visiting*; German has not the 'progressive' tense-forms of English, so that, e. g., *ich gehe* must be translated by *I go*, or by *I am going*, according to the connection.—⁶ *Bruder*, in apposition with *Onkel*, with which it must agree in case.—⁷ *des Vaters, my father* (Ex. IV, n. 5).—⁸ *Schriftsteller, a writer* (Ex. IV, n. 7).—⁹ *nach* translates Eng. *to* before names of places.—¹⁰ *Göttingen*, a well-known university town of north-central Germany. Proper names that are the same in English as in German will not be given in the vocabularies. The inflection of proper names is a subject by itself; they are not included in the three declensions.—¹¹ *most-ly*; this mode of printing means that the root *meist* is cognate with *most*, but that the ending *ens* is not cognate with *ly*.

EXERCISE VI.

COLLOQUY.*

I.

Wer ist das Fräulein im Garten dort?
 Das ist Fräulein Bertha,¹ die Tochter des Gärtners.
 Und das Mädchen da am Fenster des Häuschens — wer ist sie?
 Sie ist auch eine Tochter des Gärtners; er hat zwei Töchter.
 Kennen Sie² die Mutter der Mädchen?
 Nur ein wenig; aber ich kenne den Vater sehr gut.

II.

Who lives in the cottage yonder?
 That is the gardener's cottage.
 And who are the young ladies at the window?
 They are³ the gardener's daughters.⁴
 Do you know the girls?
 Only a little; but I know the father and mother⁵
 very well.⁶

* The 'colloquies' are divided, in each case, into two parts. The first, or German-English part, will serve first as a reading lesson in colloquial German. After it has been read and translated, it should be committed to memory and repeated frequently until the German forms of expression come fluently from the tongue. The second part is to be put into German.

VOCABULARY.

an, <i>prep.</i> (<i>dat. and acc.</i>), ¹ on, by, at.	Häuschen, <i>n. s. 1</i> , little house, cottage.
auch, <i>adv.</i> , also, too, [eke].	kennen, <i>v.</i> , know, [ken].
das, <i>pron. (dem.)</i> , that.	Mädchen, <i>n. s. 1</i> , girl, maid-en.
dort, <i>adv.</i> , yonder, there.	Sie, <i>pron.</i> , you ; <i>fie</i> , she, they.
Fenster, <i>n. s. 1</i> , window.	Tochter, <i>f. s. 1 (pl. ö)</i> , daughter.
Garten, <i>m. s. 1 (pl. ä)</i> , garden.	wenig, <i>adj.</i> , little ; ein wenig, a little.
Gärtner, <i>m. s. 1</i> , gardener.	wer, <i>pron. (inter.)</i> , who.
gut, <i>adj.</i> , good ; <i>as adv.</i> , well.	zwei, <i>num.</i> , two.

NOTES.—¹ *Fräulein Bertha*, *Fräulein Bertha*, rather than *Miss Bertha*. Pronounce *Bertha* without slurring the *a* (see also § 16, 1).—² *Kennen Sie*, *do you know* (lit., *know you*). *Sie* is used for *you* in speaking to any one who is not a relative nor a very intimate friend. It takes its verb in the 3. pers. pl. Notice, therefore : *Sie kennen*, *you know* ; *fie kennen*, *they know* ; *fie kennt*, *she knows*.—³ *They are*, *fie sind*, or, better, *das sind*, *those are*. *Das*, though neut. sing., can be used without reference to the gender or number of the predicate noun.—⁴ *the gardener's daughters* ; either *des Gärtners Töchter*, or *die Töchter des Gärtners*, or, making a compound, *die Gärtnerstöchter*, but not *die Gärtners Töchter*. So above, *the gardner's cottage* = *des Gärtners Häuschen*, or *das Häuschen des Gärtners*, but never *das Gärtners Häuschen*.—⁵ *the father and mother* ; *der* must be repeated (see Ex. IV, n. 3).—⁶ *very well*, *sehr gut*, not *sehr wohl*.—⁷ *an* ; when a *prep.* is given as governing both *dat.* and *acc.*, that does not mean that either case can be used at pleasure. The *dat.* is used in answer to the question 'where' ? and the *acc.* in answer to the question 'whither' ?

SECOND CLASS, STRONG DECLENSION.

83. Membership. The second class embraces : (1) a very large number of monosyllabic nouns, mainly masculine, but with a few feminines and some neuters ; (2) nouns ending in *at*, *ig*, *ing*, *ling*, *nis*, *jal*, and some other not very common suffixes.

1. The phrase 'monosyllabic nouns' must be understood to include compounds in which the final element

would belong to this class if uncompounded ; e. g., *Zufall*, *accident*, and *Vo'rstadt*, *suburb*, as well as *Fall*, *case*, and *Stadt*, *city*.

2. Nouns in *ig* and *ling* are masculine ; those in *nis* and *sal* are mainly neuter, but a few are feminine.

3. This class is, then, pre-eminently the class of monosyllabic masculines.

84. The Genitive and Dative Singular. The genitive has the ending *es* or *s* ; the dative the ending *e* or no ending at all.

1. The ending *es* is used regularly with monosyllables, but *may* always be reduced to simple *s* unless the stem ends in an *s*-sound (*s*, *ß*, *z*, *tz*, *sch*) ; thus *Baum*, *tree*, has usually *Baumes*, but very often *Baums*, while *Fluß*, *river*, always has *Flusses*. The ending *s* belongs regularly to polysyllables that do not end in an *s*-sound ; thus *König*, *king*, *Jüngling*, *youth*, have *Königs*, *Jünglings*.

2. The use of *e* in the dative is largely optional, being dependent on habit or the sense of euphony. In general, monosyllables are apt to have it, polysyllables to be without it.

85. Formation of the Plural. The nominative plural always has the ending *e*, with umlaut of the root-vowel in some words, without it in others. The dative plural adds *n* to the nominative plural.

1. Of the monosyllabic nouns all of the feminines and the most of the masculines, but only three or four of the neuters, have umlaut in the plural.

a. Nouns having *aa* or *oo* in the stem drop one vowel when they undergo umlaut, as *Eaaf*, *hall*, pl. *Eäle* ; *Boot*, *boat*, pl. *Boote* or *Böte*.

2. Nouns in *nis* double the *s* in inflection ; e. g., *Bündnis*, *covenant*, gen. *Bündnisses*, pl. *Bündnisse*.

86. Examples.

1. Without umlaut in the plural: Tag, *day*; Monat, *month*; Jahr, *year*.

Singular.

Nom.	der Tag	der Monat	das Jahr
Gen.	des Tages	des Monats	des Jahres
Dat.	dem Tage	dem Monat	dem Jahre
Acc.	den Tag	den Monat	das Jahr

Plural.

Nom.	die Tage	die Monate	die Jahre
Gen.	der Tage	der Monate	der Jahre
Dat.	den Tagen	den Monaten	den Jahren
Acc.	die Tage	die Monate	die Jahre

a. So, also, das Bündnis, *covenant*, gen. sing. des Bündnisses, nom. pl. die Bündnisse; die Wildnis, *wilderness*, gen. sing. der Wildnis (§ 77, 1), nom. pl. die Wildnisse; das or die Trübsal, *affliction*, gen. of das Trübsal, des Trübsals, gen. of die Trübsal, der Trübsal, nom. pl. of either, die Trübsale.

2. With umlaut in the plural: Baum, *tree*; Nacht, *night*; Chor, *choir*.

Singular.

Nom.	der Baum	die Nacht	das Chor
Gen.	des Baumes	der Nacht	des Chores
Dat.	dem Baume	der Nacht	dem Chore
Acc.	den Baum	die Nacht	das Chor

Plural.

Nom.	die Bäume	die Nächte	die Chöre
Gen.	der Bäume	der Nächte	der Chöre
Dat.	den Bäumen	den Nächten	den Chören
Acc.	die Bäume	die Nächte	die Chöre

EXERCISE VII.

87. Rule of Order I: The Inverted Order. If a sentence begins with any other element than the subject, the subject must follow the verb; e. g., *da ist er, there he is*; *daß verstehe ich nicht, that I do not understand*; *schön ist sie nicht, beautiful she is not*.

1. This order, verb-subject, is called 'inverted,' the 'normal' order being subject-verb, as in *er ist da*; *ich verstehe das nicht*.

2. Inversion occurs in English, e. g., in *said I, great is Mammon*; but while it is somewhat rare in English, it is exceedingly common in German. German tends to begin the sentence with that element which is most prominent in the speaker's thought; and when this is done and the word so put first does not happen to be the subject, inversion must follow. In translating do not imitate the German inverted order at the expense of English idiom.

3. The general connectives meaning *and*, *but* and *for* constitute an important exception to the above rule. They do not affect the order.

READING LESSON: STRONG NOUNS, SECOND CLASS.

Ich bin¹ nun zwei Tage² in Göttingen. Ich habe ein Zimmer mit einem Ofen, einem Tische und ein paar³ Stühlen. Durchs Fenster sieht⁴ man einen Park mit allerlei Bäumen. Die Stadt liegt an⁵ einem Flusse. Auf⁶ dem Flusse sieht man heute ein paar Rähne.⁶ Wir sind am Anfang des Herbstes, aber die Luft ist noch immer⁷ warm.

VOCABULARY.

allerlei¹, *adj.*, all sorts of.

Anfa'ng, *m. s. 2 (pl. ä)*, beginning.

auf, *prep. (dat. and acc.)*, on, up-on.

durch, *prep. (acc.)*, through.

Fluß, *m. s. 2 (pl. -üsse)*, river.

Herbst, *m. s. 2*, autumn, [harvest].

heute, *adv.*, to-day.

Rahn, *m. s. 2 (pl. ä)*, boat, row-boat.

liegen, *v.*, lie, be situated.
 Luft, *f.* s. 2 (*pl.* ü), air.
 man, *pron. (indef.)*, one, [man].
 mit, *prep. (dat.)*, with.
 noch, *adv.*, yet, still.
 nun, *adv.*, now, well.
 Ofen, *m.* s. 1 (*pl.* ö), stove,
 [oven].
 Paar, *n.* s. 2, pair: ein paar,
 a few.

Park, *m.* s. 2, park.
 Stadt, *f.* s. 2 (*pl.* ä), city.
 Stuhl, *m.* s. 2 (*pl.* ü), chair,
 [stool].
 Tisch, *m.* s. 2, table, [dish].
 warm, *adj.*, warm.
 Zimmer, *n.* s. 1, room,
 [timber]

NOTES.—¹ Ich bin; translate *I have been*. Ger. uses a pres., generally with an adverb referring to present time, to denote that which has been and still is. In such a case Eng. uses the perf. —² Tage, acc. of measure; duration of time is expressed by the acc.—³ ein paar; §§ 4, 1, a and 73, 1.—⁴ sieht, sees; from sehen, which changes its root-vowel in the 2. and 3. pers. sing.—⁵ an, auf; both these words mean on, auf in the sense of over and upon, and an in that of close to. Thus a boat is an f dem Flusse, a city an dem Flusse (on the spelling Fluß-Flusse, as compared with Fuß-Fuße, see § 2, 3).—⁶ Rähne, row-boats; not cognate with canoe, which is a Spanish-Indian word.—⁷ noch immer; the two words together mean still, even now; said of that which has been and still is.

EXERCISE VIII.

COLLOQUY.

I.

Der Park ist schön am Abend,¹ nicht wahr?²

Ja wohl³; setzen wir uns⁴ einen Augenblick.⁵ Es ist eine Bank unter dem Baume dort.

Schon gut⁶; aber gehen Sie nicht noch heute abend⁷ ins Konzert?⁸

Wohl nicht⁹; die Plätze sind zu teuer. Am Schlusse¹⁰ des Monats bin ich immer arm.

Das ist also¹¹ das Hindernis! Nun, zum Glück¹² habe ich zwei Billette.¹³ Kommen Sie nur mit.¹⁴

II.

It is lovely in the park to-night, isn't it?

Yes indeed; let us sit down a moment. There are chairs yonder.

Very well¹⁵; but only a moment. I am going to the concert yet this evening.¹⁶

Have you a seat already?¹⁷

Yes, I have two tickets. Pray come along.

VOCABULARY.

Abend, *m. s. 2*, even-ing.
also, *adv.*, so, then, [also].
arm, *adj.*, poor.
Au'genbli'ck, *m. s. 2*, moment.
Bank, *f. s. 2* (*pl. ä*), bench.
Bille't, *n. s. 2* (*pl. -tte*), ticket.
es, *pron.*, it, there.
Glück, *n. s.* (*no plural*), luck,
fortune.
Hi'nderniß, *n. s. 2*, hindr-ance,
difficulty.
ja, *adv.*, yes.
kommen, *v.*, come.
Konzert, *n. s. 2*, concert.

Platz, *m. s. 2* (*pl. ä*), place,
seat.
Schluß, *m. s. 2* (*pl. ü*), end,
close.
schon, *adv.*, already, quite.
schön, *adj.*, beautiful, lovely,
[sheen].
setzen; *v.*, set, seat.
teuer, *adj.*, dear, expensive.
uns, *pron.*, us, ourselves.
unter, *prep.* (*dat. and acc.*),
under, among.
wahr, *adj.*, true.
zu, *prep.* (*dat.*), to, at, for;
as *adv.*, too.

NOTES.—¹ am Abend, in the evening; so, also, am Tage, in the day-time.—² nicht wahr, isn't it? for ist es nicht wahr, is it not true? A very common phrase implying that an affirmative answer is expected.—³ Ja wohl, yes indeed; wohl is often added to break the abruptness of a simple ja.—⁴ setzen wir uns, let us sit down; literally, seat we us. The verb is a subjunctive, 1. pers. pl., best translated by let.—⁵ Augenblick, acc. of measure.—⁶ Schon gut, all right, very well; an idiomatic phrase that cannot be translated literally.—⁷ heute abend, this evening, to-night.—⁸ ins Konzert, to the concert; note the preposition and the case (Ex. VI, n. 7).—⁹ Wohl nicht, probably not; the wohl implying uncertainty.—¹⁰ Schluß, what is the quantity of the u?—¹¹ Das ist also, so that is; remember that also never means also.—¹² zum Glück, luckily; literally, for luck. Glück is for Ge-lück; it is only -lück that is cognate with luck.—¹³ Billette; t doubled to mark the preceding vowel as short (§ 14, 2, and 34, 1, a). Pronounce Bil-yét-e.—¹⁴ Kommen Sie nur mit, pray come along. The verb is imperative, 2. pers. pl. With this form of address Sie cannot be omitted as you is in English. Nur with an imperative means just or pray.—¹⁵ Very well, not sehr wohl, nor sehr gut (see note 6 above).—¹⁶ I am going, etc. The order is: I go yet this evening to, etc.—¹⁷ already; the order: Have you already, etc.

THIRD CLASS, STRONG DECLENSION.

88. Membership. The third class embraces: (1) a large number of monosyllabic nouns, mainly neuter, but with a few masculines; (2) all nouns in *tum*; (3) a few neuters of foreign origin with accent on the ultima; e. g., *Spita'l*, *hospital*, pl. *Spitä'ler*.

1. Note that this class contains no feminines. It is pre-eminently the class of monosyllabic neuters.

2. Nouns in *tum* (cognate with *dom* in *kingdom*) are, with two or three exceptions, neuter.

89. The Genitive and Dative Singular. The genitive has the ending *es* or *s*, the dative the ending *e* or no ending at all, precisely as in the second class.

90. Formation of the Plural. The nominative plural always has the ending *er*, to which the dative adds *n*. The vowel preceding *er* always has umlaut, if capable of it, nouns in *tum* making the plural in *tümer*.

1. A number of nouns belong both to the third and to the second class, having two plurals, one in *er*, the other in *e*, usually with difference of meaning; thus *Band*, n., means either *bond* or *ribbon*, but in the plural *Bände* means *bonds*, while *Bänder* means *ribbons*.

91. Examples. *Mann*, *man*; *Haus*, *house*; *Altertum*, *antiquity*.

Singular.

Nom.	der Mann	das Haus	das Altertum
Gen.	des Mannes	des Hauses	des Altertums
Dat.	dem Manne	dem Hause	dem Altertum
Acc.	den Mann	das Haus	das Altertum

Plural.

Nom.	die Männer	die Häuser	die Altertümer
Gen.	der Männer	der Häuser	der Altertümer
Dat.	den Männern	den Häusern	den Altertümern
Acc.	die Männer	die Häuser	die Altertümer

EXERCISE IX.

READING LESSON : STRONG NOUNS, THIRD CLASS.

Die Leute hier im Hause¹ sind sehr freundlich. Der Wirt ist Kaufmann² und ein Mann von Geist und Gemüth. Also ist er natürlich ein Freund von Büchern³ und Bildern. Er hat zwei Kinder, einen Sohn und eine Tochter. Ich war⁴ gestern mit den Kindern auf dem Lande⁵ und besuchte⁶ das Schloß eines Edelmanns. Vom Turme des Schlosses sieht man über Thäler und Wälder⁷ bis ans Gebirge.

VOCABULARY.

NOTE.—Since *all* nouns of the third class have umlaut in the plural, if possible, the modification of the vowel does not need to be specially indicated for words of that class.

Bild, *n. s. 3*, picture.
 bis, *prep. (acc.)*, up to, until ;
 bis an, clear to, as far as.
 Buch, *n. s. 3*, book.
 Edelmann, *m. s. 3*, noble-man.
 Freund, *m. s. 2*, friend.
 freundlich, *adj.*, friendly, kind.
 Geist, *m. s. 3*, intelligence,
 spirit, ghost.
 Gemüth, *n. s. 3*, feeling, soul.
 gestern, *adv.*, yester-day.
 Kaufmann, *m. s. 3*, merchant ;
 [chapman].
 Kind, *n. s. 3*, child.

Land, *n. s. 2-3*, land, country.
 Leute, *pl. only*, people.
 natürlich, *adv.*, naturally, of
 course.
 Schloß, *n. s. 3*, castle.
 Sohn, *m. s. 2 (pl. 3)*, son.
 Thal, *n. s. 3*, valley, dale.
 Turm, *m. s. 2 (pl. 4)*, tower.
 über, *prep. (acc. and dat.)*,
 over, about.
 von, *prep. (dat.)*, from, of.
 Wald, *m. s. 3*, forest, [wold].
 Wirt, *m. s. 2*, landlord, man-
 of-the-house.

NOTES.—¹ Im Hause, in the house ; at home = zu Hause.—² Kaufmann ; this and some other compounds of Mann have two plurals, one in -männer, the other in -leute, the latter being without reference to sex ; thus Kaufmänner, merchants, tradesmen ; Kaufleute, tradespeople.—³ von Büchern, of books ; von with a dat. may take the place of a gen., ein Freund von Büchern being = ein Freund der Bücher. One could not say ein Freund Bücher.—⁴ war, was ; preterite 1. and 3. pers. sing. of sein, to be.—⁵ auf dem Lande, in the country, as opposed to in

the city. Im Lande means *in the country* taken as a whole, including the cities.—⁶ *befuchte*, *visited*; pret. 1. and 3. pers. sing. of *befuchen*. —⁷ *über Thäler und Wälder*; *über* takes the acc. here because the phrase answers the question 'whither'? (see Ex. VI, n. 7).—⁸ *Land*; the usual plural of *Land* is *Länder*; *Land* is poetic, or used in compounds, as *die Niederlande*, *the Netherlands*.

EXERCISE X.

COLLOQUY.

I.

Wie spät ist es wohl?¹ Gehen wir nicht bald nach Hause?²
 Es ist wohl³ ziemlich spät; ich sehe schon Lichter in der Stadt dort.
 Ja, es wird⁴ schon dunkel und der Weg⁵ durch den Wald ist ziemlich lang.
 Also gehen wir quer durch die Felder.
 Schon gut; aber was ist das Ding dort am Rande des Holzes?⁶
 Ich weiß nicht; ein Gespenst vielleicht.
 Da bist du wohl im Irrtum; für die Geister ist es noch zu früh am Abend.

II.

Let us go¹ home; it is getting late.
 Yes, there is a light in the little house yonder already.²
 It is pretty dark in the woods; do you know³ the way?
 Not very well⁴; let us go across through the field.
 Very well; but what is that thing yonder among⁵ the leaves?
 I do not know; perhaps it is a spook.
 It is pretty early in the evening for spooks, isn't it?

VOCABULARY.

bald, *adv.*, soon, [*bold*].
 Blatt, *n. s. 3*, leaf, [*blade*].
 Ding, *n. s. 2*, thing.
 dunkel, *adj.*, dark.

Feld, *n. s. 3*, field.
 früh, *adv.*, early.
 für, *prep. (acc.)*, for.
 Gespe'nt, *n. s. 3*, ghost, spook.

Folz, *n. s. 3*, wood, forest.
Irrtum, *m. s. 3*, error.
Licht, *n. s. 3*, light.
quer, *adv.*, across.
Rand, *m. s. 3*, edge, border.
spät, *adv.*, late.
viellei'cht, *adv.*, perhaps.
was, *pron. (inter.)*, what.

Weg, *m. s. 2*, way.
werden, *v.*, become ; **es wird**,
 it is becoming.
wie, *adv.*, how, as, [**why**].
wissen, *v.*, know ; **ich weiß**, I
 know, [**to wit**].
ziemlich, *adv.*, pretty, toler-
 ably.

NOTES.—¹ **wohl**, *I wonder*.—² **nach Hause**, *home*.—³ **wohl**, *probably, no doubt, I presume, I reckon, I guess*.—⁴ **es wird**, *it is getting* ; 3. pers. sing. pres. of **werden**, which is cognate with the verb *worth* in *woe worth the day* ; i. e., *woe come unto the day*.—⁵ **Weg** ; pronounce with long *e* ; but there is an adverb *weg*, *away*, which has short *e*.—⁶ **Folz** here = *Wald*, *woods*. The more common sense is *wood*, as a material.—⁷ **Let us go**, *gehen wir* (see Ex. VIII, n. 4).—⁸ **already**, *schon* ; directly after *ist*.—⁹ **do you know**, *weißt du* ; the use of *du* in this exercise, instead of *Sie*, presupposes that the speakers are very intimate friends.—¹⁰ **Not very well**, *nicht sehr gut* ; but in the next sentence *very well* = *schon gut*.—¹¹ **among**, *unter*, *with dat.*

THE WEAK DECLENSION.

92. Membership. The weak declension embraces : (1) a considerable number of monosyllabic nouns, mainly feminine, but with a few masculines ; (2) nearly all the polysyllabic feminines in the language ; (3) masculines that end in *e* ; (4) many foreign masculines that have the accent on the ultima.

1. There are no neuter nouns of the weak declension. While it contains a good many masculines, it is chiefly made up of polysyllabic feminines, the only nouns of the latter class that do not belong to it being *Mutter*, *Tochter*, and a few in *niß*, *sal* and *funft*.

93. A Rule of Gender. The suffixes *ci*, *heit*, *feit*, *in*, *igkajt* and *ung* invariably form feminine nouns.

1. This rule covers a very large number of words. The ending *heit*, cognate with *hood* in *manhood*, forms a multitude of abstracts from adjectives, as *Freiheit*, *freedom*, *from*

frei, *free*; feit has a similar function; in forms feminines that correspond to masculines, as König, *king*, Königin, *queen*; ſchaft is cognate with *ship* in *friendship* = Freundſchaft, and ung with *ing* in *warning* = Warnung.

2. The foreign suffixes ie, if and ion also form feminine nouns.

94. Formation of the Cases. Masculines add (e)n to the nominative singular to form all the other cases, singular and plural. Feminines add (e)n throughout the plural.

1. The case-ending is n if the noun ends in e, el, er or ar, otherwise it is en. But Herr, *gentleman*, *sir*, generally has in the singular Herrn, in the plural Herren.

2. Feminines in in have the plural in innen.

3. No weak noun takes umlaut as a plural-sign.

95. Examples. Menſch, *man*, *mankind*; Knabe, *boy*; Frau, *wife*, *Mrs.*; Blume, *flower*.

Singular.

N.	der Menſch	der Knabe	die Frau	die Blume
G.	des Menſchen	des Knaben	der Frau	der Blume
D.	dem Menſchen	dem Knaben	der Frau	der Blume
A.	den Menſchen	den Knaben	die Frau	die Blume

Plural.

N.	die Menſchen	die Knaben	die Frauen	die Blumen
G.	der Menſchen	der Knaben	der Frauen	der Blumen
D.	den Menſchen	den Knaben	den Frauen	den Blumen
A.	die Menſchen	die Knaben	die Frauen	die Blumen

1. So also der Stude'nt, *the student*; gen. des Studenten, dat. dem Studenten, acc. den Studenten, pl., in all cases, Studenten.

EXERCISE XI.

READING LESSON : WEAK NOUNS.

96. Rule of Order II: Position of Adverbs. In the normal order an adverb must not come between the subject and the verb; thus *I hardly know*, ich weiß kaum; *he never goes to church*, er geht nie in die Kirche.

1. An adverb of time usually takes precedence of other adverbs; thus *I knew him very well at that time*, ich kannte ihn damals sehr gut; *he is usually at home evenings*, er ist abends gewöhnlich zu Hause.

Ich bin¹ schon zehn Wochen in der Fremde,² und die Zeit vergeht mir sehr schnell unter der Arbeit.³ Ich habe täglich eine Sprachstunde⁴ und zwei Stunden wöchentlich in der Musik. Für die Sprache habe ich einen Lehrer, für die Musik eine Lehrerin.⁵ Über die Familie,⁶ besonders über den Hausherrn⁷ und die Kinder, schrieb⁸ ich neulich ein paar Zeilen. Die Frau Wirtin⁹ ist eine Weltdame¹⁰ und geht viel in Gesellschaft.

VOCABULARY.

Arbeit, *f. w.*, work.
 besonders, *adv.*, especially.
 Dame, *f. w.*, lady, *dame*.
 Fami'lie, *f. w.*, family.
 Fremde, *f. w.*, foreign land.
 Gesellschaft, *f. w.*, society.
 Lehrer, *m. s. 1*, teacher.
 mir, *pron. (dat.)*, to me, for me.
 Musi'k, *f. w.*, music.
 neulich, *adv.*, lately, [newly].
 o, *interj.*, O, oh.
 schnell, *adj.*, swift; *as adv.*,
 swiftly.

Sprache, *f. w.*, language.
 Stunde, *f. w.*, hour, lesson.
 täglich, *adj., adv.*, daily.
 verge'hen, *v.*, pass, [for(e)go].
 viel, *pron., adj., adv.*, much.
 Welt, *f. w.*, world.
 Woche, *f. w.*, week.
 wöchentlich, *adv.*, weekly.
 zehn, *num.*, ten.
 Zeile, *f. w.*, line.
 Zeit, *f. w.*, time, [tide].

NOTES.—¹ Ich bin (schon), *I have been* (see Ex. VII, n. 1).—² in der Fremde, *abroad*.—³ unter der Arbeit, *at work, occupied as I am with work*.—⁴ Sprachstunde, *language-lesson*; a compound of Sprache (with *e* dropped) and Stunde.—⁵ Le'hre'ri'n, *woman teacher*, Lehrer being

always a *man teacher*.—⁶ *Familie*; pronounce Fa-mi'-li-e (§ 17, 2); über in the sense of *concerning, about*, always takes the acc.—⁷ *Haus-herrn*, *man-of-the-house*.—⁸ *schrieb ich*, *I wrote*; inverted because an adverbial phrase precedes. The verb is pret. 1. pers. sing. of *schreiben*, *to write*.—⁹ *die Frau Birnin*, *my landlady*; Herr and Frau often precede titles for courtesy's sake. When thus used they should not be translated.—¹⁰ *Weltbame*, *woman of the world*, i. e., *of fashion*.

EXERCISE XII.

COLLOQUY.

I.

Run, was giebt es in der Zeitung?
 Nicht viel; nur eine Menge¹ Kleinigkeiten.
 Es ist² doch wohl etwas darin über³ Politik, über die Wahlen.
 Sehr wenig; aber die Nachrichten deuten auf einen Sieg für die Demokraten.

Reimen Sie in der Nation überhaupt, oder nur in der Stadt?
 Ich meine in der Nation; aber die Sache ist noch nicht gewiß.
 Wie groß ist die Mehrheit der Demokraten hier in der Stadt?
 Sie haben eine Mehrheit von etwa zweihundert Stimmen.

II.

I see you have a paper. How is⁴ the election going?
 The evening papers⁵ have not much about politics.
 But they surely know⁶ the vote of the city, do they not?

Oh yes; luck⁷ is on the side⁸ of the Democrats.
 How large is the majority?

According⁹ to the papers they have a majority of about two hundred votes.

VOCABULARY.

darin, *adv.*, therein, in it.
 Demokra't, *m. w.*, democrat.
 deuten (auf), *v.*, point (to).
 doch, *adv.*, yet, still, though.
 etwa, *adv.*, about, approximately.

etwas, *pron. (indef.)*, something.
 geben, *v.*, give; es giebt (*with acc.*), there is, there are.
 gewiß, *adj.*, certain; as *adv.*, certainly, to be sure.

groß, <i>adj.</i> , great.	Ratio'n, <i>f. w.</i> , nation.
hundert, <i>num.</i> , hundred.	Politi'k, <i>f. w.</i> , politics.
Kleinigkeit, <i>f. w.</i> , trifle, small matter, triviality.	Sache, <i>f. w.</i> , affair, thing, [sake].
Mehrheit, <i>f. w.</i> , majority, [more-hood. i. e., moreness].	Seite, <i>f. w.</i> , side.
meinen, <i>v.</i> , mean.	Sieg, <i>m. s. 2</i> , victory.
Menge, <i>f. w.</i> , mass, multitude.	Stimme, <i>f. w.</i> , voice, vote.
Nachricht, <i>f. w.</i> , report, news, tidings.	überhau'pt, <i>adv.</i> , in general, at large, [over-head].
	Wahl, <i>f. w.</i> , choice, election.
	Zeitung, <i>f. w.</i> , newspaper, [tiding].

NOTES. — ¹ Menge Kleinigkeiten, mass of trifles; notice the absence of a prep. — ² Es ist doch wohl etwas, there is surely something; doch wohl, surely, doch emphasizing the probability implied by wohl. — ³ über Politik, on (about) politics. Observe that the English plurals in -ics, e. g., politics, physics, mathematics, are not plural in German. — ⁴ Is . . . going, geht (see Ex. V, n. 5). — ⁵ evening paper, Abendzeitung. — ⁶ They surely know . . . do they not, man weiß doch wohl . . . nicht wahr? — ⁷ luck, das Glück. — ⁸ on the side, auf der Seite. — ⁹ According to, nach, with dat.

THE MIXED DECLENSION.

97. Membership. The mixed declension comprises a number of masculine and neuter nouns (no feminines) that inflect the singular after the manner of the strong declension, but the plural after the manner of the weak. To it belong:

1. A small group of words having no common characteristic of form and represented below by der Staat and das Auge.

2. Nine or ten masculines in e which add ns for the genitive singular and n for all other cases.

a. The ending ens appears also in the genitive of Herz, n., heart, the real stem being Herzen; the inflection runs: nom. and acc. Herz, gen. Herzens, dat. Herzen, pl. Herzen.

3. Latin nouns in unaccented *or*, with plural in *o'ren*.

4. A number of Latin and Greek neuters which make the plural in *en*, or *ien* if the Latin plural ended in *ia*.

98. **Examples.** Staat, *state*: Name, *name*: Doktor *doctor*; Auge, *eye*: Drama, *drama*: Studium, *study*.

Singular.

Nom.	der Staat	der Name	der Doktor
Gen.	des Staates	des Namens	des Doktors
Dat.	dem Staate	dem Namen	dem Doktor
Acc.	den Staat	den Namen	den Doktor

Plural.

Nom.	die Staaten	die Namen	die Doktoren
Gen.	der Staaten	der Namen	der Doktoren
Dat.	den Staaten	den Namen	den Doktoren
Acc.	die Staaten	die Namen	die Doktoren

Singular.

Nom.	das Auge	das Drama	das Studium
Gen.	des Auges	des Dramas	des Studiums
Dat.	dem Auge	dem Drama	dem Studium
Acc.	das Auge	das Drama	das Studium

Plural.

Nom.	die Augen	die Dramen	die Studien
Gen.	der Augen	der Dramen	der Studien
Dat.	den Augen	den Dramen	den Studien
Acc.	die Augen	die Dramen	die Studien

EXERCISE XIII.

READING LESSON: NOUNS OF THE MIXED DECLENSION.

Von Tag zu Tag¹ mache ich allerlei Bekanntschaften unter den Nachbarn. Gestern abend war ich zu Tische² bei einem Herrn Namens Schmidt, einem Vetter meiner³ Wirtin. Herr Schmidt ist Doktor⁴ der Philosophie und Professor an⁵ der Universität.

Die Gesellschaft bestand aus lauter Doktoren, Professoren und Studenten. Man redete⁶ viel von Büchern und Studien, aber auch von Angelegenheiten des Staates. Das Interesse für Politik⁷ ist jetzt sehr lebhaft. Wir leben noch im Frieden, aber vielleicht ist die Zeit des Friedens beinahe zu Ende.

VOCABULARY.

Angele'genhei't, <i>f. w.</i> , affair.	jetzt, <i>adv.</i> , now.
bei, <i>prep. (dat.)</i> , by, at, at the house of.	lauter, <i>adj.</i> , exclusively, none but.
beina'he, <i>adv.</i> , almost, [by-nigh].	leben, <i>v.</i> , live.
Beka'nntschaft, <i>f. w.</i> , acquaintance.	lebhaft, <i>adj.</i> , live-ly.
bestehen, <i>v.</i> , consist; <i>pret.</i> , bestand.	machen, <i>v.</i> , make.
Ende, <i>n. m.</i> (<i>gen. -s</i>), end.	mein, <i>pron. (poss.)</i> , my.
Friede, <i>m. m.</i> (<i>gen. -ns</i>), peace.	Nachbar, <i>m. m.</i> , neighbor.
Interesse, <i>n. m.</i> (<i>gen. -s</i>), interest.	Philosophie', <i>f. w.</i> , philosophy.
	Profe'ssor, <i>m. m.</i> , professor.
	reden, <i>v.</i> , talk; <i>pret.</i> , redete.
	Universität, <i>f. w.</i> , university.
	Vetter, <i>m. m.</i> , cousin.

NOTES.—¹ Von Tag zu Tag; in this phrase the *e* of the *dat.* is very often omitted.—² zu Tische, at table; i. e., in this case, at supper.—³ meiner Wirtin, of my landlady; *mein* is declined in the singular like *ein*.—⁴ Doktor; see Ex. IV, n. 7.—⁵ an; observe the preposition; one is a professor *an* einer Universität, but a student *auf* einer Universität.—⁶ man redete viel, they talked much, there was much talk.—⁷ für Politik, in politics.

EXERCISE XIV.

COLLOQUY.

I.

Ist Herr Doktor¹ Schmidt zu Hause?

Ja wohl; aber er liegt noch im Bette. Was wünschen Sie?

Ich komme wegen eines Augenleidens.²

Aber mein Vater ist kein Arzt; er hat nichts mit Augenkrankheiten zu thun.³

Wirklich? Er hat doch den Titel eines Doktors.

Richtig, aber er ist Doktor der Philosophie.

Hat er vielleicht einen Bruder oder einen Namensvetter⁴ in der Stadt?

Ja, freilich; es giebt einen Arzt Namens Schmidt. Er ist ein Vetter des Vaters.

II.

Is this the residence of Professor⁵ Schmidt?

Yes, but he is not at home; he is away on business⁶ of state.

You are perhaps the professor's son?

Yes; do you wish something from father's? You are a student, I presume.⁷

No, I am errand-boy in the museum.

I see now; you have something for father from the director of the museum.

Correct; the box here contains a quantity⁸ of minerals and fossils.

VOCABULARY.

Arzt, *m. s. 2* (*pl. ä*), physician.

Bett, *n. m.*, bed.

dies, *pron. (dem.)*, this.

Director, *m. m.*, director.

enthalten, *v.*, contain; enthält, contains, [*-hold*].

fort, *adv.*, away.

Fossil, *n. m.* (*pl. ien*), fossil.

freilich, *adv.*, to be sure.

Geschäft, *n. s. 2*, business.

kein, *adj.*, no, not a, none.

Krankheit, *f. w.*, sickness, disease.

Laufrichter, *m. w.*, errand-boy.

Leiden, *n. s. 1*, suffering, trouble, [*loathe*].

Mineral, *n. m.* (*pl. ien*), mineral.

Museum, *n. m.* (*pl. en*), museum.

kein, *adv.*, no, [*none*].

nichts, *pron.*, nothing.

richtig, *adj.*, right, correct.

thun, *v.*, do.

Titel, *m. s. 1*, title.

wegen, *prep. (gen.)*, on account of.

wirklich, *adv.*, really.

Wohnung, *f. w.*, dwelling, residence.

wünschen, *v.*, wish.

NOTES. — ¹ *Herr Doktor*; translate simply *doctor* (Ex. XI, n. 9). — ² *Augenleiden*, *eye-trouble, trouble with (my) eyes*. — ³ *zu thun*, *to do*. A dependent infinitive usually comes at the end of the sentence; see § 187. — ⁴ *Namensbrüder*, *namesake*, in the sense of 'one having the same name.' — ⁵ *of Professor*, *von Herrn Professor*. — ⁶ *on business of state*, *in Geschäften des Staats* or *in Staatsgeschäften*. — ⁷ *from father*, *vom Vater* (Ex. IV, n. 5). — ⁸ *are a student, I presume*, *sind wohl Student*. — ⁹ *a quantity of*, *eine Menge* (without prep.).

DECLENSION OF PROPER NAMES.

99. Names of Persons. Names of persons have, in general, no inflection except in the genitive singular; in all other cases the form remains the same, the article being used, if necessary, for the sake of clearness; e. g., *ich lese (den) Schiller*, *I am reading Schiller*; *im Lande der Mozart und der Wagner*, *in the land of the Mozarts and the Wagners*.

1. The genitive singular has the ending *s*, unless the name ends in an *s*-sound, when an apostrophe is commonly used; e. g., *Schillers Werke*, or *die Werke Schillers*, *Schiller's works, the works of Schiller*; *Opitz' Gedichte*, *Opitz's poems*; *Maries Eltern*, *Marie's parents*. (*Opitzens, Mariens* are no longer usual, though quite permissible.)

a. But the ending *s* is omitted if the name is preceded by an article or pronoun in the genitive (an intervening adjective or noun makes no difference); e. g., *die Werke eines Schiller*, *des Dichters Schiller*, *des jungen Schiller*, *meines geliebten Schiller*, *the works of a Schiller, of the poet Schiller, of the youthful Schiller, of my beloved Schiller*.

100. Names of Places. Names of towns and countries are mostly neuter nouns, used without the article unless an adjective precedes. They have no inflection except an *s* in the genitive singular, and the use of this follows the rule given above for names of persons; e. g., *die Mauern Rom's*, *the walls of Rome*; but *die*

Mauern des alten Rom, der Stadt Rom, *the walls of ancient Rome, of the city of Rome.*

1. If the name ends in an s-sound the genitive is best replaced by von with the dative, unless one prefers an adjective construction ; e. g., die Straßen von Paris, or die Pariser Straßen, *the streets of Paris.*

2. But some names of countries, provinces, mountain districts, etc., and all names of rivers, are regularly used with the article. Such names, if masculine or neuter, often retain the s of the genitive even after the article ; e. g., der Gipfel des Brodens, *the summit of the Brocken* ; die Ufer des Rheins, *the banks of the Rhine.* Feminine names of countries are, of course, without inflection ; e. g., die Berge der Schweiz, *the mountains of Switzerland.*

EXERCISE XV.

READING LESSON : PROPER NOUNS.

Ich war neulich im Theater bei einer Vorstellung von¹ Schillers „Wilhelm Tell“. Ein Schauspieler Namens Müller spielte die Rolle des Tell, ein Fräulein Braun die Rolle der Bertha. Die Vorstellung war sehr gut, besonders der Apfelschuß Tells und der Tod Geflers. Nur war die Liebescene² zwischen Bertha und Rudenz etwas kalt, denn³ Berthas Stimme war unangenehm. In Deutschland, dem Lande der Wagner und der Beethoven, war die Musik natürlich auch gut. Ich lese jetzt Schillers Werke ; er ist groß, aber er hat nicht die Kraft eines Shakespeare.⁴ In ein paar Tagen mache⁵ ich eine Reise über⁶ Weimar nach Leipzig⁷ und Dresden. Weimar war vor hundert Jahren⁸ der Wohnort der Dichter Goethe und Schiller. Es liegt an der Ilm, einem Nebenflusse der Saale.

VOCABULARY.

Apfel, *m. s. 1 (pl. ä)*, apple.
denn, *conj.*, for, then.
Deutschland, *n.*, Germany.
Dichter, *m. s. 1*, poet.

kalt, *adj.*, cold.
Kraft, *f. s. 2 (pl. ä)*, strength,
force, [*craft*].
lesen, *v.*, read.

Liebe, *f. w.*, love.

Nebenfluß, *m. s. 2 (pl. =flüsse)*,
tributary.

Reise, *f. w.*, journey, [*rise*].

Rolle, *f. w.*, rôle, part.

Scene, *f. w.*, scene.

Schauspieler, *m. s. 1*, actor.

Schuß, *m. s. 2 (pl. =flüsse)*,
shot.

spielen, *v.*, play; *pret.* spielte.

Thea'ter, *n. s. 1*, theater.

Tod, *m. s. 2 (no pl.)*, death.

unangenehm, *adj.*, unpleasant.
vor, *prep. (acc. and dat.)*, be-
fore, [*fore*].

Vo'rstellung, *f. w.*, perform-
ance.

Werk, *n. s. 2*, work.

Wohnort, *m. s. 2*, abode,
dwelling-place.

zwischen, *prep. (dat. and acc.)*,
be-tween.

NOTES.—¹ *von*; *von* with the *dat.* is often used to prevent two genitives from occurring together.—² *Liebes*scene; pronounce -je'ne. A feminine noun in composition sometimes takes the ending *s*, thus constituting an exception to § 77, 1. —³ *Wenn* at the beginning of a sentence means *for*, elsewhere *then*. On the order see § 87, 3.—⁴ *Shakespeare*; pronounce as in English.—⁵ *mache ich*, *I shall make*, *I am going to make*; the pres. tense denoting here a present purpose.—⁶ *über*, *by way of*.—⁷ *Leipzig*, *Leipsic*. But some prefer to use in English the German form *Leipzig*. Other names of cities which have an English name differing from the German are *Wien*, *Vienna*; *München*, *Munich*; *Köln*, *Cologne*; *Genf*, *Geneva*. In most cases the form of the name is the same in both languages.—⁸ *vor hundert Jahren*, *a hundred years ago*; *lit.*, *before a hundred years*.

THE ADJECTIVE.

INFLECTION.

101. **Inflected and Uninflected Adjectives.** The adjective is inflected only when it qualifies a following noun, expressed or understood, or is itself used substantively; if used alone in the predicate, or after its noun, or adverbially, it is uninflected. Thus: ein hübsches Mädchen, *a pretty girl*; but das Mädchen ist hübsch, *the girl is pretty*; nennt sich hübsch, *calls herself pretty*; trägt sich hübsch, *carries herself prettily*. So also, poetically, as in English, ein Mädchen hübsch und jung, *a maiden fair and young*.

1. When inflected, the adjective agrees with its noun, unless it is itself used as a noun, in gender, number and case.

2. Almost any adjective can be used in its uninflected form as an adverb.

3. Participles when used as adjectives have the inflection of adjectives.

102. Strong and Weak Inflection. Adjectives are inflected in two different ways, according as they are or are not preceded by an article or pronoun having a distinctive ending. The inflection used when such a word precedes is called 'weak'; the inflection used when no such word precedes is called 'strong.'

1. It will be seen, then, that the terms 'strong' and 'weak' do not mean, as in the case of nouns, that some adjectives are declined in one way, and others in another, but that any adjective, in any particular case, takes the one or the other of two endings, according to what goes before. The use of the weak inflection is to avoid the unnecessary repetition of grammatical distinctions. Thus in *das neue Haus*, *the new house*, *das* shows the gender; hence the adjective does not need to show it and becomes weak. But in *ein neues Haus*, *a new house*, *ein* is not a distinctive form, since of itself it is either masculine or neuter; hence the adjective is given the strong, or distinctive ending.

103. The Endings. The endings are as follows:

	STRONG.				WEAK.			
	Sing.		Plur.		Sing.		Plur.	
	Mas.	Fem.	Neu.	M. F. N.	Mas.	Fem.	Neu.	M. F. N.
N.	er	e	eß	e	e	e	e	en
G.	eß	er	eß	er	en	en	en	en
D.	em	er	em	en	en	en	en	en
A.	en	e	eß	e	en	e	e	en

1. Observe that in four cases, viz., the nom. and acc. sing. fem., the acc. sing. masc. and the dat. plur., there is no difference between the strong and the weak inflection.

2. Before the *e* of these endings a final *e* of the stem is dropped ; as in *ein weiser Mann*, from *weise*, *wise*. Words in unaccented *el*, *en*, *er*, generally drop the *e* of the stem ; e. g., *ein edles Herz*, from *edel*, *noble* ; *ein offenes Fenster*, from *offen*, *open* ; *ein heit(er)er Tag*, from *heiter*, *bright*.

104. Examples of Strong Inflection : *Gut*, *good*, with *Kopf*, *m.*, *head* ; *Seele*, *f.*, *soul*, and *Herz*, *n.*, *heart*.

1. The adjective not preceded by any determining word :

Singular.

Nom.	guter Kopf	gute Seele	gutes Herz
Gen.	gutes Kopfes	guter Seele	gutes Herzens
Dat.	gutem Kopfe	guter Seele	gutem Herzen
Acc.	guten Kopf	gute Seele	gutes Herz

Plural.

Nom.	gute Köpfe,	Seelen,	Herzen
Gen.	guter Köpfe,	Seelen,	Herzen
Dat.	guten Köpfen,	Seelen,	Herzen
Acc.	gute Köpfe,	Seelen,	Herzen

2. The adjective preceded by a determining word in an uninflected form :

Nom.	ein (fein, mein, etc.) guter Kopf
Nom.	ein (fein, mein, etc.) gutes Herz
Acc.	ein (fein, mein, etc.) gutes Herz

105. Use of the Strong Endings. An adjective has strong inflection :

1. If no article or pronominal modifier precedes (but see § 107, 5) ; e. g., *guter Wein ist teuer*, *good wine is dear* ; *mit frohem Herzen*, *with happy heart*.

2. After any indeclinable pronoun or numeral, including also the interrogative *was* ; e. g., *etwas Neues*, *something new* ; *allerlei gutes Obst*, *all sorts of good fruit* ; *zwei frohe Herzen*, *two happy hearts* ; *was giebt es Neues* ? *what is there (that is) new* ?

a. After these indeclinables an adjective not followed by a noun is itself treated as a substantive in apposition, and is therefore written with a capital ; e. g., *nichts Gutes*, *nothing good*.

3. After an *uninflected form* of any of the following words : (1) the article *ein* and its negative *kein* ; (2) the possessives *mein*, *dein*, *sein*, *unser*, *euer*, and *ihr* (also *Ihr*) ; (3) the pronominal adjectives *all*, *manch*, *solch*, *viel*, *welch*, and *wenig* ; e. g., *ein schöner Tag*, *a fine day* ; *mein lieber Freund*, *my dear friend* ; *welch hübsches Bild*, *what a pretty picture*.

a. The words under 3 all have regular adjective inflection, except that those under (1) and (2) lack a distinctive ending in *three cases*, viz.: the nom. sing. *mas.* and *neu.*, and the acc. sing. *neu.* These three forms of these eight words are *always* uninflected if a noun follows. With those under (3), on the other hand, the omission of the ending is optional and may take place in almost any case ; thus *manch guter Mann*, *many a good man*, is simply an alternative to *mancher gute Mann*.

4. After a personal pronoun in the nominative or accusative singular ; e. g., *du armes Kind*, *you poor child* ; *Sie glücklicher Mensch*, *you happy man*.

EXERCISE XVI.

READING LESSON : STRONG ADJECTIVES.

Mein lieber Freund !¹ Ich bin jetzt auf kurze Zeit² in Leipzig. Ich habe ein kleines freundliches³ Zimmer mit guter Bedienung zu billigem Preis. Der Hauswirt ist ein interessanter alter Herr mit weißem Bart und weißen⁴ Haaren. Vor Jahren⁵ war er reich, aber jetzt hat er nur ein kleines Vermögen. Seine Frau ist

tot, und die Stütze seines Alters ist seine Tochter, ein liebenswürdiges Mädchen von seltner Schönheit. Vater und Tochter nehmen ein freundliches Interesse an meinen Studien; sie verbessern mein schlechtes Deutsch und erzählen mir allerlei Interessantes⁶ von der Stadt.

VOCABULARY.

alt, *adj.*, old.

Alter, *n. s. 1*, old age.

Bart, *m. s. 2* (*pl. ä*), beard.

Bedienung, *f. w.*, service.

billig, *adj.*, cheap, moderate.

Deutsch, *n. (indecl.)*, German.

erzählen, *v.*, relate, tell, [-tell].

Haar, *n. s. 2*, hair.

klein, *adj.*, small.

lieb, *adj.*, dear, [lief].

liebenswürdig, *adj.*, lovely, [lovely].

nehmen, *v.*, take.

Preis, *m. s. 2*, price.

reich, *adj.*, rich.

schlecht, *adj.*, bad.

Schönheit, *f. w.*, beauty.

sein, *poss.*, his.

selten, *adj.*, rare, [seldom].

Stütze, *f. w.*, prop, support.

tot, *adj.*, dead.

verbessern, *v.*, correct, [-better].

Vermögen, *n. s. 1*, property.

weiß, *adj.*, white.

NOTES.—¹ It is customary to use an exclamation point after the formal address in a letter.—² auf kurze Zeit, for a short time; note the omission of ein (§ 73, 2). The meaning is not 'I have been in L. for a short time' (which would be expressed by eine kurze Zeit without a preposition), but 'I am expecting to stay for a short time.'—³ freundliches, pleasant, cozy, as applied to a room. Observe that two adjectives occurring together have the same inflection; i. e., the first does not affect the second.—⁴ weißen Haaren; 'the hair' of the head is either das Haar or die Haare. It is here used as a plural, whence the repetition of weiß. But one might also write mit weißem Bart und Haar(e).—⁵ Vor Jahren, years ago.—⁶ allerlei Interessantes, all sorts of interesting (things).

EXERCISE XVII.

COLLOQUY.

I.

Guten¹ Morgen! Schönes² Wetter heute, nicht wahr?

Es ist ein prächtiger Tag. Was sagen Sie zu einem Spaziergang?

Ein guter Gedanke; ich habe sonst nichts Wichtiges zu thun.

Nun, was giebt's² Neues? Sie sind offenbar in froher Stimmung.

Ja, das bin ich, und ich habe guten Grund; mein alter Freund Max kommt heute nach der Stadt.

Das ist freilich eine große Freude für Sie.

Richt wahr? Er ist ein prächtiger Kerl.

II.

Where are you living⁴ now? Have you a good room? Not so good as⁵ last year.⁶ I am living⁷ at No. 2 Königstraße.⁸

I think I know⁹ the house; it is an old, low building, isn't it?

Well,¹⁰ it is not a¹¹ royal palace, to be sure, but the rooms are cheap.

Do you have good fare? That is an important point.

No, the fare is bad too; good coffee is not to be had.¹²

Poor fellow! That is a miserable life.

VOCABULARY.

denken, *v.*, think.

elend, *adj.*, wretched.

Freude, *f. w.*, joy, pleasure.

froh, *adj.*, happy.

Gedanke, *m. mx. (gen. -ns)*,
thought, idea.

Grund, *m. s. 2 (pl. ii)*, ground.

Kaffee, *m. s. (no pl.)*, coffee.

Kerl, *m. s. 2*, fellow, [churl].

königlich, *adj.*, royal, **kingly**.

Kost, *f. w.*, fare, board.

neu, *adj.*, new.

niedrig, *adj.*, low.

Numero, *m. (indecl.)*, at No.

offenbar, *adj.*, evident, [open-].

Palast, *m. s. 2 (pl. ä)*, palace.

prächtig, *adj.*, splendid.

Punkt, *m. s. 2*, point.

sagen, *v.*, say.

so, *adv.*, so.

sonst, *adv.*, else, otherwise.

Spaziergang, *m. s. 2 (pl. ä)*,
walk.

Stimmung, *f. w.*, mood.

Straße, *f. w.*, street.

vorig, *adj.*, last, former.

Wetter, *n. s. 1*, weather.

wichtig, *adj.*, important,
weighty.

wo, *adv.*, where.

NOTES.—¹ Guten Morgen; the acc. is used in greetings such as guten Morgen, guten Abend, guten Tag, gute Nacht, there being a verb

of 'wishing' or 'bidding' understood.—² *Schönes Wetter*; i. e., es ist schönes Wetter.—³ *was giebt's Neues?* *What's the news?* giebt's = giebt es.—⁴ *Where are you living?* Wo wohnen Sie?—⁵ *not so good as*, nicht so gut wie.—⁶ *last year*, voriges Jahr; acc. of time.—⁷ *I am living at No. 2*, ich wohne Numero 2; no preposition is needed.—⁸ *Königstrasse*, lit., *King Street*; but names of streets are best transferred, not translated.—⁹ *I think I know*, ich denke, ich kenne.—¹⁰ *Well*, nun, not wohl.—¹¹ *it is not a . . . to be sure*, es ist freilich kein; *not a* = *no* = *kein*.—¹² *not to be had*, nicht zu haben; lit., *not to have*, *not for having*.

106. Examples of Weak Inflection.

1. After der, dieß, jed, or jen.

Singular.

N.	der gute Kopf	die gute Seele	das gute Herz
G.	des guten Kopfes	der guten Seele	des guten Herzens
D.	dem guten Kopfe	der guten Seele	dem guten Herzen
A.	den guten Kopf	die gute Seele	das gute Herz

Plural.

N.	die guten Köpfe,	Seelen,	Herzen
G.	der guten Köpfe,	Seelen,	Herzen
D.	den guten Köpfen,	Seelen,	Herzen
A.	die guten Köpfe,	Seelen,	Herzen

2. After ein, kein, or a possessive.

Singular.

N.	[kein guter Kopf]	keine gute Seele	[kein gutes Herz]
G.	keines guten Kopfes	keiner guten Seele	keines guten Herzens
D.	keinem guten Kopfe	keiner guten Seele	keinem guten Herzen
A.	keinen guten Kopf	keine gute Seele	[kein gutes Herz]

Plural.

N.	keine guten Köpfe,	Seelen,	Herzen
G.	keiner guten Köpfe,	Seelen,	Herzen
D.	keinen guten Köpfen,	Seelen,	Herzen
A.	keine guten Köpfe,	Seelen,	Herzen

107. Use of the Weak Endings. An adjective has weak inflection :

1. After all forms of *der*, *dieß*, *jed-*, *jedlich-* and *jen-*; e. g., *das gute Herz*, *the good heart* ; *dieser arme Kerl*, *this poor fellow* ; *jenes neue Haus*, *that new house* ; *an jedem schönen Tage*, *on every fine day*.

2. After an *inflected form* of any of the words mentioned in § 105, 3 ; e. g., *an einem schönen Tage des vorigen Sommers*, *on a fine day (of the) last summer* ; *meine lieben Freunde*, *my dear friends*.

3. After *ander*, *einig*, *etlich*, and *mehrer*. But in the nominative and accusative plural these words, and also those mentioned in § 105, 3 (3), are often followed by strong inflection ; e. g., *vieler guten (or gute) Freunde*, *many good friends* ; *aller großen (or große) Männer*, *all great men*.

4. After a personal pronoun, except in the nominative and accusative singular ; e. g., *weh mir armen Manne*, *woe to me, poor man* ; *lebt wohl, ihr lieben Freunde*, *farewell, dear friends*.

5. In the genitive singular, masculine and neuter, even if no article or pronominal modifier precedes ; e. g., *ein Trunk kalten Wassers*, *a drink of cold water*. In this case, however, the strong inflection is also correct.

108. The Adjective used Substantively. Adjectives are often used substantively, and when so used they have the capital initial of a noun, but the inflection of an adjective ; as *der Alte*, *the old man* ; *die Alte*, *the old woman* ; *die Alten*, *the old people* ; *das Alte*, *the old, that which is old*.

1. As the examples indicate, the masculine and feminine singular and the plural of a substantive adjective designate persons. The neuter singular generally denotes the quality abstractly, and has to be translated in different ways ; e. g., *er liebt das Schöne*, *he loves the beautiful*

(die Schöne would mean *the beautiful woman*, die Schönen, *the fair sex*); das Buch enthält Altes und Neues, *the book contains old (matter) and new*; er hat Großes gethan, *he has done great (things)*; er hat mir ein Leid's gethan, *he has done me a grievous (turn)*.

2. The use of the substantive adjective after indeclinables has already been explained (§ 105, 2, a).

109. Irregular and Defective Inflection. The most important cases are as follows:

1. The stem of the adjective hoch, *high*, changes to hoh in all inflected forms; e. g., ein hoher Baum, *a high tree*.

2. Adjectives in er from names of towns are indeclinable; e. g., der Kölner Dom, *the Cologne cathedral*.

3. Ganz, *all*, and halb, *half*, when not preceded by the article are uninflected before neuter names of places; e. g., ganz England freute sich, *all England rejoiced*; durch halb Berlin, *through half of Berlin*.

4. Some adjectives are used only in the predicate, and hence are never declined; as bereit, *ready*; feind, *hostile*.

5. The first of two adjectives forming a compound adjective is uninflected; e. g., der deutsch-französische Krieg, *the Franco-German war*; dunkelbraunes Haar, *dark-brown hair*.

110. The Predicate Adjective. A predicate adjective if it stands alone is uninflected; e. g., mein Schicksal ist schwer, *my fate is hard*; die Antwort ist richtig, *the answer is right*. But if an article precedes, the predicate adjective then becomes an attributive adjective, with noun understood, and is inflected; e. g., mein Schicksal ist ein schweres, *my fate is a hard one*; die Antwort ist die richtige, *the answer is the right one*.

1. Further varieties of predicate adjective are:

a. The appositional predicate, in apposition with either subject or object; e. g., trostlos irrt er umher, *he wanders*

about inconsolable ; ich fand ihn krank im Bette, *I found him sick in bed.*

b. The factitive predicate, denoting the state to which an object is brought by the action of the verb ; e. g., ich könnte mich tot lachen, *I could laugh myself dead* ; er malt das Bild schwarz, *he paints the picture black.*

EXERCISE XVIII.

READING LESSON : WEAK ADJECTIVES.

Leipzig, den 1.¹ Januar.

Meine lieben Eltern ! Heute ist der Anfang des neuen Jahres und ich bin immer noch³ in dieser² interessanten alten Stadt. Leipzig liegt in einer weiten Ebene ; in der ganzen Umgebung sieht man keine Berge, keine hohen Hügel. Die Stadt ist berühmt wegen ihrer⁴ großen Universität und ihres reichen Handels ; sie ist der eigentliche Mittelpunkt des Buchhandels für ganz Deutschland. Die Leipziger Theater sind besonders gut ; beinahe jeden⁵ Abend besuche ich das alte oder das neue Theater und gewinne so täglich an⁶ Kenntniß der deutschen Sprache und an Einsicht in das deutsche Leben. Ich wünsche Euch⁷ Glück⁸ zum neuen Jahre ; möge⁹ es Euch in seinem ganzen Verlaufe nur Gutes bringen.¹⁰

VOCABULARY.

Berg, *m. s. 2*, mountain.

berühmt, *adj.*, famous.

bringen, *v.*, bring.

Ebene, *f. w.*, plain, [even].

ei'gentlich, *adj.*, real, actual.

Ei'nsicht, *f. w.*, insight.

Eltern, *pl. only*, parents, [elders].

erst, *adj.*, first, [erst].

euch, *pron. (dat.)*, to you.

gewinnen, *v.*, gain, -win.

Handel, *m. s. (no pl.)*, trade, commerce, [handle].

Hügel, *m. s. 1*, hill.

ihr, *poss.*, her, their, its.

Janua'r, *m. s. 2*, January.

jed-, *pron.*, every, each.

Kenntniß, *f. s. 2*, knowledge.

mittel, *adj.*, middle.

mögen, *v.*, may.

Umge'bung, *f. w.*, environs.

Verlau'f, *m. s. 2 (pl. äu)*, course, [-leap].

weit, *adj.*, wide, broad.

NOTES.—¹ *Den 1.*, i. e., den ersten; in dating a letter the acc. is used without a preposition.—² *immer noch*, still (see Ex. VII, n. 7).—³ *dieser*; *dies* is declined like an adjective.—⁴ *ihrer*, its, lit., her, the noun *Stadt*, to which it refers, being fem.—⁵ *jeden Abend*, acc. of time.—⁶ *an Kenntnis*, in knowledge; note the prep.—⁷ *Und* is the dat. pl. of *du*, the pronoun of familiar address; written with a capital because it occurs in a letter (§ 4, 2).—⁸ *Glück zum neuen Jahre*, happiness for the new year = a happy new year.—⁹ *möge es*, may it; the verb is a subjunctive expressing a wish.—¹⁰ *bringen*; on its position see Ex. XIV, n. 3.

EXERCISE XIX.

COLLOQUY.

I.

Wie lang waren¹ Sie in der Alten Welt?

Beinahe ein Jahr; es war eine prächtige Reise, besonders die letzten Monate.

Bitte,² erzählen Sie mir davon; im künftigen Sommer gehe ich vielleicht selbst³ nach Europa.

Aber das ist eine lange Geschichte. Was wünschen Sie eigentlich⁴ zu wissen?

Nun denn, wann verließen Sie die Vereinigten Staaten?

Am 1. Juli des vorigen Jahres.

Der Juli ist eine gute Jahreszeit⁵ für die lange Seereise, nicht wahr?

Ja, aber heutzutage⁶ macht die Jahreszeit keinen großen Unterschied.

II.

So¹ you are back again² in the New World?

Yes, I am now a good American once more.³

How do you find¹⁰ yourself after¹¹ your long journey?

Very well,¹² upon the whole¹³; but I find¹⁴ the old quiet life somewhat dull.

That is nothing strange.¹⁵—Did you have¹⁶ good weather on¹⁷ the voyage?

Very good except on¹⁸ the last two days.

VOCABULARY.

Ame'rika'ner, <i>m. s. 1</i> , American.	la'ngwei'lig, <i>adj.</i> , dull, tedious,
außer, <i>prep. (dat.)</i> , except,	[long-while-y].
out-side of.	leßt, <i>adj.</i> , last.
befinden (ich), <i>v.</i> , find (one's	ruhig, <i>adj.</i> , quiet.
self), 'do.'	See, <i>f. w. (pl. Seen or Seenen)</i> ,
bitten, <i>v.</i> , ask; (ich) bitte,	sea, ocean.
please, [bid].	selbst, <i>pron.</i> , self, myself, etc.
davo'n, <i>adv.</i> , of it, about it.	sonderbar, <i>adj.</i> , strange.
Euro'pa, <i>n.</i> , Europe.	U'nterschied, <i>m. s. 2</i> , difference.
finden, <i>v.</i> , find.	verei'nigt, <i>pple.</i> , united, [-one-].
Geschichte, <i>f. w.</i> , story, his-	verlassen, <i>v.</i> , leave, [-let]; <i>pret.</i> ,
tory.	verließ.
Ju'li, <i>m. (no pl.)</i> , July.	wann, <i>adv. (inter.)</i> , when.
künftig, <i>adj.</i> , coming, next.	wieder, <i>adv.</i> , again, [with].
	zurück, <i>adv.</i> , back, [-ridge].

NOTES.—¹ *waren*, were.—² *Bitte*; note that *bitte*, please, is a 1. pers. sing. with *ich* understood, meaning literally *I pray*.—³ *selbst* is the so-called intensive pronoun. It goes here with *ich*, giving the meaning *I myself*.—⁴ *eigentlich*, properly, exactly; was wünschen Sie eigentlich, just what do you wish.—⁵ *Jahreszeit*, time of the year, i. e., season.—⁶ *heutzutage*, nowadays.—⁷ *So*, also.—⁸ *back again*, wieder zurück.—⁹ *once more*, wieder, right after jetzt.—¹⁰ *How do you find yourself*, wie befinden Sie sich (§ 4, 2); the usual phrase for *how do you do?*—¹¹ *after your*, nach Ihrer, dat. fem. of the poss. Ihr, which must be followed by the weak form of the adjective lang.—¹² *Very well*, sehr gut.—¹³ *upon the whole*, Im ganzen, preceding sehr gut.—¹⁴ *I find*, ich finde, not ich befinde.—¹⁵ *strange*; § 105, 2, a.—¹⁶ *Did you have*, hatten Sie.—¹⁷ *on*, auf, with dat.—¹⁸ *except on*, außer an, with dat.

COMPARISON.

111. Comparison by means of *er* and *(e)ft*. Adjectives are compared ordinarily by means of the endings *er* and *(e)ft*, and these endings usually (but with some exceptions) cause umlaut of a preceding *a*, *o* or *u*. The comparative and superlative are inflected like the positive.

1. Before the *er* of the comparative a final *e* of the stem is dropped ; as *weise*, *wise* ; *weiser*, *wiser*.

2. The superlative regularly ends in *st*, but in *est* if the stem ends in an *s*-sound or in *b* or *t* preceded by a consonant ; but participial stems in *end* take the ending *st*.

3. The *e* of the unaccented endings *el*, *en*, *er* is usually dropped in the comparative, but retained in the superlative.

4. The following examples will illustrate the above rules :

<i>lang</i> , <i>long</i> ,	<i>länger</i>	(<i>längst</i>) <i>der längste</i>
<i>reich</i> , <i>rich</i> ,	<i>reicher</i>	(<i>reichst</i>) <i>der reichste</i>
<i>kurz</i> , <i>short</i> ,	<i>kürzer</i>	(<i>kürzest</i>) <i>der kürzeste</i>
<i>mild</i> , <i>mild</i> ,	<i>milder</i>	(<i>mildest</i>) <i>der mildeste</i>
<i>reizend</i> , <i>charming</i> ,	<i>reizender</i>	(<i>reizendst</i>) <i>der reizendste</i>
<i>dunkel</i> , <i>dark</i> ,	<i>dunkler</i>	(<i>dunkelst</i>) <i>der dunkelste</i>

a. The uninflected superlative *schönst*, *längst*, etc., can only be used adverbially. Used adjectively the superlative is regularly preceded by *der*, and hence of the weak declension.

112. **The Superlative with *am*.** For the English predicate superlative without an article German employs a phrase consisting of *am* followed by the inflected superlative in the dative singular neuter ; e. g., *das wäre am besten* (never *das wäre best*), *that would be best* ; *die Gegend ist am schönsten im Juni*, *the region is loveliest in June*.

1. The phrase with *am* sometimes takes the place of a predicate nominative with *der* ; e. g., *unter den drei Knaben ist Karl am ältesten* (instead of the equally correct *der älteste*), *of the three boys Karl is the oldest*.

2. The superlative of an adverb is regularly formed by means of the phrase with *am*, or else a phrase with *auf* ;

e. g., *sie singt am besten, she sings best* ; *sie sang aufs beste, she sang her best.*

113. Comparison by Means of Adverbs. Adjectives are sometimes compared by means of the adverbs *mehr, more, and am meisten, most.*

1. An absolute superlative, i. e., one which does not imply comparison with other objects, is formed by means of the adverbs *höchst, most highly, or äußerst, exceedingly* ; e. g., *das ist ein höchst interessantes Buch, that is a most interesting book.*

2. Degrees below the positive are denoted by the adverbs *weniger or minder, less, and am wenigsten, am mindesten, least.*

114. Irregular and Defective Comparison. A few adjectives are compared irregularly and certain others lack one or more degrees. Thus :

1. *Gut, good, and viel, much, have change of stem : gut, besser, best ; viel, mehr, meist.*

2. *Hoch, high, and nah, near, are compared : hoch, höher, höchst ; nah, näher, nächst.*

3. *Groß, great, has größt, rarely größte, in the superlative.*

4. Some adjectives, mostly from adverbs and prepositions, lack the positive ; e. g., *hinter, hinder, from the preposition hinter, behind ; ober, upper, from the adverb oben, above.*

5. *Erst, first, and letzt, last, are isolated superlatives. They are, however, sometimes compared with er as if they were positives, der erstere and der letztere being quite common in the sense of the former and the latter.*

6. As in English, some adjectives are, from their meaning, incapable of comparison ; e. g., *ganz, all ; täglich, daily.*

EXERCISE XX.

READING LESSON: COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

Liebster Freund! Die Ferien sind zu Ende und ich bin schon längere¹ Zeit wieder zu Hause in Göttingen. Die Reise war mir im höchsten Grade zuträglich. Ich bin viel stärker und heiterer als vor einem Monat; auch habe ich jetzt einen besseren Begriff vom mittleren Deutschland. Von Leipzig ging² ich zunächst nach Dresden³ und blieb dort mehrere Tage. Dresden ist nicht viel größer als Leipzig, aber es hat eine schönere Lage. Es liegt nämlich in einem prächtigen Thale zu beiden Seiten der Elbe, der ältere und größere Teil auf dem linken Ufer. Unter den Sehenswürdigkeiten der Stadt ist die große Bildergallerie am berühmtesten. Diese⁴ war für mich, wie für die meisten Fremden, der interessanteste Punkt in Dresden. Weiteres⁵ über meine Wanderungen schreibe ich vielleicht in meinem nächsten⁶ Briefe.

VOCABULARY.

als, <i>conj.</i> , than, when, as.	links, <i>adj.</i> , left.
Begriff, <i>m. s. 2</i> , idea, conception.	mehrere, <i>adj.</i> , several.
beide, <i>pron. adj.</i> , both, two.	mich, <i>pron. (acc.)</i> , me.
bleiben, <i>v.</i> , remain; <i>pret.</i> blieb, [-leave].	nämlich, <i>adv.</i> , namely, that is to say.
Brief, <i>m. s. 2</i> , letter.	Se'henswür'digkeit, <i>f. w.</i> , sight.
Ferien, <i>f. (pl. only)</i> , vacation.	stark, <i>adj.</i> strong, [stark].
fremd, <i>adj.</i> , strange, foreign.	Teil, <i>m. s. 2</i> , part, [deal].
Gallerie', <i>f. w.</i> , gallery.	Ufer, <i>n. s. 1</i> , bank, shore.
Grad, <i>m. s. 2</i> , degree, grade.	Wanderung, <i>f. w.</i> , wandering, travel.
heiter, <i>adj.</i> , cheerful.	zunächst, <i>adv.</i> , next.
Lage, <i>f. w.</i> , situation, [lay].	zu'trä'glich, <i>adj.</i> , beneficial.

NOTES.—¹ *längere Zeit*, some time, a considerable length of time. The comparative sometimes denotes simply an eminent degree, and cannot then be translated literally; e. g., eine ältere Dame, an elderly lady.—² *ging*, went; *pret.* 1. and 3. sing. of *gehen*.—³ *Dresden*; pronounce with long e in the penult.—⁴ *Diese*, this; fem. of *dies* referring to Bildergallerie.—⁵ *Weiteres*, further (details).—⁶ *nächsten*; pronounce with long ä; so also *höchst* with long ö.

EXERCISE XXI.

COLLOQUY.

I.

Sie waren wohl den größten Teil des Sommers in England?
Ja, aber nur in den kleineren Städten; erst im Herbst ging ich nach London.

Waren Sie längere Zeit in London, oder nur ein paar Tage?

Im ganzen etwa drei Wochen; ich blieb etwas länger¹ in Paris², am längsten aber in Berlin³.

Was denken Sie denn⁴ jetzt von den drei größten Städten Europas?

Für mich war Paris am interessantesten.

Das ist höchst sonderbar; die meisten Amerikaner haben⁵ doch London am liebsten.

Das ist möglich, aber meine Sympathien sind mehr französisch als englisch.

II.

Why did you not go⁶ to London at once? That is the most interesting place in England, is it not?

Yes, to be sure, but not the pleasantest in the hot season.

For my part⁷ I always like⁸ the large cities best.

That is not my taste. People⁹ live too fast in the large cities. I love a more quiet life.

No doubt one needs¹⁰ a pretty long time¹¹ for¹² the sights of London.

Yes, indeed; it is a most interesting¹³ city.

What do you think of the London weather¹⁴? It is the worst¹⁵ in the world, is it not?

Oh no; the weather is no¹⁶ worse in London than here at home.

VOCABULARY.

a'ngenehm, *adj.*, pleasant.
brauchen, *v.*, need, [brook].
denken, *v.*, think.
drei, *num.*, three.

englisch, *adj.*, English.
französisch, *adj.*, French.
Geschmack, *m. s. 2*, taste,
[smack].

heiß, *adj.*, hot.

lieben, *v.*, love.

lieb haben, *v.*, like, [have
lie].

möglich, *adj.*, possible.

Ort, *m. s.* 2-3, place.

rasch, *adj.*, fast, [rash].

sofo'rt, *adv.*, at once.

Sympathie', *f. w.*, sympathy.

warn'm, *adv. (inter.)*, why.

NOTES.—¹ länger, am längsten; comparative and superlative of lang used adverbially.—² Paris; pronounce to rhyme with police.—³ Berlin; pronounce to rhyme with hureen; see also § 16, 1.—⁴ denn; see Ex. XV, n. 3.—⁵ haben . . . am liebsten, like . . . best; lit., have, i. e., hold dearest.—⁶ Why did you not go to L. at once? Warum gingen Sie nicht sofort nach L.?—⁷ For my part, für mein (not meinen) Teil; Teil in the sense of share, being neuter.—⁸ I always like . . . best, habe ich immer . . . am liebsten.—⁹ People, die Leute.—¹⁰ No doubt one needs, man braucht wohl.—¹¹ a pretty long time, längere Zeit, or eine ziemlich lange Zeit.—¹² for, für.—¹³ a most interesting, eine höchst interessante; one could not say eine interessanteste.—¹⁴ of the London weather, von dem Londoner Wetter.—¹⁵ the worst, das schlechteste.—¹⁶ no, nicht.

THE NUMERALS.

115. The Cardinals. The fundamental numbers and the mode of forming the others appear from the following table:

1 ein	13 dreizehn	50 fünfzig
2 zwei	14 vierzehn	60 sechs(s)zig
3 drei	15 fünfzehn	70 sieb(en)zig
4 vier	16 sechs(s)zehn	80 achtzig
5 fünf	17 sieb(en)zehn	90 neunzig
6 sechs	18 achtzehn	100 hundert
7 sieben	19 neunzehn	121 hundert einundzwanzig
8 acht	20 zwanzig	200 zweihundert
9 neun	21 einundzwanzig	1,000 tausend
10 zehn	22 zweiundzwanzig	1,121 tausend einhundert ein-
11 elf	30 dreißig	undzwanzig
12 zwölf	40 vierzig	1,000,000 eine Million
1,000,000,000 eine Milliarde		1,000,000,000,000 eine Billion

1. For a hundred, a thousand, German has simply hundert, tausend, ein being used only where English would have one hundred, one thousand.

116. Inflection and Use of ein. When it agrees with a noun expressed, and is not preceded by *der*, the numeral *ein* is inflected like the article *ein*; e. g., *wir find ein Volk*, *we are one people*; *wir find eines Bluts*, *we are of one blood*.

1. But if it is used pronominally it takes the ending *er* in the nominative singular masculine, and *es* in the nominative and accusative singular neuter; e. g., *einer von uns hat unrecht*, *one of us is wrong*; *einer der Knaben*, *one of the boys*; *eines der Mädchen*, *one of the girls*.

2. Preceded by *der* (*dieß* or *jen-*), *ein* has the inflection of a weak adjective and forms a plural *die einen*, with the sense of *some*; e. g., *der eine oder der andere hat unrecht*, *the one or the other is wrong*.

3. *Ein*, *one*, is distinguished from *ein*, *a*, when necessary, by spaced type, or by a capital initial; less often by an accent.

117. The Numbers above ein. The numbers above *ein* are usually uninflected.

1. But *zwei* and *drei* sometimes form a nominative and accusative in *e*, a genitive in *er* and a dative in *en*. Some of the numbers above *drei* may also take the ending *e*, especially when no noun follows.

118. The Ordinals. From one to twenty the ordinal stems are formed by suffixing *t* to the cardinal; e. g., *viert*, *fourth*; *dreizehnt*, *thirteenth*. From twenty on they are formed by suffixing *ft* to the tens; e. g., *zwanzigft*, *twentieth*; *fünfunddreißigft*, *thirty-fifth*.

1. But *first* is *erst*, *third* is *dritt* (not *breit*), and *eighth* is *acht* (not *adht*).

2. Such forms as *zweit*, *zwanzigft*, have only a theoretical existence. Like the superlatives *schönst*, *best*, etc., the

ordinals are only used after *der* or a pronominal modifier, and have then the inflection of an adjective; e. g., sein dritter Sohn, *his third son*; am 21sten (= einundzwanzigsten) April, *on the 21st of April*.

3. The partitive ordinals are formed by suffixing *tel*, an abbreviation of *Teil*, *part*, to the ordinal stem, the preceding *t* being dropped; e. g., ein Drittel, *a third*; ein Sechstel, *a sixth*. The words are substantives.

a. *Half* is *halb*, as adjective, or *die Hälfte*, as noun; e. g., der halbe Weg, *half the way*; ein halbes Duzend, *half a dozen*; die Hälfte des Apfels, *half of the apple*.

b. A peculiar formation is the so-called *dimidiative*, made by suffixing *halb* to the ordinal stem with connecting vowel *e*, the number thus denoted being less by one-half than the ordinal; e. g., drittehalb, *two and a half*, i. e. (*two complete and the*) *third (only) half*. Instead of *zweitehalb*, *anderthalb* is used for *one and a half*.

EXERCISE XXII.

READING LESSON : NUMERALS.

Ein deutsches Gymnasium¹ hat einen Kursus von neun Jahren. In der untersten Klasse, der sogenannten Sesta,² sind die Schüler im Durchschnitt neun bis zehn Jahre alt. Der Schüler vollendet den Kursus also im neunzehnten oder zwanzigsten Jahre seines Lebens. Ein Schüler im achten oder neunten Jahre des Kursus heißt ein Primaner,³ im sechsten und siebenten Jahre, ein Sekundaner, u. s. w.⁴ In den höheren Klassen hat der Schüler meistens dreißig Stunden die Woche, also im Durchschnitt fünf Stunden täglich. Die Schule beginnt um 7 Uhr vormittags im Sommer, um 8 Uhr im Winter. Das Schuljahr beginnt im Frühling acht Tage nach Ostern und zerfällt in vier Termine. Das erste Vierteljahr dauert bis zum 24. Juni, das zweite bis Ende September, das dritte bis Weihnachten. Die Ferien betragen im ganzen zehn bis zwölf Wochen, also etwa 26 Prozent⁵ des Jahres. Außerdem giebt es mehrere besondere⁶ Feiertage, jetzt unter anderen den 2.

September, den Jahrestag¹ der großen Schlacht bei Sedan am 2. Sept. 1870.

VOCABULARY.

außerdem, *adv.*, besides.
 beginnen, *v.*, begin.
 betragen, *v.*, amount to.
 dauern, *v.*, last, continue.
 Durchschnitt, *m. s. 2*, average.
 Feiertag, *m. s. 2*, holiday.
 Frühling, *m. s. 2*, spring.
 Gymnasium, *n. m.*, *gymnasium*.
 heißen, *v.*, be called, [hight].
 Klasse, *f. w.*, class.
 Kursus, *m.* (*pl.* Kursus or Kurse), course.
 Ostern, *pl.*, Easter.

Schlacht, *f. w.*, battle.
 Schule, *f. w.*, school.
 Schüler, *m. s. 1*, scholar, pupil.
 sogena'unt, *adj.*, so-called.
 Termi'n, *m. s. 2*, term.
 Uhr, *f. w.*, clock, [hour].
 um, *prep. (acc.)*, at, about.
 unter, *adj.*, lower, [under].
 volle'nden, *v.*, complete, finish.
 vo'rmi'ttags, *adv.*, forenoons.
 Wei'hnachten, *pl.*, Christmas.
 Winter, *m. s. 1*, winter.
 zerfa'llen (in), *v.*, be divided (into); *3. sing.*, zerfällt.

NOTES.—¹ *Gymnasium*; the name given in Germany to a particular kind of preparatory school.—² *Sexta*, *sexta*; i. e., 'sixth class' or 'form,' from Latin *sexta classis*. After *Sexta* come *Quinta* and *Quarta*, each one year; then *Tertia*, *Secunda* and *Prima*, each two years.—³ *Primä'ner*, i. e., a *prima*-boy. There is no corresponding English word.—⁴ *u. s. w.* = und so weiter, and so forth.—⁵ *Prozent*; the German says *pro cent.* instead of *per cent.*—⁶ *besondere*, *special*.—⁷ *Jahrestag*, *year-day*, i. e., anniversary.

EXERCISE XXIII.

COLLOQUY.

I.

Wie viel Uhr¹ ist es? Ungefähr halb 9?²
 Nein, es ist nur 20 Minuten nach 8. Aber weshalb fragen Sie?
 Um drei Viertel³ 10 gehe ich nach dem Bahnhofe.
 Erwarten Sie denn jemand?
 Ja, ich erwarte meine beiden Schwestern mit dem⁴ nächsten Zuge.

Sie haben also zwei Schwestern? Ich wußte nur von der einen, der kleinen Bertha.

Ja, ich habe noch eine.⁵ Sie heißt Marie, und ist etwa anderthalb Jahre jünger als ich.

Und wie alt sind Sie denn?

Ich bin beinahe zwanzig. Mein Geburtstag ist heute über acht⁶ Tage, am 29. Februar.

Sie haben also nur alle vier Jahre⁷ Geburtstag. Das ist doch sonderbar.

II.

How late is it, I wonder? About a quarter to 10?

No, it is only half past 9. But why do you ask?

At⁸ 10 I am going to the station. My sister Marie is coming home to-day.

Is it possible? Why to-day is only the 20th.⁹ There are four¹⁰ days yet before Christmas.

Yes, but my birthday is on¹¹ the 22nd.

Oh that's it¹²—a family festival.¹³ How old are you, pray?

I am in my¹⁴ twenty-first year.

Is your sister older or younger than you?

Marie is about two years and a half¹⁵ younger than I.

VOCABULARY.

ach, *interj.*, oh, ah.

all, *pron. adj.*, all, every.

Bahnhof, *m. s. 2 (pl. ö)*, station, depot.

erwarten, *v.*, expect.

Fest, *n. s. 2*, festival, *feast*.

fragen, *v.*, ask.

Geburt, *f. w.*, birth.

jemand, *pron.*, some one.

jung, *adj. (comp. ü)*, young.

Minu'te, *f. w.*, minute.

Schwester, *f. w.*, sister.

u'ngefähr, *adv.*, about.

weßhalb, *pron.*, why.

wußte, *v.*, knew; *pret. of* wissen.

Zug, *m. s. 2 (pl. ü)*, train, [tug].

NOTES.—¹ Wie viel Uhr, *what o'clock*; i. e., *how much (time according to the) clock*.—² halb 9, *half past 8*; so also halb eins, *half past 12*, etc.—³ Um drei Viertel 10, *at a quarter to 10*. The preposition auf = *to* (i. e., *on the way toward*, beginning at 9) is understood before 10. Ein Viertel (auf) 10 = *a quarter past 9*.—⁴ mit, *by*. In German one is said

to travel mit der Eisenbahn, *by rail*.—⁵ *noch eine, another; another in the sense of an additional one is always noch ein.*—⁶ *heute über acht Tage, the German way of saying a week from to-day.*—⁷ *alle vier Jahre, every four years.*—⁸ *At, um.*—⁹ *Why to-day is only, heute ist doch erst; doch = why.*—¹⁰ *There are . . . before, es sind noch . . . bis.*—¹¹ *on, an.*—¹² *Oh that's it, ach so!*—¹³ *family festival, Famili'enfest.*—¹⁴ *in my, im.*—¹⁵ *two years and a half; either zwei und ein halb Jahre, or drittehalb Jahre.*

THE PRONOUN.

119. Classification of Pronouns. The pronouns are of six kinds : personal, possessive, demonstrative, relative, interrogative and indefinite.

THE PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

120. The Forms. The personal pronouns are *ich, I*, of the first person ; *du, thou*, of the second, and *er, sie, es, he, she, it*, of the third. With these are classed the reflexive *sich*, and the intensive *selbst*, which are indeclinable. The others are inflected as follows :

Singular.

	Common Gender.		Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N.	ich	du	er	sie	es
G.	meiner (mein)	deiner (dein)	seiner (sein)	ihrer	seiner (sein) (es).
D.	mir	dir	ihm	ihr	ihm
A.	miß	diß	ihn	sie	es

Plural.

	Common Gender.		Common Gender.
N.	wir	ihr	sie
G.	unser (unster)	euer (eurer)	ihrer
D.	uns	euch	ihnen
A.	uns	euch	sie

1. The forms in parenthesis are rare or poetical.

121. The Pronouns of Address. The pronouns of address now employed in the language of every-day life are *du* and *Sie*, both of them ordinarily to be translated by *you*. *Du* is used in speaking to a member of one's own family, to an intimate friend, a young child, one of the lower animals, or any inanimate object. It is also used in addressing God. *Sie* is used in addressing strangers, acquaintances and less intimate friends.

1. The form *Sie* is simply the pronoun *sie* = *they*, used in polite address, and distinguished, in that use, by a capital; for which reason it takes its verb in the third person plural.

2. The above statements do not describe the usage of the past, nor of poetry (see § 301).

122. Non-personal Uses in the Third Person. Although called 'personal' pronouns, *er* and *sie* do not always refer, and *es* seldom refers, to a person.

1. Any masculine noun is regularly referred to by *er*, a feminine by *sie* and a neuter by *es*; e. g., *der Rock paßt nicht*; *er ist zu eng*, *the coat does not fit*; *it is too tight*; *ich kenne die Stelle*; *sie findet sich bei Schiller*, *I know the passage*; *it is found in Schiller*.

a. But such neuter nouns as *Weib*, *woman*, *Fräulein*, *young lady*, *Mädchen*, *girl*, are usually referred to, in accordance with the natural gender, by *sie* instead of *es*.

2. If a personal pronoun does not refer to a living object, and would stand in the genitive, or be governed by a preposition, it is usual to substitute for it either a demonstrative pronoun, or else a compound of the preposition with the adverb *da* (before vowels *dar*), *there*; e. g., *das ist meine Sache*; *Sie haben nichts damit* (not *mit ihr*) *zu thun*, *that is my affair*; *you have nothing to do with it*; *das Buch ist lehrreich*, aber *der Stil desselben* (not *der Stil von ihm*,

nor der Stil feiner) ist *schlecht*, *the book is instructive, but the style of it is bad.*

a. The substitution of a demonstrative for a personal pronoun is quite common, even when the pronoun refers to persons or is not governed by a preposition.

3. The neuter *es* is often used (somewhat like English *there*, but more freely) to anticipate a logical subject which for any reason it is desired to have come after the verb; e. g., *es sind ihrer drei*, *there are three of them*; *es irrt der Mensch*, *man errs*.

a. For other special uses of *es* see § 303.

123. The Reflexive. A reflexive pronoun denotes the subject in an objective relation.

1. In the third person, dative and accusative of all genders and both numbers, the reflexive is *sich*. It is to be translated *by himself, herself, itself, themselves*; as reflexive of *Sie* (see § 4, 2) *by yourself*; e. g., *er haßt sich* (acc.), *he hates himself*; *er schmeichelt sich* (dat.), *he flatters himself*; *sie machen sich* (*Sie machen sich*) *große Mühe*, *they give themselves (you give yourself) great pains*.

2. In the first and second persons, and in the genitive of the third, there is no separate reflexive, the proper form of the personal pronoun being used instead; as *ich haße mich*, *I hate myself*; *ihr schmeichelt euch*, *you flatter yourselves*.

3. In the plural *sich* is sometimes used with reciprocal force, and is then equivalent to *each other, one another*; e. g., *sie waren ehemals Freunde, aber jetzt hassen sie sich*, *they were once friends, but now they hate each other (or one another)*.

124. The Intensive. The pronoun *selbst* or *selber*, both indeclinable, may be used after any form of a personal pronoun, or after *sich*, for the sake of emphasis; e. g., *er ist selbst Dichter*, *he is a poet himself*; *er betrügt sich selbst*, *he deceives HIMSELF*.

EXERCISE XXIV.

READING LESSON: PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

Teure Mutter! Dein¹ lieber Brief vom 23. letzten² Monats kam mir³ erst gestern⁴ in die Hände. Du bist in Unruhe wegen meiner Gesundheit, aber Du⁵ brauchst Dich⁵ nicht darüber zu ängstigen. Mir geht es gut, aber wie es scheint, ist das nicht der Fall bei Euch⁶ zu Hause. Der kleine Unfall der Schwester macht mir immer noch bange. War er denn wirklich so unbedeutend? Wie befindet sie sich jetzt? Bitte, schreibe⁷ mir Weiteres darüber.

Ich hatte selbst vor ein paar Tagen ein kleines Abenteuer. Am letzten Sonnabend nämlich saß⁸ ich ruhig in meinem Zimmer und las⁹ in einer Zeitung; es war um halb 10 vormittags. Auf einmal¹⁰ klopfte¹¹ es an die Thüre; ich öffnete, und da standen zwei Polizisten vor mir. „Mein Herr,“ sagte¹² der eine derselben,¹³ „haben Sie Ihren Geldbeutel bei sich?“ „Gewiß,“ antwortete ich erstaunt und steckte die Hand in die Tasche. Aber der Beutel war nicht da.

VOCABULARY.

A'benteuer, *n. s. 1*, *adventure*.

ängstigen (sich), *v.*, torment one's self, be anxious.

a'ntworten, *v.*, *answer*; *pret.* antwortete.

bang(e), *adv.*, anxiously; bange machen, *with dat.*, to trouble.

Beutel, *m. s. 1*, purse.

ei'nmal, *adv.*, once; einma'l, just, pray.

erstaunt, *ppl.*, astonished.

Fall, *m. s. 2* (*pl. ä*), case, [fall].

Geld, *n. s. 3*, money, [yield].

Gesundheit, *f. w.*, health, [-sound-].

Hand, *f. s. 2* (*pl. ä*), hand.

klopfen, *v.*, knock; *pret.*, klopfte.

öffnen, *v.*, *open*; *pret.* öffnete.

Polizi'st, *m. w.*, policeman.

scheinen, *v.*, seem, shine.

sitzen, *v.*, sit; *pret.* saß.

Sonnabend, *m. s. 2*, Saturday, [eve of Sun-day].

stecken, *v.*, put, stick; *pret.* steckte.

stehen, *v.*, stand; *pret.* stand.

Tasche, *f. w.*, pocket.

Thür(e), *f. w.*, door.

u'nbedeutend, *adj.*, insignificant.

U'nfall, *m. s. 2* (*pl. ä*), accident.

U'ruhe, *f. w.*, unrest, concern.

NOTES.—¹ *Dein*, *your*, the possessive corresponding to *Du*, which the writer uses in addressing his mother.—² *letzten Monats*, *of last month*. Notice the weak adjective, § 107, 5; but one might also say *des letzten Monats*.—³ *kam mir . . . in die Hände*, *came into my hands, came to hand*; *mir* takes the place of a possessive agreeing with *Hände*. *Kam* is pret. of *kommen*.—⁴ *erst gestern*, *only yesterday*.—⁵ *Du, Dich*; all pronouns of address are written with a capital in letters (see § 4, 2). *Dich* is object of *ängstigen*; *Du brauchst Dich nicht zu ängstigen* = *you do not need to trouble yourself*.—⁶ *bei Euch*, *with you*, i. e., the family.—⁷ *Schreibe*, *write*; imperative 2. pers. sing.—⁸ *sass ich*, *I was sitting* (see Ex. V, n. 5).—⁹ *las*, *was reading*; pret. of *lesen*.—¹⁰ *auf einmal*, *all at once*.—¹¹ *Klopfte es*, *there was a knock*.—¹² *sagte*, *said*; pret. of *sagen*.—¹³ *derselben*, *of them* (§ 134, 1).

THE POSSESSIVES.

125. Strong Forms. The possessives which correspond to the various personal pronouns are as follows:

ich : mein, <i>my</i> .	es : sein, <i>its</i> .
du : dein, <i>thy</i> .	wir : unser, <i>our</i> .
er : sein, <i>his</i> .	ihr : euer, <i>your</i> .
sie : ihr, <i>her</i> .	sie : ihr, <i>their</i> .

Sie : Ihr, *your*.

Sein also stands for the indefinite possessive *one's*.

1. The possessives, when they agree with a noun, are declined in the singular like the article *ein*, in the plural like any strong adjective; thus:

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	M. F. N.
N.	mein	meine	mein	meine
G.	meines	meiner	meines	meiner
D.	meinem	meiner	meinem	meinen
A.	meinen	meine	mein	meine
N.	euer	eure	euer	eure
G.	eures	eurer	eures	eurer
D.	eurem	eurer	eurem	euren
A.	euren	eure	euer	eure

2. But when no noun follows (except sometimes in the predicate), the possessives, like *sein* and the numeral *ein*, take the ending *er* in the nominative singular masculine, and the ending *es* in the nominative and accusative singular neuter; e. g., *sein Vater ist Kaufmann, meiner ist Arzt*, *his father is a merchant, mine is a physician*.

126. Weak Forms. Any of the above mentioned possessives may be preceded by *der*, and take, then, the regular inflection of a weak adjective; e. g., *seine Eltern sind reich, die meinen sind arm*, *his parents are rich, mine are poor*.

1. Each of the possessives forms, further, a derivative stem in *ig* (*unser* and *euer* losing their *e* before the suffix), which is used only after *der* and has also the inflection of a weak adjective; thus instead of *meiner* and *die meinen*, in the last two examples, one might say *der meinige* and *die meinigen*. Neither of the weak forms of the possessive can be used with accompanying noun.

a. Observe that the forms described in the last three paragraphs correspond to the English 'compound' possessives *mine, thine, hers*, etc. But the latter may also be represented, in the predicate, by the uninflected *mein, dein*, etc.

2. *Das Meine, das Meinige*, etc. (as substantives) refer to property; *die Meinen, die Meinigen*, etc., to friends, relatives, partisans, or the like; e. g., *er hat das Seine (das Seinige) verschwendet*, *he has squandered his property*; *ich grüße dich und die Deinen*, *I greet you and yours*.

127. Possessive Compounds. Each of the possessive stems, amplified by the syllable *et*, enters into composition with the three prepositions *halb* (*halber, halben*), *on behalf of*, *wegen*, *on account of*, and *um . . . willen*, *for the sake of*, giving the forms *meinetwegen*, *on my account*, *for aught I care*, *so far as I am concerned*,

meinethalb, *on my account*, um meinetwillen, *for my sake*, etc.

1. Meinetwegen, *on my account*, deinetthalben, *on your behalf*, etc., take the place of wegen meiner, *on account of me*, deiner halben, *on behalf of you*, etc. On the origin of these forms see § 306.

2. Each of the possessives, in the genitive singular masculine, strong form (meines, ihres, etc.), enters into composition with gleichen, from the adjective gleich, *like*, giving the forms meinesgleichen, *the like of me*, Ihresgleichen, *the like of you*, etc. These forms are invariable.

128. Congruence of the Possessive. The possessive sein corresponds, in the singular number, to masculine and neuter nouns, ihr to feminines; e. g., der Baum hat seine Blätter verloren, *the tree has lost its leaves*; selbst die Freiheit hat ihre Nachteile, *even freedom has its disadvantages*.

1. But with neuter nouns whose natural gender is feminine the possessive is apt to be ihr; e. g., das Mädchen hat ihre Mutter verloren, *the girl has lost her mother*.

2. With a neuter collective noun the possessive is regularly sein, though English may require *their*; e. g., das Volk bestand auf seine Rechte, *the people insisted upon their rights*.

EXERCISE XXV.

READING LESSON: PERSONAL AND POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

„Ist dies Ihr Eigentum?“ fragte er nun, und damit legte er einen Beutel vor mir auf den Tisch. „Der Beutel ist allerdings mein,“ antwortete ich, „aber wie in aller Welt kommt er in Ihre Hände?“ „Das ist unsere Sache,“ antwortete er. „Aber ist es denn wirklich der Ihrige? Besehen Sie ihn genau.“ Darauf nahm ich den Beutel in die Hand; es war doch nicht meiner, nur dem meinigen sehr ähnlich. Jetzt erklärte ich ihnen meinen Irrtum.

Sie sahen⁴ sich verschmigt in die Augen und redeten leise ein paar Worte mit einander. Darauf sagte der ältere der beiden Männer zu mir: „Wo waren Sie denn gestern Abend, und wie viel Geld hatten Sie bei sich?“ Ich nannte ihm den Ort, einen gewissen Konzertgarten, und die Summe von 75 Mark.⁵ „Das stimmt genau,“ sagte jetzt der jüngere zu seinem Kameraden. „Run,“ sagte der andere zu mir: „Ist dies vielleicht der Ihrige?“ Damit zog er einen anderen Beutel aus der Tasche. Diesmal war es wirklich der meinige; auch stimmte der Inhalt. Die Geschichte⁶ mit dem falschen Beutel war nur eine Prüfung meiner Redlichkeit.

VOCABULARY.

ähnlich, *adj.* (*dat.*), similar.
 a'llerdi'ngs, *adv.*, to be sure.
 be'sehen, *v.*, look at, [*be-see*].
 dami't, *adv.*, therewith.
 dara'uf, *adv.*, there-upon.
 Ei'gentum, *n. s. 3*, property.
 [own-dom].
 ein'a'nder, *pron.* (*indecl.*), each
 other, one another.
 er'klären, *v.*, explain; *pret.* er-
 klärte.
 fal'sch, *adj.*, false, wrong.
 genau', *adj.*, exactly, carefully.

Inhalt, *m. s. 2*, contents,
 [in-hold].
 Kamera'b, *m. w.*, comrade.
 legen, *v.*, lay; *pret.* legte.
 leise, *adv.*, softly, in low tone.
 Mark, *f. w.*, mark.
 nennen, *v.*, name; *pret.* nannte.
 Prü'fung, *f. w.*, trial, proving.
 Redlichkeit, *f. w.*, honesty.
 stimmen, *v.*, tally, coincide.
 Summe, *f. w.*, sum.
 verschmigt, *adv.*, shrewdly.
 Wort, *n. s. 2-3*,⁷ word.
 ziehen, *v.*, draw; *pret.* zog, [tow].

NOTES.—¹ Vor mir auf den Tisch; after legen, setzen and other verbs of placing, auf takes the acc. on account of the motion implied. Vor mir, *dat.*, as answering the question *whereabouts* upon the table.
 —² es; notice the gender; Beutel is *masc.*, but es is used without regard to the gender of the predicate der Ihrige, to denote identity.
 —³ es war doch nicht meiner, *it was not mine after all*. The predicate possessive is apt to be declined when the noun to which it refers is not expressed in the same sentence.—⁴ sahen sich . . . in die Augen, *looked in each other's eyes*; sahen, *pret.* of sehen; sich, *dat.* in reciprocal sense, § 123, 3.—⁵ Mark, *marks*; the singular form is always used after a numeral. The mark is the German unit of currency = \$0.25.
 —⁶ Geschichte mit, *affair of*.—⁷ Worte means *words* in connected discourse; Wörter, *words* without connection.

EXERCISE XXVI.

READING LESSON : CONGRUENCE OF PERSONAL, POSSESSIVE
AND REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS.

NOTE.—The same matter is given below in three different forms:
(a) as it would appear if written, say, by a teacher to *one or more* pupils who had just left school ; (b) as it would be written by a father to his son ; (c) as it would be written by a father to his two sons.

(a)

Ich sage Ihnen aufrichtig, Sie haben eine Zeit schwerer Prüfung vor sich ; darum hüten Sie sich vor¹ falschen Schritten. Ihre Eltern, Ihre Lehrer, erwarten viel von Ihnen ; auf Ihnen und auf Ihrem Glücke ruhen ihre Hoffnungen. Aber Sie kennen Ihre Pflicht ; ich brauche sie Ihnen nicht zu erklären. Vergeuden Sie nicht Ihre Zeit ; verlassen Sie sich so viel als möglich² auf Ihre eigne Kraft, auf Ihren eignen Fleiß. Vor allen Dingen seien Sie³ sich selber treu.

(b)

Ich sage Dir aufrichtig, Du hast eine Zeit schwerer Prüfung vor Dir ; darum hüte⁴ Dich vor falschen Schritten. Deine Eltern, Deine Lehrer, erwarten viel von Dir ; auf Dir und auf Deinem Glücke ruhen ihre Hoffnungen. Aber Du kennst Deine Pflicht ; ich brauche sie Dir nicht zu erklären. Vergeude⁴ nicht Deine Zeit ; verlasse⁴ Dich so viel als möglich auf Deine eigne Kraft, auf Deinen eignen Fleiß. Vor allen Dingen sei⁴ Dir selber treu.

(c)

Ich sage Euch aufrichtig, Ihr habt eine Zeit schwerer Prüfung vor Euch ; darum hütet⁵ Euch vor falschen Schritten. Eure Eltern, Eure Lehrer, erwarten viel von Euch ; auf Euch und auf Eurem Glücke ruhen ihre Hoffnungen. Aber Ihr kennt Eure Pflicht ; ich brauche sie Euch nicht zu erklären. Vergeudet⁵ nicht Eure Zeit ; verlaßt⁵ Euch so viel als möglich auf Eure eigne Kraft, auf Euren eignen Fleiß. Vor allen Dingen seid⁵ Euch selber treu.

VOCABULARY.

aufrichtig, <i>adj.</i> , sincere, frank, [up-right].	Pflicht, <i>f. w.</i> , duty, [plight].
barn'm, <i>adv.</i> , = um das, there- fore.	ruhen, <i>v.</i> , rest.
eigen, <i>adj.</i> , own.	Schritt, <i>m. s. 2</i> , step.
Fleiß, <i>m. s. (no pl.)</i> , industry.	schwer, <i>adj.</i> , heavy, hard.
Hoffnung, <i>f. w.</i> , hope.	treu, <i>adj.</i> , true, faithful.
hüten (sich), <i>v.</i> , be on one's guard, [heed].	vergeuden, <i>v.</i> , waste.
	verlassen (sich), <i>v.</i> , rely (upon = auf).

NOTES.—¹ *hüten Sie sich vor*, be on your guard against (see Ex. VIII, n. 14).—² *so viel als möglich* = möglichst viel, as much as possible.—³ *sein Sie*, be; *imv. 3.* (= 2.) *pl. of sein*.—⁴ *hüte, vergeude, verlasse, sei*; all *imv. 2. pers. sing.*—⁵ *hütet, vergeudet, verläßt, seid*; all *imv. 2. pers. pl.*

EXERCISE XXVII.

COLLOQUY.

I.

Guten Abend, Herr Müller. Wie befinden Sie sich heute abend?

Ich selbst bin gesund, aber es geht nicht gut bei mir zu Hause.

Das thut mir leid. Es ist doch keines der Kinder wieder krank?

Ja, leider¹; die Kleine hat wieder Kopfweh — dazu ein wenig Fieber.

Das ist sonderbar. Geben Sie ihr regelmäßig die Arznei?

Gewiß, aber es hilft nichts mehr. Ich bitte Sie, sofort zu uns zu kommen.

Gleich diesen Augenblick meinerwegen. Bitte, setzen Sie sich. In zwei Minuten bin ich bereit.

Ich danke Ihnen sehr. Sie machen sich viel Mühe um uns zu helfen.

Bitte, sprechen Sie nicht davon. Ich thue nur meine Pflicht. Wozu bin ich denn Arzt?

II.

Good evening, doctor. How do you do this evening?

Very well, thank you. How goes it at your house?

I am sorry, but the little girl is sick again.¹

Is it possible? What is the matter with her this time?

Oh, she has the old headache again,² and withal a little fever.

I must see³ her again. Wait a moment. I shall be⁴ ready directly.

I thank you very much, but you do not need⁵ to hurry. We have time enough, so far as I am concerned.⁶

VOCABULARY.

Arznei, *f. w.*, medicine.

beeilen (sich), *v.*, hurry.

bereit, *adj.*, ready, [-ready].

danke, *v. (dat.)*, thank.

dazu, *adv.*, besides, withal.

fehlen, *v.*, fail; was fehlt, *with dat.*, what is the matter?

Fieber, *n. s. 1*, fever.

genug, *adj.*, enough.

gesund, *adj.*, well, healthy, [-sound].

gleich, *adv.*, directly; *as adj.*, like, [-like].

helfen, *v.*, help; hilft, helps.

Kopfschmerz, *n. s. 2*, headache, [-woe].

kranke, *adj.*, sick, ill.

leid, *adj.*, disagreeable; es thut mir leid, I am sorry, [loath].

Mühe, *f. w.*, pains, trouble.

müssen, *v.*, must; ich muß, I must.

regelmäßig, *adj.*, regular.

sprechen, *v.*, speak.

warten, *v.*, wait.

wozu, *adv.*, to what end, what for.

NOTES.—¹ leider, *unfortunately, alas*; shortened from was noch leider ist, *what is still more disagreeable*.—² again, wieder, directly after verb.—³ see her again, sie wieder sehen.—⁴ I shall be . . . directly, ich bin gleich . . .—⁵ you do not need to hurry, Sie brauchen sich nicht zu beeilen.—⁶ so far as I am concerned, § 141, 1.

THE DEMONSTRATIVES.

129. The Forms. The common demonstrative pronouns are *dies*, *this*, *jen*, *that*, and *der*, *that*. To these are to be added the so-called determinatives, *derjenige*, *that*, *derjelbe*, *the same*, and *folch*, *such*. The first three are declined as follows :

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	M. F. N.
N.	diefer	diese	diefes, dies,	diese
G.	diefes	diefer	diefes	diefer
D.	diefem	diefer	diefem	diefen
A.	diefen	diese	diefes	diese
N.	jener	jene	jenes	jene
G.	jenes	jener	jenes	jener
D.	jenem	jener	jenem	jenen
A.	jenen	jene	jenes	jene
N.	der	die	das	die
G.	deffen (des)	deren (der)	deffen (des)	deren, derer, (der)
D.	dem	der	dem	denen (den)
A.	den	die	das	die

1. All the demonstratives can be used either substantively or adjectively. When *der* is used adjectively it is inflected precisely like the article *der*, which is nothing but a demonstrative pronoun weakened in force by loss of its accent. Hence the short forms in parenthesis.

130. Use of *dies* and *jen*. *Dies*, cognate with *this*, denotes proximity, while *jen*, cognate with *yon*, denotes remoteness; e. g., *jener Berg* (*dort*) *ist viel höher als dieser* (*hier*), *that mountain* (*yonder*) *is much higher than this one* (*here*); in *diesem Leben*, *in this life* (i. e., the life that now is); in *jener Welt*, *in that world* (i. e., the world to come).

1. Referring to two objects lately mentioned *dies* means *the latter* and *jen* *the former*.

2. The short form *dies* is especially common as absolute subject, being used without reference to the gender or number of a predicate noun ; e. g., *dies ist meine Schwester, this is my sister ; dies sind Freunde von mir, these are friends of mine.*

131. Use of *der*. *Der* denotes neither proximity nor remoteness, but simple emphasis. It is distinguished in speech by its accent, and in print, if necessary, by spaced type ; e. g., *der Mensch ist sterblich ; in der Hinsicht gleicht er dem Tierc, man is mortal ; in that respect he is like the brute.*

1. The form *das*, like *dies*, is often used without reference to the gender or number of a predicate noun ; e. g., *das ist meine Schwester, that is my sister ; das sind Freunde von mir, those are friends of mine.* Note that the verb agrees in number with the predicate noun.

2. *Der* often takes the place of an emphatic personal pronoun ; e. g., *der ist kein Dichter, he is no poet.*

132. Demonstrative Compounds. For a case-form of *das*, used alone in the dative or accusative after a preposition, and not referring to a living object, it is usual to substitute a compound of *da* ; e. g., *davon ist keine Frage, there is no question about that.*

a. In like manner a compound of *hier* may be substituted for a case-form of *dies* under similar circumstances ; e. g., *hierin liegt der Unterschied, in this lies the difference.*

1. The three prepositions *wegen*, *halb* and *um* willen enter into composition with *des*, not with *da*, giving the forms *deshalb*, *deswegen*, rarely *deswillen*, all meaning *on that account.*

2. *Desgleichen* and *dergleichen* are indeclinable pronominal adjectives meaning *such like, the like of that.*

133. Derjenige. The determinative pronoun *derjenige* inflects both parts throughout, the *der* being declined like the article *der*, the stem *jenig* like a weak adjective ; thus :

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	M. F. N.
N.	derjenige	diejenige	dasjenige	diejenigen
G.	desjenigen	derjenigen, etc.		derjenigen, etc.

1. *Derjenige* is generally followed by a relative pronoun, in connection with which it means *he (who), the one (who), that (which)*.

134. Derselbe. The inflection of *derselbe* is similar to that of *derjenige* ; thus :

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	M. F. N.
N.	derselbe	dieselbe	dasfelbe	dieselben
G.	desfelben	derfelben, etc.		derfelben, etc.

1. *Derselbe* means *the same*, but it is very often used where English employs a personal pronoun (cf. § 122, 2).

135. Solch. *Solch, such*, has regular adjective inflection, but may also stand uninflected, especially before an adjective ; e. g., *solch schönes Wetter* (more common than *solches schöne Wetter*), *such fine weather*.

1. *Solch* may precede or follow *ein* ; if it precedes, it is uninflected ; if it follows, inflected ; thus *such a man* is either *solch ein Mann* or *ein solcher Mann*.

a. Instead of *solch ein*, *so ein* is common.

EXERCISE XXVIII.

COLLOQUY : DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

I.

Bitte, setzen Sie sich. Nehmen Sie diesen Stuhl am Ofen.
Behalten Sie den für sich. Ich hole¹ mir jenen am Fenster.
Nun, wie geht's Ihnen seit jenem Abend im Theater ?

Im ganzen recht gut ; aber dieses ewige Studiren² macht mir bisweilen Kopfschmerz.

Das ist schade ; aber Sie lernen dabei³ doch dies und das ?

O, natürlich. Nur ist es immer dieselbe Geschichte. Ich denke oft an jene Zeit vor drei Monaten.

Ja, das waren schöne Tage. — Was hören Sie denn von jenem alten Herrn, dem⁴ mit der hübschen Tochter ?

Der wohnt nicht mehr in jener Gegend ; sein Sohn und dessen⁵ Frau machten ihm das Leben zu sauer.

Ja, die⁶ waren auch mir unerträglich. Mit solchen Leuten ist ein freundliches Verhältniß unmöglich.

II.

Please take a seat.⁷ That⁸ chair is not comfortable—take this one.

That one⁹ by the window is better still.¹⁰ I will get that.¹¹

Well, how do you find yourself since that week in the country?¹²

Oh, don't speak of that. The contrast between that time and this gives me the headache.

Poor fellow! For my part,¹³ I find this life here very pleasant.

Of course¹⁴—these everlasting books. They are your best friends.

To be sure ; a good book is always the same, not this¹⁵ to-day and that to-morrow, like human beings.¹⁶

Very fine ; where did you get¹⁷ that saying?

VOCABULARY.

behalten, v., keep, [behold].

bequem, adj., comfortable.

biswei'len, adv., at times.

ewig, adv., everlasting, [aye-].

Gegend, f. w., region.

Gegenſatz, m. s. 2 (pl. ä), contrast.

holen, v., fetch ; pret. holte.

hören, v., hear.

hübsch, adj., pretty.

lernen, v., learn.

oft, adv., often, oft.

recht, adv., right, very.

ſauer, adj., bitter, sour.

Schade, <i>m. m.x. (pl. Schäden),</i>	studie'ren, <i>v., study.</i>
injury, loss ; das ist schade,	u'nerträglich, <i>adj., intolerable.</i>
that is a pity, [scathe].	unmöglich, <i>adj., impossible.</i>
seit, <i>prep. (dat.), since.</i>	Verhältnis, <i>n. s. 2, relation.</i>
Spruch, <i>m. s. 2, saying.</i>	wohe'r, <i>adv., whence.</i>

NOTES.—¹ *ich hole, I will get*; the present tense denoting an immediate purpose.—² *Studieren*, a verbal noun, or infinitive used as a noun; all such are *n. s. 1.*—³ *Dabei, incidentally, in so doing, in connection with that.* Never translate *dabei* by *thereby*, which is *dadurch*.—⁴ *dem, the one.*—⁵ *dessen Frau, the latter's wife, the son's wife*; *seine Frau* would mean *his own wife*.—⁶ *die, they, those people.*—⁷ *take a seat, nehmen Sie Platz.*—⁸ *that, der.*—⁹ *that one, jener.*—¹⁰ *better still, noch besser.*—¹¹ *that, den.*—¹² *in the country*; see *Ex. IX, n. 5.*—¹³ *for my part*; see *Ex. XXI, n. 7.*—¹⁴ *of course, natürlich.*—¹⁵ *this to-day, heute dies.*—¹⁶ *like human beings, wie die Menschen.*—¹⁷ *where did you get, woher holten Sie, or woher haben Sie.*

THE RELATIVES.

136. The Forms. The ordinary relative pronouns are *der* and *welch*, both meaning *who, which, that*. They are declined as follows :

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>M. F. N.</i>
N.	der	die	das	die
G.	dessen	deren	dessen	deren
D.	dem	der	dem	denen
A.	den	die	das	die
N.	welcher	welche	welches	welche
G.	welches	welcher	welches	welcher
D.	welchem	welcher	welchem	welchen
A.	welchen	welche	welches	welche

1. The interrogative pronouns *wer, who*, and *was, what* (for their inflection see § 143), are also used as relatives, but only as compound or indefinite relatives = *he who, whoever, that which, whatever*. (For an important exception with regard to *was* see § 141, 2.)

137. The Relative Clause. In a relative clause the inflected verb comes last. The relative pronoun itself comes first (except when it is governed by a preposition) and agrees with its antecedent in gender and number; e. g., *weche der Mutter, deren Kind undankbar ist, alas for the mother whose child is ungrateful; er ist ein Knabe, von dem ich nur Gutes gehört habe, he is a boy of whom I have heard only good reports.*

1. The relative cannot be omitted, as it so often is in English; e. g., *the man I mean* is *der Mann, den ich meine; the house I live in, das Haus, in welchem (or worin) ich wohne.*

138. Use of *der* and *welch*. Either relative may refer to a person or to a thing. *Welch* is used both adjectively and substantively, *der* always substantively; e. g., *er ist ein Mann, der (or welcher) stets die Wahrheit spricht, welcher (never der) Eigenschaft er sein Glück verdankt, he is a man who always speaks the truth, to which trait he owes his success.*

1. In the genitive the forms of *der* are required; elsewhere there is a free choice between *der* and *welch*, subject only to considerations of style and euphony.

139. Substitutes for the Relative. For the dative or accusative of *der* or *welch*, depending upon a preposition and not referring to a living object, it is usual to substitute a compound of the preposition with the adverb *wo*, *where* (before vowels *wor*); e. g., *das ist der Punkt, worauf ich bestehe, that is the point I insist upon (the point whereupon I insist).*

1. For the genitive of a relative depending on one of the prepositions *halb* or *wegen*, and not referring to persons, is substituted one of the compounds *weshalb*, or *weßwegen*; e. g., *ich war krank, weshalb ich zu Hause bleiben mußte, I was sick, for which reason I had to remain at home.*

2. A simple adverb may take the place of a relative ; e. g., *der Ort, wo ich wohne, the place where (= in which) I live ; die Art, wie er lebt, the way (in which) he lives.*

140. Use of *wer* as Relative. *Wer* as relative can have no antecedent, being itself both antecedent and relative ; e. g., *wer gesund ist (never der, wer gesund ist) braucht keinen Arzt, he who is well does not need a physician.*

1. But when *wer* has gone before, its implied antecedent may be expressed, in the form of a demonstrative, for emphasis ; e. g., *wer gesund ist, der braucht keinen Arzt.*

2. Followed by *auch*, *nur* or *immer* (other words may or may not intervene) *wer* acquires the force of an indefinite relative = *whoever* ; e. g., *sie ist jedenfalls hübsch, wer sie auch sein mag, she is pretty at any rate, whoever she may be.*

141. Use of *was* as Relative. The use of the neuter *was* as compound and indefinite relative = *what, whatever, that which, the thing which*, etc., runs nearly parallel to that of the masculine-feminine *wer* ; e. g., *was ich sehe, (das) weiß ich, what I see, (that) I know ; es ist falsch, was man auch fagen mag, it is false, whatever they may say.*

a. So also when the antecedent is a sentence ; e. g., *es gelang mir nicht, was mich sehr ärgerte, I did not succeed, which vexed me greatly.*

1. This *was* is often best translated by *so far as* ; e. g., *was mich betrifft, so far as concerns me.*

2. After any neuter pronoun, or adjective (especially a superlative) taken in a general sense, the regular relative is *was*, not *das* ; e. g., *nicht alles, was glänzt, ist Gold, not all that glitters is gold ; das ist es, was mich ärgert, it is that that vexes me ; das ist das Beste, was ich thun kann, that is the best that I can do ; das Große, was ich an ihm bewundre, the great qualities that I admire in him.*

EXERCISE XXIX.

READING LESSON: RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

142. Rule of Order III: The Dependent Order. In a dependent sentence the verb comes at the end; e. g., wissen Sie, ob der Doktor zu Hause ist? *do you know whether the doctor is at home?* erinnern Sie sich, wo Sie gestern zu dieser Zeit waren? *do you remember where you were yesterday at this time?*

a. The case in which 'the verb' is in a compound tense, and so consists of more than one word, will be provided for further on.

1. This rule covers all sentences introduced by a subordinating conjunction, a relative pronoun or particle, or an indirect interrogative.

2. Subordinate sentences of every kind are usually set off by a comma.

Göttingen, den 5. Juni, 1893.

Lieber Herr Müller! Ihr freundlicher Brief, in dem Sie mir so viel Interessantes über die Schule erzählen, und der nun leider schon zwei Wochen unbeantwortet liegt,¹ war mir höchst willkommen. Es freut mich sehr,² daß die guten Freunde, mit denen ich lange Zeit so glücklich lebte, noch immer an mich denken. Es giebt ein Sprichwort, welches lautet: „Aus den Augen, aus dem Sinn“; aber, was mich betrifft, so³ finde ich hier unter lauter Fremden, daß ich jetzt erst meine alten Freunde richtig schätze.

Was Sie von dem jungen Fritz Moser schreiben, dessen Streiche Ihnen so viel Mühe machen, ist mir ganz begreiflich. Der Junge war von Kind auf⁴ ein Taugenichts, der nur an dumme Streiche⁵ dachte.⁶ Ich weiß, daß er nicht redlich ist, und wer keinen Charakter hat, dem⁷ ist nun nicht zu helfen. Alles, was der Lehrer für einen solchen Schüler thut, ist verlorene Mühe. Für den Rat, den Sie mir in Bezug auf meine Studien geben, danke ich Ihnen sehr. Da Sie mich so lange kennen, wissen Sie am besten, wozu⁸ ich fähig bin, und welche⁹ Fehler ich zu vermeiden habe.

VOCABULARY.

begreiflich, <i>adj.</i> , comprehensible.	lauten, <i>v.</i> , purport, run.
betreffen, <i>v.</i> , concern ; betrifft, concerns.	Mühe, <i>f. w.</i> , trouble, pains.
Bezug, <i>m. s. 2</i> (<i>pl. ü</i>), reference, regard.	Rat, <i>m. s.</i> (<i>no pl.</i>), advice.
Charakter, <i>m. s. 2</i> (<i>pl. -te're</i>), character.	redlich, <i>adj.</i> , honest, candid.
da, <i>sub. conj.</i> , as, since.	schätzen, <i>v.</i> , value, esteem.
daß, <i>sub. conj.</i> , that.	Sinn, <i>m. s. 2</i> , sense, mind.
dumm, <i>adj.</i> , stupid, [<i>dumb</i>].	Sprichwort, <i>n. s. 3</i> , proverb.
fähig, <i>adj.</i> , capable, fit, suited.	Streich, <i>m. s. 2</i> , prank, trick, stroke.
Fehler, <i>m. s. 1</i> , mistake.	Tau'genichts, <i>m.</i> (<i>indecl.</i>), good-for-nothing.
freuen, <i>v.</i> , rejoice ; es freut mich, I am glad.	unbeantwortet, <i>ppl.</i> , unanswered.
glücklich, <i>adj.</i> , happy.	verloren, <i>ppl.</i> , lost, [<i>forlorn</i>].
	vermeiden, <i>v.</i> , avoid.
	willkommen, <i>adj.</i> , welcome.

NOTES. — ¹ *Liegt*, *has lain, has been lying* (Ex. VII, n. 1). — ² *so finde ich*, *I find*. When a subordinate sentence has gone before, the principal sentence must stand in the inverted order, and *so* is often put before the principal verb to make the inversion easier. Such a *so* should not be translated. — ³ *jetzt erst*, *lit. now first*; but *I value now first* = *I just begin to value*. — ⁴ *von Kind auf*, *from a child up*; i. e., *from childhood*. — ⁵ *dumme Streiche*, *mischief*. — ⁶ *dachte*, *thought, was thinking*; pret. of *denken*. — ⁷ *Dem ist nicht zu helfen*, *HE* (i. e., *such a person*) *is not to be helped*. It is necessary to use *dem* here because *helfen* governs the dat. One could not say *wer nicht redlich ist, ist nicht zu helfen*. — ⁸ *wozu, welche*; these are indirect interrogatives, and as such require the dependent order. The direct form would be: *Wozu bin ich fähig? Welche Fehler habe ich zu vermeiden?*

THE INTERROGATIVES.

143. The Forms. The interrogative pronouns are *wer*, *who*, *was*, *what*, *welch*, *which*, *what*, and *was für* (*ein*), *what sort of* (*a*), *what*.

1. The inflection of *wer* and *was*, which do not vary for number, is as follows :

N. wer	was
G. wessen, was	wessen, was
D. wem	—
A. wen	was

a. The short form *was* is little used except in the compounds *weshalb* and *weswegen*, *why*. The missing dative of *was* is supplied by the compounds of *wo* (§ 144, 1).

2. *Welch* is inflected like the relative *welch*, but is often uninflected before *ein* or an adjective, especially in exclamatory phrases ; e. g., *welch* (ein) *schönes Bild*, *what (a) pretty picture*.

3. In *was für ein* the *was* does not vary, but *ein* is inflected (in the singular) like the article *ein*.

144. Use of *wer* and *welch*. *Wer* is used of persons only, *was* of things only, and *welch* of either persons or things. *Wer* and *was* are used without a noun, *welch* either with or without ; e. g., *wer ist jener Mann?* *who is that man?* *welches Buch* meinen Sie? *what (which) book do you mean?*

1. For the dative and accusative of *was*, dependent on a preposition, it is usual to substitute a compound of *wo* ; e. g., *wozu der Lärm?* *why the fuss?* *woran arbeiten Sie?* *what are you working at?*

145. Use of *was für* (ein). In this pronoun the *für* is without prepositional force, and *ein* takes the case required by the syntax of the sentence. *Was* may be separated by one or more words from *für ein* ; e. g., *was für ein Baum ist das?* or *was ist das für ein Baum?* *what kind of a tree is that?* *was für einen Lehrer haben Sie?* *what kind of a teacher have you?*

1. In exclamatory phrases *was für ein* is often best translated by *what* ; e. g., *was für Unsinn!* *what nonsense!*

EXERCISE XXX.

COLLOQUY : INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

I.

Wer ist das auf dem Bilde an der Wand ?

Das ist Bismarck. Wozu haben Sie denn Ihre Augen ?

Ja, die große Photographie ; wer wüßte¹ das nicht ! Ich meine nicht die.

Nun, welches Bild meinen Sie denn ?

Ich meine das kleine Ding, welches unter der Photographie hängt.

Ach so ! Nun, wofür halten Sie das ? Betrachten Sie es genau.

Ich sehe, es ist eine Federzeichnung. Von wem haben Sie sie ?

Von meinem Freunde Ludwig. Raten Sie nun einmal, wer die beiden Personen darauf sind.

Dies ist offenbar Ludwig ; aber ich weiß nicht, wer der andere ist.

Was Sie doch sagen² ! Nun, der andere bin³ ich selbst.

Sie ? Wer das glauben könnte⁴ ! Woher haben Sie denn den sonderbaren Ausdruck ? Und was für einen Hut tragen Sie ?

Das ist nur ein Spaß Ludwigs ; wer ihn kennt, versteht das ohne Weiteres.

II.

What sort of a picture is that ?

What picture are you talking about⁵ ? The large photograph⁶ ?

As if any one would not know⁷ a photograph of Bismarck. I mean the little picture below.⁸

Oh, that's it. That is a pen-drawing. Guess from whom I have it.

I do not know—perhaps from your friend Ludwig.

Right ; now guess whom the drawing represents.

This here is certainly Ludwig himself, but who in all the world⁹ is the other ?

So¹⁰ you do not know¹¹ him. Well, the other is I myself.

But what an expression ! And what sort of a thing is that¹² you have on your head ?

VOCABULARY.

ander, *adj.*, other.

Ausdruck, *m. s. 2 (pl. ü)*, expression.

da'rstellen, *v.*, represent.

Feder, *f. w.*, pen, feather.

glauben, *v.*, be-lieve.

halten, *v.*, hold, consider.

hängen, *v.*, hang; hängt, hangs.

Hut, *m. s. 2 (pl. ü)*, hat.

können, *v.*, can.

Kopf, *m. s. 2 (pl. ö)*, head.

ohne, *prep. (acc.)*, without.

Perso'n, *f. w.*, person.

Photographie', *f. w.*, photograph.

raten, *v.*, guess.

Spaß, *m. s. 2 (pl. ä)*, jest.

tragen, *v.*, wear, [drag, draw].

verstehen, *v.*, understand.

Wand, *f. s. 2 (pl. ä)*, wall.

Zeichnung, *f. w.*, drawing.

NOTES.—¹ *wer wüßte*, *who would know?* pret. subj. of *wissen*.—² *was Sie doch sagen!* *you don't say so!* quite different from *was sagen Sie?* *what do you say?*—³ *Der andere bin ich selbst*, *the other is I myself*; for *it is I* Ger. says *ich bin es*, etc.—⁴ *wer das glauben könnte!* *as if any one could believe that!* different from *wer könnte das glauben?* *who could believe that?* The former *wer* is really an indirect interrogative, with something like *I'd like to know* understood.—⁵ *about*, *von*, at the beginning of the sentence.—⁶ *the large photograph*; repeat the *von*.—⁷ *As if . . . know*, *wer . . . könnte*, the verb in dependent order (see n. 4 above). *Könnte* is pret. subj. of *können*, as *könnte* is of *können*.—⁸ *below*, *darunter*.—⁹ *who in all the world*, *wer in aller Welt*.—¹⁰ *so*, also.—¹¹ *know*, *kennen*.—¹² *that (that) you have*, *das, was Sie . . . haben*. But here one might say *das, daß*, since the pronoun refers to a particular thing, i. e., is not, or need not be, taken in a 'general sense'; see § 141, 2.

THE INDEFINITE PRONOUNS AND PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES.

146. **III.** *All*, *all*, has regular adjective inflection, but is sometimes left uninflected, especially before *der* or a possessive; e. g., *alle guten Dinge*, *all good things*; *alles frische Wasser*, *all fresh water*; *all mein Glück*, *all my happiness*.

1. The form *alle* occurs after certain prepositions; e. g., *trotz alle dem*, *in spite of all that*.

2. The neuter *alles*, used alone, means *everything*.

147. Ander. *Ander, other*, has regular adjective inflection.

1. The English *another*, = *one more*, is expressed not by *ander*, but by *noch ein* ; e. g., *ich wünschte noch ein Billet, I want another ticket* (*ein anderes* would mean *a different one*).

148. Beide. *Beide, both*, has regular adjective inflection, and is apt to take the place of *zwei* after a declined word ; e. g., *die beiden Parteien, the two parties* ; *meine beiden Schwestern, my two sisters*.

1. In general *beide* is used only in the plural, but the neuter singular *beides* occurs. *Both and* is usually expressed by *sowohl als* ; e. g., *both the king and the people, sowohl der König als das Volk*.

149. Ein-. The use of *ein, one*, as pronoun has already been referred to (§ 116, 1).

1. In the oblique cases *ein* takes the place of *man*, which is indeclinable ; e. g., *es gefällt einem nicht, it does not please one*.

150. Einig-, etlich. These words both mean *some* and have regular adjective inflection. The singular is little used, being replaced by *etwas*. Of the two words *einig-* is the one more commonly used.

151. Etwas. *Etwas, something, somewhat, some*, is indeclinable and is used either with or without a noun. It is the ordinary equivalent of English *some, any*, before a singular noun of any gender and in any case ; e. g., *nehmen Sie etwas Brod, take some bread* ; *mit etwas Furcht = mit einiger Furcht, with some fear*.

1. *So etwas* is equivalent to *some (any) such thing*.

152. Irgend. This is an indeclinable word which is rarely used alone, but is placed before numerous words to give the sense of English *some, any* ; e. g., *irgend einer or*

irgend jemand, *some one, any one*; irgend etwas, *anything, something*; irgendwo, *anywhere*, etc.

153. Jed-, jeglich-, jedermann. Jed and jeglich mean *each, every*, and have full adjective inflection. Either may be preceded by ein. Jedermann, *every one*, cannot be used with a noun and has no inflection except a genitive in s; e. g., jeder (ein jeder, jeder Mensch, jedermann) hat seine guten Eigenschaften, *every one has his good qualities*.

154. Jemand. Jemand, *some one*, is never used with a noun and has no inflection except a genitive in s.

155. Rein. Rein is the negative of ein and is inflected in the same way, except that it has a plural. It takes the place of English *no, none, not a, not any*; e. g., du bittest um Geld, aber ich habe keines, *you ask for money, but I haven't any*; das ist kein Apfelbaum, *that is not an apple-tree*.

156. Man. Man is a wholly indefinite and indeclinable pronoun meaning *one, they, people*. Often it is best rendered by the passive voice or by a phrase with *there*; e. g., man sagt, *it is said*; man klopft, *there is a knock*.

1. The oblique cases of man are replaced by ein-.

157. Manch. Manch, *many*, in the singular *many a*, may be inflected regularly (which is the rule if no adjective follows), or it may be uninflected; e. g., mancher Mann, *many a man*; manch guter Mann or mancher gute Mann, *many a good man*.

158. Mehr, mehrer-. Mehr, *more*, is indeclinable; thus mehr Licht, *more light*; nichts mehr davon, *no more of that*. The comparative mehrer- is used with full inflection in the sense of *several*; e. g., mit mehreren Freunden, *with several friends*.

159. Nichts. Nichts, *nothing*, is the negative to etwas and is indeclinable.

160. **Niemand.** Niemand, *no one*, is the negative to jemand. It has no inflection save a genitive in *s*, and cannot be used with a noun.

161. **Viel.** Viel, *much*, in the plural *many*, is capable of full inflection, but is often left uninflected, especially in the singular when it is not preceded by *der* or a possessive; e. g., er hat viel Verstand, *he has much sense*; das ist zu viel, *that is too much*; das Glück vieler Menschen, *the happiness of many men*; er hat vieles erlebt; *he has experienced much*.

162. **Was, welcher, wer.** Any of the interrogatives may be used as indefinites, having the meaning of *some, something, some one, anything, any one*, etc. In this sense they are apt to be accompanied by *irgend*; e. g., ich weiß was Neues, *I know something new*; nehmen Sie noch etwas Brod (einige Kirschchen), *take some more bread (some cherries)*; ich danke, ich habe noch welches (welche), *thank you, I have some still*.

163. **Wenig.** Wenig, *little*, in the plural *few*, is capable of full inflection, but is often uninflected, especially in the singular; e. g., ich habe wenig Hoffnung, *I have little hope*; mit wenig Verstand, *with little sense*; er leistet mit wenigem viel, *he does much with little*.

EXERCISE XXXI.

COLLOQUY: INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

I.

Wünschen Sie etwas, mein Herr?

Ja, ich wünsche ein gutes Buch als Weihnachtsgeschenk für eine junge Freundin. Haben Sie so etwas?

Gewiß; da sind, zum Beispiel, einige neuen¹ Romane. Jedes Mädchen liest gern einen guten Roman.

Hier ist nun jedenfalls² was Hübsches; aber es ist wohl ein wenig teuer, nicht wahr?

Nicht so sehr; es kostet acht Mark. Das Buch ist gerade jetzt in der Mode; jedermann liest es und lobt es.

Ja, aber mancher schlechte Roman findet heutzutage Leser, die ihn loben. Wer ist denn der Verfasser?

Das weiß man nicht. Es ist das Werk irgend eines jungen Schriftstellers, welcher unter falschem Namen schreibt.

Was sagt man von der sittlichen Tendenz des Buches?

Nach allem, was ich höre, ist es gesund in jeder Hinsicht. Niemand sagt etwas dagegen.

Ich habe noch eine Frage. Ist es bei alle dem⁸ auch interessant? Viele gesunden Bücher sind langweilig.

Run, dieses ist jedenfalls nichts weniger als⁴ langweilig. Sie finden nichts Interessanteres in unsrem Laden.

II.

Good morning, sir. Do you wish something in the way of⁶ books?

Yes, if⁶ you have something right good.⁷ What is there that is new?

Do you wish something light—some⁸ novel, for example?

Perhaps, only it must be⁹ interesting. Please show me some new novels.

There you have several right before you.¹⁰ And there are more over yonder.

Here now is something nice, but I presume it costs too much.

That book is a little dear, to be sure,—on account of the many pictures in it. It costs ten marks.

The price is¹¹ pretty high, isn't it? Is it known who the author is?

No, but he writes well,¹² whoever he may be.¹³ Every one praises the book.

Well, in view of all that¹⁴ you say, perhaps the price is¹⁵ not too high, after all.¹⁶

Certainly not; just ask¹⁷ any one who understands such things.

VOCABULARY.

Beispiel, *n. s. 2*, example.
 drüben, *adv.*, over yonder.
 Frage, *f. w.*, question.
 gegen, *prep. (acc.)*, against.
 gerade, *adv.*, exactly, just.
 gern, *adv.*, gladly; liebt gern,
 likes to read.
 Geschenk, *n. s. 2*, present.
 Hinsicht, *f. w.*, respect.
 kosten, *v.*, cost.
 Laden, *m. s. 1 (pl. ä)*, store.

leicht, *adj.*, light, easy.
 Leser, *m. s. 1*, reader.
 loben, *v.*, praise, [love].
 Mode, *f. w.*, fashion, mode.
 Roma'n, *m. s. 2*, novel, romance.
 sittlich, *adj.*, moral.
 Tende'nz, *f. w.*, tendency.
 Verfasser, *m. s. 1*, author.
 wenn, *sub. conj.*, if, when.
 zeigen, *v.*, show, [teach].

NOTES.—¹ *neuen*; one might say *neue* instead (§ 107, 3).—² *jedenfalls*, at any rate; an *adv.* formed out of *auf jeden Fall*, in any case.—³ *bei alle dem*, with all that, withal.—⁴ *nichts weniger als*, anything but.—⁵ *in the way of*, in with dat.—⁶ *if*, *wenn*, which requires the dependent order.—⁷ *something right good*, etwas recht Gutes.—⁸ *some*, irgend einen.—⁹ *only it must be*, nur muß er . . . sein.—¹⁰ *right before you*, gerade vor sich.—¹¹ *is*, ist doch, the *doch* serving to emphasize the verb.—¹² *well*, gut, not wohl.—¹³ *whoever he may be*, wer er auch sein mag.—¹⁴ *in view of all that*, nach allem, was.—¹⁵ *perhaps the price is*, ist der Preis vielleicht.—¹⁶ *after all*, am Ende, following vielleicht.—¹⁷ *just ask any one*, fragen Sie nur irgend jemand.

THE VERB.

164. Voice. The active voice represents the subject as acting, the passive as acted upon; i. e., the object of the active verb becomes the subject of the passive.

1. Only 'transitive' verbs, i. e., those which govern the accusative, can be used in the passive with a definite subject, but intransitive verbs admit of an impersonal passive.

165. Mode. Of the four modes the indicative and imperative correspond closely to the English indicative and imperative. The subjunctive is used to express doubt or uncertainty (especially in indirect

questions and statements), or with an imperative sense translatable by *let*, or with a potential sense translatable by *would* or *should*. The conditional is always translatable by *would* or *should*.

166. The Infinitive. The infinitive is not a mode of the verb, but rather a verbal noun. It is used both with and without *zu*, and corresponds partly to the English infinitive with and without *to*, and partly to the verbal in *ing*.

167. The Participle. The present participle ends in *end* and corresponds to the English present participle in *ing*. The perfect participle ends always in *t* or in *n*, and is further characterized by the prefix *ge*.

1. But the prefix *ge* is omitted with verbs in *ieren*, with inseparable compounds, and in some other cases to be noted further on.

168. Tense. The present and preterite, as consisting of one word, are called 'simple tenses'; the perfect, pluperfect, future and future perfect are formed by means of auxiliaries, and are called 'compound tenses.'

1. The auxiliary of the perfect and pluperfect, which is combined with the perfect participle, is either *haben*, *have*, or *sein*, *be*. All transitive verbs, and many that are intransitive, are conjugated with *haben*. Intransitive verbs denoting motion, and a few that do not denote motion, are conjugated with *sein*.

2. The auxiliary of the future and future perfect, which combines with the infinitive, is *werden*, *become*.

3. The conditional mode has but two tenses, a present and a perfect, the auxiliary being the preterite subjunctive of *werden*, used in combination with the infinitive.

4. The imperative has but one tense, the present.

169. Person and Number. Person and number are distinguished by endings which are applied to the 'stem' of the verb, sometimes with and sometimes without a 'connecting vowel' *e*; e. g., *du machst*, *thou makest*, but *du findest*, *thou findest*.

1. The stem of a verb is obtained by dropping the final *en* (or simply the final *n* if the verb does not end in *en*) of the present infinitive.

170. Principal Parts. The 'principal parts' of a verb, so called because when they are known all the other forms can be determined from them, are (1) the present infinitive, (2) the preterite indicative first person singular, (3) the perfect participle; thus *machen*, *machte*, *gemacht*; *finden*, *fund*, *gefunden*.

CONJUGATION.

171. The Auxiliaries of Tense. Since the three verbs *haben*, *sein* and *werden* are needed in the conjugation of all other verbs whatsoever, their inflection is given first. Their principal parts are *haben*, *hatte*, *gehabt*; *sein*, *war*, *gewesen*; *werden*, *ward* or *wurde*, *geworden*. Their use as auxiliaries is confined to the simple tenses, but they have complete inflection as independent verbs. The forms are as follows*:

PRESENT.

Ich habe, I have, etc.; ich bin, I am (as aux., I have), etc.; ich werde, I become (as aux., I shall), etc.

	<i>Indic.</i>	<i>Subj.</i>	<i>Indic.</i>	<i>Subj.</i>	<i>Indic.</i>	<i>Subj.</i>
S.	<i>ich habe</i>	<i>habe</i>	<i>bin</i>	<i>sei</i>	<i>werde</i>	<i>werde</i>
	<i>du hast</i>	<i>habest</i>	<i>bist</i>	<i>seiest</i>	<i>wirst</i>	<i>werdest</i>
	<i>er hat</i>	<i>habe</i>	<i>ist</i>	<i>sei</i>	<i>wird</i>	<i>werde</i>
P.	<i>wir haben</i>	<i>haben</i>	<i>sind</i>	<i>seien</i>	<i>werden</i>	<i>werden</i>
	<i>ihr habt</i>	<i>habet</i>	<i>seid</i>	<i>seiet</i>	<i>werdet</i>	<i>werdet</i>
	<i>sie haben</i>	<i>haben</i>	<i>sind</i>	<i>seien</i>	<i>werden</i>	<i>werden</i>

* The pronoun at the left is to be read with each of the forms in the horizontal line at the right.

PRETERITE.

Ich hatte, *I had*, etc.; *ich* war, *I was* (as aux., *I had*), etc.; *ich* wurde, *I became*, etc.; *ich* würde, *I would (should) become* (as aux. of the conditional, *I would or should*), etc.

	Indic.	Subj.	Indic.	Subj.	Indic.	Subj.
S.	<i>ich</i> hatte	<i>hätte</i>	<i>war</i>	<i>wäre</i>	<i>wurde</i> or <i>ward</i>	<i>würde</i>
	<i>du</i> hattest	<i>hättest</i>	<i>warst</i>	<i>wärest</i>	<i>wurdest</i> or <i>wardst</i>	<i>würdest</i>
	<i>er</i> hatte	<i>hätte</i>	<i>war</i>	<i>wäre</i>	<i>wurde</i> or <i>ward</i>	<i>würde</i>
P.	<i>wir</i> hatten	<i>hätten</i>	<i>waren</i>	<i>wären</i>	<i>wurden</i>	<i>würden</i>
	<i>ihr</i> hattet	<i>hättet</i>	<i>waret</i>	<i>wäret</i>	<i>wurdet</i>	<i>würdet</i>
	<i>sie</i> hatten	<i>hätten</i>	<i>waren</i>	<i>wären</i>	<i>wurden</i>	<i>würden</i>

PERFECT.

Indic.: *ich* habe gehabt, *I have had*, *du* hast gehabt, *thou hast had*, etc.; *ich* bin gewesen, *I have been*, *du* bist gewesen, *thou hast been*, etc.; *ich* bin geworden, *I have become*, *du* bist geworden, *thou hast become*, etc., the auxiliary having in each case the inflection of the present indicative, and the participle remaining the same.

Subj.: *ich* habe gehabt, *du* habest gehabt, etc.; *ich* sei gewesen, *du* seiest gewesen, etc.; *ich* sei geworden, *du* seiest geworden, etc., the auxiliary as in the present subjunctive.

PLUPERFECT.

Indic.: *ich* hatte gehabt, *I had had*, *du* hattest gehabt, *thou hadst had*, etc.; *ich* war gewesen, *I had been*, *du* warst gewesen, *thou hadst been*, etc.; *ich* war geworden, *I had become*, *du* warst geworden, *thou hadst become*, etc., the auxiliary as in the preterite indicative.

Subj.: *ich* hätte gehabt, *du* hättest gehabt, etc.; *ich* wäre gewesen, *du* wärest gewesen, etc.; *ich* wäre geworden, *du* wärest geworden, etc., the auxiliary as in the preterite subjunctive.

FUTURE.

Indic.: *ich* werde haben, *I shall have*, *du* wirst haben, *thou wilt have*, etc.; *ich* werde sein, *I shall be*, *du* wirst sein, *thou wilt be*, etc.; *ich* werde werden, *I shall become*, *du* wirst werden, *thou wilt become*, etc., the auxiliary as in the present indicative.

Subj.: ich werde haben, du werdest haben, etc.; ich werde sein, du werdest sein, etc.; ich werde werden, du werdest werden, etc., the auxiliary as in the present subjunctive.

FUTURE PERFECT.

Indic.: ich werde gehabt haben, *I shall have had*, du wirst gehabt haben, *thou wilt have had*, etc.; ich werde gewesen sein, *I shall have been*, du wirst gewesen sein, *thou wilt have been*, etc.; ich werde geworden sein, *I shall have become*, du wirst geworden sein, *thou wilt have become*, etc., the auxiliary as in the present indicative.

Subj.: ich werde gehabt haben, du werdest gehabt haben, etc.; ich werde gewesen sein, du werdest gewesen sein, etc.; ich werde geworden sein, du werdest geworden sein, etc., the auxiliary as in the present subjunctive.

CONDITIONAL.

Present: ich würde haben, *I would (should) have*, du würdest haben, *thou wouldst have*, etc.; ich würde sein, *I would (should) be*, du würdest sein, *thou wouldst be*, etc.; ich würde werden, *I would (should) become*, du würdest werden, *thou wouldst become*, etc., the auxiliary as in the preterite subjunctive.

Perfect: ich würde gehabt haben, *I would (should) have had*, du würdest gehabt haben, *thou wouldst have had*; ich würde gewesen sein, *I would (should) have been*, du würdest gewesen sein, *thou wouldst have been*, etc.; ich würde geworden sein, *I would (should) have become*, du würdest geworden sein, *thou wouldst have become*, etc., the auxiliary as before.

IMPERATIVE.

Singular.

habe (du), <i>have (thou).</i>	sei (du), <i>be (thou).</i>
habe er, <i>let him have.</i>	sei er, <i>let him be.</i>
werde (du), <i>become (thou).</i>	
werde er, <i>let him become.</i>	

Plural.

haben wir, <i>let us have.</i>	seien wir, <i>let us be.</i>
habt (ihr), <i>have (ye).</i>	seid (ihr), <i>be (ye).</i>
haben sie, <i>let them have.</i>	seien sie, <i>let them be.</i>
werden wir, <i>let us become.</i>	
werdet (ihr), <i>become (ye).</i>	
werden sie, <i>let them become.</i>	

INFINITIVE.

Present: (zu) haben, *(to) have*; (zu) sein, *(to) be*; (zu) werden, *(to) become*.

Perfect: gehabt zu haben, *to have had*; gewesen zu sein, *to have been*; geworden zu sein, *to have become*.

PARTICIPLE.

Present: habend, *having*; seiend, *being*; werdend, *becoming*.

Perfect: gehabt, *had*; gewesen, *been*; geworden, *become*.

172. Remarks on the above Paradigms. Notice particularly the difference between corresponding indicative and subjunctive forms, such as *hast-habest, hat-habe, ist-sei, wird-werde*. The translation of the subjunctive depends on the character of the sentence; e. g., *er habe Geduld, let him have patience*; *edel sei der Mensch, let man be noble*; *es sei wahr oder falsch, be it true or false*; *ich fragte ihn, ob er krank sei, I asked him if he was (were) sick*.

1. The third person plural, with *sie* written *Sie*, is used as a second person in polite address.

2. The preterite subjunctive is equivalent in meaning to the present conditional, and the pluperfect subjunctive to the perfect conditional; thus *es wäre sonderbar, it would be strange*, is the same as *es würde sonderbar sein*, and *es wäre sonderbar gewesen, it would have been strange*, = *es würde sonderbar gewesen sein*.

3. The third person singular and first person plural of the imperative are supplied from the subjunctive; they

require the subject to be expressed, wir always after the verb, or either before or after. The subjects du and ihr are usually omitted. The third person plural of the imperative (also supplied from the subjunctive) is little used, except as a second person, in polite address. Sie is always expressed and always follows the verb; e. g., haben Sie Geduld, *have patience*.

4. These remarks apply, in principle, to all verbs whatsoever.

EXERCISE XXXII.

READING LESSON: FORMS OF **haben, sein** AND **werden**.

173. Rule of Order IV: Compound Tenses. In an independent sentence the uninflected part of a compound tense, i. e., the infinitive or participle, comes last; in a dependent sentence the inflected auxiliary comes last and is immediately preceded by the uninflected part. Thus we have:

a. In the normal order: ich habe ihn seit gestern nicht gesehen, *I have not seen him since yesterday*; Sie werden mich heute abend zu Hause finden, *you will find me at home this evening*; es würde mir große Freude gemacht haben, *it would have given me great pleasure*.

b. In the inverted order: seit gestern habe ich ihn nicht gesehen; heute abend werden Sie mich zu Hause finden; mir würde es große Freude gemacht haben.

c. In the dependent order: ich weiß gewiß, daß ich ihn seit gestern nicht gesehen habe, *I know for certain that I have not seen him since yesterday*; es ist wahrscheinlich, daß Sie mich heute abend zu Hause finden werden, *it is probable that you will find me at home this evening*; ich versichere Sie, daß es mir große Freude gemacht haben würde, *I assure you that it would have given me great pleasure*.

Meine liebe Schwester! Wo bist Du denn eigentlich?¹ Es werden morgen vierzehn Tage sein, daß ich keine Zeile von Dir oder von der Mutter gehabt habe.² Vielleicht seid Ihr auf der

Ausstellung in Chicago gewesen, aber in dem Falle würdet Ihr doch Zeit gehabt haben, ein paar Worte an mich zu schreiben. Wenn Du nur nicht krank gewesen bist! Ich sage mir zwar öfters³: Sei ruhig, habe Geduld; aber die Zeit wird mir am Ende doch gar zu lang.⁴ Ich würde allerdings gefasster sein, hättest Du den Unfall nicht gehabt,⁵ denn ich kann die Besorgnis⁶ nicht los werden, daß derselbe⁷ vielleicht schlimmer gewesen ist, als Ihr anfangs⁸ zu glauben geneigt waret.⁹

Seit einem Monat bin ich nicht so fleißig gewesen, wie früher, weshalb meine Gesundheit bedeutend besser geworden ist. Ich bitte Dich, dem Vater zu sagen, daß es mir lieb¹⁰ wäre, wenn ich für nächsten Monat einen kleinen Zuschuß an Taschengeld hätte. Es wird nämlich bald die Zeit der großen Messe sein, und es wäre doch¹¹ unangenehm, wenn ich mich dabei zu sehr einzuschränken¹² hätte. Erwarte diesmal keinen langen Brief von mir. Ich habe schon mehrere Stunden die Feder in der Hand gehabt und bin des Schreibens¹³ müde geworden.

VOCABULARY.

Ausstellung, *f. w.*, exposition.
bedeutend, *ppl. adj.*, significant; *as adv.*, notably.

Besorgnis, *f. s. 2*, fear, solicitude.

ei'nschränken, *v.*, limit.

fleißig, *adj.*, industrious.

gar, *adv.*, quite, altogether.

Geduld, *f. w.*, patience.

gefasst, *ppl. adj.*, composed, calm.

geneigt, *ppl. adj.*, inclined.

los, *adj.*, rid of, free from, loose.

Messe, *f. w.*, fair, mass.

müde, *adj.*, tired.

öfters, *adv.*, often, oft.

schlimm, *adj.*, bad, [slim].

Zeile, *f. w.*, line.

Zuschuß, *m. s. 2 (pl. ü)*, addition, increase.

zwar, *adv.*, to be sure, forsooth.

NOTES. — ¹ *eigentlich*, really, precisely, properly speaking; often used in questions with a sense about = *pray tell* or *I'd like to know*. — ² *daß ich . . . gehabt habe*, that I have not had, i. e., since I have had. — ³ *öfters*, an adv. formed from *öfter*, the comparative of *oft*, but without comparative meaning (see Ex. XX, n. 1). — ⁴ *wird . . . zu lang*, is really (doch) becoming at last quite too long. — ⁵ *hättest Du . . . nicht gehabt*, if you had not had; the pret. and plup. subj. are used, with or

without *wenn*, to denote a condition which is contrary to fact. When *wenn* is omitted the conditional idea is expressed, as in English, by the inverted order; *hättest Du nicht gehabt* being = *wenn Du nicht gehabt hättest*.—⁶ *Besorgnis*, acc. depending upon *los*; *kann nicht los werden* = *cannot get rid of*; *kann* being pres. ind. 1. pers. sing. of *können*.—⁷ *derselbe*, it, i. e., the accident (§ 134, 1).—⁸ *anfangs*, at first; an adv. formed from the gen. of *Anfang*.—⁹ *waret*; dependent order after *als* = *than*.—¹⁰ *lieb*, agreeable.—¹¹ *doch*, surely.—¹² *einzu/stränken*, to limit. Observe that the *zu* of the infinitive comes between the parts of the verb. Such verbs, called separable compounds, will be explained further on.—¹³ *des Schreibens müde*, tired of writing. Notice that the gen. precedes the adj. on which it depends.

174. Weak and Strong Verbs. Verbs are divided into two great classes, called Weak and Strong. A weak verb forms its preterite first person singular by adding *te* or *cte* to the stem, as *mach-en*, *mach-te*; *red-en*, *red-cte*. A strong verb forms its preterite by means of an internal vowel-change, called ‘*ablaut*,’ as *fommen*, *fam*.

1. The perfect participle of a weak verb always ends in *t* or *et*, as *gemacht*, *geredet*; that of a strong verb ends in *en*, as *gesommen*.

a. Verbs in *ie/ren*, which are always weak, do not take the prefix *ge* in the perfect participle; thus from *studie/ren*, *studie/rt*, not *gestudiert*.

THE WEAK CONJUGATION.

175. Examples: *loben*, to praise; *folgen*, to follow.

PRESENT.

I praise, etc.; I follow, etc.

<i>Indic.</i>	<i>Subj.</i>	<i>Indic.</i>	<i>Subj.</i>
<i>ich</i> lobe	lobe	<i>folge</i>	<i>folge</i>
<i>du</i> lobst	lobest	<i>folgst</i>	<i>folgest</i>
<i>er</i> lobt	lobe	<i>folgt</i>	<i>folge</i>
<i>wir</i> loben	loben	<i>folgen</i>	<i>folgen</i>
<i>ihr</i> lobt	lobet	<i>folgt</i>	<i>folget</i>
<i>sie</i> loben	loben	<i>folgen</i>	<i>folgen</i>

PRETERITE.

I praised, etc.; I followed, etc.

Indic.	Subj.	Indic.	Subj.
ich lobte	lobte	folgte	folgte
du lobtest	lobtest	folgtest	folgtest
er lobte	lobte	folgte	folgte
wir lobten	lobten	folgten	folgten
ihr lobtet	lobtet	folgten	folgten
sie lobten	lobten	folgten	folgten

PERFECT.

Indic.: ich habe gelobt, *I have praised*, du hast gelobt, *thou hast praised*, etc.; ich bin gefolgt, *I have followed*, du bist gefolgt, *thou hast followed*, etc.

Subj.: ich habe gelobt, du habest gelobt, etc.; ich sei gefolgt, du seiest gefolgt, etc.

PLUPERFECT.

Indic.: ich hatte gelobt, *I had praised*, du hattest gelobt, *thou hadst praised*, etc.; ich war gefolgt, *I had followed*, du warst gefolgt, *thou hadst followed*, etc.

Subj.: ich hätte gelobt, du habest gelobt, etc.; ich wäre gefolgt, du wärest gefolgt, etc.

FUTURE.

Indic.: ich werde loben, *I shall praise*, du wirst loben, *thou wilt praise*, etc.; ich werde folgen, *I shall follow*, du wirst folgen, *thou wilt follow*, etc.

Subj.: ich werde loben, du werdest loben, etc.; ich werde folgen, du werdest folgen, etc.

FUTURE PERFECT.

Indic.: ich werde gelobt haben, *I shall have praised*, du wirst gelobt haben, *thou wilt have praised*, etc.; ich werde gefolgt sein, *I shall have followed*, du wirst gefolgt sein, *thou wilt have followed*, etc.

Subj.: ich werde gelobt haben, du werdest gelobt haben, etc.; ich werde gefolgt sein, du werdest gefolgt sein, etc.

CONDITIONAL.

Present: ich würde loben, *I would (should) praise*, du würdest loben, *thou wouldst praise*, etc.; ich würde folgen, *I would (should) follow*, du würdest folgen, *thou wouldst follow*, etc.

Perfect: ich würde gelobt haben, *I would (should) have praised*, du würdest gelobt haben, *thou wouldst have praised*, etc.; ich würde gefolgt sein, *I would (should) have followed*, du würdest gefolgt sein, *thou wouldst have followed*, etc.

IMPERATIVE.

lobe (du), <i>praise (thou)</i> .	folge (du), <i>follow (thou)</i> .
lobe er, <i>let him praise</i> .	folge er, <i>let him follow</i> .
loben wir, <i>let us praise</i> .	folgen wir, <i>let us follow</i> .
lobt (ihr), <i>praise (ye)</i> .	folgt (ihr), <i>follow (ye)</i> .
loben sie, <i>let them praise</i> .	folgen sie, <i>let them follow</i> .

INFINITIVE.

Present: (zu) loben, *(to) praise*; (zu) folgen, *(to) follow*.

Perfect: gelobt zu haben, *to have praised*; gefolgt zu sein, *to have followed*.

PARTICIPLE.

Present: lobend, *praising*; folgend, *following*.

Perfect: gelobt, *praised*; gefolgt, *followed*.

176. Use of the Connecting Vowel e. While most weak verbs, like the examples given above, apply the endings *st*, *t* and *te* directly to the stem (except in the present subjunctive), there are others that insert the vowel *e* before these endings in order to facilitate pronunciation. Such are:

1. Verbs whose stems end in *b* or *t*; e. g., from *reden*, *to talk*, du redest, er redet, ich redete, geredet.

2. Verbs whose stem ends in *m* or *n* preceded by a consonant; e. g., from *rechnen*, *to reckon*, du rechnest, er rechnet, ich rechnete, gerechnet.

3. Verbs whose stem ends in an s-sound (but only before *st*, not before *t* or *te*); e. g., from *rasen*, *to rage*, du *rasest*, but er *raßt*, er *raßte*, *geraßt*.

177. Verbs in *eln* and *ern*. Verbs in *eln* and *ern* usually drop the *e* of these suffixes before the *e* of the first person singular, but retain it elsewhere; thus from *handeln*, *to act*, ich *handle*, du *handelst*, er *handelt*, wir *handeln*, ich *handelte*, *gehandelt*, etc.

178. Irregular Weak Verbs. A few weak verbs have internal vowel change in the preterite and perfect participle; e. g., *fennen*, *to know*, preterite *fannte*, participle *gefannt*.

EXERCISE XXXIII.

COLLOQUY: WEAK VERBS.

I.

Vater, der Lehrer sagte uns heute, daß wir bald zwei neue Bücher brauchen würden.

Also mache dich fort¹ zur Buchhandlung und kaufe sie. Glücklicherweise² hast du das Geld dazu.

Du meinst doch nicht das Geld, das du mir gestern geschenkt hast?³

Gewiß meine ich das. Was hast du damit gemacht?⁴

Dafür habe ich mir ein Paar Schlittschuhe gekauft.

Du junger Schelm! Du wirst mich noch zum Bettler machen.⁵
—Was für Bücher verlangst du denn?

Ein englisches Lesebuch und Wörterbuch. Ich hoffe, daß du jedenfalls diesen Kauf billigen wirst.

Da hast du recht,⁶ mein Sohn; deinen englischen Studien bin ich stets mit Interesse gefolgt. Seid ihr denn mit der Grammatik schon fertig?

Nein, noch nicht; aber der Lehrer meint, daß es jetzt an der Zeit wäre,⁷ neben der Grammatik eine leichte Lektüre zu versuchen.

Da hat der Lehrer gewiß recht. Eine Sprache wird man immer am besten aus der Sprache selbst lernen.

Wie meinst du das — doch nicht, daß es besser gewesen wäre, wenn wir überhaupt keine Grammatik studiert hätten.

Rein ; das würde ich nur dann sagen, wenn du noch ein Kind wärest.

II.

Father, have you any⁸ money by you? The teacher says that I shall soon need some more⁹ new books.

Well, I gave¹⁰ you some money yesterday. That will suffice, will it not?

Yes, but that was, as you say, a present. You surely did not suppose¹¹ that I would buy books with that?

You young rogue! You talk as if you still had¹² the money in your pocket.

And so I have¹³; but I am going¹⁴ to buy me a pair of skates with it.

Oh, that's it.—Well, what books do you want, then?

In the first place,¹⁵ a German reader. You will surely be glad to hear that.¹⁶

Yes, I want you to learn¹⁷ German thoroughly. But are you through with the grammar already?

No, we have only done¹⁸ twenty exercises; there are¹⁹ forty in the book.

I hope that you will do the remaining ones too.²⁰

Oh, of course²¹; we shall still have grammar every other day.²²

VOCABULARY.

Aufgabe, *f. w.*, exercise.
 Bettler, *m. s. 1*, beggar.
 billigen, *v. w.*, approve.
 fertig, *adj.*, ready; fertig mit,
 through with.
 genügen, *v. w.*, be enough,
 suffice.
 glücklicherweise, *adv.*, fortunately,
 [lucky-wise].
 Gramma'tik, *f. w.*, grammar.
 gründlich, *adj.*, thorough.

Handlung, *f. w.*, shop, store.
 hoffen, *v. w.*, hope.
 Kauf, *m. s. 2* (*pl. äü*), purchase.
 kaufen, *v. w.*, buy.
 Lektü're, *f. w.*, text for reading,
 [lecture].
 Lesebuch, *n. s. 3*, reading-book,
 reader.
 neben, *prep. (dat. and acc.)*, beside,
 along with.

ob, <i>sub. conj.</i> , whether; als ob, as if.	übrig, <i>adj.</i> , remaining, [over-].
Schelm, <i>m. s. 2</i> , rogue, scamp.	verlangen, <i>v. w.</i> , wish, want, [-long].
schenken, <i>v. w.</i> , present, give.	versuchen, <i>v. w.</i> , try, [-seek].
Schlittschuh, <i>m. s. 2</i> , skate, [slide-shoe].	Wörterbuch, <i>n. s. 3</i> , dictionary, [word-book].
stets, <i>adv.</i> , always, [stead-ily].	

NOTES.—¹ *made dich fort*, be off, get you gone.—² *Glücklichweise*; formed from the gen. *glücklicher Weise* (*Weise* = *manner*) used adverbially.—³ *geschenkt hast*, gave, not have given; Ger. often uses the perf. where Eng. prefers a pret.—⁴ *gemacht*, done.—⁵ *mich zum Bettler machen*, make me a beggar; the dat. with *zu* here takes the place of the Eng. secondary or 'factive' object used with a verb of *making*.—⁶ *du hast du recht*, there you are right; to be right = *recht haben*, not *recht sein*.—⁷ *daß . . . wäre*, that it would be in order.—⁸ *any*, *etwas*.—⁹ *some more*, *noch einige*.—¹⁰ *I gave*; use the perf.—¹¹ *you surely did not suppose*, *du meinstest doch wohl nicht*.—¹² *had*, *hättest*, in dependent order (see Ex. XXXII, n. 5).—¹³ *And so I have*, *und ich habe es auch wirklich*.—¹⁴ *I am going*, *ich werde*.—¹⁵ *In the first place*, *erstens*.—¹⁶ *You will . . . that*, *das wirst du doch wohl gern hören*.—¹⁷ *I want you to learn*, *ich wünsche, daß du . . . lernest* (*subj.*).—¹⁸ *done*, *gemacht*.—¹⁹ *there are*, *es sind*.—²⁰ *too*, *auch*, before *die übrigen*.—²¹ *of course*, *natürlich*.—²² *every other day*, *alle zwei Tage*, following *nach* and preceding *Grammatik*.

THE STRONG CONJUGATION.

179. Characteristics. The distinguishing characteristics of all strong verbs are, as we have seen, (1) vowel-change in the preterite and (2) the ending *en* in the perfect participle. To these may be added two others which are found only in certain verbs, viz.: (3) vowel-change in the present indicative and imperative, and (4) umlaut in the preterite subjunctive.

180. Formation of the Preterite. The vowel of the preterite indicative is always different from that of the infinitive. The first and third persons singular have no ending; elsewhere the endings are as in the present.

1. The final consonant of the stem usually remains the same in all the principal parts, as in *geben, gab, gegeben*. But a consonant is everywhere liable to be doubled to indicate that the preceding vowel is short; e. g., *bitten, bat, gebeten; reiten, ritt, geritten*. In a few verbs the consonant changes; e. g., *ziehen, zog, gezogen*.

2. The preterite subjunctive, first person singular, is regularly formed by adding *e* to the corresponding indicative form, with umlaut of the root-vowel if possible; e. g., *hielt-hielte* (from *halten*); *gab-gäbe* (from *geben*).

181. Formation of the Perfect Participle. The ending is always *en*. The root-vowel may be like that of the infinitive, as in *geben, gab, gegeben*; or like that of the preterite, as in *reiten, ritt, geritten*; or unlike either, as in *jungen, sang, gesungen*.

1. The prefix *ge* is required. For the omission of it in certain rare cases see § 188, 3, *a*.

182. Vowel-Change in the Present. This affects three forms only, viz.: the second and third person singular of the present indicative, and in some verbs the second person singular of the imperative. The changes that take place are as follows:

1. Radical *a* becomes *ä* in the indicative, but remains unchanged in the imperative; thus from *tragen, to bear*, *ich trage, du trägst, er trägt, wir tragen*, imperative *trage*.

2. Radical *e* if short becomes *i*, and if long becomes *ie*, both in the indicative and imperative; thus from *helfen, to help*, *ich helfe, du hilfst, er hilft, wir helfen*, imperative *helf*; from *sehen, to see*, *ich sehe, du siehst, er sieht, wir sehen*, imperative *sieh*.

3. Other vowels and the diphthongs remain unchanged.

a. To each of the above rules there are some exceptions, for which consult the list of strong verbs in

§ 331. In learning the forms of a strong verb attention must be given to its vowel-changes no less than to its principal parts.

183. The Dropping of the Connecting Vowel. Strong verbs usually reject the connecting vowel in those forms of the present that have undergone vowel-change. If then the stem ends in *t*, so that two *t*'s would be brought together in the third person singular, the two contract to one; thus *es gilt*, for *gilt't*, from *gelten*, *to be worth*. Otherwise the rules for the use of the connecting vowel are the same as in the case of weak verbs.

1. The following examples will show the difference in the present inflection of like-sounding strong and weak verbs.

<i>Strong.</i>		<i>Weak.</i>	
<i>ich halte</i> , <i>du hältst</i> ,	<i>er hält</i>	<i>ich walte</i> , <i>du waltest</i> , <i>er waltet</i>	
<i>ich lade</i> , <i>du lädst</i> ,	<i>er lädt</i>	<i>ich bade</i> , <i>du badest</i> , <i>er badet</i>	
<i>ich esse</i> , <i>du ißt</i> (or <i>issest</i>),	<i>er ißt</i>	<i>ich presse</i> , <i>du pressest</i> , <i>er preßt</i>	

2. The imperative second person singular omits the final *e* in those verbs that have *i* or *ie* changed from *e*; thus *lies*, from *lesen*; *hilf*, from *helfen*; but *trage*, from *tragen*.

184. Examples of Strong Conjugation: *sehen*, *to see*; *fallen*, *to fall*.

PRESENT.

I see, etc.; I fall, etc.

<i>Indic.</i>	<i>Subj.</i>	<i>Indic.</i>	<i>Subj.</i>
<i>ich sehe</i>	<i>sehe</i>	<i>ich falle</i>	<i>falle</i>
<i>du siehst</i>	<i>sehest</i>	<i>du fällst</i>	<i>fallest</i>
<i>er sieht</i>	<i>sehe</i>	<i>er fällt</i>	<i>falle</i>
<i>wir sehen</i>	<i>sehen</i>	<i>wir fallen</i>	<i>fallen</i>
<i>ihr seht</i>	<i>sehet</i>	<i>ihr fallt</i>	<i>fallet</i>
<i>sie sehen</i>	<i>sehen</i>	<i>sie fallen</i>	<i>fallen</i>

PRETERITE.

I saw, etc.; I fell, etc.

<i>Indic.</i>	<i>Subj.</i>	<i>Indic.</i>	<i>Subj.</i>
ich sah	sähe	fiel	fiel
du sahst	sähest	fielst	fielst
er sah	sähe	fiel	fiel
wir sahen	sähen	fielen	fielen
ihr saht	sähet	fielt	fielt
sie sahen	sähen	fielen	fielen

PERFECT.

Indic.: ich habe gesehen, *I have seen*, du hast gesehen, *thou hast seen*, etc.; ich bin gefallen, *I have fallen*, du bist gefallen, *thou hast fallen*, etc.

Subj.: ich habe gesehen, du habest gesehen, etc.; ich sei gefallen, du seiest gefallen, etc.

PLUPERFECT.

Indic.: ich hatte gesehen, *I had seen*, du hattest gesehen, *thou hadst seen*, etc.; ich war gefallen, *I had fallen*, du warst gefallen, *thou hadst fallen*, etc.

Subj.: ich hätte gesehen, du hättest gesehen, etc.; ich wäre gefallen, du wärest gefallen, etc.

FUTURE.

Indic.: ich werde sehen, *I shall see*, du wirst sehen, *thou wilt see*, etc.; ich werde fallen, *I shall fall*, du wirst fallen, *thou wilt fall*, etc.

Subj.: ich werde sehen, du werdest sehen, etc.; ich werde fallen, du werdest fallen, etc.

FUTURE PERFECT.

Indic.: ich werde gesehen haben, *I shall have seen*, du wirst gesehen haben, *thou wilt have seen*, etc.; ich werde gefallen sein, *I shall have fallen*, du wirst gefallen sein, *thou wilt have fallen*, etc.

Subj.: ich werde gesehen haben, du werdest gesehen haben, etc.;
ich werde gefallen sein, du werdest gefallen sein, etc.

CONDITIONAL.

Present: ich würde sehen, *I would (should) see*, du würdest sehen, *thou wouldst see*, etc.; ich würde fallen, *I would (should) fall*, du würdest fallen, *thou wouldst fall*, etc.

Perfect: ich würde gesehen haben, *I would (should) have seen*, du würdest gesehen haben, *thou wouldst have seen*, etc.; ich würde gefallen sein, *I would (should) have fallen*, du würdest gefallen sein, *thou wouldst have fallen*, etc.

IMPERATIVE.

sieh (du), <i>see (thou)</i> .	lasse (du), <i>fall (thou)</i> .
sehe er, <i>let him see</i> .	lasse er, <i>let him fall</i> .
sehen wir, <i>let us see</i> .	fallen wir, <i>let us fall</i> .
seht (ihr), <i>see (ye)</i> .	fallt (ihr), <i>fall (ye)</i> .
sehen sie, <i>let them see</i> .	fallen sie, <i>let them fall</i> .

INFINITIVE.

Present: (zu) sehen, *(to) see*; (zu) fallen, *(to) fall*.

Perfect: gesehen zu haben, *to have seen*; gefallen zu sein, *to have fallen*.

PARTICIPLE.

Present: sehend, *seeing*; fallend, *falling*.

Perfect: gesehen, *seen*; gefallen, *fallen*.

185. Irregular Strong Verbs. The three verbs *gehen*, *go*, *stehen*, *stand*, and *thun*, *do*, are irregular in that they form their preterite and perfect participle from a stem different from that of the present. They are also without vowel-change in the present. The principal parts are *gehen*, *ging*, *gegangen*; *stehen*, *stand*, *gestanden*; *thun*, *that*, *gethan*. The simple tenses of the indicative are inflected as follows :

<i>Present.</i>			<i>Preterite.</i>		
ich gehe	stehe	thue	ging	stand	that
du gehst	stehst	thust	gingst	standst	thatst
er geht	steht	thut	ging	stand	that
wir gehen	stehen	thun	gingen	standen	thaten
ihr geht	steht	thut	gingt	standet	thatet
sie gehen	stehen	thun	gingen	standen	thaten

1. The other forms are regular, *gehen* being conjugated with *sein*, *stehen* and *thun* with *haben*.

186. Verbs of Mixed Inflection. A number of verbs which were once strong have passed over, wholly or in part, to the weak conjugation ; e. g., *rächen*, *roch*, *gerochen*, *to avenge*, is now usually conjugated *rächen*, *rächte*, *gerächt*.

1. Thus strong and weak forms from the same verb may exist side by side. When this is the case they are sometimes associated with difference of meaning ; e. g., *scheiden*, *to separate*, makes *schied*, *geschieden*, when intransitive, but *scheidete*, *gescheidet*, when transitive.

EXERCISE XXXIV.

READING LESSON : STRONG VERBS.

187. Rule of Order V: Dependent Infinitives. A dependent infinitive, with or without *zu*, comes at the end of the sentence ; e. g., *ich habe nichts mit der Sache zu thun*, *I have nothing to do with the affair* ; *ich hörte ihn gestern dieselbe Bemerkung machen*, *I heard him make the same remark yesterday*.

1. An infinitive dependent upon a verb which itself stands in the dependent order generally comes just before the verb if unmodified, but after if modified by an object or an adverb ; e. g., *obwohl ich ihn zu antworten gebeten hatte*, *though I had asked him to answer* ; but *obwohl*

ich ihn gebeten hatte, meine Frage zu beantworten, *though I had asked him to answer my question.*

Mein lieber Freund! Endlich hast Du Dein langes Schweigen gebrochen; Dein Brief vom 12. dieses Monats ist mir soeben in die Hände gekommen.¹ Für die Nachrichten, die Du mir aus der Heimat giebst,² danke ich Dir herzlich, obwohl andere Freunde mir zum Teil³ schon über dieselben Dinge geschrieben⁴ hatten. Ich schließe⁵ aus Deinem Briefe, daß es Dir gut geht, und daß Du keine Gefahr läufst,⁶ an⁷ der Schwindsucht zu sterben. Die Beschreibung Deiner Reise nach Chicago war mir höchst interessant. Was Du nicht alles gesehen hast! Und in wie kurzer Zeit! Denn es scheint,⁸ daß Du nur drei oder vier Tage dort geblieben⁹ bist.

Run, ich habe auch kürzlich eine kleine Reise gemacht, — eine Fußwanderung¹⁰ im Harzgebirge. Vielleicht wirst Du gern davon hören. Ich hatte viel von den Schönheiten dieser Gegend gehört und gelesen,¹¹ und war natürlich recht neugierig darauf¹² geworden. Vor etwa zwei Wochen sprach¹³ ich eines Tages darüber mit einem Bekannten, der meine Neugierde zu teilen schien, und wir trafen die Verabredung, den berühmten Brocken¹⁴ zusammen in Augenschein zu nehmen.¹⁵

VOCABULARY.

NOTE.—The letters in parenthesis give the vowel of the preterite and perfect participle. If more than the vowel changes, the change is indicated; thus *brechen* (a, o) is to be read: *brachen*, *brach*, *gebrochen*; *schließen* (o, off) = *schließen*, *schloß*, *geschlossen*. More than twenty strong verbs have already been introduced in the preceding exercises; these will not be repeated in the vocabularies, but their principal parts will be given in the notes. The learner should begin at once to make use of the list of strong verbs in Part II.

Augenschein, *m. s. 2*, view,
[eye-shine].

bekannt, *adj.*, known; *as subst.*,
acquaintance.

Beschreibung, *f. w.*, descrip-
tion.

brechen, *v. s.* (a, o), **break**.

endlich, *adv.*, finally, [end-].

Fuß, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* = Füße), **foot**.

Gefahr, *f. w.*, danger.

Heimat, *f. w.*, home, [home-].

herzlich, *adj.*, heart-y, cordial.

kürzlich, *adv.*, lately.

laufen, *v. s.* (ie, au, *aux.* sein),
run, [leap].

Neugierde, *f. w.*, curiosity.

neugierig, *adj.*, curious.

obwohl, *sub. conj.*, although.

schließen, v. s. (o, off), infer, conclude.	sterben, v. s. (a, o, <i>aux.</i> sein), die, [starve].
schweigen, v. s. (ie, ie), to be silent.	teilen, v. w., share, [deal].
Schwind sucht, <i>f. w.</i> , consumption.	treffen, v. s. (a, o), hit, hit upon.
soeben, <i>adv.</i> , just now, [so-even].	Vera'bredung, <i>f. w.</i> , agreement, arrangement.
	zusammen, <i>adv.</i> , together.

NOTES.—¹ *gekommen*; from *kommen*, *kam*, *gekommen*.—² *giebst*; from *geben*, *gab*, *gegeben*; the *e* being long, *giebst*, *gieb*, *imv.* *gieb* are the regular forms; but *gibst*, *gibt*, *gib* also occur.—³ *zum Teil*, *in part*.—⁴ *geschrieben*; from *schreiben*, *schrieb*, *geschrieben*.—⁵ *schließe*; notice that *schließen* has *geschlossen*, in the *perf.* *pple.*; this means that the *o* is short.—⁶ *läufst*; contrary to § 182, 3, *laufen* makes *du läufst*, *er läuft* (*imv.* *lauf*); *Gefahr laufen* = *to run a risk*.—⁷ *an*, *of*; the malady *from* which one suffers, or *of* which one dies, is put in the *dat.* with *an*.—⁸ *scheint*; from *scheinen*, *schien*, *geschienen*.—⁹ *geblieben*; from *bleiben*, *blieb*, *geblieben*; *aux.* *sein*.—¹⁰ *Fußwanderung*, *pedestrian tour*.—¹¹ *gelesen*; from *lesen*, *las*, *gelesen*.—¹² *darauf*, *with regard to it*.—¹³ *sprach*; from *sprechen*, *sprach*, *gesprochen*.—¹⁴ *Brocken*, *Brocken*; the highest summit of the Harz Mts.—¹⁵ *nehmen*; *pret.* *nahm*, *pple.* *genommen*. By way of exception to § 182, 2, *nehmen* makes *du nimmst*, *er nimmt*, *imv.* *nimm*. In *Augenschein nehmen* = *to inspect, take a view of*.

EXERCISE XXXV.

READING LESSON: THE SAME CONTINUED.

Am nächsten Tage fuhren wir mit der Eisenbahn¹ bis nach Wernigerode,² und von da gingen wir zu Fuß nach Ilfsburg, einem kleinen Dorfe, welches ungefähr vier Stunden³ vom Brodengipfel entfernt⁴ liegt.⁵ Hier fanden⁶ wir bald ein gutes Gasthaus, wo wir uns ziemlich früh zu Bett legten. Am folgenden Morgen hingen⁷ leichte Wolken am Himmel, und man riet⁸ uns, auf gutes Wetter zu warten. Es wäre besser gewesen, wenn wir diesem Rate gefolgt wären, aber dazu waren wir zu ungeduldig. Wir hielten⁹ die leichten Wolken nicht für gefährlich.

Also machten wir uns früh auf den Weg,¹⁰ und am Anfang ging es auch wirklich sehr schön. Die Morgenluft war höchst angenehm,

die Vögel fangen in den Bäumen, und eine prächtige Natur bot, während wir höher und höher stiegen, immer neue Reize. Nachdem wir etwa eine Stunde gegangen waren, kamen wir an einen 300 Fuß¹¹ hohen Felsen, welcher den Namen „Isenstein,“ trägt.¹² Derselbe liegt dicht am Wege und ist nicht schwer zu besteigen.¹³ Wir kletterten also auf den Gipfel und saßen¹⁴ wohl eine halbe Stunde droben.

VOCABULARY.

besteigen, v. s. (ie, ie), climb.
 bieten, v. s. (o, o), offer, bid.
 dicht, *adj.*, close, dense, [tight].
 Dorf, n. s. 3, village, [thorp].
 droben, *adv.*, up there.
 Eisenbahn, *f. w.*, railway.
 entfernt, *adv.*, distant.
 fahren, v. s. (u, a, *aux.* sein),
 travel, [fare].
 Felsen, m. s. 1, rock.
 Gasthaus, n. s. 3, inn, [guest-
 house].
 gefährlich, *adj.*, dangerous.
 Gipfel, m. s. 1, peak, summit.
 Himmel, m. s. 1, heaven, sky.

klimmen, v. s. (o, o, *aux.* sein),
 climb.
 nachde'm, *sub. conj.*, after.
 Natu'r, *f. w.*, nature.
 Reiz, m. s. 2, charm.
 singen, v. s. (a, u), sing.
 steigen, v. s. (ie, ie, *aux.* sein),
 climb.
 u'ngeduldig, *adj.*, impatient.
 Vogel, m. s. 1 (*pl.* ö), bird,
 [fowl].
 während, *sub. conj.*, while;
 also *prep. (gen.)*, during.
 Wolke, *f. w.*, cloud, [welkin].

NOTES.—¹ mit der Eisenbahn; Ex. XXIII, n. 4.—² Bernigero'de, name of a little city in the Harz Mts.—³ Stunden, *hours' walk, leagues*; acc. of measure.—⁴ entfernt, *distant, away*; the acc. of measure is often accompanied by an adv. of measure.—⁵ liegt; pret. lag, perf. pple. gelegen.—⁶ fanden; from finden, fand, gefunden.—⁷ hingen; from hängen, hing, gehangen.—⁸ riet, *advised*; from raten, riet, geraten. It also means *to guess* (see Ex. XXX).—⁹ hielten; from halten, hielt, gehalten; halten für, *to regard as, to consider*.—¹⁰ sich auf den Weg machen, *to start, get under way*.—¹¹ Fuß; used in the sing., as a measure of height, after a numeral.—¹² trägt; pret. trug, perf. pple. getragen.—¹³ besteigen is transitive, while steigen is intransitive. The construction here requires a transitive verb.—¹⁴ saßen; from sitzen, saß, gesessen.

EXERCISE XXXVI.

READING LESSON : THE SAME CONTINUED.

Die Aussicht von diesem Punkte werde ich so bald nicht vergessen. Während wir hier saßen und plauderten, deutete mein Reisekamerad mehrmals¹ auf die Wolken, welche immer noch am Himmel hingen und gerade jetzt höher zu steigen und dichter zu werden schienen. Wir sahen, daß es ein Gewitter geben würde, und dachten² sofort an die Worte der Leute im Gasthause. Aber an³ eine Rückkehr war jetzt nicht mehr zu denken; dazu glaubten⁴ wir zu weit gegangen zu sein. Also gingen wir weiter, da kein Obdach zu sehen⁵ war, nach dem Gipfel des Berges zu.⁶ Jetzt schritten wir natürlich schneller, indem⁷ wir alle paar Minuten⁸ Blicke nach dem Himmel warfen. Von Zeit zu Zeit liefen wir sogar eine kleine Strecke, aber das wurde bald ermüdend. Endlich brach das Gewitter los, und was für ein Wetter! Der Regen fiel in Strömen, der Wind blies und heulte wie toll⁹ und bog die Bäume, daß sie brachen. Blendende Blitze schossen überall durch die Luft und schlugen bisweilen in die Bäume.

VOCABULARY.

Aussicht, *f. w.*, view, [out-sight].

biegen, *v. s.* (o, o), bend, [bow].

blasen, *v. s.* (ie, a), blow.

blenden, *v. w.*, blind, dazzle.

Blick, *m. s. 2*, glance.

Blitz, *m. s. 2*, flash, lightning.

ermüden, *v. w.*, tire, fatigue.

Gewitter, *n. s. 1*, thunder-storm.

heulen, *v. w.*, howl.

indem, *sub. conj.*, while, since.

Obdach, *n. s. 3*, shelter, [-thatch].

plaudern, *v. w.*, chat.

Regen, *m. s. 1*, rain.

Rückkehr, *f. w.*, return.

schießen, *v. s.* (o, off), shoot.

schlagen, *v. s.* (u, a), strike, [slay].

schreiten, *v. s.* (itt, itt, *aux.* sein), step.

sogar, *adv.*, actually, even.

Strecke, *f. w.*, stretch, distance.

Strom, *m. s. 2* (pl. ö), stream.

toll, *adj.*, mad.

überall, *adv.*, everywhere.

vergessen, *v. s.* (a, e), forget.

werfen, *v. s.* (a, o), throw, cast, [warp].

Wind, *m. s. 2*, wind.

NOTES.—¹ *mehrmals*, *several times*. Notice the inversion (Ex. XXIX, n. 2).—² *denken*; from *denken*, *dachte*, *gedacht*; one of the irregular weak verbs.—³ *an . . . denken*, *a return was not to be thought of, there was no thinking of a return*.—⁴ *glaubten . . . sein*, *believed that we had gone*.—⁵ *zu sehen*, *to be seen*.—⁶ *nach . . . zu*, *toward*.—⁷ *indem . . . werfen*, *while we cast, or better simply casting*. A clause with *indem* is often best translated by the Eng. *pple.* in *ing.*—⁸ *alle paar Minuten*, *every few minutes*.—⁹ *wie toll*, *like mad*.

THE MODAL AUXILIARIES AND *wissen*.

188. Characteristics. The verbs *dürfen*, *to be permitted*, *können*, *can*, *mögen*, *may*, *müssen*, *must*, *sollen*, *shall*, *wollen*, *will*, and *wissen*, *to know*, constitute a class by themselves. The first six are called 'modal auxiliaries.' They and *wissen* were originally strong verbs, but developed weak preterites after the old preterite had acquired present meaning. As a class they have the following peculiarities:

1. In the present indicative the vowel of the singular (except in *sollen*) is different from that of the plural, and the third person singular lacks the ending *t*.

2. Where the infinitive has umlaut, this umlaut disappears in the preterite indicative, but is found in the preterite subjunctive.

3. Each verb (except *wissen*) has two perfect participles, one weak, with prefix *ge*, and without umlaut, the other strong, without *ge*, and identical in form with the infinitive; thus from *können*, *gekonnt* and *können*. The strong participle is used only and always in connection with an infinitive; thus *ich habe es nicht gekonnt*, *I have not been able (to do) it*; but *ich habe es nicht thun können*, *I have not been able to do it*.

a. There are a few other verbs that show this last peculiarity of the modal auxiliaries; i. e., employ what seems to be the infinitive, and really is so if the verb is weak, in connection with an infinitive. The most

common of them are heißen, helfen, lassen, sehen and hören. Thus one says *ich habe sagen hören*, *I have heard say*.

189. Inflection of the Modal Auxiliaries.

PRESENT.

<i>Indic.</i>	<i>Subj.</i>	<i>Indic.</i>	<i>Subj.</i>	<i>Indic.</i>	<i>Subj.</i>
<i>ich darf</i>	<i>dürfe</i>	<i>kann</i>	<i>könne</i>	<i>mag</i>	<i>möge</i>
<i>du darfst</i>	<i>dürfest</i>	<i>kannst</i>	<i>könnest</i>	<i>magst</i>	<i>mögest</i>
<i>er darf</i>	<i>dürfe</i>	<i>kann</i>	<i>könne</i>	<i>mag</i>	<i>möge</i>
<i>wir dürfen</i>	<i>dürfen</i>	<i>können</i>	<i>können</i>	<i>mögen</i>	<i>mögen</i>
<i>ihr dürft</i>	<i>dürfet</i>	<i>könnt</i>	<i>könnet</i>	<i>mögt</i>	<i>möget</i>
<i>sie dürfen</i>	<i>dürfen</i>	<i>können</i>	<i>können</i>	<i>mögen</i>	<i>mögen</i>
<i>ich muß</i>	<i>müsse</i>	<i>soll</i>	<i>solle</i>	<i>will</i>	<i>wolle</i>
<i>du mußt</i>	<i>müßest</i>	<i>sollst</i>	<i>sollest</i>	<i>willst</i>	<i>wollest</i>
<i>er muß</i>	<i>müsse</i>	<i>soll</i>	<i>solle</i>	<i>will</i>	<i>wolle</i>
<i>wir müssen</i>	<i>müssen</i>	<i>sollen</i>	<i>sollen</i>	<i>wollen</i>	<i>wollen</i>
<i>ihr müßt</i>	<i>müßet</i>	<i>sollt</i>	<i>sollt</i>	<i>wollt</i>	<i>wollt</i>
<i>sie müssen</i>	<i>müssen</i>	<i>sollen</i>	<i>sollen</i>	<i>wollen</i>	<i>wollen</i>

PRETERITE.

<i>Indic.</i>	<i>Subj.</i>	<i>Indic.</i>	<i>Subj.</i>	<i>Indic.</i>	<i>Subj.</i>
<i>ich durfte</i>	<i>dürfte</i>	<i>konnte</i>	<i>könnte</i>	<i>modhte</i>	<i>möchte</i>
<i>du durftest</i>	<i>dürftest</i>	<i>konntest</i>	<i>könntest</i>	<i>modhtest</i>	<i>möchtest</i>
<i>etc.</i>	<i>etc.</i>	<i>etc.</i>	<i>etc.</i>	<i>etc.</i>	<i>etc.</i>
<i>ich mußte</i>	<i>müßte</i>	<i>sollte</i>	<i>sollte</i>	<i>wollte</i>	<i>wollte</i>
<i>du mußtetest</i>	<i>müßtetest</i>	<i>solltest</i>	<i>solltest</i>	<i>wolltest</i>	<i>wolltest</i>
<i>etc.</i>	<i>etc.</i>	<i>etc.</i>	<i>etc.</i>	<i>etc.</i>	<i>etc.</i>

PERFECT.

Indic.: *ich habe* (du hast, etc.) *gedurft* or *dürfen*, *gekonnt* or *können*, *gemocht* or *mögen*, *gemußt* or *müssen*, *gesollt* or *sollen*, *gewollt* or *wollen*.

Subj.: *ich habe* (du habest, etc.) *gedurft* or *dürfen*, etc.

PLUPERFECT.

Indic.: ich hatte (du hattest, etc.) gedurft or dürfen, gekonnt or können, etc.

Subj.: ich hätte (du hättest, etc.) gedurft or dürfen, gekonnt or können, etc.

FUTURE.

Indic.: ich werde (du wirst, etc.) dürfen, können, mögen, müssen, sollen, wollen.

Subj.: ich werde (du werdest, etc.) dürfen, können, etc.

FUTURE PERFECT.

Indic.: ich werde (du wirst, etc.) gedurft haben or haben dürfen, gekonnt haben or haben können, etc.

Subj.: ich werde (du werdest, etc.) gedurft haben, etc.

CONDITIONAL.

Present: ich würde (du würdest, etc.) dürfen, können, etc.

Perfect: ich würde (du würdest, etc.) gedurft haben or haben dürfen, gekonnt haben or haben können, etc.

IMPERATIVE.

Wanting, except for wollen, which has wolle (du), wolle er, wollen wir, wollt (ihr), wollen sie.

INFINITIVE.

Present: dürfen, können, mögen, müssen, sollen, wollen.

Perfect: gedurft zu haben, gekonnt zu haben, etc.

PARTICIPLES.

Present: dürfend, könnend, mögend, müßend, sollend, wollend.

Perfect: gedurft and dürfen, gekonnt and können, etc.

190. Inflection of wissen. The simple tenses of *wissen* inflect as follows :

PRESENT.		PRETERITE.	
<i>Indic.</i>	<i>Subj.</i>	<i>Indic.</i>	<i>Subj.</i>
ich weiß	wiſſe	wußte	wüßte
du weißt	wiſſeſt	wußteſt	wüßteſt
er weiß	wiſſe	etc.	etc.
wir wiſſen	wiſſen		
ihr wißt	wiſſet		
ſie wiſſen	wiſſen		

1. The compound tenses are regular ; ich habe gewußt, ich hatte gewußt, ich werde wiſſen, ich werde gewußt haben, etc.

2. The imperative is wiſſe (du), wiſſe er, wiſſen wir, wißt (ihr), wiſſen ſie.

191. Use of the Modal Auxiliaries. The use of the modal auxiliaries is highly idiomatic. All of them except *dürfen* have familiar English cognates, but the English verbs *may*, *can*, *shall* and *will* have but two tenses each, while *must* has but one. This necessitates the use in English of various circumlocutions, particularly in translating the compound tenses ; e. g., ich muß, *I must*, but ich mußte, *I had (to), was obliged* ; ich kann, *I can*, but ich werde können, *I shall be able*. The following are the most important uses (for further details see § 333 ff.):

1. *Dürfen* usually means *to be permitted, to have the right*, but is often best translated by *may*, or with a negative by *must not* ; e. g., darf ich ums Brot bitten ? *may I ask for the bread ?* das dürfen Sie nicht thun, *that you must not do*. The preterite subjunctive may denote probability ; e. g., das dürfte der Fall ſein, *that may be the case*. Sometimes *dürfen* approaches the meaning of *dare*, as in ich darf behaupten, *I dare assert*. But it is not cognate with *dare* and is very rarely to be so translated.

2. **Können** in the present is usually equivalent to *can*, but often to *may*; e. g., das kann sein, *that may be*. Ich konnte means *I was able*, ich könnte, *I should be able*, both of which uses are covered by English *could*; e. g., ich konnte es (gestern) nicht finden, *I could not find it (yesterday)*; ich könnte es finden (wenn ich ein Licht hätte), *I could find it (if I had a light)*.

3. **Mögen** is sometimes equivalent to *may*, as in er mag es behalten, *he may keep it*; more often it is to be rendered by *wish, want, like, care*; e. g., ich mag ihn nicht sehen, *I do not want to see him*. This use is especially common in the preterite subjunctive, ich möchte (gern) being = *I should like*.

4. **Müssen** is equivalent to *must* only in the present; elsewhere it is to be translated by *be compelled, be obliged, or the like*; e. g., ich mußte lachen, *I had to laugh, I could not help laughing*; er hat den ganzen Tag arbeiten müssen, *he has had to work all day*. Er müßte means *he would have (to), he would need*.

5. **Sollen** is sometimes equivalent to *shall*, in the preterite, to *should, ought*; e. g., du sollst nicht töten, *thou shalt not kill*; du solltest gehen, *you should (ought to) go*. More often it is best rendered by a form of *be* followed by *to*; e. g., er sollte bald sterben, *he was soon to die*. Very frequently it is used to report what is said, claimed or thought by some one else than the speaker; e. g., er soll sehr reich sein, *he is said to be very rich*.

6. **Wollen** generally denotes an act of *willing* or *wishing* on the part of the subject; e. g., er will Soldat werden, *he wishes to become a soldier*. It is often to be translated by *to be on the point of*; e. g., er will gehen, *he is on the point of going*. (Will in the third person rarely means *will*.) In the compound tenses translate by *wish* or *want*; e. g., ich habe dich längst besuchen wollen, *I have long been wishing to visit you*.

192. The Pluperfect Subjunctive of the Modal Auxiliaries. The pluperfect subjunctive of a modal auxiliary, with accompanying infinitive, is the usual equivalent of English *might*, *could* or *should*, followed by *have* and a participle. Thus *he could (or might) have come* is not *er könnte gekommen sein*, but *er hätte kommen können*; *you should have done it yourself*, not *du solltest es gethan haben*, but *du hättest es thun sollen*.

1. This construction may take the place of a perfect conditional with *would have* where the latter is connected with an infinitive; thus for *he would have been able to do it* one may say *er würde es haben thun können*, or *er hätte es thun können*; for *he would have wished to greet you*, *er würde dich haben grüßen wollen*, or *er hätte dich grüßen wollen* (or *mögen*).

193. Omission of Infinitive with Modal Auxiliary. After any of the modal auxiliaries, the dependent infinitive is often omitted, if it can readily be supplied; as *ich muß fort*, *I must (go) away*; *antworte du*, *ich kann es nicht*, *you answer, I cannot*.

2. Through this ellipsis of a verb some of the modal auxiliaries have acquired apparently the force of transitive verbs; e. g., *ich mag das Buch nicht*, *I do not like the book* (do not care to read or to have it); *können Sie Deutsch?* *can you speak German?*

EXERCISE XXXVII.

194. Rule of Order VI: Special Case of Dependent Order. In a dependent sentence containing a compound tense of a modal auxiliary in connection with an infinitive, the participle of the modal auxiliary comes last, next to that the infinitive, and just before that the inflected auxiliary; e. g., *ich weiß gewiß, daß ich so etwas nie hätte thun können*, *I know for certain that I could never have done such a thing*; *das ist ein Rätsel, welches niemand bis*

jetzt hat lösen können, *that is a riddle which no one has hitherto been able to solve.*

READING LESSON : MODAL AUXILIARIES.

Wir konnten weder gehen noch stehen und mußten alle Augenblicke nach irgend einem Bäumchen greifen, um¹ überhaupt² auf den Füßen bleiben zu können. Du weißt, daß ich nicht furchtsam bin, aber ich kann Dich³ versichern, daß es kein Spaß war. Während Du jetzt ruhig meine Beschreibung liest,⁴ magst Du vielleicht darüber lachen. Du wirst sagen: Es ist Dir recht geschehen;⁵ Du hättest im Gasthause bleiben sollen. Nun, ich will gestehen, daß gerade dieser Gedanke auch mir ein paarmal durch den Kopf fuhr,⁶ aber es half nichts.⁷ In solchem Falle kann man mit dem Narren in Shakespeare nur sagen: Der Reisende⁸ muß eben zufrieden sein.

Wir waren natürlich in sehr kurzer Zeit durch und durch naß geworden, und das Weitere konnte uns dann wenig kümmern. Es dauerte noch zwei volle Stunden, bis⁹ wir auf den Gipfel kamen und das Brockenhaus¹⁰ vor uns sahen. Du wirst mir glauben können, wenn ich Dir sage, daß der Anblick ein sehr willkommener war, denn jetzt durften wir wieder in eine menschliche Wohnung treten. Wir setzten uns an den Ofen und trockneten unsere Kleider, so gut¹¹ wir konnten. Endlich waren wir also nun auf dem Brocken, aber was¹² Naturschönheiten betraf, so hätten¹³ wir eben so gut auf dem Grunde des Meeres sitzen können. Ein dichter Nebel lag über dem ganzen Berge und man konnte keine hundert Schritte weit¹⁴ sehen.

VOCABULARY.

Anblick, *m. s. 2*, view, sight.
eben, *adv.*, even, just.

furchtsam, *adj.*, timid, [fright-
some].

geschehen, *v. s. (a, e, aux. sein)*,
happen.

gestehen, *v. s.*, confess; *pret.*
gestand, *pple.* gestanden.

greifen, *v. s. (iff, iff)*, grasp,
grip(e).

Kleid, *n. s. 3*, garment, [cloth].
kümmern, *v. w.*, trouble.

lachen, *v. w.*, laugh.

Meer, *n. s. 2*, sea, [mere].

menschlich, *adj.*, human.

Narr, *m w.*, fool.

naß, *adj.*, wet, [nas-ty].

Nebel, *m.* s. 1, fog, mist.

treten, *v.* s. (a, e, *aux.* sein),
step, tread.

trocknen, *v.* w., dry.

versichern, *v.* w., assure.

voll, *adj.*, full.

weder, *conj.*, neither ; weder
... noch, neither ... nor.

zufrieden, *adj.*, content.

NOTES.—¹ *um* with an inf. means *in order* ; here with *können*, *in order to be able*.—² *überhaupt*, *at all*.—³ *Dir* ; some prefer the dat. with *versichern*.—⁴ *ließt* ; for *ließst* ; see § 183.—⁵ *Es ist . . . geschehen*, *it served you right*.—⁶ *mir . . . fuhr*, *passed through my head* ; on *mir* see Ex. XXIV, n. 3.—⁷ *es half nichts*, *it did no good* ; from *helfen*, *half*, *geholfen*.—⁸ *der Reisende*, *the traveler* ; a present pple. used substantively. The quotation from Shakespeare is found in *As You Like It*, Act II, Scene 4: "When I was at home I was in a better place, but travelers must be content."—⁹ *bis* ; here a subordinating conjunction = *until*.—¹⁰ *Brodtenhaus* ; name of an inn on the summit of the Brocken.—¹¹ *so gut, as well as* ; *als* being omitted. In such a phrase *so* with following adv. acquires the force of a subordinating conjunction.—¹² *was* ; § 141, 1.—¹³ *hätten . . . sitzen können*, *might have been sitting*.—¹⁴ *weit* ; lit., *far*, but it does not need to be translated ; see Ex. XXXV, n. 4.

EXERCISE XXXVIII.

COLLOQUY.

I.

Weißt du, wie spät es ist ? Ich muß sofort nach Hause.

Es ist ziemlich finster draußen ; glaubst du, du wirst den Weg nach deiner Wohnung finden können ?

Daran hatte ich nicht gedacht, aber es dürfte¹ nicht schwer sein. Ich könnte im Notfall einen Polizisten fragen.

Auf die Polizei darfst² du nicht rechnen. Soll ich nicht mit dir gehen ? Ich kenne die Straßen besser als du.

Ich möchte sehr gern Gesellschaft haben. Wie weit mag es denn sein ? Weißt du es ?

Ich kann es nicht genau sagen. Es mag etwa eine Viertelstunde sein.

Aber du wirst den Rückweg allein machen müssen. Das thut mir leid. Ich hätte früher gehen sollen.

Nicht doch. Da hätten wir nicht so lange plaudern können. Sei³ meinetwegen ohne Sorge. Die frische Luft wird mir gut thun.

Du bist sehr freundlich. — Ich möchte wissen, wie es unsrem kranken Freunde geht. Er soll⁴ endlich etwas besser sein.

Ich war heute früh in seinem Hause, aber ich durfte ihn⁵ nicht sprechen. Der arme Kerl! Ich hätte so gern etwas sagen mögen,⁶ um ihn zu trösten.

II.

May I ask⁷ what time it is? Perhaps I ought⁸ to be going home.

Oh, it cannot be so very late. I haven't a watch,⁹ but if you step¹⁰ to the¹¹ window you can¹² see the city clock.

Just think!¹³ It is on the point of striking¹⁴ twelve. I ought to have gone an hour ago.¹⁵

You must not feel concerned¹⁶ on my account. I could not have used¹⁷ the time more pleasantly.

It is pretty dark outside. I wonder if¹⁸ I can find the way home.

I hadn't thought of that.¹⁹ If you wish, I will go with you.

I should like company, if it doesn't make you too much trouble.

Oh, it is no trouble. We will²⁰ take the short way through the park.

But they say that is²¹ dangerous in the night. They claim²² to have seen footpads there.

Nonsense! That is probably²³ an invention of the newspapers. At the most one might²⁴ meet a beggar there.

VOCABULARY.

allein, *adj., adv., alone.*
 draußen, *adv., outside.*
 Erfindung, *f. w., invention.*
 finster, *adj., dark.*
 frisch, *adj., fresh.*
 gebrauchen, *v. w., use.*
 höchstens, *adv., at the most.*
 Notfall, *m. s. 2 (pl. ä), case of*
need.

Polizei', *f. w., police.*
 Räuber, *m. s. 1, robber;*
 Straßenräuber, *footpad.*
 rechnen, *v. w., reckon, count.*
 Rückweg, *m. s. 2, return.*
 Sorge, *f. w., care, [sorrow].*
 trösten, *v. w., comfort, [trust].*
 Unsinn, *m. s. (no pl.), non-*
sense,

NOTES.—¹ *dürfte . . . sein*, *cannot be*; denoting less confidence than *kann nicht sein*.—² *darfst . . . nicht*, *must not*.—³ *Sei . . . ohne Sorge*, *be without concern, do not feel concerned*.—⁴ *Er soll . . . sein*, *he is said to be*.—⁵ *ihü*; object of *sprechen*, used here in the sense of *speak to*.—⁶ *hätte . . . sagen mögen*, *should have liked to say*.—⁷ *ask, fragen*.—⁸ *Perhaps I ought*, *ich sollte wohl*.—⁹ *watch, Taschenuhr*.—¹⁰ *if you stop*, *wenn du . . . trittst*.—¹¹ *to the*, *ans.*—¹² *you can*, *so kannst du*.—¹³ *Just think*; see Ex. VIII, n. 14.—¹⁴ *It is on the point of striking*, *es will eben . . . schlagen*.—¹⁵ *an hour ago*, *vor einer Stunde*.—¹⁶ *you must not feel concerned*, *du mußt . . . sein*.—¹⁷ *could not have used*, *hätte nicht . . . gebrauchen können*.—¹⁸ *I wonder if*, *ich möchte wissen, ob*.—¹⁹ *of that*, *darán*.—²⁰ *We will*, *wir wollen*.—²¹ *they say that is*, *der soll . . . sein*.—²² *They claim to have seen*, *man will . . . gesehen haben*.—²³ *That is probably*, *daß mag wohl . . . sein*.—²⁴ *one might meet*, *könnte man . . . treffen*.

THE PASSIVE VOICE.

195. Formation and Meaning of the Passive. The passive is formed by combining the auxiliary *werden* with the perfect participle. *Werden* is inflected regularly throughout, its participle appearing as *worden*; thus *ich werde gelobt*, *I am praised*; *er ist gelobt worden*, *he has been praised*.

1. It is important to distinguish between the true passive with *werden*, and the quasi-passive with *sein*, between *das Buch wird gedruckt*, and *das Buch ist gedruckt*. To do this it is only necessary to remember that *werden* means *to become, to pass into the state of*; hence *das Buch wird gedruckt* means *the book is becoming printed, is passing into the state of being printed, i. e., is printing, or being printed* (the work of printing is going on). On the other hand, *das Buch ist gedruckt* means *the book is printed, i. e., that the work of printing is finished*.

2. The forms with *werden*, then, denote an action going on at the time indicated by the tense of the verb; those with *sein* a state or condition that has resulted from a previous action. Further examples: *die Thür ist geschlossen*, *the door is closed*; *die Thür wird um 8 Uhr geschlossen*, *the door*

is closed (i. e., *they close the door*) *at 8 o'clock*; *ich war beinahe zu spät*; *der Brief wurde (eben) geschrieben*; *I was almost too late*; *the letter was (just) being written*; *ich war zu spät*; *der Brief war (schon) geschrieben*; *I was too late*; *the letter was (already) written*.

196. Conjugation of the Passive: *gelobt werden, to be praised.*

PRESENT.

Indic.: *ich werde gelobt, I am praised, du wirst gelobt, thou art praised, etc.*

Subj.: *ich werde gelobt, du werdest gelobt, etc.*

PRETERITE.

Indic.: *ich wurde (or ward) gelobt, I was praised, du wurdest (or wardest) gelobt, thou wert praised, etc.*

Subj.: *ich würde gelobt, du würdest gelobt, etc.*

PERFECT.

Indic.: *ich bin gelobt worden, I have been praised, du bist gelobt worden, thou hast been praised, etc.*

Subj.: *ich sei gelobt worden, du seiest gelobt worden, etc.*

PLUPERFECT.

Indic.: *ich war gelobt worden, I had been praised, du warst gelobt worden, thou hadst been praised, etc.*

Subj.: *ich wäre gelobt worden, du wärest gelobt worden, etc.*

FUTURE.

Indic.: *ich werde gelobt werden, I shall be praised, du wirst gelobt werden, thou wilt be praised, etc.*

Subj.: *ich werde gelobt werden, du werdest gelobt werden, etc.*

FUTURE PERFECT.

Indic.: *ich werde gelobt worden sein, I shall have been praised, du wirst gelobt worden sein, thou wilt have been praised, etc.*

Subj.: *ich werde gelobt worden sein, du werdest gelobt worden sein, etc.*

CONDITIONAL.

Present: ich würde gelobt werden, *I would (should) be praised*, du würdest gelobt werden, *thou wouldst be praised*, etc.

Perfect: ich würde gelobt worden sein, *I would (should) have been praised*, du würdest gelobt worden sein, *thou wouldst have been praised*, etc.

IMPERATIVE.

werde (du) gelobt,	<i>be (thou) praised.</i>
werde er gelobt,	<i>let him be praised.</i>
werden wir gelobt,	<i>let us be praised.</i>
werdet (ihr) gelobt,	<i>be (ye) praised.</i>
werden sie gelobt,	<i>let them be praised.</i>

INFINITIVE.

Present: gelobt zu werden, *to be praised*.

Perfect: gelobt worden zu sein, *to have been praised*.

GERUNDIVE.

zu lobend, *to be praised, praiseworthy* (see § 370).

197. The Active and the Passive Construction. In going from the active to the passive construction the object of the active verb becomes the subject of the passive, while the subject of the active, if a personal agent, goes into the dative with *von*; e. g., wir schlugen den Feind, *we beat the enemy*, becomes der Feind wurde von uns geschlagen.

1. A non-personal instrument or means is denoted usually by the accusative with *durch*; e. g., der Feind wurde durch List geschlagen, *the enemy was beaten by strategy*.

198. The Impersonal Passive of Intransitive Verbs. Intransitive verbs can only be used impersonally in the passive, but this use is very common. The impersonal passive can seldom be translated literally; e. g., es wurde getanzt und gesungen, *there was singing and dancing*.

1. Such expressions, therefore, as *I was told, my advice was not followed*, and all others in which the corresponding German verb is intransitive, have to be rendered by impersonal constructions, thus: *mir wurde gesagt; meinem Räte wurde nicht gefolgt*.

a. Very often, however, one can substitute for such an intransitive verb a transitive compound which can be used personally in the passive; thus for *my advice was not followed* one can say *mein Rat wurde nicht befolgt*.

199. Substitutes for the Passive. On the whole the passive is much less used in German than in English. The English passive can be replaced in German (1) by *man* with the active, as in *man sagt, it is said*; (2) by a reflexive form (§ 201), as in *es versteht sich, it is understood*; (3) by a reflexive with *lassen, let*, as in *es läßt sich hoffen, it may be hoped*; *es ließ sich erwarten, it was to be expected*.

EXERCISE XXXIX.

200. Rule of Order VII: Inversion after Subordinate Clause. Any subordinate clause preceding the principal verb of a complex sentence causes inversion; e. g., *wenn ich an Ihrer Stelle wäre, (so) würde ich zu Hause bleiben, if I were in your place, I would remain at home*; *obwohl er Geld hat, (so) hat er doch wenig Verstand, though he has money, he has little sense*; *damit er Ruhe haben könnte, zog er sich aufs Land zurück, that he might have peace, he retired into the country*.

1. Observe that this is only a special case under the general rule of inversion (§ 87). The subordinate clause always has the force either of an adverb, an adjective or a substantive; and such an element preceding the verb causes inversion.

a. But the clause may be itself the subject, in which case there is no room for inversion; e. g., *daß er recht hat, ist klar, that he is right is clear*.

2. The adverbial force of a preceding clause is often resumed by means of the adverb *so* placed just before the main verb (see the first two examples above). This *so* should not be translated.

READING LESSON : THE PASSIVE VOICE.

Im Brockenhause waren¹ aber eine Menge Gäste versammelt, unter denen ein lebhaftes Gespräch geführt wurde. Viele Späße wurden auf unsre Kosten gemacht, was² von uns natürlich nicht übel genommen werden konnte. Bald fühlten wir uns wie zu Hause und wurden eben so lustig wie die anderen. Obwohl wir sehr ermüdet waren, gingen wir erst um 10 Uhr zu Bett. Am folgenden Tage öffneten wir die Augen auf eine neue Welt; die Wolken waren verschwunden, und man konnte meilenweit³ nach jeder Richtung sehen.

Es wird behauptet, daß über zweihundert Städte und Dörfer vom Brockengipfel gezählt werden können. Wie es nun auch⁴ damit sein mag (denn ich habe sie nicht gezählt), war die Aussicht jedenfalls eine herrliche; sie ließ uns fühlen, daß wir aufs schönste⁵ für unsre Mühe belohnt waren. Du weißt wohl, daß viele Sagen vom Brocken erzählt werden. Es ist dies nämlich der Ort, wo nach altem Volksglauben das große Jahresfest⁶ der Teufel und Hexen gehalten wurde. Sogar heute noch werden ein Hexentanzplatz und dergleichen⁷ andere Dinge dem Reisenden gezeigt, aber die Geister sind längst verschwunden. Wenigstens sind keine Teufel oder Hexen von uns gesehen worden.

VOCABULARY.

behaupten, *v. w.*, assert.

belohnen, *v. w.*, reward.

fühlen, *v. w.*, feel.

führen, *v. w.*, lead, carry on.

Gast, *m. s. 2 (pl. ä)*, guest.

Gespräch, *n. s. 2*, conversation.

Glaube, *m. m. (gen. =ns)*, faith, belief, [be-lief].

herrlich, *adj.*, glorious, splendid.

Hexe, *f. w.*, witch.

Kosten, *f. (pl. only)*, cost.

lassen, *v. s. (ie, a)*, let, cause.

lustig, *adj.*, jolly, [lusty].

Meile, *f. w.*, mile.

Richtung, *f. w.*, direction.

Sage, *f. w.*, tradition, story, [say].

Tanz, <i>m. s. 2</i> (pl. ä), dance.	verschwinden, <i>v. s.</i> (a, u, aux.
Teufel, <i>m. s. 1</i> , devil.	sein), vanish, disappear.
übel, <i>adj., adv.</i> , evil, amiss.	Volk, <i>n. s. 3</i> , folk, people.
versammeln, <i>v. w.</i> , gather, as-	wenigstens, <i>adv.</i> , at least.
semble.	zählen, <i>v. w.</i> , count, [tell].

NOTES.—¹ waren . . . versammelt; not the passive. The verb refers not to an action, but to a state, the meaning being *were (already) gathered*.—² was, *a thing which*, the antecedent being a sentence; see § 141, 2, a.—³ meilenweit, *for miles*.—⁴ Wie . . . auch, *however*; § 140, 2.—⁵ aufs schönste, *most beautifully*; § 112, 2.—⁶ Jahresfest, *annual festival*; in allusion to the so-called Walpurgis-Night, supposed to be held annually on the 1st of May.—⁷ vergleichen; § 132, 2.

REFLEXIVE VERBS.

201. Characteristics. A 'reflexive' is a verb that requires a pronominal object referring to the subject. In the third person this object is *sich*; in the first and second it is that form of the personal pronoun which corresponds to the subject and is required by the governing power of the verb; e. g., er *schämt sich* (acc.), *he is ashamed*; er *schmeichelt sich* (dat.), *he flatters himself*; ich *schäme mich*, *I am ashamed*; ihr *schmeichelt euch*, *ye flatter yourselves*.

1. Reflexive verbs are conjugated with *haben* and have no passive. The pronoun stands just after the inflected element.

202. Conjugation of a Reflexive Verb: *sich freuen*, *to enjoy (glad one's self)*.

PRESENT.

<i>Indic.</i>	<i>Subj.</i>
ich freue mich	freue mich
du freust dich	freuest dich
er freut sich	freue sich
wir freuen uns	freuen uns
ihr freut euch	freuet euch
sie freuen sich	freuen sich

PRETERITE.

Indic.: ich freute mich, du freutest dich, etc.

Subj.: ich freute mich, du freutest dich, etc.

PERFECT.

Indic.: ich habe mich gefreut, du hast dich gefreut, etc.

Subj.: ich habe mich gefreut, du habest dich gefreut, etc.

PLUPERFECT.

Indic.: ich hatte mich gefreut, du hättest dich gefreut, etc.

Subj.: ich hätte mich gefreut, du hättest dich gefreut, etc.)

FUTURE.

Indic.: ich werde mich freuen, du wirst dich freuen, etc.

Subj.: ich werde mich freuen, du werdest dich freuen, etc.

FUTURE PERFECT.

Indic.: ich werde mich gefreut haben, du wirst dich gefreut haben, etc.

Subj.: ich werde mich gefreut haben, du werdest dich, etc.

CONDITIONAL.

Present: ich würde mich freuen, du würdest dich freuen, etc.

Perfect: ich würde mich gefreut haben, du würdest dich, etc.

IMPERATIVE.

	freuen wir uns
freue (du) dich	freut (ihr) euch
freue er sich	freuen sie sich

INFINITIVE.

sich (zu) freuen	sich gefreut zu haben
------------------	-----------------------

PARTICIPLE.

sich freuend	(sich) gefreut
--------------	----------------

1. In giving the principal parts of a reflexive verb the pronoun should precede the infinitive, but follow the preterite. With the participle it is best omitted altogether, thus: sich freuen, freute sich, gefreut.

203. Reflexive Constructions. Reflexive verbs are regularly intransitive; that is, take no accusative object other than the reflexive pronoun itself; but many of them take a secondary or complementary object in the genitive; e. g., er freut sich des Lebens, *he enjoys life*; erbarme dich meiner, *have mercy on me*.

1. With other verbs the complementary object is replaced by a prepositional phrase; e. g., er sehnt sich nach Ruhe, *he longs for rest*; er fürchtet sich vor Verrat, *he is afraid of treachery*.

2. Intransitive verbs are often construed with a reflexive object and a factitive predicate; e. g., sich tot lachen, *to laugh one's self dead*; sich satt essen, *to eat one's self full*.

IMPERSONAL VERBS.

204. Characteristics. An impersonal verb is a verb used in the third person singular to express the verbal idea in a general way without reference to a definite subject. If expressed the subject is *es*, but *es* is often omitted.

1. The verbs always used impersonally are not very numerous. They denote for the most part either operations of nature, as *es regnet*, *it rains*, or mental and bodily states, as *mir dünkt*, *methinks*. Besides these, however, there is a large number of verbs not ordinarily impersonal which admit freely of impersonal use, as in *es geht nicht*, *it won't do*; *es giebt Leute*, *there are people*.

2. *Es* is apt to be omitted when, under the rules for inversion, it would come after its verb; thus *mir schwindelt*, *I am dizzy*, takes the place of *es schwindelt mir*; so also in the impersonal passive; e. g., am Abend wurde getanzt, *in the evening there was dancing*, instead of *es wurde am Abend getanzt*.

a. But the omission does not take place with verbs denoting natural phenomena, nor with active verbs not usually impersonal; thus one does not say am Abend regnete, but regnete es, nor mir geht gut, but mir geht es gut.

3. The inflection of an impersonal verb, as such, presents no peculiarities that call for a special paradigm ; thus we have from *regnen*, quite regularly : *es regnet*, *es regnete*, *es hat geregnet*, *es wird regnen*, etc.

205. Impersonal Constructions. Verbs denoting mental and bodily states are often accompanied by a dative of the person concerned ; e. g., *dem Vater grauset*, *the father shudders*.

1. Others of these verbs take an accusative object which looks like the subject ; as *mir schläfert*, *I am drowsy*; *mir dünkt*, *methinks*.

2. Some transitive verbs are used impersonally with a direct object, giving rise to idioms that cannot be rendered literally ; e. g., *es hat Gefahr*, *there is danger* ; *es giebt Leute*, *there are people* ; *es gilt das Leben*, *it is a matter of life and death*.

3. Intransitive verbs are often used impersonally with a reflexive object, giving rise to idiomatic expressions ; as *es fragt sich*, *the question arises* ; *es lohnt sich der (gen.) Mühe*, *it is worth the trouble* ; *es handelt sich um's Leben*, *it is a question of life*.

a. Such an intransitive reflexive associated with *lassen* expresses the idea of possibility ; e. g., *hier läßt sich ruhig plaudern*, *here we can chat quietly* ; *es läßt sich hoffen*, *it may be hoped*.

EXERCISE XL.

COLLOQUY: REFLEXIVE AND IMPERSONAL VERBS.

I.

Run, wie hast du dich amüßiert? Es war äußerst warm im Theater, nicht wahr?

Schrecklich. Ich konnte an nichts denken, — nur mich nach frischer Luft sehnen.

Mir ging es eben so ; und doch schienen die meisten der Zuschauer sich an dem Stück zu ergötzen.¹ Es wundert mich, wie es ihnen nur möglich war

Mich auch. Hast du bemerkt, wie die Leute sich über den Zweikampf im dritten Akte freuten?²

Ja, aber ich habe die Geschichte überhaupt³ nicht verstehen können. Worum⁴ hat es sich in dem Streite eigentlich gehandelt?

Das fragt sich⁵ eben. So viel ich sehen konnte, ärgerte sich der Held über gar nichts.

Und der andere Kerl auch über nichts. Ich glaube, keiner von beiden wußte, warum sie sich schlugen.⁶

Du hast wohl recht. — Aber bemerkst du, wie kalt es geworden ist? Ich glaube, es wird regnen.

Es wäre doch schade, wenn wir uns wegen eines solchen Stüdes erkälten sollten.

Wir sind gleich⁷ bei meiner Wohnung. Warte einen Augenblick; ich werde dir einen Regenschirm holen.

Nein, das lohnt sich nicht der Mühe. Ich habe nicht weit zu gehen und kann mich beeilen.

Also, auf Wiedersehen! Wir haben jedenfalls das Stück gesehen, wovon so viel geredet wird.

II.

How good⁸ the fresh air feels, doesn't it?

Yes, indeed. Wasn't⁹ it warm in there, though?

I was really ashamed of myself. I could hardly keep¹⁰ awake.

Nor I either,¹¹ though the others seemed to be enjoying themselves very well.

Oh, to be sure; there are¹² such salamanders, who do not care¹³ anything about bad air.

So that is¹⁴ the play that there is so much talk about. Well, I am glad that we have seen it.

I cannot say that. I believe it is going to rain, and I should not like to take cold for such a play.

That would be a pity, to be sure.¹⁵ But the piece is the fashion just now; and when it's a question¹⁶ of fashion, one must put up with things.¹⁷

Of course,—let one's self be bored¹⁸ in order¹⁹ to be in the fashion. Man²⁰ is a strange animal.

VOCABULARY.

Alt, *m. s. 2*, *act.*

amüsieren (*sich*), *v. w.*, enjoy
(*amuse*) one's self.

ärgern (*sich*), *v. w.*, be vexed.

bemerkten, *v. w.*, notice, re-mark.

drinnen, *adv.*, in there, inside.

ergötzen (*sich*), *v.*, delight.

erfalten (*sich*), *v. w.*, take cold.

gefallen, *v. s. (dat.)*, please.

handeln, *v. w.*; *es handelt sich*
um, it is a question of.

Held, *m. w.*, hero.

lohn (*sich*), *v. w.*, to be worth
while.

quälen (*sich*), *v. w.*, be tor-
mented, be bored.

Regenschirm, *m. s. 2*, umbrella.

Salama'nder, *m. s. 1*, sala-
mander.

sehnen (*sich*), *v. w.*, long.

schredlich, *adj.*, terrible.

Streit, *m. s. 2*, strife, conflict.

Stück, *n. s. 2*, piece, play,
[stick].

Tier, *n. s. 2*, animal, [deer].

wach, *adj.*, a-wake.

wie'dersehen, *v. s.*, see again;
auf Wiedersehen, good-bye.

wundern, *v. w.*, cause to won-
der; *mißwundert's*, I wonder.

Zu'schauer, *m. s. 1*, spectator.

Zweifampf, *m. s. 2* (*pl. ä*), duel.

NOTES.—¹ *sich ergötzen an* (*dat.*), to take pleasure in.—² *sich freuen über* (*acc.*), to be delighted over.—³ *überhaupt*, at all, anyway.—⁴ *Worum hat es . . . gehandelt*; *worum* = *um was*. The meaning is: *What was the question at issue?*—⁵ *das fragt sich eben*, that is just the question.—⁶ *sich schlagen*, to fight.—⁷ *gleich bei*, right by, close by.—⁸ *How . . . feels*, wie die frische Luft einem (§ 149, 1) wohl thut.—⁹ *Wasn't it . . . though*, war es doch.—¹⁰ *keep*, bleiben.—¹¹ *Nor I either*, ich auch nicht.—¹² *there are*, es giebt.—¹³ *who do not care anything about*, die sich gar nicht um . . . kümmern.—¹⁴ *So that is*, das ist also.—¹⁵ *to be sure*, allerdings.—¹⁶ *when it's a question of*, wenn es sich um . . . handelt.—¹⁷ *one must put up with things*, muß man sich schon etwas gefallen lassen.—¹⁸ *let one's self be bored*, sich quälen lassen; *inf.* without zu.—¹⁹ *in order to be*, um . . . zu sein.—²⁰ *man*, der Mensch.

COMPOUND VERBS.

206. Separable and Inseparable Compounds. There are two kinds of compound verbs, separable and inseparable. In the latter the particle always precedes the verb and forms one word with it, as *verstehen*, *understand*; *er versteht*, *he understands*. In the former the particle is liable to be separated from the verb, as *aufstehen*, *to rise*; *er steht früh auf*, *he rises early*.

1. In English we have only inseparable composition, as in *beget*, *forgive*, *outrun*, none of which can be broken up without changing the meaning; cf. *outrun* with *run out*, etc.

207. Differences in Conjugation. The conjugation of a separable compound differs from that of an inseparable in the following particulars :

1. In the simple tenses of a separable verb, except in the dependent order, the prefix comes at the end of the sentence ; e. g., from *auffetzen*, *to put on*, *er setzt den Hut auf*, *he puts on his hat*. An inseparable compound, as stated above, is never broken up.

2. The *zu* of the infinitive comes between the parts of a separable compound, the three being written as one word, as *aufzustehen* ; with an inseparable compound *zu* precedes and is written separately, as *zu verstehen*.

3. The *ge* of the past participle comes between the prefix and the verb in a separable compound, the three elements being here also written as one word ; e. g., *aufgestanden*, *risen*. In an inseparable compound *ge* is omitted entirely ; e. g., *verstanden*, *understood*.

4. Separable compounds invariably accent the prefix ; inseparable compounds the verb ; as *verst'e'hen*, *versta'nd*, *versta'nden* ; *au'f'st'ehen*, *sta'nd au'f*, *au'f'gestanden*.

208. The Inseparable Prefixes. The prefixes which always form inseparable verbs are *be*, *ent* (*emp*), *er*, *ge*, *ver* and *zer*. These six prefixes are never accented in any part of speech, and are not in use as separate words.

1. Each of these prefixes had originally a definite meaning, and this original meaning is sometimes distinctly discernible in modern German ; e. g., *er* meant *out* and *erdenken* is *to think out*. In other cases the force of the prefix has blended so closely with that of the verb that it can now be discovered only by the help of historical study (just as in English we have lost all sense of a

connection between *have* and *behave*). Sometimes a compound exists with no simple verb corresponding to it; e. g., *beginnen*, *to begin*. In general the meaning of a compound cannot be told from a knowledge of its parts, but must be learned from the dictionary. The most common and easily discernible meanings of the inseparable prefixes are as follows :

a. **Be**, cognate with *be* in *behave*, *beget*, etc., forms transitive verbs from intransitives or from nouns and adjectives ; e. g., *bedenken*, *think about*, *consider*, from *denken*, *think* ; *befreien*, *set free*, *liberate*, from *frei*, *free* ; *bekümmern*, *trouble*, from *Kummer*, *sorrow*.

b. **Ent**, which sometimes takes the form *emp*, implies *separation*, sometimes *origin* ; e. g., *entgehen*, *escape*, *get away from* ; *entlassen*, *dismiss*, *let go away* ; *entstehen*, *stand forth*, *arise* ; *entflammen*, *flame out*, *burst into flames*.

c. **Er** means *forth*, *out*, often forming transitive verbs of completed action ; thus *erstehen*, *stand forth*, *arise* ; *erscheinen*, *shine forth*, *appear* ; *erdenten*, *think out*, *excogitate* ; *erfinden*, *find out*, *invent* ; *erjagen*, *hunt down*, *capture by chasing* ; *erfragen*, *find out by asking*.

d. **Ge** forms numerous compounds in which the meaning of the prefix is not now obvious, and can only be understood by historical study.

e. **Ver**, cognate with *for* in *forgive*, *forget*, etc., means *out*, *away*, *to an end* ; e. g., *vergehen*, *pass away* ; *versinken*, *sink away* ; *verbluten*, *bleed to death*. Sometimes it means *amiss*, as in *verführen*, *lead astray* ; *verfennen*, *misjudge*.

f. **Zer** means *asunder*, *in pieces* ; e. g., *zerspringen*, *burst asunder* ; *zerbrechen*, *break in pieces*.

209. Conjugation of Inseparable Compounds : *befommen*, *to get* ; *verreissen*, *to depart*. Principal parts : *befommen*, *befam*, *befommen* ; *verreissen*, *verreiste*, *verreist*.

PRES. : *ich befomme*, *du befommst* (*subj. befommest*), etc. ; *ich verreise*, *du verreisest*, etc.

PRET.: ich *besam* (*subj.* *besäme*), du *besamst* (*subj.* *besämeſt*), etc.; ich *verreiſte*, du *verreiſteſt*, etc.

PERF.: ich *habe bekommen*, du *haſt* (*subj.* *habest*) *bekommen*, etc.; ich *bin* (*subj.* *ſei*) *verreiſt*, du *biſt* (*subj.* *ſieſt*) *verreiſt*, etc.

PLUP.: ich *hatte* (*subj.* *hätte*) *bekommen*, etc.; ich *war* (*subj.* *wäre*) *verreiſt*, etc.

FUT.: ich *werde bekommen*, etc.; ich *werde verreifen*, etc.

FUT. PERF.: ich *werde bekommen haben*, etc.; ich *werde verreist ſein*, etc. (The remaining forms can easily be supplied.)

1. Observe that the perfect participle of a *ge*-compound may be like that of the simple verb. It can only be told from the connection whether such a form as *gehört* comes from *hören*, *to hear*, or from *gehören*, *to belong to*. There are many such cases.

210. The Separable Prefixes. These are much more numerous than the inseparable. The list embraces (1) a dozen or more common prepositions, as *auß*, *mit*, *über*; (2) a like number of adverbs of position and direction, such as *ab*, *off*, *empor*, *up*, *zuſammen*, *together*; (3) the particles *her*, *toward*, and *hin*, *away from*, together with their very numerous compounds.

1. The separable prefixes are simply adverbs which in certain forms are written with the verb they modify as one word. The German says *come in*, *kommen Sie herein*, or *he went away*, *er ging fort*, just as English does; the difference is that English recognizes no such verbs as *into-come*, *awayto-go*, corresponding to *hereinzukommen* and *fort-zugehen*.

2. The particles *her* and *hin* require special attention. *Her* means *toward* the speaker, or the speaker's point of view; *hin* is its opposite. Thus *kommen Sie her*, *come here*; *wo gehen Sie hin?* *where are you going?* *kommen Sie herauf*, *come up* (the speaker is above); *gehen Sie hinaus*, *go up* (the speaker is below); *er schwamm zu mir herüber*, *he swam*

across to me; er schwamm hinüber, *he swam across* (to the other side). But the speaker may take the actor's point of view without reference to his own; thus er blickte hinauf, *he looked up* (from where he stood); er zog das Kind zu sich herauf, *he drew the child up to him*.

211. Conjugation of Separable Compounds: a'nfangen, *to begin*; a'breißen, *to depart*. Principal parts: a'nfangen, fing an, a'ngefangen, a'breißen, reiße ab, a'bgereift.

PRES.: ich fange an, du fängst (*subj.* fangest) an, etc.; ich reise ab, du reisest ab, etc.

PRET.: ich fing (*subj.* finge) an, du fingst (*subj.* fingest) an, etc.; ich reiße ab, du reißest ab, etc.

PERF.: ich habe angefangen, du hast (*subj.* habest) angefangen, etc.; ich bin (*subj.* sei) abgereift, du bist (*subj.* seiest) abgereift, etc.

PLUP.: ich hatte (*subj.* hätte) angefangen, du hättest (*subj.* hättest) angefangen, etc.; ich war (*subj.* wäre) abgereift, du warst (*subj.* wärest) abgereift, etc.

FUT.: ich werde anfangen, du wirst (*subj.* werdest) anfangen; ich werde abreisen, du wirst (*subj.* werdest) abreisen, etc.

FUT. PERF.: ich werde angefangen haben, du wirst (*subj.* werdest) angefangen haben, etc.; ich werde abgereift sein, du wirst (*subj.* werdest) abgereift sein, etc.

COND. PRES.: ich würde anfangen, du würdest anfangen, etc.; ich würde abreisen, du würdest abreisen, etc.

COND. PERF.: ich würde angefangen haben, etc.; ich würde abgereift sein, etc.

IMP.: fange an, reise ab; er fange an, er reise ab; fangen wir an, reisen wir ab; fangt an, reist ab; fangen sie an, reisen sie ab.

INF.: an(zu)fangen, angefangen zu haben; ab(zu)reisen, abgereift zu sein.

PPL.: anfangend, abreisend; angefangen, abgereift.

212. Doubtful Prefixes. The four prepositions *durch*, *über*, *um*, *unter* and the adverb *wieder* enter into composition sometimes as separable, sometimes as inseparable prefixes; thus we have *du'rchleſen* (*laß durch*, *du'rchgeleſen*), *to read through (thoroughly)*, and *durchle'ſen* (*durchla's*, *durchle'ſen*), *to peruse*; *ü'berſeſen* (*ſetzte über*, *ü'bergeſcht*), *to cross*, and *überſe'ſen* (*überſe'hte*, *überſe'ht*), *to translate*.

1. To this list are sometimes added the prepositions *hinter*, *behind*, and *wider*, *against*, but the compounds of these are in reality always inseparable. The reason for not giving them under § 208 is that they belong to the class of prepositions and in noun-compounds can bear the accent; e. g., *Hi'nterhalt*, *ambuscade*; *Wi'derſpruch*, *contradiction* (but *hinterha'ten*, *hold back*, and *widerſpre'chen*, *contradict*).

2. The prefixes *miß*, *amiss*, *wrongly*, and *voll*, *fully*, are regularly inseparable; e. g., *mißha'ndeln*, *to maltreat*, *mißha'ndelte*, *mißha'ndelt*; *vollſü'hren*, *to complete*, *vollſü'hrte*, *vollſü'hrt*. But *miß* is sometimes treated as separable in the infinitive and participle (*mi'ßzuhandeln*, *mi'ßgehandelt*). Formations like *gemi'ßhandelt*, as if the verb were not compounded at all, also occur. *Voll* is separable only when used as an adjective in the literal sense; e. g., *er goß das Glas voll*, *he poured the glass full*.

213. Composition with Nouns and Adjectives. There are not a few cases in which a noun or adjective or adverbial phrase, from constant association with a verb, has come to form a compound with it; e. g., *tei'lnehmen*, *to take part*; *wa'hrſagen*, *to prophesy*; *aus'einanderſeſen*, *to explain*.

1. Compounds of this kind are treated in one of two ways, viz.: either the first element is regarded as a separable prefix (a noun losing its initial capital), or else it

forms with the verb a new verb-stem which has regular weak inflection. Thus from *teilnehmen* we have *nahm teil*, *teilgenommen*, but from *wahrſagen*, *wahrſagte*, *gewahrſagt*.

214. Verbs Doubly Compounded. An inseparable compound may be still further compounded with a separable prefix; e. g., *bei'behalten* (*behielt bei*, *beibehalten*), *to retain*. Such formations omit *ge* in the participle, since two unaccented prefixes are never permitted to come together.

1. The only prefix that ever precedes a verb already separably compounded is *wieder*, as in *wiederhe'rstellen*, *to restore*. The preterite is written *ſtellte wieder her*, the participle *wiederhe'rgestellt*.

EXERCISE XLI

READING LESSON: COMPOUND VERBS.

215. Rule of Order VIII: Separable Compounds. In the simple tenses of a separable compound the prefix comes last if the order is normal or inverted, but next to the last (being then written with the verb as one word) if the order is dependent; e. g., *daß Konzert fängt um 8 Uhr an*, *the concert begins at 8 o'clock*; *wenn daſ Konzert um 8 Uhr anfängt*, *if the concert begins at 8 o'clock*; *da die Geſellſchaft ihm nicht mehr zuſagte*, *kehrte er nach der Stadt zurück*, *as the company no longer suited him he returned to the city*.

Lieber Herr Müller! Ihr freundlicher Brief vom 15. dieſes Monats iſt kürzlich hier angekommen, und ich ſpreche Ihnen dafür meinen herzlichſten Dank aus.

Sie fragen, wo ich mich in der nächſten Zeit¹ aufhalten werde, und ob ich meine Studien in Deutſchland noch weiter fortzuſetzen gedenke. Nun, beide Fragen ſind ſchwer zu beantworten,² denn alles kommt³ auf die Wünſche meiner Eltern an. Ich habe das deutſche Leben lieb gewonnen und würde ſehr gern noch einige

Monate hier verweilen ; aber mein Vater ist, wie Sie wissen, kein reicher Mann, und es sollen⁴ jetzt schwere Zeiten über Amerika herein= gebrochen sein. Mit jeder Post erwarte ich einen Brief von ihm, worin er mir, wie ich hoffe, seine Lage genau auseinandersetzen wird, und ich werde mich dann natürlich seinen Wünschen unter= werfen.

Da ich vielleicht bald werde abreisen müssen, habe ich indessen die Rolle des Reisenden wieder aufgenommen. Gerade jetzt halte ich mich auf einige Zeit in Köln auf. Das Interessanteste, was diese Stadt darbietet, ist natürlich der große Dom, dessen Bau schon im 13. Jahrhundert angefangen, dann wieder mehrmals unterbrochen und erst 1880 vollendet wurde. Der Dom macht auf mich bei wiederholtem Besuche⁵ einen stets gewaltigeren Ein= druck ; aber ich werde mich auf keine Beschreibung desselben einlassen, da ich Ihnen gewiß nichts Neues mitteilen könnte.

VOCABULARY.

NOTE.—Separable composition will be indicated by an accent ; insepar= able only where it might be doubtful.

a'breisen (sein), v. w., depart.

a'nkommen (sein), v. s., arrive.

au'shalten (sich), v. s., stay.

au'seina'nderse'tzen, v. w., ex= plain.

au'sprechen, v. s., express, re= turn.

Bau, m. s. 2, building.

beantworten, v. w., answer.

Besuch, m. s. 2, visit.

Dank, m. s. (no pl.), thanks.

dann, adv., then.

da'rbietsen, v. s., offer.

Dom, m. s. 2, cathedral, dome.

Eindruck, m. s. 2 (pl. ü), im= pression.

ei'nlassen, v. s., with sich, enter upon, go into.

fo'rtsetzen, v. w., continue.

gedenken, v. w., intend.

gewaltig, adj., powerful.

herei'nbre'chen, v. s., set in.

inde'ssen, adv., meanwhile.

Jahrhu'ndert, n. s. 2, century.

lie'bgewinnen, v. s. (a, o), grow fond of.

mi'tteilen, v. w., impart, tell.

Post, f. w., mail, post.

unterbre'chen, v. s., interrupt.

unterwe'rfsen, v. s. (a, o), sub= mit.

verweilen, v. w., tarry.

wiederau'suehmen, v. s., re= sume.

wiederho'len, v. w., repeat.

Wunsch, m. s. 2 (pl. ü), wish.

NOTES.—¹ *in der nächsten Zeit, in the near future.*—² *beantworten*; the construction requires a transitive verb, whence *antworten*, which is not transitive, could not be used.—³ *kommt . . . auf . . . an*; *ankommen auf* (with acc.) = *to depend upon.*—⁴ *es sollen, are said, it is said that* (§ 191, 5).—⁵ *bei wiederholtem Besuche, with (each) repeated visit.*

THE PARTICLES.*

216. The Adverb. Adverbs modify verbs, adjectives and other adverbs. As in English, an adverb may also be connected directly with a noun, or may stand alone in the predicate; e. g., *der Mann dort, the man yonder*; *die Zeit ist um, the time is up.*

1. Some adverbs, e. g., *wohl, bald*, are primitive words used only as adverbs; others, e. g., *auf, um*, are primitive words used also as prepositions; still others are formed by means of a suffix; e. g., *freilich, to be sure*, from *frei*; *blindlings, blindly*, from *blind*. Others, again, are case-forms of nouns, with or without a modifier; e. g., *teils, partly*, from *Teil*; *größenteils, in great part*; i. e., *großen Teils*.

a. But the great mass of adverbs are simply adjectives used in the stem-form; e. g., *gut, well*; *frei, freely*. There is thus no need of a suffix, like *ly* in English, having the special function of forming adverbs from adjectives.

2. An adjective used as an adverb is usually capable of comparison, the comparative ending in *er*, the superlative

* Only a brief and general account of the uninflected parts of speech is given here, all details being reserved for Part II. Since particles of every kind have been freely introduced in the preceding reading lessons and colloquies, there is no need of special exercises illustrating their use. Instead of that the remaining exercises will be devoted to grammatical discussion of a German text (the anecdote of Exercise XLII), the object being to furnish a vocabulary and phraseology for the use of German in the grammatical drill of the class-room.

being the phrase with *am* or with *aufs* (§ 112); thus the adverb *gut* compares *gut*, *besser*, *am besten*.

a. Adverbs which are not used as adjectives are, in general, not subject to comparison; but there are a few exceptions.

217. The Preposition. Prepositions govern cases, thus forming phrases that have adverbial or adjectival force. There are eight prepositions that always govern the accusative, sixteen that always govern the dative, and nine that govern the accusative or dative with difference of meaning. There are then some thirty or more that regularly govern the genitive, though some of them may take the dative without difference of meaning. For lists see § 376-7.

1. The prepositions that govern the dative and accusative take the latter case when motion is implied and the phrase answers the question 'whither'? If no motion is implied, and the phrase answers the question 'where'? they take the dative; e. g., *er geht ans Fenster*, *he goes to the window*; but *er steht am Fenster*, *he stands by the window*.

a. There are, however, some cases not provided for by this rule; e. g., *über* in the sense of *concerning* (neither rest nor motion being implied) always takes the accusative. For fuller information consult the list in Part II.

2. A preposition, as its name implies, regularly comes before the noun it governs, but there are a few that may come after; e. g., one may say *meiner Ansicht nach*, or *nach meiner Ansicht*, *in my opinion*.

3. The three prepositions *um*, in the sense of *in order* (to denote purpose), *ohne*, *without*, and *statt* (or *anstatt*), *instead*, may govern the infinitive.

218. The Conjunction. Conjunctions connect sentences. They are divided into three classes, as follows, the classification being of great importance on account of its bearing upon the subject of word-order :

1. The general connectives, which do not subordinate the sentence nor modify adverbially the following verb. They are *und, and*; *aber* (also *allein* and *sondern*, all meaning *but*); *denn, for*, and *oder, or*. These words do not affect the order.

2. The conjunctive adverbs, which, coming first in a clause, combine the functions of a connective (conjunction) and adverbial modifier. They are very numerous. Examples are *also, so, accordingly*; *nun, now*; *doch, but, still*; *darauf, thereupon*. These words cause inversion; e. g., *er ist reich, doch hat er wenig Verstand, he is rich, but he has little sense*.

a. The words of this class are strictly adverbs and not conjunctions at all, but they partake of the nature of conjunctions in that they show the logical connection of sentences. They do not always come first in the clause, and when they do not they cause no inversion.

3. The subordinating conjunctions, which subordinate the sentence they introduce and require the dependent order. These are also quite numerous, examples being *daß, that*; *ob, whether*; *da, since*; *wenn, if*; *obgleich, although*. For a list see § 381.

219. The Interjection. Interjections do not enter into the syntactical structure of the sentence, but are independent expressions of feeling. They are usually classified according to the emotions they express, as joy, pain, surprise or the like.

1. But certain interjections are sometimes accompanied by a case-form of a noun; e. g., *o des Elends! oh, the misery!*

EXERCISE XLII.

READING LESSON : AN ANECDOTE.

Es trug sich einmal zu, daß die Frau eines armen Schusters gefährlich erkrankte. Der Mann hatte nichts, womit er einen Arzt bezahlen konnte, und befand sich daher in großer Not. Er kannte zwar einen geschickten Arzt, der in einem schönen Hause ihm gegenüber¹ wohnte, aber er wußte, daß dieser ein großes Honorar verlangen würde. Lang und traurig überlegte er die Sache bei sich und kam endlich auf folgenden Gedanken.

Er ging nämlich zu dem Arzte hinüber, setzte ihm den Fall auseinander und bat ihn, seine Frau zu besuchen. „Haben Sie denn etwas, um mich zu bezahlen?“ fragte der Arzt. „Leider nicht viel,“ antwortete der Schuster; „ich habe nur zwanzig Thaler,² die ich gerade auf einen solchen Krankheitsfall wie diesen³ aufgespart habe.“ (Das war nun erlogen, aber, wie der arme Mann dachte, galt es das Leben seiner Frau.) „Es ist alles, was ich in der Welt besitze, und diese Summe biete ich Ihnen an, wenn Sie meine Frau kurieren.“ „Und wenn ich sie nicht kuriere?“ versetzte der Doktor. „Nun, wenn Sie sich ihrer annehmen wollen,“ erwiderte der Schuster, „so gebe ich Ihnen das Geld, gleichviel ob Sie sie kurieren oder umbringen.“

Der Doktor war jetzt zufrieden und unternahm die Behandlung der Kranken, die aber endlich dem Tode verfiel. Bald darauf verlangte er die zwanzig Thaler. „Haben Sie meine Frau kuriert?“ fragte der Schuster. „Leider nicht,“ antwortete der Doktor. „Und haben Sie sie denn umgebracht?“ fuhr jener fort. Der Doktor mußte natürlich behaupten, daß er sie auch nicht umgebracht habe.⁴ „Also bin ich Ihnen doch wohl nichts schuldig,“ sagte der Schuster, und damit war das Geschäft abgeschlossen.

VOCABULARY.

a'bschließen, v. s., close up.

a'nbieten, v. s., offer.

a'nnehmen (sich, *gen.*), v. s.,
interest one's self in, take
charge of.

au'ffsparen, v. w., save up,
[*spare*].

Behandlung, *f. w.*, treatment.

besitzen, v. s., possess.

bezahlen, v. w., pay.

daher^t, *adv.*, therefore.
 erkranken, *v. w.*, sicken, be
 taken sick.
 erlügen, *v. s.* (o, o), invent
 falsely, [-lie].
 erwidern, *v. w.*, reply.
 fo'rtfahren, *v. s.*, continue.
 gegenü'ber, *prep.* (*dat.*), oppo-
 site.
 gelten, *v. s.* (a, o), have at
 stake, involve.
 geschickt, *adj.*, skillful.
 gleichvie'l, *adv.*, no matter,
 just the same.
 hinü'bergehen, *v. s.*, go over.

Sonora'r, *n. s. 2*, fee.
 kurieren, *v. w.*, cure.
 Not, *f. s. 2*, need, distress.
 schuldig, *adj.*, indebted.
 Schuster, *m. s. 1*, cobbler.
 Thaler, *m. s. 1*, thaler, dollar.
 traurig, *adj.*, sad, sorrowful.
 überle'gen, *v. w.*, ponder, con-
 sider.
 u'mbringen, *v. w.*, kill.
 unterne'hmen, *v. s.*, undertake.
 verfallen, *v. s.*, fall a prey.
 versetzen, *v. w.*, answer, re-
 turn.
 zu'tragen (sich), *v. s.*, happen.

NOTES.—¹ ihm gegenüber; see § 217, 2.—² Thaler; Eng. dollar is not cognate with Ger. Thaler, but derived from it. The Thaler has had very different values, but may be thought of here as about = \$0.75.—³ wie diesen; in apposition with Krankheitsfall. But dieser, i. e., wie dieser es ist, would also be correct.—⁴ umgebracht habe; subjunctive of indirect discourse. An indirect statement generally keeps in German the *tense* that would be used in the direct form, but employs the subjunctive *mode*. The doctor would say in the direct form: ich habe sie auch nicht umgebracht. The pret. of bringen is brachte (§ 178).

EXERCISE XLIII.

COLLOQUY.

I.

NOTE.—The speakers are hereafter to be thought of as teacher and pupil. The text under discussion is the anecdote of Exercise XLII.

Run, wollen Sie die Lektion¹ anfangen?

Soll ich übersetzen, oder den deutschen Text vorlesen?

Lesen Sie zunächst² ein paar Zeilen im Deutschen vor.

„Es trug sich ei'nmal zu—“

Halten³ Sie einen Augenblick. Heißt⁴ es ei'nmal oder ein-
 ma'l? Wie betonen Sie das Wort?

Ich habe es ei'nmal ausgesprochen.⁵ Ist das nicht richtig?

Das fragt sich eben. Was bedeutet nun ei'nmal im Unterschiede von einma'l?

Ich erinnere mich jetzt. Es sollte einma'l heißen, weil die Bedeutung unbestimmt ist.

Richtig; das Wort hat hier den Sinn von *once upon a time*; man muß also die zweite Silbe betonen.—Nun fahren Sie fort.*

—„daß die Frau,“ u. s. w. (Der Schüler liest weiter vor, bis der Lehrer ihn unterbricht).

Das genügt einstweilen. Wollen Sie nun das Gelesene* übersetzen. (Er übersetzt.)

Sie lächeln. Habe ich den Sinn nicht richtig wiedergegeben?

Ja, allerdings; nur übersetzen Sie bisweilen zu buchstäblich. Beim Übersetzen kommt es nicht nur auf den Sinn, sondern auch auf das Idiom an.

Welchen Fehler habe ich denn gemacht?

Sie sagten *sickened dangerously*. Was ist das für Englisch? Dazu haben Sie „Not“ durch *need* wiedergegeben. Aber *need*, obwohl es etymologisch dem Deutschen „Not“ entspricht, giebt hier keinen Sinn. Es sollte *distress* oder *trouble* heißen.

II.

Where does to-day's lesson begin?

We were¹¹ to prepare the first half of the forty-second exercise.

Very well. Will you read the first sentence. . . . That will do for the present. Did¹² any one notice a mistake in pronunciation?

I think I know what you mean.¹³ I ought to have said einma'l and not ei'nmal.

Quite right. Do you remember the rule¹⁴ I gave you—the rule¹⁵ for the accent of this word?

The accent depends upon the meaning. Ei'nmal means *one time, once and no more*; einma'l, *one TIME, once upon a time*.

That is right. Well, how do you translate the passage?

I was not able to translate it very well. The first clause seems to make no sense.

Oh but it does though.¹⁶ Where lies the difficulty? I do not see anything¹⁷ difficult about it.¹⁸

I can't make out the sense of *trug*.

Oh that's it. So you looked¹⁹ in the dictionary under *tragen*, did you? Well you ought²⁰ to have known better than that. The verb is *sich zutragen*.

VOCABULARY.

a'hängen (von), *v. s.*, depend (on).

Aussprache, *f. w.*, pronunciation.

bedeuten, *v. w.*, signify, mean.

Bedeutung, *f. w.*, meaning.

betonen, *v. w.*, accent.

Betonung, *f. w.*, accent.

buchstäblich, *adj.*, literal.

einstweilen, *adv.*, for the present.

entsprechen, *v. s.* (*dat.*), correspond.

erinnern (*sich*, *gen.*), *v. w.*, remember, recollect.

etymologisch, *adj.*, etymological.

herau'sbekommen, *v. s.*, make out, get out.

heutig, *adj.*, of to-day, to-day's.

Idio'm, *n. s. 2*, *idiom*.

lächeln, *v. w.*, smile.

Le'tio'n, *f. w.*, lesson.

nach'schlagen, *v. s.*, consult, look up (in a dictionary).

präparieren, *v. w.*, prepare.

Regel, *f. w.*, rule.

Satz, *m. s. 2* (*pl. ä*), sentence.

Satzglied, *n. s. 3*, clause, member (of a sentence).

schwierig, *adj.*, difficult.

Schwierigkeit, *f. w.*, difficulty.

Silbe, *f. w.*, syllable.

sondern, *conj.*, but.

Stelle, *f. w.*, passage, place.

Text, *m. s. 2*, text.

überse'ten, *v. w.*, translate.

u'nbestimmt, *adj.*, indefinite.

Verb(um), *n.* (*pl. Verba*), verb.

vorlesen, *v. s.*, read (aloud).

weil, *sub. conj.*, because, [while].

wie'bergeben, *v. s.*, render.

NOTES.—¹ *Le'ttion*; properly *reading-lesson*. Synonyms are *das Pensum*, *task*, and *die Aufgabe*, *exercise*.—² *zunächst*, *first*.—³ *Halten Sie*, *stop*.—⁴ *Heißt es*, *is it*, *do you call it*.—⁵ *ausgesprochen*, *pronounced*.—⁶ *fahren Sie fort*; *fortfahren* is *intrans.*, whereas *fortsetzen*, which also means to *continue*, is *trans.*.—⁷ *bis*; here a *sub. conj.* = *until*.—⁸ *das Gelesene*, *the (matter) read*.—⁹ *kommt . . . auf . . . an*, *it is a question of*.—¹⁰ *sondern* is used for *but* when a negative has gone before and a contrast or antithesis is to be expressed.—¹¹ *were to*, *should*.—

¹² *did*; use the perf. tense.—¹³ *mean*, meinen; Eng. *mean* = meinen when the subject is a person, bedeuten when it is a thing.—¹⁴ *the rule I gave*, der Regel, die (§ 137, 1) ich . . . habe.—¹⁵ *the rule*; gen. in apposition.—¹⁶ *Oh but it does though* = doch!—¹⁷ *not anything*, nichts.—¹⁸ *about it*, darin.—¹⁹ *So you looked*, also haben Sie . . . nachgesehen.—²⁰ *You ought*, etc., das hätten Sie besser wissen sollen.

EXERCISE XLIV.

COLLOQUY.

I.

Was für ein Redeteil ist „Frau“?

Frau ist ein Substantiv, oder ein Hauptwort, wie es auf Deutsch¹ heißt.

Zu welcher Deklination gehört es?

Es geht nach der schwachen.

Was ist das Kennzeichen der schwachen Deklination?

Im allgemeinen die Endung *-en* im Genetiv² des Singulars³; aber Frau ist ein Femininum,⁴ und die Feminina bleiben im Singular unflektiert.

Kennen Sie ein anderes Wort von ähnlicher Bedeutung?

Sie meinen vielleicht Weib oder Dame?

Ja wohl; welches Geschlechtes ist „Weib“?

Das ist sächlich und flektiert⁵ stark nach der dritten Klasse.

Welcher Kasus ist „Schusters“?

Das ist der Genetiv; es geht nach der ersten Klasse der starken Deklination.

Und was ist das Kennzeichen dieser Klasse?

Die Wörter dieser Klasse haben keine Endung im Nominativ des Plurals. Einige haben aber Umlaut des Stammvokals.

Geben Sie ein Beispiel. Erinnern Sie sich eines solchen?

O ja; ich erinnere mich mehrerer, wie Vater, Garten u. s. w.

Run, genug einstweilen von der Deklination. — Was bedeutet „Mann“ im Unterschiede von Mensch?

Das kann ich nicht erklären; ich glaube es allerdings zu wissen, aber ich kann es nicht auf Deutsch ausdrücken.

Run, versuchen Sie es einmal. Zum Lernen sind wir ja eben hier.

II.

Of what declension is *Arzt*?

It belongs to the strong declension, second class.

Please inflect it in the plural.

I have forgotten whether it has umlaut or not.⁶

Well, I might⁷ tell you, but I won't.⁸ Consult your dictionary.⁹—What is the German for *he is a physician*?

It is¹⁰ *er ist Arzt*. The indefinite article is¹¹ omitted.

That is right. Of what gender and declension is *Honorar*?

It is at any rate neuter and inflects, I presume, like¹² *Studium*, according to the mixed declension.

So you are not sure. Why do you think it must¹³ inflect like *Studium*?

Because it comes from the Latin *honorarium*, the plural of which¹⁴ ends in¹⁵ *ia*.

That is really not a bad reason, but the plural is nevertheless *Honorare*, not *Honorarien*.—Of what gender is *Frankheit*?

It is a feminine, of course.

Why do you say "of course"?

Because it ends in *heit*, and all words that end in *heit* are feminine.

Quite right; to what¹⁶ English ending does *heit* correspond etymologically?

It corresponds to the ending *hood* in *manhood*.

VOCABULARY.

allgemein, *adj.*, general.

Arti'kel, *m. s. 1*, article.

ausdrücken, *v. w.*, express.

Declinatio'n, *f. w.*, declension.

enden, *v. w.*, end.

Endung, *f. w.*, ending.

Femini'num, *n. (pl. =a)*, feminine noun.

flectieren, *v. w.*, in-flect.

gemischt, *pple.*, mixed.

Geneti'v, *m. s. 2*, genitive.

Geschlecht, *n. s. 3*, gender, sex.

Haupt, *n. s. 3*, head.

Kasus, *m. (pl. Kasus)*, case.

Kennzeichen, *n. s. 1*, sign, characteristic, [ken-token].

lateinisch, *adj.*, *Latin*.

Nominati'v, *m. s. 2, nominative*.

Plura'l, *m. s. 2, plural*.

Rede, *f. w.*, *speech*.

sächlich, *adj.*, *neuter*.

schwach, *adj.*, *weak*.

sicher, *adj.*, *sure*.

Singula'r, *m. s. 2, singular*.

Sta'tum, *m. s. 2 (pl. ä), stem*.

Substanti'v, *n. s. (pl. =e or =a), substantive*.

Umlaut, *m. s. 2, umlaut*.

Vo'sa'l, *m. s. 2, vowel*.

we'glassen, *v. s.*, *omit*.

weiblich, *adj.*, *feminine*, [*wife-ly*].

NOTES.—¹ **auf Deutsch**. For the technical terms of grammar Ger. has very often two names, one of Lat., the other of Ger. origin. Thus instead of the Lat. Substantiv or Nomen we have Hauptwort and Nennwort; instead of der Artikel, das Geschlechtswort, etc.—² **Genetiv** (also written Genitiv). The Lat. names of the cases are Nominati'v, Geneti'v, Dati'v, Accusati'v; all masc., because they are in their origin adjectives agreeing with *casus*.—³ **des Singula'rs**; the form Singula'ris (masc. on account of *numerus* understood) is also used. The German term is die Einzahl, to which corresponds die Mehrzahl = der Plural(is).—⁴ **Femininum**; so also ein Mascu'linum, ein Neutrum. The corresponding Ger. adjectives are weiblich (from Weib), männlich (from Mann) and sächlich (from Sache).—⁵ **flektiert**; flektieren is both trans. and intrans.—⁶ **or not**, oder nicht, after hat.—⁷ **I might**, ich könnte.—⁸ **I won't**, ich will es nicht.—⁹ **dictionary**; dat. with in.—¹⁰ **It is**, es heißt.—¹¹ **is**, wird.—¹² **like**, wie.—¹³ **it must**, es müsse.—¹⁴ **the plural of which**, dessen Plural.—¹⁵ **ends in**; to end in is enden (or endigen or ausgehen) a u f.—¹⁶ **To what**, welcher, without prep. after entspricht.

EXERCISE XLV.

COLLOQUY.

I.

Welche Art adjektivischer Flexion zeigt sich in der Form „armen“?

Da haben wir schwache Flexion — wegen des vorhergehenden „eines“.

Erklären Sie das Grundprinzip,¹ nach dem die Flexion eines Adjektivs sich richtet.²

Steht es³ allein im Prädikat oder hinter seinem Substantiv, oder wird es adverbial gebraucht, so hat das Adjektiv überhaupt keine Flexion.

Richtig; aber erklären Sie die Sache weiter. Wann wird starke und wann schwache Flexion gebraucht?

Ein Adjektiv wird schwach flektiert, wenn eine flektierte Form eines Artikels oder Pronomens vorhergeht; sonst aber stark.

Wollen Sie also die Wortverbindung, „eines armen Schusters“ in allen möglichen Kasusformen flektieren?

„Ein armer Schuster,“ u. s. w. Das Adjektiv ist schwach, außer im Nominativ, wo „ein“ flexionslos ist.

Was für adjektivische Flexion wird hinter einem flexionslosen Pronomen oder Adjektiv gebraucht? Wie sagt man auf Deutsch, zum Beispiel: *I find nothing new in the book?*

Da sagt man „nichts Neues.“ Das Adjektiv wird als Substantiv in der Apposition behandelt und daher mit großem Anfangsbuchstaben⁴ geschrieben.

Was ist dieses „Neues“ seinem Ursprunge⁵ nach?

Es ist eigentlich ein Genetiv; der Ausdruck „nichts Neues“ bedeutete ursprünglich *nothing of new*.

Ist das Adjektiv „arm“ komparationsfähig⁶?

Ja; es hat regelmäßige Komparation, mit Umlaut des Stammvokals; also arm, ärmer, der ärmste.

II.

What kind of adjective inflection have we in the form größer?

That is an example of strong inflection.

And why is the strong inflection used here?

Because no article or pronoun precedes.

How do you compare groß?

The comparative is⁷ größer, the superlative der größte.

What is irregular in this comparison?

According to the general rule the superlative should be⁸ größest, because the stem ends in⁹ a sibilant.

You say that groß has strong inflection because no article or pronoun precedes. Does this rule hold¹⁰ without exception?

No; before a genitive in¹¹ s the adjective may¹² be weak without regard to¹³ a preceding word.

Give an example of this usage.

I do not this moment¹³ remember an example.

Well, put into German¹⁴ the sentence: *The word is of the neuter gender.*

Das Wort ist sächlichen Geschlechts.

Right; but could one not also say sächliches?

Yes, only the weak form is now the more usual.

VOCABULARY.

Adjekti'v, ¹⁵ <i>n. s. 2 (pl. =e or =a),</i> <i>adjective.</i>	Komparati'v, <i>m. s. 2, comparative.</i>
adjektivisch, <i>adj., adjective.</i>	komparieren, <i>v. w., compare.</i>
adverbie'll, <i>adj., adverbial.</i>	Laut, <i>m. s. 2, sound.</i>
Appositio'n, <i>f. w., apposition.</i>	Prädika't, <i>n. s. 2, predicate.</i>
Art, <i>f. w., kind, sort.</i>	Prinzi'p, <i>n. m. (pl. =ien),</i> <i>principle.</i>
Ausnahme, <i>f. w., exception.</i>	Prono'men, ¹⁷ <i>n. (pl. =mina),</i> <i>pronoun.</i>
behandeln, <i>v. w., treat.</i>	richten, <i>v. w., regulate.</i>
Buchstabe, <i>m. w., letter.</i>	Rücksicht, <i>f. w., regard.</i>
Flexio'n, <i>f. w., in-flection.</i>	Superlati'v, <i>m. s. 2, superlative.</i>
flexionslos, <i>adj., uninflected,</i> <i>[flection-less].</i>	unregelmäßig, <i>adj., irregular.</i>
Form, <i>f. w., form.</i>	Ursprung, <i>m. s. 2 (pl. ü),</i> <i>origin.</i>
Gebrauch, <i>m. s. 2 (pl. äü), use,</i> <i>usage.</i>	ursprünglich, <i>adj., original.</i>
gewöhnlich, <i>adj., usual.</i>	Verbindung, <i>f. w., combina-</i> <i>tion.</i>
hinter, <i>prep. (dat. and acc.),</i> <i>be-hind, after.</i>	vorhe'rgehen, <i>v. s., precede.</i>
Komparatio'n, ¹⁶ <i>f. w., compar-</i> <i>ison.</i>	Zischlaut, <i>m. s. 2, sibilant.</i>

NOTES.—¹ Grundprinzip, *fundamental principle.*—² sich richtet, *is determined* (§ 199).—³ Steht es = wenn es steht. Here, as often, the inverted order denotes a condition.—⁴ Anfangsbuchstaben, *initial.*—⁵ seinem Ursprunge nach, *in its origin* (§ 217, 2).—⁶ komparationsfähig, *capable of comparison.*—⁷ is, heißt.—⁸ be, lauten or heißen.—⁹ in, auf.—¹⁰ Does this rule hold, *gilt diese Regel.*—¹¹ may, kann.—¹² to, auf (acc.).—¹³ this moment, *im Augenblicke.*—¹⁴ put into, *übersetzen Sie ins.*—¹⁵ Adjektiv; the word of Ger. origin for *adjective* is Eigenschaftswort, *quality-word.*—¹⁶ Komparation; the Ger. word is Steigerung, the corresponding verb being steigern; comparative, then = erste Steigerung; superlative, zweite Steigerung.—¹⁷ Pronomen; the Ger. term is Fürwort, *for-word.*

EXERCISE XLVI.

COLLOQUY.

I.

Was für ein Redeteil ist „es“?

Es ist ein sogenanntes persönliches Pronomen.

Warum sagen Sie „ein sogenanntes“?

Weil es sich nie oder sehr selten auf eine Person bezieht.

Worauf bezieht es sich in diesem Falle?

Eigentlich auf das folgende Satzglied; es steht als unbestimmtes Subjekt des unpersönlichen Verbs „sich zutragen“?

Was für ein Pronomen ist „sich“?

Sich ist das Reflexiv¹ der dritten Person.

Was ist das Reflexiv der ersten und zweiten Person?

Da wird der Accusativ oder Dativ des betreffenden² persönlichen Pronomens gebraucht.

Erklären Sie den Gebrauch und die Schreibweise³ des Pronomens „Sie“.

„Sie“ ist eigentlich der Plural der dritten Person, wird aber in der höflichen Anrede anstatt „ihr“ gebraucht und zur Unterscheidung mit großem Anfangsbuchstaben geschrieben.

Wie ist das Wort „womit“ zu erklären⁴?

Es steht hier an der Stelle eines⁵ von „mit“ abhängigen Relativpronomens.

Unter welchen Umständen treten solche Verbindungen mit „wo“ an die Stelle des Relativs?

Wenn das Relativ sich nicht auf eine Person bezieht und von einer Präposition regiert wird.

II.

How do you inflect the pronoun *es*?

Es — I have forgotten what the genitive is.

Well, that is not so very strange. Have you ever met⁶ the genitive of *es* in your reading?

Never, so far as⁷ I can remember. Probably it is not much used.

Not much, to be sure. Still it does occur occasionally. What is ordinarily⁸ used instead of it?

You answer the question yourself when⁹ you say an *beffen Stelle*.

That is true. Is there, however, any other form of expression¹⁰ that I might have used? Might I have said *an der Stelle seiner*?

No, that wouldn't do,¹¹ but you might have said *an seiner Stelle* or *an Stelle desselben*.

Quite right. Let us take another example. What is the German for *I have had enough of it*?

There one would use the combination with *da*; one would say: *Ich habe genug davon gehabt*.

I see you understand the matter pretty well, even if¹² you do sometimes forget your paradigms.—What kind of a pronoun is *dieser*, in the third line from above?

That is a demonstrative and refers to *Ärgt*.

How do you translate it in this passage?

It is¹³ best translated by¹⁴ an emphatic¹⁵ *he* or by *the latter*.

Quite right. Many have the bad habit of translating¹⁶ such a *dies* by *this one*. But that offends¹⁷ against English idiom.

VOCABULARY.

<i>abhängig</i> , <i>adj.</i> , dependent.	<i>Reflexi'v</i> , <i>n. s.</i> (<i>pl. =e</i> or <i>=a</i>), <i>reflexive</i> .
<i>anstatt</i> , <i>prep. (gen.)</i> , instead of.	<i>regieren</i> , <i>v. w.</i> , govern.
<i>Anrede</i> , <i>f. w.</i> , address.	<i>Relati'v</i> , <i>n. s.</i> (<i>pl. =e</i> or <i>=a</i>), <i>relative</i> .
<i>beziehen</i> (<i>sich</i> , <i>auf</i>), <i>v. s.</i> , refer (to).	<i>Subje'kt</i> , <i>n. s. 2.</i> , <i>subject</i> .
<i>Demonstrativ</i> , <i>n. s.</i> (<i>pl. =e</i> or <i>=a</i>), <i>demonstrative</i> .	<i>Umstand</i> , <i>m. s. 2</i> (<i>pl. ä</i>), <i>circum-</i> <i>stance</i> .
<i>gelegentlich</i> , <i>adj.</i> , occasional.	<i>unpersönlich</i> , <i>adj.</i> , <i>im-personal</i> .
<i>Gewohnheit</i> , <i>f. w.</i> , habit.	<i>Unterscheidung</i> , <i>f. w.</i> , <i>distinc-</i> <i>tion</i> .
<i>höflich</i> , <i>adj.</i> , polite.	<i>verstoßen</i> , <i>v. s.</i> (<i>ie</i> , <i>o</i> , <i>3 sing.</i> <i>verstößt</i>), <i>offend</i> .
<i>jemaß</i> , <i>adv.</i> , ever.	<i>vo'rkommen</i> , <i>v. s.</i> , <i>occur</i> .
<i>niemaß</i> , <i>adv.</i> , never.	<i>wahrscheinlich</i> , <i>adj.</i> , <i>probable</i> .
<i>oben</i> , <i>adv.</i> , <i>ab-ove</i> .	<i>Weise</i> , <i>f. w.</i> , <i>manner</i> , <i>mode</i> , <i>wise</i> .
<i>Paradi'gma</i> , <i>n. mx.</i> (<i>pl. =men</i>), <i>paradigm</i> .	
<i>persönlich</i> , <i>adj.</i> , <i>personal</i> .	
<i>Präpositio'n</i> , <i>f. w.</i> , <i>preposition</i> .	

NOTES.—¹ **Reflexiv.** The names of pronouns in *iv* can be used both adjectively and substantively; e. g., ein Reflexiv, ein reflexives Pronomen; pl. die Reflexiva, die Reflexive, or die reflexiven Pronomina.—² **des betreffenden**, the appropriate (the one concerned).—³ **Schreibweise**, orthography.—⁴ **zu erklären**, to be explained.—⁵ **eines . . . Relativpronomens**, of a relative depending on *mit*. Notice the order.—⁶ **met, kennen gelernt**.—⁷ **so far as**, so viel.—⁸ **ordinarily**, gewöhnlich.—⁹ **when**, indem.—¹⁰ **form of expression**, Ausdrucksform, or =weise.—¹¹ **do**, gehen.—¹² **even if you**, wenn Sie auch.—¹³ **is**, wird.—¹⁴ **by**, durch.—¹⁵ **emphatic**, betontes; a word (or phrase) not properly a noun but used as a noun is neut.—¹⁶ **of translating**, zu übersetzen, at the end of the sentence.—¹⁷ **against Eng. idiom**, gegen das englische Idiom, or den englischen Sprachgebrauch.

EXERCISE XLVII.

COLLOQUY.

I.

Wie heißen die Grundformen¹ von „kannte“?

Kennen, kannte, gekannt; es gehört zur schwachen Konjugation, aber nicht zur regelmäßigen.

In welcher Hinsicht ist es unregelmäßig?

In der Bildung des Präteritums,² wo die schwachen Verba gewöhnlich keine Vokalwandlung haben.

Und wie ist die starke Konjugation charakterisiert?

Durch Ablaut des Stammvokals im Präteritum; daneben auch durch die Endung =en im zweiten³ Particip.

Es giebt aber noch zwei andere Eigentümlichkeiten, welche einen großen Teil der starken Verba charakterisieren.

Ja; das sind Vokalwandlung im Präsens des Indikativs⁴ und Umlaut im Präteritum des Konjunktivs.

Richtig; wollen Sie nun die Regel angeben, nach welcher diese Vokalwandlung im Präsens sich richtet?

Ein wurzelhaftes *a* nimmt den Umlaut an; ein kurzes *e* wird zu *i*, ein langes zu *ie*.

In welchen Formen zeigen sich diese Vokalwandlungen?

Nur in der zweiten und dritten Person des Singulars; dazu auch zum Teil in der zweiten Person Singularis des Imperativs.

Wie wird das Perfect von „kam“ gebildet; das heißt, mit welchem Hilfsverb wird es flektiert?

Es wird mit „sein“ flektiert, da „kommen“ zu denjenigen intransitiven Zeitwörtern gehört, welche den Begriff der Bewegung oder des Übergangs ausdrücken.

II.

What tense⁵ have we in the form kam?

That is the preterite of kommen, which belongs to the strong conjugation.

Please inflect it in the present indicative.

Ich komme, du kommst, — I do not know for certain whether it should be kommst or kömmt.

Both forms occur, but the one⁶ without umlaut is now the usual one.⁶—What is the perfect?

The perfect is formed with sein, because kommen is intransitive and expresses the idea of motion.

Does that rule always hold? For instance: How about⁷ the verb tanzen, to dance? Does one say ich habe getanzt or ich bin getanzt?

That depends upon the meaning. If the word denotes only the action of dancing,⁸ without the idea of transition from one place⁹ to another, you use¹⁰ haben; but otherwise,¹¹ sein.

Right. Now will you inflect kommen in the present subjunctive?

The subjunctive differs from the indicative only in three forms.

And which are they?¹²

The second person both¹³ singular and plural and the third person singular.

What is the relation¹⁴ of the subjunctive to the indicative in the preterite?

The stem-vowel of the indicative takes umlaut in the subjunctive, which also has the connecting vowel e.

Very well. Will you now give a synopsis¹⁵ of the entire conjugation of kommen, by giving¹⁶ the third person singular of each tense.¹⁷

VOCABULARY.

Ablaut , <i>m. s. 2</i> , ablaut, <i>gradation</i> .	Konjugatio'n , <i>f. w.</i> , <i>conjugation</i> .
a'bweichen , <i>v. s.</i> (i, i), <i>differ</i> .	Konjuncti'v , <i>m. s. 2</i> , <i>subjunctive</i> .
a'ngaben , <i>v. s.</i> , <i>give</i> , <i>state</i> .	Partici'p , <i>n. s.</i> (<i>pl. =e, =ia or =ien</i>), <i>participle</i> .
a'nnehmen , <i>v. s.</i> , <i>take (on)</i> .	Perfe'kt , <i>n. s. 2</i> , <i>perfect</i> .
Bewegung , <i>f. w.</i> , <i>motion</i> .	Prä'sens , <i>n.</i> (<i>sing. indecl.</i> , <i>pl. =tia</i>), <i>present</i> .
bezeichnen , <i>v. w.</i> , <i>denote</i> .	Präte'ritum , <i>n.</i> (<i>pl. =a</i>), <i>preterite</i> .
bilden , <i>v. w.</i> , <i>form</i> .	Te'mpus , <i>n.</i> (<i>sing. indecl.</i> , <i>pl. =ora</i>), <i>tense</i> .
Bildung , <i>f. w.</i> , <i>formation</i> .	Übergang , <i>m. s. 2</i> (<i>pl. ä</i>), <i>transition</i> .
Bindevokal , <i>m. s. 2</i> , <i>connecting vowel</i> .	Übersicht , <i>f. w.</i> , <i>synopsis</i> , <i>general survey</i> .
charakterisieren , <i>v. w.</i> , <i>characterize</i> .	verhalten (sich) , <i>v. s.</i> , <i>be related</i> .
Eigentümlichkeit , <i>f. w.</i> , <i>peculiarity</i> .	Wandlung , <i>f. w.</i> , <i>change</i> .
Hilfsverb , <i>n. m.</i> (<i>pl. =en or =a</i>), <i>auxiliary</i> .	wurzelhaft , <i>adj.</i> , <i>radical</i> .
Imperati'v , <i>m. s. 2</i> , <i>imperative</i> .	Zeitwort , <i>n. s. 3</i> , <i>verb</i> .
Indicati'v , <i>m. s. 2</i> , <i>indicative</i> .	
intransitiv , <i>adj.</i> , <i>intransitive</i> .	

NOTES.—¹ **Grundformen**, *principal parts*.—² **Präteritums**. The names of the tenses are (all neuter): Präsens, Präteritum (or Imperfekt(um)), Perfekt(um), Plusquamperfekt(um), Futur(um) or das erste Futur, Futurum Perfecti, or das zweite Futur.—³ **zweiten**; the *second* pple. is the perf.—⁴ **Indicativs**. The other modes (all masc.) are: Konjunktiv, Imperativ, Konditional(is); note also der Infinitiv, but das Particip (or Participium).—⁵ **what tense**, welches Tempus, or welche Zeitform.—⁶ **one**; omit in translating.—⁷ **How about**, wie verhält es sich mit.—⁸ **the action of dancing**, die Handlung des Tanzens.—⁹ **place**, Ort.—¹⁰ **you use**, so gebraucht man.—¹¹ **but otherwise**, sonst aber, or andernfalls aber.—¹² **which are they?** welche sind das?—¹³ **both . . . and**, sowohl als (§ 148, 1).—¹⁴ **What is the relation of the**, wie verhält sich der.—¹⁵ **synopsis of**, Übersicht über (acc.).—¹⁶ **by giving**, indem Sie . . . angeben.—¹⁷ **of each tense**, eines jeden Tempus, or jeder Zeitform.

EXERCISE XLVIII.

COLLOQUY.

I.

Was für ein Verb ist „konnte“?

Das ist ein sogenanntes modales Hilfsverb.

Was sind die besonderen Eigentümlichkeiten dieser Verba?

Erstens ist das Präsens derselben eigentlich ein altes Präteritum, weshalb sie bisweilen Präterito-Präsentia genannt werden.

Gut; welche Spuren dieser älteren Sprachstufe zeigen sich noch heute an ihrer Flexion?

Sie haben im Präsens, wie alle starken Präterita, keine Personalendung in der dritten Person des Singulars.

Richtig; es giebt aber eine zweite Eigentümlichkeit, die auf ähnliche Weise zu erklären ist.

Ja; der Stammvokal des Singulars ist, mit einer einzigen Ausnahme, verschieden von dem des Plurals.

Aber das ist doch keine Eigentümlichkeit der starken Präterita.

Jetzt allerdings nicht mehr, aber früher war es so, und die modalen Hilfsverba sind auf der alten Stufe stehen geblieben.¹

Nun, eine weitere Frage; wie heißt das Participle Perfecti von „können“?

Es sind deren zwei: ein schwaches auf t, mit der Vorsilbe ge, und ein starkes, welches ohne Vorsilbe und gleichlautend mit dem Infinitiv ist.

Also „gekonnt“ und „können.“ Unter welchen Umständen wird die starke Form gebraucht?

Nur wenn das Participle in Verbindung mit einem Infinitiv steht.

II.

What mode¹ have we in the form konnte?

That is the preterite indicative, third person singular.

What is the difference in meaning between konnte and könnte?

The former¹ means *was able*, the latter *would be able*. The one denotes something real, the other something possible.

Very good. What are the principal parts of mußte?

Wissen, mußte, gewußt; the verb is weak, but irregular.

In what respect is it irregular? In other words,⁴ why is it treated in the grammar along with 'the modal auxiliaries'?

Because its present⁵ is really an old preterite; that is,⁷ it belongs to the class of preterite-presents.

By what tokens⁸ is that⁹ fact to be recognized?¹⁰

In the first place, by the lack¹¹ of the personal ending *t* in the third person singular.

That is right. Be careful not to say¹² *er weißt*. *Weissen* means *to whitewash*.

Then, secondly, by the fact that the stem-vowel of the plural is different from that of the singular.

Is this difference of stem characteristic of¹³ all the¹⁴ modal auxiliaries?

Of all except *sein*, in which the vowel of the plural has conformed to that of the singular.

VOCABULARY.

a'npassen (*sich, dat.*), *v. w.*, conform.

charakteristisch, *adj.*, characteristic.

einzig, *adj.*, only, single.

erkennen, *v. w.*, recognize.

gleichlautend, *adj.*, like sounding, identical in sound.

Mangel, *m. s. 1* (*pl. ä*), lack, want.

moda'l, *adj.*, modal.

Mo'dus, *m.* (*sing. indecl., pl. Modi*), *mode*.

persona'l, *adj.*, personal.

Präterito-Präsentia, *n.* (*pl.*), *preterite-presents*.

Spur, *f. w.*, trace.

Stufe, *f. w.*, stage.

That'sache, *f. w.*, fact.

verschieden, *adj.*, different.

Vor-sil-be, *f. w.*, prefix.

Zeichen, *n. s. 1*, sign, token.

NOTES.—¹ *stehen geblieben*, *stopped*; lit. remained standing. Note that the inf. with *bleiben* corresponds to an Eng. pres. pple.—² **what mode**, welchen *Modus*.—³ **The former . . . the latter**; see § 114, 5.—⁴ **In other words**, mit anderen Worten.—⁵ **along with**, zugleich mit.—⁶ **its present**; either sein *Präsens*, or das *Präsens* desselben.—⁷ **that is**, das heißt.—⁸ **By what tokens**, an welchen Zeichen, or better *voran*.—⁹ **that**, diese.—¹⁰ **to be recognized**, zu erkennen.—¹¹ **by the lack**, an dem Mangel.—¹² **Be careful not to say**; either hüten Sie sich zu sagen, or, less commonly, hüten Sie sich nicht zu sagen.—¹³ **of**, für.—¹⁴ **all the**, alle.

EXERCISE XLIX.

COLLOQUY.

I.

Was für ein Kompositum ist „trug sich zu“ — ein trennbares, oder ein untrennbares?

Es ist natürlich trennbar; die Teile sind ja eben hier getrennt.

Wie lautet also der Infinitiv?

Der Infinitiv heißt „sich zutragen“; das Verb wird hier unpersönlich und reflexiv gebraucht.

Wie unterscheiden sich die trennbaren Komposita von den untrennbaren in Bezug auf die Betonung?

Bei der trennbaren Komposition trägt das Präfix den Hauptton; bei der untrennbaren dagegen die Wurzelsilbe.

Geben Sie mir die Grundformen von „erkrankte“?

Es ist schwach und untrennbar; also erkrankt, erkrankte, erkrankt.

Welches sind die untrennbaren Präfixe?

Es sind be, ent, er, ge, ver und zer. Aber ent erscheint bisweilen vor anlautendem f als emp.

Nun, wie unterscheiden sich die beiden Arten der Komposition in Bezug auf die Stellung des „zu“ im Infinitiv?

Ist das Kompositum trennbar, so steht das „zu“ zwischen Präfix und Verb, indem¹ alle drei als ein Wort geschrieben werden.

Und wie verhält sich die Sache² bei der untrennbaren Komposition?

Das „zu“ steht vor dem Kompositum und wird im Schreiben davon getrennt.

Was wird aus³ der Vorsilbe ge des Particips in der untrennbaren Komposition?

Es wird weggelassen, da zwei unbetonte Präfixe niemals aufeinander folgen dürfen.

II.

What kind of composition have we in the verb bezahlen?

All verbs formed ' with the prefix be are inseparable.

How many inseparable prefixes are there?

There are six of them, counting ^s *ent* and *emp* as one.*

When does *ent* appear as *emp*?

Only in a few verbs with initial *f*; for example, in *empfangen*.

Do we have any such thing ^s as inseparable prefixes in English?

Oh yes; *be* corresponds etymologically to the *be* in *begin*, and *ver* to the *for* in *forget*.

What kind of a compound is *überlegt*? Give its principal parts.

That is also inseparable.

How do you know that? The prefix *über* forms both kinds of compounds, does it not?

To be sure; but if this verb were separable the parts would be ^s separated here.

Quite right; do you know whether there is a separable compound *ü'berlegen*?

If there is ^s I have never made its acquaintance.¹⁰

Well, there is such a verb, though it is not much used. What would be its perfect participle?

It would be *übergelegt*, with the chief stress on the prefix.

And what is the perfect participle of the verb we have ¹¹ here?

überle'gt, with *ge* omitted ¹² and the chief stress on the root-syllable.

VOCABULARY.

<i>a'nlauten</i> , <i>v. w.</i> , begin (of a sound); <i>anlautend</i> , initial.	<i>Stellung</i> , <i>f. w.</i> , position.
<i>Auslassung</i> , <i>f. w.</i> , omission.	<i>Ton</i> , <i>m. s. 2</i> (<i>pl. 5</i>), <i>tone</i> , stress.
<i>beiderlei</i> , <i>adj.</i> , of both kinds.	<i>trennbar</i> , <i>adj.</i> , separable.
<i>erscheinen</i> , <i>v. s.</i> , appear.	<i>trennen</i> , <i>v. w.</i> , separate.
<i>Komposition</i> , <i>f. w.</i> , composition.	<i>unbetont</i> , <i>pple.</i> , unaccented.
<i>Kompositum</i> , <i>n. (pl. a)</i> , compound, composite word.	<i>unpersönlich</i> , <i>adj.</i> , im-personal.
<i>Präfix</i> , <i>n. s. 2</i> , prefix.	<i>untrennbar</i> , <i>adj.</i> , inseparable.
	<i>unterschei'den</i> (<i>sich</i>), <i>v. s.</i> , differ.
	<i>Wurzel</i> , <i>f. w.</i> , root, [wort -].

NOTES.—¹ indem alle . . . werden, *all three being written*; see Ex. XXXVI, n. 7.—² wie verhält sich die Sache, *how is it*.—³ was wird aus, *what becomes of*.—⁴ all verbs formed with, etc., alle mit dem Präfix be gebildeten Verba; or else, alle Verba, welche u. s. w. One could not say in the Eng. order: alle Verba gebildet mit u. s. w.—⁵ counting, wenn (or indem) man rechnet. The Ger. pres. pple. cannot be used absolutely, as in Eng.—⁶ as one, als eines.—⁷ any such thing as, (irgend) so etwas wie.—⁸ be, sein, not werden, since a state, and not an action, is denoted.—⁹ If there is, wenn es ein solches giebt.—¹⁰ make the acquaintance of = kennen lernen; translate so habe ich es niemals kennen gelernt.—¹¹ the verb we have; see § 137, 1.—¹² with ge omitted, mit Auslassung des ge.

EXERCISE L.

COLLOQUY.

I.

Welches sind die drei Hauptarten der Wortfolge im Satze?

Es sind die normale, die invertierte und die abhängige.

Was versteht man unter¹ der normalen Wortfolge?

Die haben wir, wenn das Subjekt den Satz beginnt, und das flektierte Verb (oder Hilfsverb) unmittelbar darauf folgt.

Und welche Stellung hat der unflektierte Teil des Verbs, wenn es einen solchen giebt, — also der Infinitiv, oder das Participle?

Die stehen immer am Ende des Satzes.

Gut; was ist nun unter Inversion zu verstehen?

Diese weicht von der normalen Wortfolge nur darin ab, daß das Subjekt unmittelbar auf das flektierte Verb folgt.

Wann findet die Inversion statt?

In Interrogativ-,² Optativ- und Konditionalsätzen; außerdem überhaupt, wenn ein anderer Satzteil als das Subjekt den Satz beginnt.

Es giebt noch einen vierten Fall, welcher nicht zu vergessen ist.

Ja; wenn ein Nebensatz vorhergegangen ist, so muß im Hauptsatz die Inversion eintreten.

Und was ist nun endlich unter der abhängigen Wortfolge zu verstehen?

Diese erscheint in Nebensätzen jeder Art und besteht darin, daß das flektierte Verb, respektive Hilfsverb, ans Ende des Nebensatzes verlegt wird.

Welches sind die Wörter, oder die Wortklassen, die diese Transposition des Verbs nötig machen?

Es sind die Relativpronomina, einschließlich der Verbindungen mit *wo*, die indirekten Interrogativa und die subordinierenden Konjunktionen.

II.

What word-order have we in the sentence *es trug sich einmal zu*?

That is the normal order; the sentence begins with the subject.

Suppose⁵ one were to begin with the adverb *einmal*, what order should we have⁶ then?

In that case inversion would have⁶ to take place. One would say: *Einmal trug es sich zu*.

In English we can say *it once happened*. May this order be imitated⁶ in German?

No; in the normal order no adverb is allowed⁷ to stand between subject and verb.

How is the position of the verb *erkrankte* to be explained?

There we have the dependent order—on account of subordinating conjunction *daß*.

Look at the verb *konnte* a little further down. Why is that transposed to the end of the sentence?

That is on account of the preceding *womit*, which has the force⁸ of a relative governed⁹ by the preposition *mit*.

Suppose the author had used¹⁰ here the pluperfect subjunctive, instead of the preterite, to give¹¹ the sense *with which he could have paid*, what order should we have then?

One would say: *womit er einen Arzt hätte bezahlen können*. That is that¹² special case of dependent order which is treated in our grammar under section 194.

VOCABULARY.

Abſchnitt, *m. s. 2*, section.

Abwe'rb, *n. s. (pl. =e, =ia or =ien)*, *adverb*.

betrachten, *v. w.*, consider, look at.

einfchließli'ch, *prep. (gen.)*, including, inclusive of.

ei'ntreten, *v. s.*, take place.

Folge, *f. w.*, sequence, order.

geſetzt, *pple.*, suppose.

i'ndirekt, *adj.*, indirect.

interrogati'v, *adj.*, interrogative.

Inverſio'n, *f. w.*, inversion.

invertieren, *v. w.*, invert.

konditiona'l, *adj.*, conditional.

Konjunktio'n, *f. w.*, conjunction.

na'chahmen, *v. w.*, imitate.

Nebensaß, *m. s. 2 (pl. ä)*, subordinate clause.

norma'l, *adj.*, normal.

nö'tig, *adj.*, necessary, [needy].

optati'v, *adj.*, optative.

reſpekti've, *adv.*, or as the case may be.

ſta'ttfinden, *v. s.*, take place.

ſubordinie'ren, *v. w.*, subordinate.

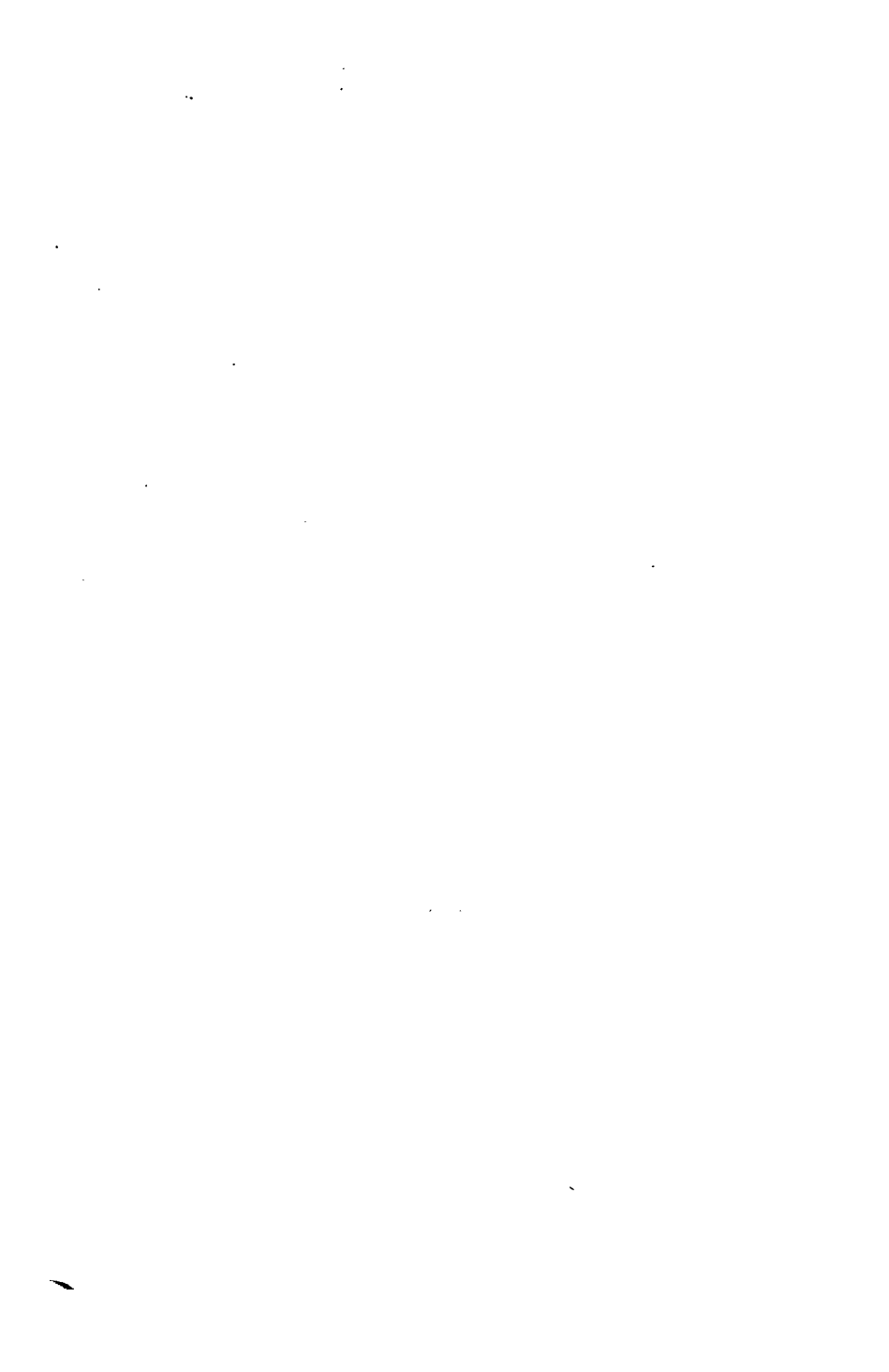
Transpoſitio'n, *f. w.*, transposition.

unmittelbar, *adj.*, immediate.

unten, *adv.*, below, down.

verſetzen, *v. w.*, transpose.

NOTES.—¹ Was versteht man unter, what is understood by.—² Interrogativ-, Optativ-; i. e., Interrogativſätzen, Optativſätzen; see § 6. An optative sentence is one denoting a wish.—³ Suppose one were to, geſetzt, daß man . . . ſollte.—⁴ should we have then, hätten wir dann.—⁵ would have to, müßte.—⁶ may this order be imitated, darf man dieſe Wortfolge nachahmen.—⁷ is allowed, darf.—⁸ force, Kraft.—⁹ of a . . . mit, eines von der Präpoſition „mit“ regierten Relativpronomens.—¹⁰ had used, gebraucht hätte; dependent order after geſetzt, daß.—¹¹ to give, um . . . zu geben.—¹² that, jener.



PART SECOND.

PRELIMINARY.

220. Historical Development of German. Although this grammar deals only with modern literary German, it will be necessary to refer now and then to older and to dialectic usages ; for which reason the following brief statements are made at this point :

1. The earliest stage of the German language, as seen in those literary records that antedate the 12th century, is known as 'Old' German (*Altdeutsch*). The Old German of South Germany is further known as 'High' (*Althochdeutsch*), that of North Germany as 'Low' (*Altniederdeutsch*).

2. The second stage, as seen in those writings that date from the period 1100–1500, is known as 'Middle' German, the qualifications 'High' and 'Low' (*Mittelhochdeutsch*, *Mittelniederdeutsch*) having the same meaning as before.

3. 'Modern' German (*Neuhochdeutsch*) is usually dated from the time of Martin Luther (1483–1546). Through the momentum of the Reformation and the force of Luther's genius the language in which he wrote gradually developed into the standard literary language of all Germany. In the 18th century this language entered upon a new stage through the influence of the great classical writers. Their language is that of to-day, except in some minor details, while that of Luther is highly archaic.

a. This book deals, then, with late modern German—say the language of the last one hundred and fifty years. For the earlier periods consult Grimm's *Deutsche Grammatik*, 1822-40, 4 vols.; of later and smaller works, Braune's *Althochdeutsche Grammatik*, Paul's *Mittelhochdeutsche Grammatik*, Kluge's *Von Luther bis Lessing*, Blatz's *Neuhochdeutsche Grammatik mit Berücksichtigung*, etc., and Brandt's *German Grammar*.

221. **The Literary Language and the Dialects.** From the time of Luther the literary language (*Schriftsprache*) has developed side by side with the dialects, influencing them and influenced by them. It is now the language of books and journals, of schools and courts, and of social intercourse among the educated. But the dialects, often referred to, both individually and collectively, as the *Volkssprache*, are still used by a large portion of the population.

1. Owing to the fact that the *Schriftsprache* was not originally and has never since become identical with the dialect of any one locality, but has been developed and enriched by writers from all parts of Germany, who have drawn more or less upon the resources of their provincial vernacular, it is not now possible to distinguish sharply in all cases between that which is standard German and that which is dialect.

2. The rules of grammar as presented in the following pages must be understood as referring primarily to literary prose. Poetry, subject as it is to the constraints of rhythm, presents frequent deviations from normal linguistic usage. Again, prose itself may be, like poetry, either stately and dignified, or quaint and archaic, or it may reflect the free-and-easy language of common life. The most of the deviations from normal usage, so far as they are not simply improprieties, are either poetic, dialectic, archaic or colloquial.

a. An excellent historical treatise upon the relation of literary German to the dialects is Socin's *Schriftsprache und Dialekte*.

222. Usage and Correctness. Good German is that which is used by good writers and speakers. There is no court of appeal higher than firmly established usage. The chief function of the grammarian, therefore, is to describe and explain the facts as they are.

1. At the same time every language has its laws, its principles, its historical tendencies ; and that which is contrary to any of these may properly be put under the ban by the grammarian and pronounced 'incorrect' or 'bad'—at least until the bad has prevailed and thereby become good. Thus grammar may furnish a criterion by which to judge conflicting usages or new inventions that have not yet been generally adopted. It is well to remember, however, that the most of the usages condemned as bad can be found in good literature. The classics teem with 'mistakes' that defy the grammarians.

a. On the relation between the facts of usage and the dogmas of grammar consult Andresen's *Sprachgebrauch und Sprachrichtigkeit im Deutschen*, Keller's *Deutscher Antibarbarus*, Wustmann's *Allerhand Sprachdummheiten*.

THE USE OF THE ARTICLE.

223. The Contractions of *der* with a preceding word grow out of its lack of stress. The forms that suffer apheresis and unite with a preceding preposition are (de)m, (da)s and (de)r, before which an, in and von lose their n.

1. The usual contractions are am, beim, im, vom, zum, zur (the only one with *der*), an's, auf's, durch's, für's, in's and um's. Less common are the dissyllabic forms außerm, hinterm, überm, unterm, hinter's, über's, unter's. All are best written without an apostrophe.

2. In familiar language the contractions are preferred to the full forms, except when *der* has determinative or particularizing force ; e. g., im Glauben fest, firm in (the)

faith; but fest in dem Glauben, daß der Mensch unsterblich sei, *in the faith that man is immortal*; am Ufer des Rheins, *on the banks of the Rhine*; but an dem Ufer, wo der Wein wächst, *on the bank where the wine grows*. Even in such cases contraction may occur; e. g., vom Rechte, das mit uns geboren ist, *of the right that is born with us* (G.).

3. Contractions with a dissyllabic preposition, also with *den* (both acc. and dat.) and others not mentioned above, are common in talk; e. g., untern Bäumen; widers Recht; aufm Berg; mitm Vater; durchn Wald; durchs (= durch des) Feindes Lager.

4. The written forms *an*, *in*, sometimes stand for *an'n*, *in'n*, i. e., *an den*, *in den*; e. g., setz' dich in Sessel, *seat yourself in the settle* (G.); ihr warst sie dem Feind an Kopf, *at the head of the trooper* (G.). In such cases there is no omission of the article, the *y* being pronounced long.

5. The shortened article may attach itself to other parts of speech than prepositions; e. g., hab' ich ihm 's (= das) Bad gesegnet, *blessed the bath for him* (S.); ich will gleich's Essen zurecht machen, *I will get breakfast at once* (G.); er soll'n Vater rufen, *he is to call father* (Gr.).

224. Omission of *der*. As is noted in § 129, 1, the definite article is a weakened demonstrative. Its usual function is to mark a noun as definite or known. When the noun is not definite, or when its definiteness is shown in some other way, e. g., by its meaning (as in the case of proper names), or by some modifier, or by the general connection, *der* is not ordinarily used, the noun having either *ein* or no article at all.

1. To a great extent, therefore, the use and the omission of *der* coincide closely with the use and omission of *the* in English. Thus *der* is regularly omitted with a noun limited by a preceding genitive or possessive; e. g., des Landes Wohl, *the land's welfare*, but das Wohl des Landes, *the welfare of the land*; der Güter höchstes, *the highest of blessings*.

a. In such case the limiting genitive itself must have the article, but exceptions occur in poetry; e. g., um Grabes Nacht, *about the night of the grave* (G.); wandelt an Ufers Grün, *on the green of the shore* (S.).

2. Again, both languages often omit the definite article in set phrases consisting of two nouns connected by *and*, or where there is an enumeration of objects belonging to the same category ; e. g., über *Stoß und Stein*, *over stock and stone* ; durch *Gebirg und Thal*, *through mountain and dale* ; vergeht mir *Hören, Sehn und Denken*, *hearing, seeing and thinking forsake me* (G.).

3. In other cases, however, the idiom of the two languages does not correspond, *der* being omitted where English employs *the*. Thus :

a. In certain prepositional phrases ; e. g., gen *Osten*, *toward the east* ; nach dem *Süden*, *toward the south* ; nach alter *Weise*, *in the old way*. For the converse of these cases see § 229.

b. Before certain words of formal or technical reference ; e. g., folgender *Bericht*, *the following report* ; gedachter *Umstand*, *the above-mentioned circumstance*. So also überbringer, *the bearer* ; Inhaber, *the holder* ; Unterzeichnet, *the undersigned* ; erst, *the former* ; letzt, *the latter* ; obig, *the above* ; besagt, erwähnt, obgemeldet, *the aforesaid*, and others.

c. In the predicate sometimes before *Sache*, *affair*, *Grund*, *ground*, *Veranlassung*, *occasion*, and some others ; e. g., *Geben ist Sache des Reichen*, *giving is the affair of the rich* (G.) ; (der) *Grund dieser Annahme ist folgender*, *the ground of this assumption is the following*.

225. Der with Proper Names. The rule is, as in English : No article unless the name is preceded by an adjective ; e. g., im Jahre 1770 ging Goethe nach *Estrasburg*, wo er Herder kennen lernte, *in the year 1770 Goethe went to Strassburg, where he became acquainted with Herder*. But one would say *der junge Goethe*, nach dem damals französischen *Estrasburg*, etc.

a. Such phrases as *little Karl*, *old Fritz*, *young Germany*, *Brown Bess*, need the article in German ; thus, *der kleine Karl* ; *der alte Fritz* ; *das junge Deutschland* ; *die braune Fisel*. But *jung Siegfried*, *klein Roland*, and the like (with uninflected adjective), occur in songs.

1. But a 'familiar' *der* often stands before the names of friends, neighbors, acquaintances, etc.; e. g., *da ist der Tell, there is Tell* (S.); *wer ist der Weislingen? who is Weislingen* (G.)? The usage is common in the classics where the speakers belong to the common people.

a. The use of *der* before Christian names (except where it is needed to show case) is South-German; e. g., *der Wilhelm (die Bertha) ist nicht zu Hause, Wilhelm (Bertha) is not at home*. Here the North-German prefers to omit the article, though he may use it to show case, as in *ich gab es dem Wilhelm (der Bertha)*.

2. So also *der* is used before the names of well-known historical and fictitious characters, especially with the oblique cases of names that are not inflected; e. g., *kennst du den Faust? knowest thou Faust* (G.)? *die Gedichte des Horaz, the poems of Horace*; *er spielt gern den Hamlet, likes to play Hamlet*; *ich ziehe Wagner dem Beethoven vor, I prefer Wagner to Beethoven*.

a. The converse of this process (treating a well-known proper name as a common noun) is seen when a common noun, losing its article, becomes, as it were, a proper noun; e. g., *Knabe sprach: ich breche dich; Röslein sprach: ich steche dich; boy said: I'll pluck thee; little rose said: I'll prick thee* (G.); *Morgenstund hat Gold im Mund, morning hour has gold in its mouth*. So also in stage directions; e. g., *Fischertnabe fährt in einem Rahn, (the) fisherboy is rowing a boat* (S.).

b. Proper names used appellatively take an article, as in English; e. g., *die Venus von Milo, the Venus of Milo*; *die Shakespeare und die Goethe erscheinen nicht oft, the Shakespeares and the Goethes do not appear often*.

3. Names of countries that are feminine, and a few that are not, take the article. Such are:

das (or der) Elßaß, *Alsatia*.

die Krim, *the Crimea*.

die Lausitz, *Lusatia*.

die Levante, *the Levant*.

die Moldau, *Moldavia*.

die Pfalz, *the Palatinate*.

die Schweiz, *Switzerland*.

die Tartarei, *Tartary*.

die Türkei, *Turkey*.

die Walachei, *Walachia*.

and others in *ei*. So also *der Breisgau, the Breisgau*, and others in *gau*; *die Neumark, the Neumark*, and others in *mark*; *das Wetterau*,

the Wetterau, and others in *an* ; *das Vogtland*, *the Vogtland*, *die Niederlande*, *the Netherlands*, and others in *land*, *lande*. For *das Tirol*, (*the*) *Tirol*, heard among the people, the simple *Tirol* is better.

a. Of names of cities only *der Haag*, *the Hague*, has the article.

b. Names of mountains take the article, even those that are without it in English ; e. g., *der Sinai*, *Mt. Sinai* ; *der Vesuv*, *Mt. Vesuvius*.

4. Names of seasons, months, days of the week and streets take the article ; e. g., *der Sommer* ist hin, *summer is past* (S.) ; in *des Maies* holden Tagen, *in the lovely days of May* (U.) ; am Mittwoch, *on Wednesday* ; in der Friedrichstraße, *on Friedrich Street*.

a. But the names of the months omit *der* in phrases giving the time of the month ; e. g., Anfang März, *at the beginning of March* ; Ende April, *at the end of April* ; am 6ten Juni, *on the 6th of June*.

226. The Generic Article. With abstract nouns, nouns of material and of class, verbals in *en* and some others, *der* is used whenever the word is taken in a general and not in any specific or concrete sense ; e. g., es lebe die Freiheit ! es lebe der Wein ! *long live freedom ! long live wine* (G.) ! die Kunst ist lang, das Leben kurz, *art is long, life short* (G.) ; der Mensch ist aufs nächste mit den Thieren verwandt, *man is most closely related to animals* (G.) ; hoch über der Zeit und dem Raume, *high above time and space* (S.) ; das Schauern ist der Menschheit bestes Theil, *feeling the thrill of awe is the best part of human nature* (G.).

1. But real and apparent exceptions to this rule are common, especially in poetry. When the article is omitted it will usually be found that the noun is not used in a perfectly general way, but perhaps partitively, to denote *some of* the quality or substance. Or it may characterize an individual or a situation, and so lose its generic quality. Or the omission may be in the interest of conciseness ; e. g., das Tier hat auch Vernunft, *the brute has reason too* (S.) ; was hilft euch Schönheit ? *of what use to you is beauty* (G.) ? Dasein ist Pflicht, *existence is duty* (G.).

227. Der for a Possessive. *Der* may take the place of a possessive when the connection shows clearly who the possessor is. The usage occurs mostly in referring to a part of the body or clothing; e. g., er setzt die Schale an den Mund, *he puts the cup to his mouth* (G.); hatte Bänder auf dem Kleide, *had ribbons on his coat* (G.).

a. Where the possessor is denoted by a dat. of interest (§ 259), the dat. together with the article is equivalent to the English possessive; e. g., der Kerl sprengt mir die Ohren, *is splitting my ears* (G.); wenn sie dir in die Augen sehen, *when they look into your eyes* (G.); er bricht sich den Kopf, *he cudgels his brain*.

1. Very often, however, the possessive will be found in such cases, just as in English; e. g., mein armer Kopf ist mir verrückt, *my poor head is crazed* (G.). Sometimes the meter will govern the choice; e. g., in jeden Quark begräbt er seine Nase, *buries his nose in every pile of filth* (G.).

2. The use of *der* before Vater, Mutter, Schwester, Better, etc., is South-German, but very common in the classics; e. g., daß muß Sie nicht der Mutter sagen, *you must not tell your mother that* (G.). The North-German prefers a possessive, as in English. A possessive should always be used when it would not otherwise be clear whose father, sister, lover, etc., is meant.

228. The Distributive der occurs (chiefly in expressions of price) with the sense of *a, an, per*; e. g., es kostet zwei Mark das Pfund, *it costs two marks a pound*. So also one may say dreimal die Woche (or in der Woche, or wöchentlich), *three times a week*.

229. Prepositional Phrases—a highly idiomatic element of every language—present numerous peculiarities in the use of the article which must be learned by observation. The following examples will illustrate: in die Kirche gehen, *to go to church*; in die Schule gehen, *to go to school*; auf der Schule, *at school*; in der Schule, *in school*; zum Beispiel, *for example*; zum Teil, *in part*; eine zur Frau nehmen, *to take one to wife, for a wife*; einen zum Präsidenten wählen, *to elect one president*; im Himmel, *in heaven* (but in

the sky); in der Hölle, *in hell*; zur Hölle, *to hell*; im Paradiese, *in paradise*; zur Gesundheit! *here's to your health*! zur glücklichen Reise! *here's to a pleasant journey*!

230. The Use of ein. The indefinite article is the numeral *ein* weakened by loss of stress. It precedes all other modifiers of its noun except *welch*, *was* *für* and *solch*, and it *may* precede *solch* (§ 135, 1)

1. In talk the forms of *ein* often suffer apheresis of *ei* or even of the entire syllable *ein*; e. g., *die stellen Flug 'ne* (= eine) *Vorhut aus*, *put out a picket* (S.); *du bist 'u* (= ein) *braver Knabe*, *a good boy*: *es war mal* (= einmal) *ein Kaiser*, *there was once an emperor*.

2. The use of *ein* corresponds in the main very closely to that of *a, an* (but see §§ 228, 229, 231). Thus, just as in English, it may go with an abstract noun or a noun of material to denote a particular case or a concrete object; e. g., *eine Freude*, *a joy*; *eine Schönheit*, *a beauty*; *ein Glas*, *a glass*. So, too, it may go with a proper name, having then the sense of *one such as*; e. g., *das wäre einem Schiller unmöglich*, *that would be impossible for a Schiller*.

a. With verbal nouns *ein* often serves to emphasize the vehemence, the frequent repetition, or the long continuance of an action; e. g., *das ist ein Stürmen*, *that is a storming*, i. e., *how we go storming* (G.); *das war ein Spazieren*, *that was a walking*, i. e., *they were always walking together* (G.); *nun soll es an ein Schädelspalten*, *now we'll proceed to a cracking of skulls* (G.).

231. The Omission of ein. In the predicate, and also after *als*, *ein* is apt to be omitted before an unmodified noun denoting vocation, rank, character, station in life, less often before one denoting nationality; e. g., *mein Bruder ist Soldat*, *my brother is a soldier* (G.); *er starb als Christ*, *he died a Christian* (G.).

1. If the noun is modified by an adjective or a genitive, *ein* is generally used unless noun and modifier form a set phrase; e. g., *er ist ein großer Dichter*, *a great poet*; but *er ist preussischer Soldat*, *königlicher Rat*, *Mitglied des Reichstags*, *he is a Prussian soldier*, *(a) royal councillor*, *(a) member of parliament*.

a. Exceptions to both of the above rules are numerous ; so much so that the Grimm Dictionary merely says the article *may* drop out in such cases.

232. Repetition of the Article. If the article is used before the first of two or more nouns connected in the same construction, it must be repeated with each following noun if there is change of gender ; e. g., *der König und die Kaiserin, the king and the empress ; der Strom, das Meer, das Salz gehört dem König, the river, the sea, the salt belong to the king (S.).*

1. If there is no change of gender the repetition *may* be dispensed with, and *must* be if the two nouns refer to the same person or thing ; e. g., *der Kaiser und König, the emperor and king (one person), but der Kaiser und der König, two persons ; 'eine grün' und weiße Fahne, a green-and-white banner, but eine grüne und eine weiße Fahne, a green and a white banner.*

2. The rule of repetition applies also to adjectives and possessives ; e. g., *guter Wein und gutes Bier, good wine and (good) beer ; die Zeitschrift für deutsches Altertum und deutsche Literaturgeschichte, Journal for German Antiquity and (German) Literary History ; sein hoher Gang, sein' edle Gestalt, his lofty stride, his noble form (G.). But an uninflected adjective need not be repeated ; e. g., hat Sie gut Bier und Wein ? have you good beer and wine (U.) ?*

a. Exceptions to the rule of repetition are common in poetry and in talk ; e. g., *was soll all der Schmerz und Lust ? what means all the pain and pleasure (G.) ?*

THE GENDER OF NOUNS.

233. Gender as Determined by Meaning. The brief statement in § 75 may be expanded as follows :

1. Masculine are names of male animals, points of the compass, stones, winds, seasons, months and days of the

week ; e. g., Mann, *man* ; Stier, *bull* ; Hengst, *stallion* ; Eber, *boar* ; Bär, *bear* ; Hahn, *cock* ; Nord, *north* or *north wind* ; Kiesel, *flint* ; Granit, *granite* ; Winter, *winter* ; Juli, *July* ; Mittwoch, *Wednesday*.

2. Feminine are the names of female animals, most trees and flowers (especially those ending in *e*), most German rivers, and nearly all abstract terms ; e. g., Kuh, *cow* ; Stute, *mare* ; Sau, *sow* ; Henne, *hen* ; Buche, *beech* ; Eiche, *oak* ; Nelke, *pink* ; Donau, *Danube* ; Tugend, *virtue* ; Macht, *power*.

a. Conspicuous exceptions are the neuters Weib and Frauenzimmer, *woman*, Mädchen, *girl*, and Fräulein, *young lady*. The female of the larger animals usually has, where sex is to be distinguished, a separate name ; see examples above. But many names of small animals are fem. without thought of sex ; e. g., Maus, *mouse* ; Ratte, *rat* ; Katze, *cat* ; Schlange, *snake* ; Nachtigall, *nightingale*.

b. Notable exceptions to the rule for German rivers are der Rhein, der Main, der Neckar. Non-German rivers are mostly mas., but many are fem. ; e. g., der Nil, Indus, Ganges, Orinoko, Hudson, Mississippi, Liber ; but die Lena, Wolga, Seine, Loire, Themse (*Thames*).

3. Neuter are names of animals which designate the species or the young without reference to sex ; also names of cities and countries (but see § 225, 3), most names of materials, letters of the alphabet, and all words not properly nouns which are used as nouns ; e. g., Kind, *child* ; Hünd, one of the genus *bos* ; Schwein, *hog, swine* ; Ferkel, *pig* ; Pferd, *horse* ; Füllen, *colt* ; Huhn, *fowl* ; das schöne Paris, *beautiful Paris* ; das neue Italien, *new Italy* ; Holz, *wood* ; Tuch, *cloth* ; das runde s, *the round s* ; das Speculieren, *speculation* ; ihr ewiges Weh und Ach, *their eternal woe and alas* ; das Stelldichein, *the rendezvous*.

234. Gender as Determined by Form. The few simple rules given in Part I. (§§ 79, 83, 88, 93) may be recapitulated and amplified as follows :

1. Masculine are most monosyllabic nouns formed without suffix from a verbal root, nouns in *e* denoting

persons or animals, and nouns of agency or station in *er*, *ler*, *ner* ; also those in *el* denoting instrument, those in *en* that are not infinitives, and those in *ich*, *ig*, *ling* and *rich* ; e. g., *Bund* (binden), *league* ; *Schuß* (schießen), *shot* ; *Bote*, *messenger* ; *Löwe*, *lion* ; *Seher*, *seer* ; *Bürger*, *citizen* ; *Kellner*, *waiter* ; *Hebel*, *lever* ; *Webel*, *brush* ; *Garten*, *garden* ; *Bufen*, *bosom* ; *Fittich*, *pinion* ; *Käfig*, *cage* ; *Wüstling*, *profligate* ; *Wüterich*, *tyrant*.

a. Only a few monosyllabic derivatives from verbal roots are fem. or neu., and those mostly have a mas. counterpart from the same root ; cf., *das Schloß*, *castle*, but *der Schluß*, *end* ; *das Band*, *bond*, and *der Bund*, *league* ; *die Zahl*, *number*, and *der Zoll*, *toll*.

b. Nouns in *er* that do not denote agency or station are of all genders ; e. g., *der Hader*, *quarrel* ; *die Ader*, *vein* ; *das Ruder*, *oar*.

2. Feminine are a multitude of nouns in *e*, many in *t*, and a few in *nis* and *sal* (see below under 3) ; also all in *ei*, *erei*, *heit*, *keit*, in, *schaft*, *ung* and the foreign suffixes *age*, *ie*, (t)ion, *if* ; e. g., *Sprache*, *speech* ; *Güte*, *goodness* ; *Kraft*, *force* ; *Wüdnis*, *desert* ; *Drangsal*, *oppression* ; *Abtei*, *abbey* ; *Malerei*, *painting* ; *Freiheit*, *freedom* ; *Seligkeit*, *blessedness* ; *Löwin*, *lioness* ; *Freundschaft*, *friendship* ; *Warnung*, *warning* ; *Passage*, *passage* ; *Partie*, *match* ; *Nation*, *nation* ; *Musik*, *music*.

3. Neuter are diminutives in *chen* and *lein*, most nouns in *sal*, *fel*, *nis* and *tum*, and most of those with prefix *ge* ; e. g., *Mädchen*, *girl* ; *Fräulein*, *young lady* ; *Lab-sal*, *refreshment* ; *Rätsel*, *riddle* ; *Wachstum*, *growth* ; *Gebirge*, *mountain-range* ; *Gelübde*, *vow* ; *Geschied*, *fate*.

a. Of nouns in *sal*, *Drangsal*, *oppression*, *Mühsal*, *trouble*, and *Trübsal*, *affliction*, are now usually fem. ; of those in *fel*, *Stöpel*, *stopper*, is mas. ; of those in *tum*, *Irrtum*, *error*, and *Reichtum*, *riches*, are mas. On nouns in *nis* see below, § 237, 2.

b. While the bulk of nouns with the prefix *ge* are neu., especially if they have the suffix *e*, there are some, both with and without the suffix, that are mas. or neu. ; e. g., *der Gesang*, *song* ; *der Gespieler*, *playmate* ; *die Gefahr*, *danger* ; *die Gemeinde*, *community*.

235. Gender of Compounds. The most important exceptions to the principle that compounds have the gender of their final element are as follows :

1. Several words which seem to be compounded with *Mut*, m., *mind*, are feminine, owing to the fact that the modern *mut* represents two words of the older language, viz. : *muot*, m., and *muoti*, f. Hence usually in modern German *die Anmut*, *agreeableness* ; *die Demut*, *humility* ; *die* (but also *der*) *Großmut*, *magnanimity* ; *die Sanftmut*, *gentleness* ; *die Wehmut*, *sadness* ; but *der Edelmüt*, *nobility* ; *der Heldemüt*, *heroism*, and others.

a. *Armüt*, f., *poverty*, is not a compound of *Mut*, but an abstract from *arm*, *poor* (hence *Arm-ut*, not *Ar-müt*).

2. *Die Antwort*, *answer*, but *das Wort*, *word* ; *Abſcheu*, *horror*, but *die Scheu*, *timidity* ; *der Mittwoch*, *Wednesday*, but *die Woche*, *week*.

3. Compounds of *Teil*, m. n., *part*, vary somewhat fixedly in gender. Thus *Erbeil*, *inheritance*, *Gegenteil*, *counterpart*, and *Hinterteil*, *back part*, are generally neuter, while *Anteil*, *share*, *Bestandteil*, *element*, *Vorteil*, *advantage*, and most others are prevailingly masculine.

a. *Urteil*, n., *judgment*, is not a compound of *Teil*, but from *erteilen*, *adjudge*. Cf. *ordeal*.

4. Compound names of places are neuter regardless of the final element ; thus *der Berg*, *mountain*, and *die Burg*, *castle*, but *Freiberg* and *Freiburg* (names of cities) are both neuter. The statement does not apply to appellative nouns like *die Wartburg*, *the (castle of) Wartburg*.

236. Gender of Borrowed Words. The general rule is that words borrowed from other languages retain the gender they had at home ; thus *der Priester*, *priest*, from Gk.-Lat. *pre-byter* ; *der Titel*, *title*, from Lat. *titulus* ; *die Rose*, from *rosa* ; *das Kloster*, *convent*, from *claustrum* ; *das Fest*, *festival*, from *festum*.

1. Very often, however, a foreign word has changed its gender to accord with that of other German words of similar form or meaning ; thus der *Esig*, *vinegar*, from Lat. *acetum*, n., because other words in *ig* are mas. ; der *Körper*, *body*, from *corpus*, n., on account of der *Leib* ; die *Lilie*, *lily*, from *lilium*, n., because it comes from the plu. *lilia*, and other names of flowers are fem. ; die *Nummer*, *number*, from *numerus*, m., on account of die *Zahl* ; das *Kame'l*, *camel*, from *ca'melus*, m., because other specific names of large animals are neu.

a. In other cases the change of gender is less easy to account for ; e. g., das *Kreuz*, *cross*, from *cruz*, f. ; die *Mauer*, *wall*, from *murus*, m. ; das *Echo*, *echo*, from *echo*, f. ; der *Punkt*, *point*, from *punctum*, n. ; das *Genie*, *genius*, from Fr. *le génie*.

b. Words borrowed from the English, which has no grammatical gender left, are given a gender from real or fancied analogies ; e. g., das *Beefsteak*, following das *Kindfleisch* ; der *Streifen* or *Streif*, following *Streich* ; die *Bill* ; die or das *Farm* ; der or das *Sport*.

237. Variable Gender. The cases may be grouped under four heads, as follows :

1. Without variation of meaning or form. The variation of gender is mostly dialectic, or due, in the case of borrowed words, to the following of uncertain analogies. A few examples among scores (the usual gender being given first) are :

Angel, f. m., <i>fish-hook</i> .	Kathe'der, m. n. f., <i>rostrum</i> .
Barome'ter, m. n., <i>barometer</i> .	Meter, m. n., <i>metre</i> .
Bereich, m. n., <i>realm</i> .	Otter, m. f., <i>otter</i> .
Butter, f. m., <i>butter</i> .	Pult, m. n., <i>desk</i> .
Cöliba't, n. m., <i>celibacy</i> .	Sofa, m. n., <i>sofa</i> .
Floß, n. m., <i>raft</i> .	Teller, m. n., <i>plate</i> .
Kamin, m. n., <i>chimney</i> .	Ungeftüm, m. f. n., <i>violence</i> .
Karneval, m. n., <i>carnival</i> .	Wamms, n. m., <i>jacket</i> .
Karzer, m. n., <i>prison</i> .	Zierat, m. f., <i>ornament</i> .

a. The South-German puts den *Butter* upon das *Teller*, instead of die *Butter* upon den *Teller*. Rhenish Prussians say das *Regenschirm*, *umbrella*, and die *Pastorat*, *parsonage*, instead of the usual der *Regenschirm* and das *Pastorat* ; and so on. Cf. Andresen, p. 37 ff.

2. With variation of meaning. Here two sub-groups are to be distinguished :

a. One and the same word has become differentiated in meaning and associated different meanings with different genders. The most important cases are :

Band, n., <i>band, bond</i> ; m., <i>volume</i> .	Vater, m., <i>godfather</i> ; f., <i>godmother</i> .
Büchel, m., <i>humpback</i> ; f., <i>knob</i> .	Schild, m. n., <i>shield</i> ; n. m., <i>sign</i> .
Bund, m., <i>league</i> ; n., <i>bundle</i> .	Schwulst, m., <i>bombast</i> ; f., <i>swelling</i> .
Chor, m., <i>chorus</i> ; n. m., <i>choir</i> .	See, m., <i>lake</i> ; f., <i>sea</i> .
Flur, m., <i>area</i> ; f., <i>field</i> .	Steuer, f., <i>tax</i> ; n., <i>rudder</i> .
Gift, n. m., <i>poison</i> ; f., <i>dowry</i> .	Teil, m., <i>part</i> ; n., <i>share</i> .
Gehalt, m., <i>contents</i> ; n. m., <i>salary</i> .	Verdienst, m., <i>merit</i> ; n., <i>pay</i> .
Lohn, m., <i>reward</i> ; n. m., <i>wages</i> .	Wehr, f., <i>defense</i> ; n., <i>weir</i> .
Ort, m., <i>place</i> ; m. n., <i>village</i> .	

(1). Here belong nouns in *nis*, which are apt to be *neu.* if they denote something concrete, but *fem.* if they denote a state or an action. Thus a number of them are pretty uniformly *fem.*, as *Besorgnis*, *anxiety* ; *Erlaubnis*, *permission* ; *Verdamnis*, *condemnation*. Others are both *neu.* and *fem.*, as *das Erkenntnis*, *the thing cognized*, *die Erkenntnis*, *the act of cognizing* ; *das Ersparnis*, *that which is saved*, *die Ersparnis*, *the act of saving*. So also *das* and *die Ärgernis*, *vexation* ; *Bejugnis*, *authority* ; *Befümmernis*, *solicitude* ; *Wagnis*, *venture*, and others.

b. Two different words with different meanings and different genders have come to have the same form. The important cases are :

Alp, m., <i>nightmare</i> ; f., <i>alp</i> .	Marſch, m., <i>march</i> ; f., <i>marsh</i> .
Bauer, m., <i>peasant</i> ; n. m., <i>bird-cage</i> .	Mast, m., <i>mast</i> ; f., <i>fodder</i> .
Erbe, m., <i>heir</i> ; n., <i>inheritance</i> .	Messer, m., <i>measurer</i> ; n., <i>knife</i> .
Heide, m., <i>heathen</i> ; f., <i>heath</i> .	Moment, m., <i>moment</i> ; n., <i>factor</i> .
Hut, m., <i>hat</i> ; f., <i>guard</i> .	Onkel, m., <i>uncle</i> ; n. m. f., <i>aunt</i> .
Kiefer, m., <i>jaw</i> ; f., <i>pine</i> .	Reis, m., <i>rice</i> ; n., <i>twig</i> .
Koller, m., <i>staggers</i> ; n., <i>jacket</i> .	Schauer, m., <i>shower</i> ; m. n., <i>shed</i> .
Kunde, m., <i>customer</i> ; f., <i>knowledge</i> .	Stift, m., <i>peg</i> ; n., <i>foundation</i> .
Leiter, m., <i>conductor</i> ; f., <i>ladder</i> .	Seil, m., <i>dew</i> ; n., <i>rope</i> .
Mark, f., <i>mark, march</i> ; n., <i>marrow</i> .	Thor, m., <i>fool</i> ; n., <i>gate</i> .
	Weibe, m. f., <i>hawk</i> ; f., <i>consecration</i> .

3. With variation of form but not of meaning, save as one form may be rare, stately or poetical. Here belong a number of pairs, such as :

Wade, m., and Wache, f., <i>cheek</i> .	Leisten, m., and Leiste, f., <i>last</i> .
Eck, n., and Ecke, f., <i>corner</i> .	Posten, m., and Postle, f., <i>post</i> .

Quast, m., and Quaste, f., <i>tassel</i> .	Schlaf, m., and Schläfe, f., <i>temple</i> .
Quell, m., and Quelle, f., <i>spring</i> .	Schurz, m., and Schürze, f., <i>apron</i> .
Riß, m., and Riße, f., <i>crack</i> .	Spalt, m., and Spalte, f., <i>cleft</i> .
Rohr, n., and Röhre, f., <i>reed</i> .	Sparren, m., and Sparre, f., <i>spar</i> .
Scherben, m., and Scherbe, f., <i>potsherd</i> .	Trupp, m., and Truppe, f., <i>troop</i> .
	Zeß, m., and Zeße, f., <i>toe</i> .

THE NUMBER OF NOUNS.

238. Defective Number. In German, as in English, some nouns are used only in the singular, as Glück, *luck*; and others only in the plural, as Leute, *people*.

1. The nouns that lack a plural are mainly abstracts and nouns of material, as Güte, *goodness*; Blei, *lead*; Stroh, *straw*. But many such words form a plural with concrete meaning, just as in English; e. g., Schönheiten, *beauties*; Gläser, *glasses*.

a. In the older language abstracts formed a plu. much more freely than now—a state of affairs from which several stereotyped phrases have survived to the present time. These old plurals, being no longer felt as regular case-forms, are often written with small initial, but the government rules are not altogether consistent. Examples are: zu Gunsten (gunsten), *in favor of*; von Gottes Gnaden, *by God's grace*; in Ehren halten, *hold in honor*; zu Ehren, *in honor of*; zu Schulden (schulden) kommen lassen, *incur blame*; von statten gehen, *go off*; zu statten kommen, *be of use*; von Nöten (nöten), *of necessity*. So also several titles; as Euer Gnaden, *Your Grace*; Godwürden, *Worship*; Herrschaften, *master, mistress, people of the house* (said by servants).

b. Certain nouns that lack a plu. of regular formation substitute therefor a compound; e. g., Tod, *death*, pl. Todesfälle, lit. *cases of death*; Leben, *life* = *biography*, pl. Lebensgeschichte; Dank, *thanks*, pl. Dankagungen; Feuer, *fire*, pl. Feuersbrünste; Rat, *counsel*, pl. Ratsschlüge.

2. The nouns that lack the singular are fewer. Further examples are: Eltern, *parents*; Gebrüder, *brothers* (mostly in names of firms); Geschwister, *brother(s) and sister(s)*; also several names of diseases, as Blattern, *small-pox*; Masern, *measles*; Röteln, *German measles*; and of festivals, as Ferien, *vacation*; Ostern, *Easter*; Pfingsten,

Whitsuntide ; *Weihnachten*, *Christmas*. Some nouns have a singular, but are used chiefly in the plural, as *Zinsen*, *interest* ; *Einkünfte*, *income*.

a. *Leute* takes the place of *Männer* in the plu. of several compounds of *Mann*, if sex is not thought of ; e. g., *Kaufmann*, *merchant*, *Kaufleute*, *tradespeople*, but *Kaufmänner* if men are meant. So *Edeleute*, *gentry*, but *Eedelmänner*, *noblemen*. Others, as *Staatsmann*, *statesman*, *Biedermann*, *honest man*, admit only the plu. in *Männer*.

b. Several English nouns that are only plu. correspond to German nouns that are sing. ; e. g., *die Schere*, *the shears* ; *die Zange*, *the tongs* ; *die Asche*, *the ashes* ; *der Grünschl*, *the greens* ; *die Gelbsucht*, *the yellows*.

239. Redundant Plural. Several nouns have two forms for the plural. The cases are of three kinds, viz. :

1. Alternative forms without difference of gender or meaning ; e. g., *Faden*, *thread*, pl. *Fäden* or *Fäden* ; *Bett*, *bed*, pl. *Betten* or *Bette*. See §§ 274, 1, and 278, 1, a.

2. Different forms for different genders. Thus, of words that fall under § 237, 1, if the gender varies between mas. and neu., the plu. will remain the same, but if it varies between mas. and fem., or between neu. and fem., there will be a separate form for the fem. ; e. g., *die Angel*, *fish-hook*, has pl. *die Angeln*, but *der Angel* has *die Angel*. Again, from the words under § 237, 3, the pl. of *der Quell* is *die Quelle* (rare), that of *die Quelle*, *die Quellen* ; *der Quast*, pl. *die Quaste*, but *die Quaste*, pl. *die Quasten*.

3. Different forms associated with different meanings ; e. g., from *das Band*, *ribbon*, *bond*, pl. *Bande*, *bonds*, but *Bänder*, *ribbons*. See § 276.

240. The Singular for the Plural. A masculine or neuter noun of measure (denoting weight, height, extent, amount, etc.) usually stands in the singular, or what appears to be the singular, after a numeral ; e. g., *zwei Pfund Thee*, *two pounds of tea* ; *sechs Fuß hoch*, *six feet high* ; *dreimal*, i. e., *drei Mal*, *three times* ; *ein Heer von 20,000 Mann*, *an army of 20,000 men*.

a. With the measures of time, *Jahr*, *year*, *Jahrhundert*, *century*, *Monat*, *month*, the pl. is more common, but the sing. not rare. So

also with *Schritt*, *pace*, and *Pfennig*, *penny*; thus *drei Jahre*, *six months*, *hundert Schritte*, *fifty pennies*, are better than *drei Jahr*, *six Monat*, etc.

1. Feminine nouns of this kind stand in the plural; thus *drei Meilen entfernt*, *three miles distant*; *zwei Ellen Tuch*, *two yards of cloth*. Except, however, *Mark*, *mark*, and sometimes *Hand*, *hand*. Thus one says *es kostet drei Mark*; *das Pferd ist 16 Hand* (or *Hände*) *hoch*, *the horse is 16 hands high*.

a. Formerly monosyllabic neuters such as *Pfund*, *Mal*, *Jahr*, *Buch*, *Faß*, *Maß*, and also the *mas. Mann*, formed a pl. just like the sing.; so that *fünf Pfund*, *zehn Jahr*, *hundert Mann*, are really pl., though not now felt as such. Other masculines have followed the analogy of these; e. g., *Fuß*, *Schritt*, *Zoll*, *Kopf* (*zwei Kopf Kohl*, *two heads of cabbage*), *Schuß*, *Stod*.

2. In speaking of the joint activity or concern of several subjects German often uses the singular where English prefers the plural; e. g., *alle erhoben die Hand*, *all raised their hands*; *viele verloren das Leben*, *many lost their lives*.

3. English plurals such as *the second and third days*, *the fourth and fifth verses*, should be given in German by the singular: *der zweite und der dritte Tag*; *der vierte und der fünfte Vers*.

SYNTAX OF THE CASES.

THE NOMINATIVE.

241. **The Nominative as Subject.** The grammatical subject of a sentence is put in the nominative; e. g., *der Mann hat recht*, *the man is right*.

a. For the omission of the subject see § 302; for the subject anticipated by *es*, § 303, 3; for the nom. and other cases in apposition, § 270.

242. **The Predicate Nominative.** The nominative is used in the predicate after certain intransitive and passive verbs; e. g., *das ist der rechte Mann*, *that is the right man*; *es werde Licht*, *let there be light*; *ich heiße Doctor*, *I am called doctor*; *das Kind wurde Karl getauft*, *the child was christened Karl*.

1. The verbs that take a predicate nominative (without *als*) are *sein*, *bleiben*, *heißen*, *werden*, and passive verbs of calling, such as *nennen*, *rufen*, *schelten*, *schimpfen*, *taufen*.

a. A few others, as *dünken*, *glänzen*, *erscheinen*, *scheinen*, sometimes take this construction; e. g., *ihr Hüt, der ihm eine Krone schien, her hat which seemed to him a crown* (Richter); *nicht ein Kind bin ich erschienen, not (as) a child have I come forth* (G.); *glänze* (sc. *die Poesie*) *der schönste Stern, let it shine (as) the fairest star* (G.). But in these cases one would ordinarily say: *wie eine Krone, als Kind, als schönster Stern*.

b. After *werden*, in the sense of *be changed into*, one often meets a *dat.* with *zu* instead of a predicate *nom.*; e. g., *da werden Weiber zu Hyänen, then women become hyenas* (S.); *Glück und Unglück wird zur Grille, become a whim* (G.).

c. For the exceptional predicate *nom.* after an infinitive depending on *lassen*, as in *laß mich dein Freund sein, let me be thy friend*, see § 366, 1, c.

2. A much greater number of verbs may be followed by a predicate nominative with *als* denoting the character, capacity, form, or with *wie* denoting the manner, in which the subject acts, appears, or is acted upon; e. g., *er starb als Christ, he died a Christian* (G.); *er starb wie ein Christ = he died like a Christian*.

a. This construction with *als* or *wie* may be classed under the head of appositional predicate. See § 271.

243. The Nominative in Address and Exclamations. The nominative is the case of direct address, and usually of exclamations; e. g., *ihr schwebt, ihr Geister, neben mir, ye are hovering near me, ye spirits* (G.); *welch Schauspiel! aber ach! ein Schauspiel nur! what a spectacle! but, alas! only a spectacle* (G.)!

244. The Nominative Absolute, so common in English, is in German a rare construction, occurring only with one or two participles; e. g., *wir alle freuen uns, ausgenommen du, we are all glad, you excepted* (Gr.); *es sind unser fünf,*

unberechnet der Vorsitzende, *there are five of us, the chairman not counted.*

1. The usual case absolute is the acc. (§ 267). Thus, in the last two examples the more idiomatic construction is: wir alle freuen uns, dich ausgenommen; es sind unser fünf, den Vorsitzenden unberechnet.

THE GENITIVE.

245. The genitive limits or complements the meaning of, and so is said to depend upon, nouns, adjectives, pronouns, verbs and prepositions. It is also used with an interjection in exclamations.

246. The Adnominal Genitive, translatable usually by the possessive or the objective with *of*, denotes a great variety of relations, of which the more important are indicated below. We have:

1. The partitive genitive, denoting a whole of which the noun limited forms a part; e. g., ein Teil des Chors, *a part of the chorus* (G.); meine Hälfte deines Grams, *my half of thy sorrow* (S.); Tonnen Goldes, *tons of gold* (S.); dies Glas des echten Weines, *this glass of the genuine wine* (G.).

a. But after nouns of number, weight, measure, kind, the older partitive genitive has for the most part given way to simple apposition; thus one no longer says drei Pfund Goldes, *three pounds of gold*, but drei Pfund Gold; not ein Glas Weines, *for a glass of wine*, but ein Glas Wein; not, with Lessing, eine neue Art Zanks, *a new kind of quarrel*, but eine neue Art Zank. If the word limited has an inflected modifier, either the genitive or the appositional construction is proper; e. g., eine Menge fröhlicher (or fröhliche) Kinder, *a crowd of happy children*; ein Glas kalten Wassers, or kaltes Wasser, *a glass of cold water*.

b. For the partitive gen. with adjectives and pronouns see § 253; with verbs, § 250.

2. The objective genitive, with verbal nouns, denoting the object of the action; e. g., die Teilung der Erde, *the*

partition of the earth ; die Erhebung des Menschengeschlechts, *the elevation of the human race*.

a. A genitive limiting a verbal noun and denoting the subject of the action is called, by way of contrast, 'subjective' ; e. g., das Wehen des Windes, *the blowing of the wind* ; die Erhebung Europas gegen Napoleon, *the rise of Europe against Napoleon*. Both a subjective and an objective gen. may depend on the same noun ; e. g., Bismarcks Lösung des Problems, *Bismarck's solution of the problem*.

b. As in English, the objective gen. follows its noun ; thus Gottes Liebe can only mean *God's love*, while die Liebe Gottes may mean either (man's) *love of God* or *God's love* (of man). For the objective gen. one can often substitute a preposition with its case ; e. g., die Furcht vor dem Tode, *the fear of death* ; die Liebe zu Gott. This substitution should always be made when necessary to avoid ambiguity.

3. The genitive of characteristic ; e. g., der Jüngling edlen Gefühls, *the youth of noble feeling* (G.) ; dies Haus des Glanzes, *this house of splendor*.

a. In the predicate this gen. often stands alone, the noun upon which it would depend being omitted ; e. g., er ist niedriger Abkunft, *he is of low origin* ; ich bin guter Dinge, *I am in good spirits* ; das Wort ist jählichen Geschlechts, *the word is of the neuter gender*.

4. The genitive of specification, telling wherein the noun consists, or limiting its generality by means of a more definite term ; e. g., das Recht der freien Forschung, *the right of free investigation* ; der Schnee des Alters, *the snows of old age* ; des Hasses Kraft, die Macht der Liebe, *the force of hate, the power of love* (G.). So also with substantive adjectives : der Beinamen des Großen, *the sobriquet (of) the great* ; das Prädikat des Schönen, *the predicate (of) the beautiful*.

a. This genitive is also called 'appositional.' Proper names do not take this construction, but stand in apposition ; e. g., die Stadt Paris, *the city of Paris* ; das Königreich Sachsen, *the kingdom of Saxony* ; der Monat März, *the month of March*.

5. The possessive genitive, denoting the owner, author, proprietor ; e. g., das Haus meines Vaters, *my father's house* ; Schillers Tell, *Schiller's Tell* ; des Landvogts Reiter, *the governor's troopers*.

a. The noun limited is sometimes to be supplied from the context ; e. g., doch besser ist's, ihr fallt in Gottes Hand als in des Menschen, *but it is better: that you fall into the hand of God than into (that) of man* (S.). Or it may be represented by a demonstrative ; e. g., seine Ideale sind immer noch die unseres Volkes, *his ideals are still those of our people*.

b. By the omission of a noun meaning *property*, or the like, the possessive genitive often comes to stand alone in the predicate ; e. g., gebt dem Kaiser, was des Kaisers ist, *give to the emperor what is the emperor's* ; der Bube war des Vogts, *the boy was the governor's* (S.) ; du bist des Todes, *you are a dead man* ; bist du des Teufels ? *are you crazy ?*

c. In familiar language this gen. is often replaced by a possessive in agreement with the governing noun ; e. g., in dem Wolf seinem Leib, *in the wolf's body* (Gr.) ; auf der Fortuna (dat.) ihrem Schiff, *on Fortune's ship* (S.). So also a possessive may stand pleonastically after the gen. ; e. g., nimm meinen Ring und gib mir des Majors seinen dafür, *take my ring and give me the Major's for it* (L.).

d. Note also the colloquial ellipsis in ich war heute bei Müllers, *I was at (the) Müllers' to-day*, i. e., *at his (their) house*.

6. The genitive of connection—a general term which, as here used, is meant to include the ideas of cause, origin, relationship, appurtenance, and any others that do not fall clearly under one of the preceding heads ; e. g., das Licht der Sonne, *the light of the sun* ; der Ruhm der Deutschen, *the glory of the Germans* ; der Gipfel des Berges, *the top of the mountain* ; der Sohn des Königs, *the son of the king*.

247. The Dative with *von* as a Substitute for the Genitive. For the genitive in most of the uses described in the last section it is possible to substitute *von* with the dative. The construction with *von* belongs more to familiar language and is gaining upon the more elegant genitive. Thus in the following cases, all from good writers, the genitive would be better : Die Ursachen von diesem Mangel, *the causes of this lack* (Herder) ; Herr von seinen Handlungen, *master of his actions* (G.) ; die Macht von Rom, *the power of Rome* (Ranke) ; die eine Seite vom Haus, *one side of the house* (Gr.). But in some cases the construction with *von* is to be preferred, viz. :

1. In certain expressions of rank and title ; e. g., der König von Sachsen, *the King of Saxony* ; die Jungfrau von

Orleans, the *Mail of Orleans*; but Doktor der Philosophie, *doctor of philosophy*.

2. When the case, if it were genitive, would not be clear; e. g., die Bevölkerung von Paris, *the population of Paris*; die Ansprüche von Menschen, die nichts besitzen, *the claims of people who own nothing*.

3. To avoid a genitive depending upon a genitive; e. g., der Erbe von seines Vaters mutigem Geiste, *the inheritor of his father's courageous spirit* (instead of der Erbe des mutigen Geistes seines Vaters); der Sohn von einem Vetter des großen Dichters, *the son of a cousin of the great poet*; einer von des Prinzen Räten, *one of the prince's counsellors* (L.).

4. When the limiting genitive, if it were used, would be separated from its noun; e. g., von unsrer Partei war kein Freund gegenwärtig, *there was no friend of our party present*.

5. To denote material or characteristic; e. g., das Mäntelchen von starrer Seide, *the cape of stiff silk* (G.); ein Mann von festem Charakter, *a man of solid character*.

248. The Genitive as Sole Object of Verbs. A number of verbs take, or may take, a genitive as sole object; e. g., gedenke des Sabbattages, *remember the sabbath day*; schonen meiner, *spare me*; ich bedarf Ihres Beistands, *I need your assistance*.

1. This construction is on the wane. It is found in the classics, and may still occur, in stately writing, after a pretty large number of verbs. But the most of them admit, or even prefer, besides the genitive, some other construction. Such are (the alternative being put in brackets):

achten, *heed* [auf, acc.].
bedürfen, *need* [acc.].
begehren, *desire* [acc.].
brauchen, *need* [acc.].
danken, *thank* [für, acc.].
denken, *think* [an, acc.].

entbehren, *lack* [acc.].
entraten, *lack* [acc.].
ermangeln, *lack* [acc.].
erwähnen, *mention* [acc.].
frohloden, *exult* [über, acc.].
gebrauchen, *use* [acc.].

gedenken, <i>think</i> .	[potten, <i>mock</i> [über, acc.].
geben, <i>give birth to</i> .	sterben, <i>die</i> [an, dat.].
genießen, <i>enjoy</i> [acc.].	(ver)fehlen, <i>miss</i> [acc.].
gewahren, <i>perceive</i> [acc.].	vergeffen, <i>forget</i> [acc.].
harren, <i>wait</i> [auf, acc.].	verlangen, <i>desire</i> [nach, dat.].
hüten, <i>guard</i> [acc.].	wahren, <i>guard</i> [acc.].
lachen, <i>laugh</i> [über, acc.].	wahrnehmen, <i>perceive</i> [acc.].
mangeln, <i>lack</i> [acc.].	walten, <i>rule</i> [über, acc.].
pflügen, <i>attend</i> [acc.].	warten, <i>wait</i> [auf, acc.].
schonen, <i>spare</i> [acc.].	

a. Sometimes difference of meaning is associated with difference of construction. Thus lachen and potten are apt to take the gen. when used figuratively in the sense *make light of*; e. g., ich lachte über den Spaß, *laughed at the joke*, but lachte seiner Drohungen, *made light of his threats*. Cf., further, seines Amtes warten, *attend to one's business*, but auf den Zug warten, *wait for the train*; der Ruhe pflügen, *take rest*, but einen Kranken pflügen, *nurse a sick person*.

b. The gen. as sole object is for the most part a gen. of cause, denoting that which occasions the activity or state denoted by the verb; hence Hungers sterben, *die of hunger*, and eines bösen Todes sterben, *die an evil death*. Some cases which might seem to come under this head are partitive genitives; e. g., sich Rats erholen, *get advice* (§ 250); others are adverbial; e. g., des Glaubens leben, *live in the faith* (§ 251). Difficult to classify is Versteckens spielen, *play hide and seek*.

249. The Genitive as Secondary Object occurs with numerous verbs in connection with an accusative; e. g., ich freue mich deines Heils, *I rejoice in thy salvation*; wem andrer Sünde klagt dein Herz dich an? *of what other sin does thy heart accuse thee?* The verbs are:

1. Verbs of 'judicial action' and their kind, the genitive denoting that of which some one is accused, convicted, admonished, deemed worthy, etc. Such are:

anklagen, <i>accuse</i> .	losprechen, <i>acquit</i> .	verklagen, <i>accuse</i> .
belehren, <i>inform</i> .	mahnen, <i>admonish</i> .	(ver)lohnern, <i>reward</i> .
bescheiden, <i>inform</i> .	überführen, <i>convict</i> .	versichern, <i>assure</i> .
beschuldigen, <i>accuse</i> .	überheben, <i>exempt</i> .	vergewissern, <i>assure</i> .
besichtigen, <i>accuse</i> .	überweisen, <i>convict</i> .	würdigen, <i>deem worthy</i> .
freisprechen, <i>acquit</i> .	überzeugen, <i>convince</i> .	zählen, <i>accuse</i> .

a. Belehren occurs in such locations as man hat mich eines andern belehrt, *I am otherwise advised*. Bescheiden in the same sense is now

quaint. Überzeugen, versichern and verbs of acquitting may take the dat. with von instead of the gen. Versichern admits also a dat. of the person and an acc. of the thing: ich versichre dir meine Theilnahme, *I assure you of my sympathy*, instead of ich versichre dich meiner Theilnahme. Mahnen usually takes an with acc.

2. Several verbs of separation or deprivation, the genitive denoting that of which some one is deprived. Such are :

berauben, <i>rob.</i>	entladen, <i>relieve.</i>	entsetzen, <i>dispossess.</i>
entbinden, <i>release.</i>	entlassen, <i>dismiss.</i>	entwöhnen, <i>wean.</i>
entblößen, <i>deprive.</i>	entlasten, <i>relieve.</i>	verjagen, <i>drive out.</i>
entheben, <i>relieve.</i>	entledigen, <i>exempt.</i>	verweisen, <i>banish.</i>
entkleiden, <i>divest.</i>		

a. Entbinden, =blößen, =heben, =lassen, may take a dat. with von. Entlassen admits three constructions : thus to dismiss one from service is einen seiner Dienste, or vom Dienste, or aus dem Dienste entlassen. Other compounds of ent take a dat. of the person, and an acc. of the thing. See § 258, 2.

3. A multitude of reflexive verbs with meanings too various to classify. Such are :

sich abthun, <i>renounce.</i>	sich erschrecken, <i>dare to do.</i>
anmaßen, <i>claim.</i>	(er)frenuen, <i>enjoy.</i>
annehmen, <i>take charge.</i>	erinnern, <i>remember.</i>
bedienen, <i>make use.</i>	erzählen, <i>dare to do.</i>
befleiß(ig)en, <i>attend to.</i>	erwehren, <i>keep from.</i>
begeben, <i>renounce.</i>	getrösten, <i>expect.</i>
bemächtigen, <i>get possession.</i>	rühmen, <i>boast.</i>
bemeistern, <i>get control.</i>	schämen, <i>be ashamed.</i>
bescheiden, <i>acquiesce in.</i>	überheben, <i>boast.</i>
besinnen, <i>bethink one's self.</i>	unterfangen, {
entäußern, <i>renounce.</i>	unterwinden, { <i>dare to undertake.</i>
enthalten, <i>refrain from.</i>	vermeßen, <i>dare to do.</i>
entledigen, <i>acquit one's self.</i>	vermuten, <i>expect.</i>
entschlagen, <i>get rid.</i>	versehen, <i>expect.</i>
entsinnen, <i>recollect.</i>	(ver)trösten, <i>acquiesce in.</i>
erbarmen, <i>pity.</i>	verwegen, <i>dare to do.</i>
erdreissen, <i>dare to do.</i>	weigern, <i>refuse.</i>

a. Some of these verbs admit other constructions ; e. g., sich (er)frenuen, rühmen, schämen, the acc. with über ; sich anmaßen, the dat. of the reflexive and the acc. of the thing. Erinnern, with acc., for sich erinnern, with gen., is a North-German provincialism.

4. Certain impersonal verbs of feeling, the genitive giving the cause of the emotion ; e. g., *mir jammert seiner Not, I pity his distress*. Such are, letting *mir* represent the variable personal object :

<i>es dauert mir, I pity.</i>	<i>es gelüstet mir, I desire.</i>
<i>es eßelt mir, I am disgusted.</i>	<i>es jammert mir, I pity.</i>
<i>es erbarmt mich, I pity.</i>	<i>es reut mich, I regret.</i>
<i>es verbrießt mich, I am annoyed.</i>	

a. With the most of these verbs the gen. is becoming quaint, and über with the acc. or wegen with the gen. (with *gelüstet*, nach and the dat.) is preferred. Note finally *es (ver)lohnt sich der Mühe, it is worth the trouble*.

250. **The Partitive Genitive with Verbs.** At an earlier period several verbs might take a genitive to denote that the object was affected only in part ; e. g., *des Brotes*, or *Brot*, *essen, to eat bread, manger du pain*, where one would now say *Brot* or *vom Brote* or *etwas Brot essen* ; *er giebt seines Brotes den Armen, he giveth of his bread to the poor (Lu.)*.

1. But this construction is now obsolete or quaint, except perhaps after *genießen* (cf. § 248). Where it occurs in the classics it is usually held to be a Grecism or Gallicism ; e. g., *brachte die Mutter des herrlichen Weines, brought (some) of the noble wine (G.)* ; *es schenkte der Böhme des perlenden Weins, poured out (some) of the sparkling wine (S.)*.

a. But a few isolated phrases survive in common use ; e. g., *sich Rats erholen, get advice*.

251. **The Adverbial Genitive.** The genitive is used with verbs to denote various adverbial relations, viz. :

1. Place ; e. g., *jetzt gehe jeder seines Weges, now let each go his way (S.)* ; *das preisen die Schüler allerorten (aller Orten), the students praise that everywhere (G.)*.

a. The adverbial gen. of place is no longer common, except in the phrase *allerorten* (*allerrorts*). Where it occurs in the classics after *gehen*, *kommen*, *ziehen*, and other verbs of motion, present usage prefers the acc. (§ 266). Goethe sometimes forces German idiom a little in his use of this construction ; e. g., *das ist des Landes nicht der Brauch, that is not the custom in these parts (Faust, l. 2949, des Landes being = hier zu Lande)* ; *glänzen droben klarer (= in der klaren) Nacht, shine up there in the clear night (ibid., l. 4647)*.

2. Time ; e. g., die Räte versammelten sich des Mittags, *the councillors assembled at noon* (S.) ; Tages Arbeit, Abends Gäste, *work by day, guests at night* (G.).

a. This use of the gen. is very common in certain set phrases ; e. g., eines Tages, *one day* ; eines Abends, *one evening* ; vormittags, *forenoons* ; abends, *evenings* ; nachts, *at night* ; neuerdings (i. e., neuer Dinge, with adverbial s), *recently* ; von alters her, *from of old* ; vor alters, *anciently*. On the acc. of time, as compared with the gen., see § 266, 2, a.

3. Manner and degree ; e. g., nach Uri fahr' ich stehen- den Fußes, *I will go to Uri without delay* (S.) ; meines Wissens ist es das erste Mal, *so far as I know, it is the first time*.

a. Here the phrases are still more numerous ; e. g., keineswegs, *by no means* ; glücklicherweise, *happily*, and others in -weise ; gewisser- maßen, *in a certain sense*, and others in -maßen (gen. of Maß) ; aller- dings, *to be sure* ; unverrichteter Sache, *in vain, with errand unac- complished* ; meinerseits, *on my part* ; meines Erachtens, *in my opinion* ; dergestalt, *in such way* ; des weiteren, *in detail*.

252. The Complementary Genitive with Adjectives. Certain adjectives may take a genitive to complement their meaning ; e. g., des Gefühls nicht mächtig stand ich da, *I stood there not able to control my feeling* (S.) ; daß sie des Dranges müd' sind, *that they are tired of oppression* (S.).

1. The adjectives that take the genitive express for the most part the ideas of power, possession, knowledge, capacity, abundance and their opposites. Such are (in- cluding their compounds with un) :

ansichtig, <i>in sight</i> .	gewahr, <i>aware</i> .	fatt, <i>sated</i> .
bar, <i>bare</i> .	gewärtig, <i>expectant</i> .	schuldig, <i>guilty</i> .
bedürftig, <i>in need</i> .	gewiß, <i>certain</i> .	sicher, <i>certain</i> .
benötigt, <i>in need</i> .	gewohnt, <i>used</i> .	teilhaft, <i>partaking</i> .
bewußt, <i>conscious</i> .	habhaft, <i>in possession</i> .	überdrüssig, <i>weary</i> .
bloß, <i>bare</i> .	inne, <i>percipient</i> .	verdächtig, <i>suspicious</i> .
einig, <i>agreed</i> .	kundig, <i>acquainted</i> .	verlustig, <i>lacking</i> .
eingedenk, <i>mindful</i> .	ledig, <i>free</i> .	vermutend, <i>expectant</i> .
erfahren, <i>experienced</i> .	leer, <i>empty</i> .	versichert, <i>assured</i> .
fähig, <i>capable</i> .	los, <i>free</i> .	voll, <i>full</i> .
frei, <i>free</i> .	mächtig, <i>able to control</i> .	wert, <i>worth</i> .
fröh, <i>glad</i> .	müde, <i>tired</i> .	würdig, <i>worthy</i> .
gedenk, <i>mindful</i> .	quitt, <i>done</i> .	

a. Several of the above adjectives, when used predicatively, may take an acc. instead of a gen.; namely, *aufsichtig*, *gewahr*, *gewohnt*, *habhaft*, *inne*, *los*, *satt*, *vermutend*, *wert*; e. g., *als mich die Fee aufsichtig wurde*, *when the fairy noticed (became observant of) me* (Platen); *den Bösen sind sie los*, *they are rid of the Evil One* (G.); *das war die Mühe nicht wert*, *not worth the trouble* (G.).—This construction originated thus: The old gen. *es* in *ich bin es los*, *I am rid of it*, and similar locutions, came to be felt as an acc., and this led to the use of a real acc. in place of *es*; i. e., the misunderstood *ich bin es los* drew after it *ich bin das Ding los*.

b. *Frei*, *leer*, and *los* may be followed by *von*, and *fähig* by *zu*. *Würdig* and *unwürdig* occur sometimes with a dat.; e. g., *nichts ist einem Manne unwürdiger*, *more unworthy of a man* (L.).

c. Adverbs that govern the gen. will be treated as prepositions (§ 376).

253. The Partitive Genitive with Adjectives, Pronouns and Adverbs. A genitive of the whole may occur after numerals, after certain pronouns and pronominal adjectives, and after adjectives in the comparative and superlative; e. g., *fünf unsres Ordens*, *five of our order*; *aller guten Dinge sind drei*, *of all good things there are three*; *unser einer*, *one of us*; *der wackern Männer viele*, *many brave men* (S.); *der schrecklichste der Schrecken*, *the most terrible of terrors* (S.).

1. After a numeral the partitive genitive is no longer common except when the numeral agrees with a noun understood. Thus for *neun ganzer Jahre*, *nine whole years* (L.), one would now say *neun ganze Jahre*. But *neun unsrer Gesellschaft*, *nine of our company*, or *zwanzig der besten*, *twenty of the best*, is good usage, though the dative with *von* or *unter* also occurs.

2. The pronouns and pronominals which admit a partitive genitive are *wer*, *welch*, *was*, *all*, *ander-*, *beid-*, *ein*, *einig-*, *etlich-*, *etwas*, *genug*, *jed-*, *kein*, *manch*, *mehrer-*, *nichts*, *viel* and *wenig*. But the most of these admit also *von* or *unter* with

the dative, and this is the preferred construction with *jemand* and *niemand*.

a. The old partitive genitive of an adjective after *nichts* (cf. § 320, 2), *etwas*, and other indeclinables, ceased long ago to be felt as a genitive, and is now treated as an appositive; e. g., *zu was Besserm find wir geboren, we are born for something better* (S.). Goethe's *zu was Neuen* (for *Neuem*, *Faust*, l. 3254) is for the rhyme's sake.

b. So also in such expressions as *was Wunder*, *what (of) wonder*, *was Teufel*, *what the deuce*, etc., the genitive, ceasing to be felt as such, dropped its case-ending and became an appositive; hence *was Wunder, was Teufel, was Hener, was Raub* (*Faust*, l. 6549).

c. The form *anders*, *else*, remains unchanged after *wer*, *jemand*, *niemand*; e. g., *wer anders, who else*; *mit niemand anders* (not *anderm*).

3. A partitive genitive may occur after certain adverbs of place; e. g., *wohin des Weges*, *whither away*; *woher des Landes*, *from what part of the country*; *wo anders* or *anders=wo*, *elsewhere*; *nirgend anders*, *nowhere else*.

4. Quite anomalous is Goethe's use of a partitive gen. with *häufig* in *Faust*, l. 3098: *Ihr habt der Freunde häufig, you have friends in abundance*.

254. The Genitive with Prepositions. A large number of prepositions and prepositional adverbs govern the genitive. For a list, with illustrations, see §§ 376-7.

255. The Genitive in Exclamations. After an interjection the genitive is sometimes used to denote the occasion of the feeling; e. g., *o der unglückseligen Stunde!* *oh, the unhappy hour!* *pfui des Bösewichts!* *out upon the villain!*

1. This construction is distinctly literary, and is becoming rare even in poetry. Common language prefers the nom., or else a prepositional phrase; e. g., *mit eurem Golde, out upon your gold* (S.)! *pfui über dich!* *fie upon you!*

THE DATIVE.

256. The dative depends upon verbs, adjectives and prepositions, rarely upon nouns and interjections. Its name, from the Latin *casus dativus*, implies that it is the case of *giving*, i. e., of the indirect object. But it has other functions also.

257. The Dative with Verbs: Sole Object. A large number of intransitive verbs take a single object, or complement of their meaning, in the dative; e. g., *ich danke dir, I thank thee*; *den Göttern gleich' ich nicht, I am not like the gods (G.)*; *mir wird nachgesehen, I am followed (S.)*.

1. The verbs that take the dative as sole object express such ideas as motion or effort toward and away from; disappearance, lack; appurtenance, fitness, suitability; pleasure and displeasure; friendly, gracious, or submissive action, and the reverse; resemblance and correspondence. Some have English equivalents that need no preposition and may seem to be transitive; others require in English a preposition, usually *to*. Such are:

ähneln, <i>resemble.</i>	folgen, <i>follow.</i>	huldigen, <i>pay homage.</i>
antworten, <i>answer.</i>	frommen, <i>benefit.</i>	mangeln, <i>be lacking.</i>
begegnen, <i>meet.</i>	gebühren, <i>befit.</i>	nahe, <i>approach.</i>
begehren, <i>please.</i>	gefallen, <i>please.</i>	nützen, <i>benefit.</i>
bekommen, <i>befit.</i>	gehören, <i>belong.</i>	passen, <i>fit.</i>
danke, <i>thank.</i>	gehörchen, <i>obey.</i>	schaden, <i>injure.</i>
dienen, <i>serve.</i>	genügen, <i>suffice.</i>	schmeicheln, <i>flatter.</i>
drohen, <i>threaten.</i>	geschehen, <i>happen.</i>	trogen, <i>defy.</i>
diinken, <i>seem.</i>	(ge)ziemen, <i>become.</i>	(ver)trauen, <i>trust.</i>
erliegen, <i>succumb.</i>	glauben, <i>believe.</i>	weichen, <i>yield.</i>
(er)scheinen, <i>appear.</i>	gleich, <i>resemble.</i>	wehren, <i>defend.</i>
fehlen, <i>fail.</i>	grollen, <i>be angry.</i>	zürnen, <i>be angry.</i>
fluchen, <i>curse.</i>	helfen, <i>help.</i>	

a. Antworten takes a dat. of the person only: what one answers stands in the acc., that to which one answers in the acc. with *auf*; e. g., *antworte mir, answer me*; *antworte auf meine Frage,*

answer my question; er antwortete mir keine Silbe, *he answered me not a syllable*.—Begegnen occurs in the classics with the acc.—Danfen = verdanfen may have an acc. of the thing; e. g., ich (ver)danfte ihm mein Glück, *I owe to him my happiness*.—Glauben takes the dat. of the person in the sense of *believe*, the acc. with an in that of *believe in* (but in *Faust*, l. 3434, ich glaube ihn = *I believe in him*).—Mangeln now usually has a dat. of the person, the thing needed being in the nom. or dat. with an; e. g., mir mangelt Geld, or es mangelt mir an Geld, instead of ich mangle des Geldes (§ 248, 1).

2. A still larger number of verbs, with meanings similar to those mentioned above, take the dative in virtue of their composition with one of the prefixes an, auf, aus, bei, ein, ent, entgegen, miß, nach, unter, ver, vor, voran, voraus, wider, zu, zuvor. Examples are: abgehen, *be lacking*; angehören, *belong*; auffallen, *surprise*; ausweichen, *evade*; beipflichten, *support*; einfallen, *occur*; entgehen, *escape*; entgegen-eilen, *hasten toward*; mißfallen, *displease*; nachstehen, *be inferior*; unterliegen, *succumb*; verschwinden, *vanish*; vorbeugen, *prevent*; voran- and vorausgehen, *precede*; widerstehen, *repel*; zueilen, *hasten to*; zuvorkommen, *anticipate*.

a. Verbal phrases with similar meanings may also take the dat.; e. g., einem zu Hilfe kommen, *come to the aid of one*; einem zur Ehre gereichen, *redound to one's credit*. Cf. § 259, 2.

258. The Dative with Verbs: Secondary Object. Many transitive verbs take a secondary object in the dative, the primary object being usually a noun or pronoun in the accusative, but often an infinitive or a clause; e. g., gebt mir den Helm, *give me the helmet* (S.); ich werde jetzt dich keinem Nachbar reichen, *I shall hand thee now to no neighbor* (G.); Furcht gebietet ihm zu schweigen, *fear bids him be silent*; nun sag' mir eins, man soll kein Wunder glauben, *now let some one tell me that we are not to believe in miracles* (G.). What is here called the secondary object may be:

1. A true indirect object, translatable by the objective with *to*, and occurring chiefly with verbs of giving,

communicating, showing, proving, and the like (see examples above).

a. Sagen, say, is apt to take the dat. with zu when followed by a literal quotation in the direct form; e. g., er sagte mir, ich sei verrückt, *told me I was crazy*; but er sagte zu mir: du bist verrückt.—Schreiben, write, takes the dat. or the acc. with an.—Some verbs of this class, e. g., beweisen, show, and erwähnen, mention, admit the acc. with gegen instead of the dat.

b. Some of the verbs given in § 257, 1, may take a direct object in the form of an acc. or a clause; e. g., ich danke dir, daß—, *I thank thee that*—; antworte mir das, answer me that; das glaube ich dir nicht, *I do not believe you (when you say) that*.

2. A privative object, denoting that *from* which something is separated, and translatable by the objective with *from*; e. g., der Ring, den er dem Zwerg genommen, *the ring which he had taken from the dwarf* (W.); diesen Trost soll mir niemand rauben, *no one shall rob me of this comfort*.

a. This dat. occurs after verbs of taking, stealing, withholding, alienating, etc. (many being compounds of *ent* or *weg*), some of which, however, may take *von* instead. It represents an extinct ablative.

3. The beneficiary object, denoting that *for* which something is done; e. g., was kaufst du deiner Frau zu Weihnachten? *what shall you buy your wife for Christmas* (Gr.)?

a. This construction is comparatively rare with transitive verbs, the acc. with *für* being preferred. Still it is closely akin to the dat. of interest, which is very common.

4. An object due to the composition of the verb with one of the prefixes mentioned in § 257, 2. It has to be translated in various ways; e. g., ich sehe dem Dinge kein Ende ab, *I see no end to (of) the thing*; man sieht dir's an den Augen an, *one can see it by your eyes* (G.); der Wind trieb uns den Staub entgegen, *drove the dust in our faces*; etwas einem Briefe beilegen, *to enclose something in a letter*.

a. With several of these compounds the dat. object is a reflexive pronoun; e. g., ich mache mir das Recht an, *I claim (arrogate to myself) the right*; ich bitte mir das aus, *I make that a condition*; sich etwas einbilden, *imagine something*; sich etwas zutrauen, *trust one's self for something*.

259. The Dative of Interest. The dative is freely used to denote the person (less often the thing) concerned in a statement.

a. The translation has to vary greatly ; e. g., *wie geht es Ihnen?* *how goes it with you?* *mir ist es einerlei, it is all the same to me ; dem Vater grauset's, the father shudders (G.).* In connection with a noun that has the definite article it often has the force of a possessive ; e. g., *es geht mir ans Herz, it goes to my heart ; das gereicht ihm zur Ehre, that redounds to his credit.* It occurs :

1. With transitive verbs as the case of the beneficiary object (see above, § 253, 3). Here belong numerous verbal phrases containing a transitive verb ; e. g., *das that er mir zuliebe, he did that for my sake ; schreib' es dir hinter's Ohr, make a note of it ; diesen muß ich was zum besten geben, I must do something for the fellows (G.) ; ich mache es mir zur Aufgabe, I make it my task.*

a. Where a personal object is accompanied by a phrase specifying a part of the object there is sometimes a choice between the dat. and the acc. ; e. g., *er trat mir (or mich) auf den Fuß, he stepped upon my foot.*

2. With intransitive verbs ; e. g., *sein Herz schlug der ganzen Menschheit, his heart beat for all mankind (S.) ; wie nur dem Kopf nicht alle Hoffnung schwindet, how only for that head does all hope not vanish (G.).*

a. Here belong a multitude of impersonal phrases with *sein, werden, bleiben, geschehen, gehen, and others ;* e. g., *es ist mir recht, it suits me ; mir wird so licht, it grows so clear to me (G.) ; es geschieht dir recht, it serves you right ; es schmeckt mir gut, it tastes good to me ; es thut mir leid, I am sorry ; es liegt mir viel daran, it is of great concern to me.*

b. Add to these the strictly impersonal verbs : *es ahnt mir, I forbode ; es beliebt mir, I choose ; es efelt mir, I am disgusted ; es gebricht mir, I lack ; es graut mir, I abhor ; es grauset mir, I shudder ; es schaubert mir, I shudder ; es schwindelt mir, I am giddy ; es träumt mir, I dream.*

3. With passive verbs (including *geschehen*), and sometimes after *werden* in the sense of *zu teil werden ;* e. g., *da*

wird der Geist euch wohl dressiert, *there your mind will be well trained* (G.); da ward der Tapferkeit ihr Lohn, *then bravery got its reward* (G.); ein Unrecht ist mir geschehen, *a wrong has been done me*.

4. As 'ethical' dative—a personal pronoun interjected loosely in the sentence to indicate indirect interest or sympathetic concern on the part of the speaker or listener; e. g., 'nen Apfel schießt der Vater dir vom Baum, *father can shoot an apple from the tree for you* (S.); er hat euch herzlich dran gedacht, *he thought of it earnestly, you'll be glad to hear* (G.); geht mir, nichts weiter davon! *go, I say, no more of that* (S.)!

260. The Dative with Adjectives. A large number of adjectives govern the dative, the most of them occurring chiefly in the predicate; e. g., ich bin sonst allen Menschen gut, *I am kindly disposed to all other men* (G.); die Höflichkeit ist euch geläufig, *politeness is natural to you* (G.); er ist dir neidisch, *he is envious of you* (S.).

1. The adjectives that govern the dat. have meanings similar to those given for verbs in § 257, 1. The list includes, first, participial adjectives from verbs that govern the dat., as *entsprechend, corresponding*; *passend, fitting*; *angemessen, adapted*; secondly, a large number of words in *bar, lich* and *ig*. These suffixes either form passive verbals (the dat. denoting the object for which the action is feasible), as *denkbar, thinkable*, or else they mean *replete with, having the character of*, and the dat. denotes the object toward which the quality is manifested; e. g., *dankebar, grateful*; *freundlich, friendly*; *günstig, favorable*.

2. Of adjectives not included under the foregoing heads the following are the most common:

abhold, <i>unfriendly</i> .	folgsam, <i>obedient</i> .	nahe, <i>near</i> .
ähnlich, <i>similar</i> .	gehorfam, <i>obedient</i> .	neidisch, <i>envious</i> .
(an)gehörig, <i>belonging</i> .	gelegen, <i>opportune</i> .	schwer, <i>difficult</i> .
angenehm, <i>pleasant</i> .	gemein(sam), <i>common</i> .	teuer, <i>dear</i> .
bekannt, <i>known</i> .	gleich, <i>like</i> .	treu, <i>true</i> .
benachbart, <i>neighboring</i> .	gut, <i>kindly disposed</i> .	vorteilhaft, <i>helpful</i> .
bequem, <i>comfortable</i> .	heilsam, <i>wholesome</i> .	wert, <i>dear</i> .
eigen(tümlich), <i>peculiar</i> .	hold, <i>gracious</i> .	willkommen, <i>welcome</i> .
feind(lich), <i>hostile</i> .	leicht, <i>easy</i> .	wünschenswert, <i>desirable</i> .
fremd, <i>strange</i> .	lieb, <i>dear</i> .	die

a. Add to these negative compounds with *un*, as *unangenehm*, *unten*; also a number of specialized perfect participles, from verbs which may not elsewhere govern the dative; as *angeboren*, *innate*; *bestieden*, *destined*; *ergeben*, *devoted*; *erwünscht*, *wished for*; *gelegen*, *opportune*; *geneigt*, *inclined*; *gleich*, *equal*; *gewogen*, *well disposed*; *überlegen*, *superior*; *unverhofft*, *unhoped for*; *verbunden*, *obliged*; *verhaßt*, *hateful*; *verwandt*, *akin*. Besides *abhold* there are also several other compounds of *ab*, in which the prefix denotes *aloofness*; e. g., *abbrüchig*, *abtrünnig*, *recrulant*.

b. A few other adjectives take the *dat.* when used in the predicate or adverbially in impersonal phrases; e. g., *es ist mir angst*, *I am anxious*; *es macht mir bange*, *it makes me anxious*; *es ist mir recht*, *it suits me*; *es thut mir leid*, *I am sorry*.

c. With many of the above named adjectives a prepositional construction is admissible; thus *für* with the *acc.* after the passive verbals (*es ist für mich denkbar*, instead of *es ist mir denkbar*), and also after *angenehm*, *heilsam*, *gut*, *passend*, *vorteilhaft*, and others; *gegen* with *acc.* after *freundlich*, *feindlich*, *gehorsam*, *treu*, and *von* with *dat.* after compounds of *ab* and *ent*.

261. The Dative with Nouns is rare, but occurs now and then in the classics; e. g., *ein Muster Bürgern und Bauern*, *a model for citizens and farmers* (G.); *Gewißheit einem neuen Bunde*, *certainty to a new covenant* (G.).

1. When it seems to occur in expressions of wishing it is really dependent on a suppressed verb; e. g., *Gott sei Dank*, *thanks be (given) to God*; *Heil der Jungfrau!* *hail to the Maid* (S.)! *weh dir!* *woe to thee!*

a. Closely akin to this is the *dat.* with interjections, which is common after *wohl*; e. g., *wohl dir!* *well for thee*. After other interjections it is rare; but Schiller has *pfui den Elenden!* *out upon the wretches!* and Goethe, *o den trefflichen Menschen!* *O, the excellent people!*

262. The Dative with Prepositions. There are sixteen prepositions that now regularly take the dative, nine that take the dative or accusative according to the nature of the construction, and several more that *may* take the dative instead of some other more usual construction. For lists and illustrations see §§ 376-7.

THE ACCUSATIVE.

263. The Accusative as Direct Object. The direct object of a transitive verb is put in the accusative; e. g., *ich lieb' dich, mich reizt deine schöne Gestalt, I love thee, thy beautiful form charms me* (G.).

a. The object may denote the result of the verbal action and is then called a 'factitive' object; e. g., *einen Brief schreiben, to write a letter*.

1. Certain verbs vary between the transitive and the intransitive construction; thus:

a. *Ankommen*, in the sense of *come over*, and *versichern*, *assure*, which usually take the acc., occur also with the dat.

b. A few others which usually take the dat occur in the classics with the acc. Such are *begegnen*, *meet*; *helfen*, *help*; *schmeicheln*, *flatter*, and the impersonals *dünken*, *seem*; *ekeln*, *disgust*; *grauen* and *grausen*, *horrify*. After *kosten*, *cost*, the personal object may be either dat. or acc.; *es kostet dir (or dich) zehn Mark, it costs you ten marks*.

c. With others the case depends upon the meaning, or the nature of the construction. Thus *bezahlen*, *pay*, takes a dat. of the person, an acc. of the thing (*er bezahlte mir das Geld*); but if there is only a personal object it may stand in the acc. (*er bezahlte mich*).—*Nachahmen*, *imitate*, may also take a dat. of the person, and an acc. of the thing. If there is but one object, it may stand in either case, but *dem Lehrer nachahmen* means *to take the teacher as a model*, while *den Lehrer nachahmen* means *to ape him maliciously*.—*Rufen*, *call*, with acc. = *summon*, with dat., *call to*. Cf. further §§ 249, 3, a, and 257, 1, a.

2. Observe that many verbs which are intransitive in the simple form have transitive compounds of kindred meaning; e. g., *dem Räte folgen*, but *den Rat befolgen, to follow the advice*; *auf eine Frage antworten*, but *eine Frage beantworten, to answer a question*; *einem sein Geld rauben*, but *einen seines Geldes berauben, to rob one of one's money*.

3. After certain impersonal verbs the accusative object, denoting the person concerned, looks as if it were the subject of an intransitive verb; e. g., *ihn schläfert, he is drowsy*; *mich dünkt, methinks* (but also *mir dünkt*, see above under 1, b); *mich hungert, I am hungry*. Here belong, further, *es*

dürstet, efelt, friert, schaubert mich, *I am thirsty, disgusted, cold, horrified*. All are really transitive, es dünkt mich, meaning *it causes me to think*, ihn schläfert, *it makes him drowsy*, etc.

a. A much larger number of transitive verbs, not regularly impersonal, can be used impersonally with an object which may or may not be literally translatable; e. g., es freut mich, *I am glad*; mich überläuft's, *I am all of a tremble*; es faßt mich kalt beim Schopfe, *it is as if a cold hand seized me by the forelock* (G.). Es giebt, *there is, there are*, with acc. object, is equivalent (but see § 340) to a form of sein, with predicate nom. Notice further the use of the acc. in es setzt Siebe, *they are coming to blows, there is a fight on*, and in es hat Gefahr, *there is danger*. On the es in these idioms see § 303, 1, a.

264. The Cognate Accusative. Some intransitive verbs may take, in the accusative, an object which simply repeats, in the form of a noun, the idea of the verb; e. g., sie stirbt einen edlen Tod, *she will die a noble death* (G.); ich möchte bittere Thränen weinen, *I could weep bitter tears* (G.); gar schöne Spiele spiel' ich mit dir, *very beautiful games I will play with thee* (G.).

1. In like manner an intransitive verb may take a factitive object; e. g., der Lenz lächelt seinen Gruß, *Spring smiles its greeting*; was grindest du mir her? *what art thou grinning at me* (G.)?

265. The Accusative as Secondary Object. There are several verbs which may take two objects in the accusative; e. g., die Muse hatte den Aesop seine Fabeln gelehrt, *the Muse had taught Aesop his fables* (L.); die Hoffnung nenn' ich meine Göttin noch, *I still call Hope my goddess* (S.). The construction may be considered under three heads, as follows:

1. The two objects are the person acted upon and the thing done. Here belong lehren, *teach*, and sometimes also, but only when the thing-object is a neuter pronoun, bitten and fragen, *ask*, bereben and überreden, *persuade*; e. g., lehre mich die wahre Weisheit, *teach me true wisdom*; ich will dich etwas fragen, *I want to ask you something*; ich bitte dich

nur dies, *I ask you only this*; ihr werdet mich das nicht überreden, *you will not persuade me (of) that*. See under *d* below.

a. But after *lehren* one meets also with a dat. of the person; e.g., nur das Leben lehret jedem, was er sei, *only life teaches every one what he is* (G.). The German of to-day tends to avoid the double acc. with *lehren* as pedantic; instead of *er lehrt mich (die) Musik*, *he teaches me music*, say *er unterrichtet mich in der Musik*. After *fragen*, *nach* with dat. is used; after *bitten*, *um* with acc.; e. g., *ich fragte ihn nach dem Wege*, *I asked him the way*; *ich bat ihn um Hilfe*, *I asked him for help*.

b. With *wissen lassen*, *tell*, *sehen lassen*, *show*, and the like, when an infinitive takes the place of the thing-object, the acc. is the rule, but the dat. a not infrequent exception; e. g., *laß mich deine Schätze sehen*, *let me see your treasures*; but *laß es mir durch Eintracht sehen*, *prove it to me by harmony* (G.). So, too, the dat. may follow *heißen*, *bid*, when there is no infinitive; e. g., *wer hieß ihn das?* *who bade him that* (L.)? —instead of *wer hieß ihn das thun?*

c. By a confusion, familiar also in English, *lernen*, *learn*, is sometimes used with the sense and the construction of *lehren*; e. g., *ich lerne sie allerlei lustige Lieder*, *I am 'learning' her all sorts of jolly songs* (G.). But this is not good German.

d. In the phrase *es nimmt mich Wunder*, *I wonder at it*, *es* is really an old gen. of cause (*wonder seizes me because of it*) which came to be felt as a nom. So also the pronominal acc. after *bitten*, *fragen*, *bereden* and *überreden*, seems to have resulted from mistaking the *es* or *eines* for an acc. in such phrases as *ich bitte dich's*, *ich bitte dich nur eines*, and then extending the analogy. In the phrase *jemand Lügen strafen*, *accuse one of lying*, which looks like an instance of two accusatives, *Lügen* is probably an old gen. of cause (*chide one for lying*).

2. The two objects are the person or thing named and the name, the verbs those meaning *to call* (*nennen*, *heißen*, *schelten*, *schimpfen*, *taufen*); e. g., *du nennst dich einen Teufel*, *you call yourself a part* (G.); *ich darf mich nicht des Glückes Lieb-ling schelten*, *I cannot call myself a favorite of Fortune* (S.).

a. After verbs of making, choosing, appointing—*machen*, *wählen*, *erwählen*, *ernennen*—what would be in English the second or factitive object is usually put in the dat. with *zu*; e. g., *die Verzweiflung macht mich zur Furie*, *zum Tier*, *makes me a fury, a beast* (S.); *der Reichstag erwählte Rudolf zum Kaiser*, *elected Rudolf emperor*.

3. The second object is an appositive with *als* or *wie*. The verbs are especially those of regarding, representing, knowing, finding, but many others admit the construction; e. g., *ihr habt mich stets als eine Feindin nur betrachtet, you have always regarded me only as an enemy (S.)*; *das Alter findet uns nur noch als wahre Kinder, old age finds us still real children (G.)*; *du behandelst mich wie jene Katze, you treat me like the cat in the fable (G.)*.

a. *Als* denotes the character or capacity, *wie* the manner, in which the first object is concerned; e. g., *man betrachtete ihn als Spion und behandelte ihn wie einen Hund, they regarded him as a spy and treated him like a dog*.

b. For the nom. instead of the second object after a reflexive verb see § 271, 3.

c. Certain verbs of regarding and representing, as *achten*, *halten*, *ausgeben*, *erkennen*, are most often followed by *für* with acc.; e. g., *acht' es nicht für Raub, do not esteem it a derogation (G.)*; *für was hältst du das Tier? for what do you take the beast (G.)?*

266. The Adverbial Accusative. The accusative may be used to denote various adverbial relations, as follows:

1. The way; e. g., *wandle deine fürchterliche Straße, go thy fearful way (S.)*; *doch ziehen sie ihren Weg dahin, er geht den seinen, but they go on their way, he goes his (G.)*.

a. As used with intransitive verbs the acc. of the way might be regarded as a cognate acc., only we cannot separate *er ging den kürzesten Weg* from *er sandte mich den kürzesten Weg*, both of which are good German. This acc. is often accompanied by an adverb of direction; e. g., *er ging die Treppe hinauf, he went up the steps*; *der Landvogt führt ihn den See herauf, is bringing him up the lake (S.)*.

2. Time; e. g., *wir müssen fort noch diese Nacht, we must go this very night*; *und träte sie den Augenblick herein, and were she to enter this moment (G.)*; *er leert' ihn jeden Schmaus, he drained it at every feast (G.)*.

a. As we have seen above, time is also denoted by the gen. In general the gen. is less definite, or is used in phrases implying repetition

or custom ; e. g., eines Abends, *one evening* ; eines schönen Tages (indefinite time) ; des Abends, nachts, vormittags (custom). In the phrase jeden Abend, *every evening*, the idea of repetition is contained in jeden. Distinguish the acc. of time in gleich diesen Augenblick, *this very moment*, from the acc. of measure, in warte einen Augenblick, *wait a moment*.

b. Note the use of Ende, *end*, Mitte, *middle*, Anfang, *beginning*, without article before the name of a month ; e. g., er lehrte Ende März nach Hause, *he returned home the last of March*.

3. Measure of time, space, weight and cost ; e. g., er ist schon einen Monat hier, *has been here a month* ; wir gingen eine Strecke weiter, *we went a piece further* ; es wiegt einen Centner, *it weighs a hundred* ; es kostet sechs Mark, *it costs six marks*.

a. Measure of difference after an adjective was formerly expressed by a gen. and traces of the construction are found in the classics ; e. g., eines Hauptes länger als die Ritter alle, *a head taller than all the knights* (W.). One would now say länger um ein Haupt.

b. The acc. of measure is very often accompanied by an adjective or adverb ; e. g., drei Jahre alt ; sechs Fuß hoch ; eine Elle breit ; drei Meilen entfernt.

267. The Accusative Absolute. The accusative is often used absolutely, as if dependent upon habend understood ; e. g., das Schwert im Herzen blickst du hinauf, *the sword in thy heart, thou lookest up* (G.) ; ich eile fort, vor mir den Tag und hinter mir die Nacht, *I hasten on, the day before me and the night behind* (G.). So also in set phrases ; e. g., sie ruhten atmend Arm in Arm, *they rested, panting, arm in arm* (G.).

1. This accusative is often connected with a perfect participle used absolutely ; e. g., wenn ich so saß, den Ellenbogen aufgestemmt, *when I would sit thus, with my elbow propped up* (G.) ; schon den Hals entblößt, kniet' ich auf dem Mantel, *my neck already bared, I was kneeling on my mantle* (L.).

2. Different is the acc. dependent upon a verb of wishing or offering ; e. g., guten Morgen ! *good morning !* diesen Kuß der ganzen Welt ! *this kiss to the whole world* (S.) !

3. Note finally, in this connection, the occasional use of the acc. with an interjection ; e. g., pfui dich ! *fie upon you !* o mich vergesslichen ! *oh me, forgetful* ! i. e., *how forgetful I am* (L.).

268. The Accusative with Prepositions. The accusative is always used after eight prepositions and sometimes after nine others. For lists see §§ 376-7.

269. The Accusative with Adjectives. A few adjectives that regularly take the genitive admit the accusative instead. See § 252, 1, a.

APPOSITION.

270. Immediate Apposition. An appositive agrees in case with its antecedent; e. g., *was können wir, ein Volk der Hirten?* *what can we do, a race of shepherds* (S.)? *das Hauptaugenmerk mein, des Geognosten,* *the chief concern of me, the geologist* (G.); *trink ihn aus, den Trank der Labe,* *drink it up, the draught of solace* (G.).

1. A noun in apposition with a sentence is put in the nominative; e. g., *Pappenheim starb gleich am folgenden Tag, ein unerfetzlicher Verlust für das kaiserliche Heer,* *Pappenheim died the very next day, an irremediable loss for the imperial army* (S.).

2. For titles in apposition with proper names see § 285.

271. Mediate Apposition. Apposition may be mediated by *als* or *wie* (cf. § 242, 2); e. g., *komm' ich als Gattin?* *do I come as wife* (G.)? *wie einen Kreisel trieb's mich um,* *like a top it sent me around* (S.).

1. An appositive with *als* may denote cause, real or supposed; e. g., *mir, als dem ältesten, fiel es zu,* *it fell to me as the oldest*; *am 24sten als am Tage, wo —,* *on the 24th, that being the day on which —* (G.). Such an appositive may be used to explain an adverb; e. g., *doch morgen, als am ersten Ostertage,* *but to-morrow, that being the first Easter holiday* (G.).

a. After *als* = *in the capacity of*, an appositive may stand in the nominative without regard to the case of its antecedent, and may even explain a possessive; e. g., *die Ansprüche dieses Menschen als Dichter, the claims of this man as poet*; *seine Stellung als Haupt einer großen Partei, his position as head of a great party*.

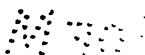
b. The rule of congruence in case holds also after *als* = *than*; e. g., *das weiß niemand als ich, no one but me knows that*; *das sag' ich keinem andern als ihm, I will tell no one but him* (Gr.).

2. After *wie* in comparisons the nominative sometimes occurs without regard to the preceding case; e. g., *einem Manne wie Sie kann es nicht an Gelde fehlen, money cannot be lacking to a man like you* (L.).

3. After a reflexive pronoun one sometimes meets with the nominative instead of an appositional object; e. g., *er bewährte sich als treuer Freund, proved himself a true friend*; *ich unterzeichne mich als der Ihrige, I sign myself 'yours'*; *er fühlt sich bald ein Mann, feels himself a man* (G.). But this construction is hardly to be approved except with true reflexives; for *zeigt sich als frecher Lügner, shows himself a bold liar*, say rather *frechen Lügner* (Blatz). Still, Lessing wrote: *Sie sehen mich ein Raub der Wellen, you see me a prey to the waves*.

272. Spurious Apposition. As we have seen (§ 246, 1, a, § 253, 2, a), an appositional construction has taken the place of an older partitive genitive after indeclinables and also after nouns of weight, measure and number; e. g., *etwas Gutes*; *mit etwas Gutem*; *ein Glas Wein*; *eine Menge Kinder*.

1. After nouns of weight and measure the appositive generally denotes material and is uninflected; e. g., *mit einem Glas Wein, with a glass of wine*; *gegen drei Pfund Silber, about three pounds of silver*. After a noun of number the rule of apposition holds when the dat. plu. is concerned; e. g., *mit drei Dutzend Eiern, with three dozen eggs*; aus einer Menge Beispielen, *from a multitude of examples*.



THE DECLENSION OF NOUNS.

273. Strong and Weak Declension.

The terms 'strong' and 'weak,' as applied to the declension of nouns, were introduced by Grimm (*Deutsche Grammatik* II, 597, *Geschichte der deutschen Sprache*, p. 652). Nouns with stem ending in a vowel he called 'strong' because they apply the case-ending directly, thus seeming to rely upon their own resources; whereas the 'weak' nouns need the support of an *n*-suffix. The names are fanciful, but convenient and in universal use. It is therefore best to keep them, though they have little force as applied to modern German, in which the old vowel-stems no longer appear as such and the original conditions are in other respects very much obscured.

THE STRONG DECLENSION.

274. The First Class. Besides the nouns specified in § 79, the First Class contains one masculine in *e*, viz., *Käse*, *cheese*. Here belong also verbal nouns (infinitives) in (*e*)*n*, including *Sein* and *Thun*, which are the only monosyllables. But infinitives form no plural.

1. The nouns of Class 1 which have umlaut as plural-sign are as follows, the * marking those in which it is optional:

<i>Äder</i> , field.	* <i>Hammer</i> wether.	<i>Nagel</i> , nail.
<i>Apfel</i> , apple.	<i>Hammer</i> , hammer.	<i>Ofen</i> , stove.
<i>Boden</i> , ground.	<i>Handel</i> , trade.	<i>Sattel</i> , saddle.
* <i>Bogen</i> , bow.	<i>Kloster</i> , convent.	* <i>Schaden</i> , injury.
<i>Bruder</i> , brother.	* <i>Laden</i> , store.	<i>Schnabel</i> , beak.
* <i>Faden</i> , thread.	<i>Mangel</i> , defect.	<i>Schwager</i> , brother-in-law.
<i>Garten</i> , garden.	<i>Mantel</i> , mantle.	<i>Tochter</i> , daughter.
<i>Graben</i> , trench.	<i>Mutter</i> , mother	<i>Vater</i> , father.
<i>Hafen</i> , haven.	<i>Nabel</i> , navel.	<i>Vogel</i> , bird.

a. Of the above all are mas. except *Kloster*, n., *Mutter*, f., and *Tochter*, f. — Not good, though sometimes seen and more often heard, are the plurals *Kästen*, boxes; *Krägen*, collars; *Läger*, camps; *Mägen*, stomachs; *Wägen*, wagons; *Wässer*, waters. Some also condemn *Bögen* as bad. — It is usual to distinguish between *Fensterladen*, shutters, and *Kaufläden*, stores.

b. The nouns mentioned in § 279, 2, may be regarded as of this class if we posit as nom. the form in *en*.

275. The Second Class. For the genitive and dative of monosyllables the long forms, e. g. *Tages*, *Tage*, are to be looked upon as the normal literary usage; but the short forms *Tags*, *Tag*, are common in all styles. In poetry and studied prose rhythm is often a deciding factor in the choice; in the case of compounds, the accent; thus *Vo'rstandes*, but *Versta'ndes*.

a. Some authorities, e. g. Blatz, state that the dropping of *e* is more apt to occur after a long stem-vowel; i. e., that *Baums*, *Baum*, *Tages*, *Tag*, are more common than *Falles*, *Fall*, *Sinns*, *Sinn*. But no great importance can be attached to this principle. For the dat. after a preposition numerous set phrases prefer the short form; e. g., *zu Fuß*, *on foot*; *mit Fleiß*, *purposely*; *mit Recht*, *rightly*; *zum Teil*, *in part*; *mit Weib und Kind*, *with wife and child*. But others have the long form; as *zu Hause*, *at home*; *bei Tische*, *at table*.

1. The monosyllabic feminines of Class 2 are as follows (all with umlaut in the plural, if possible):

Angst, <i>distress</i> .	Hand, <i>hand</i> .	Maus, <i>mouse</i> .
Art, <i>axe</i> .	Haut, <i>skin</i> .	Nacht, <i>night</i> .
Bank, <i>bench</i> .	Rluft, <i>gorge</i> .	Naht, <i>seam</i> .
Braut, <i>bride</i> .	Kraft, <i>force</i> .	Not, <i>need</i> .
Brunst, <i>heat</i> .	Ruh, <i>cow</i> .	Ruß, <i>nut</i> .
Brust, <i>breast</i> .	-kunft, <i>coming</i> .	Schnur, <i>string</i> .
Faust, <i>fist</i> .	Kunst, <i>art</i> .	Schwellst, <i>swelling</i> .
Flucht, <i>flight</i> .	Laus, <i>louse</i> .	Stadt, <i>city</i> .
Frucht, <i>fruit</i> .	Luft, <i>air</i> .	Wand, <i>wall</i> .
Gans, <i>goose</i> .	Lust, <i>delight</i> .	Wurst, <i>sausage</i> .
Gruft, <i>grave</i> .	Macht, <i>might</i> .	Zucht, <i>breeding</i> .
Gunst, <i>favor</i> .	Magd, <i>maid</i> .	Zunft, <i>guild</i> .

a. *Bank* = *bank*, is weak.—The phrase *zu Gunsten*, *in favor of*, also written *zu gunsten*, preserves an old dat. plu. without umlaut (cf. § 238, 1, a.) Of like character is *Handen* in the phrases *zu Handen*, *at hand*, *abhanden*, *missing*, *vorhanden*, *existent*. Note, further, *nachten*, instead of *Nächte*, in *Weihnachten*, *Christmas*. The adverb *nachts*, *at night*, as if from a mas. stem, descends from an old *nahles*, formed after the analogy of *tages*.—The verbal *-kunft* is not used as a separate word, but occurs in numerous compounds, as *Ankunft*, *arrival*, plu. *Ankünfte*.—*Schwellst* is sometimes weak.

2. As a rule masculine monosyllables of Class 2 have umlaut in the plural. The following, however, are

without it in the normal usage of to-day, though many of them also occur with it, especially in early writers :

Aal, <i>eel</i> .	Herzog, <i>duke</i> .	Schall, <i>sound</i> .
Adler, <i>eagle</i> .	Huf, <i>hoof</i> .	Schluck, <i>swallow</i> .
Amboß, <i>anvil</i> .	Hund, <i>dog</i> .	Schmuck, <i>ornament</i> .
Arm, <i>arm</i> .	Kran, <i>crane</i> .	Schuft, <i>wretch</i> .
Bau, <i>building</i> .	Lachs, <i>salmon</i> .	Schuh, <i>shoe</i> .
Dachs, <i>badger</i> .	Laut, <i>sound</i> .	Spalt, <i>cleft</i> .
Docht, <i>wick</i> .	Luchs, <i>lynx</i> .	Star, <i>starling</i> .
Dolch, <i>dagger</i> .	Lump, <i>rascal</i> .	Stoff, <i>stuff</i> .
Dom, <i>cathedral</i> .	Molch, <i>salamander</i> .	Strolch, <i>lubber</i> .
Druck, <i>print</i> .	Mord, <i>murder</i> .	Strauß, <i>ostrich</i> .
Erlaß, <i>edict</i> .	Ort, <i>place</i> .	-such, <i>seeking</i> .
Forst, <i>forest</i> .	Park, <i>park</i> .	Takt, <i>tempo</i> .
Gau, <i>district</i> .	Pfad, <i>path</i> .	Tag, <i>day</i> .
Gemahl, <i>consort</i> .	Plan, <i>plan</i> .	Thron, <i>throne</i> .
Grad, <i>degree</i> .	Puls, <i>pulse</i> .	Tod, <i>death</i> .
Hall, <i>sound</i> .	Punkt, <i>point</i> .	Trupp, <i>troop</i> .
Halm, <i>stalk</i> .	Quast, <i>tassel</i> .	Tusch, <i>flourish</i> .
Hauch, <i>breath</i> .	Rost, <i>gridiron</i> .	Verlust, <i>loss</i> .

a. The plu. Baue is rare, its place being taken by Bauten.—Notice *Drucke, prints*, and *Abdrucke, deprints*, but *Ausdrücke, expressions*, and *Eindrücke, impressions*.—The plu. Orte prevails in the collective use; e. g., an allen Orten (cf. the adverb *allerorten*), *in all places*, but zwei Örter, einzelne Örter.—The usual plu. of Park is not Parte, but Parks.—The plurals Morde, Schmucke, Tode are rare, their place being taken by Mordthaten, Schmuckfachen and Todesfälle.—Under -such are included Besuch, visit, Versuch, attempt, and others.—Forst, Gau, Halm, Lump, Strauß, Thron occur also with weak forms, especially in the plu.; but the strong are to be preferred.

3. Monosyllabic neuters of Class 2 are regularly without umlaut, but there are two or three exceptions. Das Chor, *choir of a church* (der Chor = *chorus*), makes die Chöre.—Das Floß, *raft*, usually has die Flöße, but sometimes Flöße, also Flößer.—Das Boot, *boat*, has Boote, rarely Böte.—Die Röhre, as plural of das Rohr, *reed*, no longer occurs.

4. To Class 2 belong a large number of borrowed words (both masculine and neuter), with accent on the ultima; e. g., der Admira'l, *admiral*; der Defa'n, *deacon*; der Kapitä'n, *captain*; der Offizie'r, *officer*; der Plura'l, *plural*; das Tale'nt, *talent*; das Manda't, *mandate*; das Telegra'mm, *telegram*; das Adjekti'v, *adjective*.

a. As a rule such foreign words are without umlaut in the plu., but there are a few well-established exceptions, viz.: *Altäre, altars*; *Bischöfe, bishops*; *Choräle, chorals*; *Kanäle, canals*; *Kapläne, chaplains*; *Kardinäle, cardinals*; *Moräste, marshes*; *Paläste, palaces*. On the other hand, the form without umlaut is still preferred in *Admirale, admirals*; *Generale, generals*; *Korporale, corporals*. *Teno'r, tenor*, has both *Tenore* and *Tenöre*.

b. Foreign words in § with preceding short vowel double the § in inflection; e. g., *Brama'rbaß, boaster*, plu. -affe; *3'ttis, polecat*, plu. -iffe; *O'mnibus, omnibus*, plu. -uffe. But *Topa's, topaz*, with long a, plu. *Topase*.

276. The Third Class. The monosyllabic neuters, all with umlaut in the plural if possible, are as follows (the * calling attention to a remark under a below) :

*Aas, carcass.	*Gewand, garment.	Loch, hole.
Amt, office.	Glas, glass.	*Mal, mark.
Bad, bath.	Glied, limb.	Mahl, meal.
*Band, ribbon.	Grab, grave.	Maul, mouth.
Bild, picture.	Gras, grass.	Nest, nest.
Blatt, leaf.	Gut, estate.	Pfand, pledge.
*Brett, board.	*Haupt, head.	Rad, wheel.
Buch, book.	Haus, house.	Reis, twig.
Dach, roof.	Holz, wood.	Rind, cow, ox.
*Ding, thing.	Horn, horn.	*Schcit, billet.
Dorf, village.	Huhn, fowl.	*Schild, shield.
Ei, egg.	*Joch, yoke.	Schloß, castle.
Fach, specialty.	Kalb, calf.	Schwert, sword.
Faß, cask.	Kind, child.	Stift, peg.
Feld, field.	Kleid, dress.	Thal, valley.
*Gehalt, salary.	Korn, grain.	*Trumm, fragment.
Geld, money.	Kraut, weed.	*Tuch, cloth.
Gemach, room.	Lamm, lamb.	Volk, folk.
*Gemüt, spirit.	*Land, land.	Wammß, jacket.
Geschlecht, race.	*Licht, light.	Weib, woman.
*Gesicht, face.	Lied, song.	*Wort, word.
Gespens, ghost.		

a. Aas; plu. (rare) Äser, also Nase.—Band; plu. Bänder, ribbons, but Bande, bonds; Bände, from der Band, = volumes.—Brett; plu. usually Bretter, but often -brette in compounds.—Ding; regular plu. Dinge, but sometimes Dinger, especially as applied to girls, as in *Faust*, l. 3693, ihr armen, armen Dinger.—Gehalt; der Gehalt, die Gehalte, are better than das Gehalt, die Gehälter.—Gemüt; plu. Gemüter,

rarely Gemüte.—Gesicht; plu. Gesichter, *faces*, but Gesichte, *sights, visions*.—Gewand; plu. Gewänder, rarely Gewande.—Haupt; plu. Häupter, but note the phrase zu Häupten, *at the head*.—Zoch, plu. Zöche, but sometimes Zöcher in a technical sense.—Land; plu. Länder; Lande is poetic and is also met with in compounds, as die Rheinlande.—Licht; plu. Lichter, *lights*, but Lichte, *candles*.—Mal; plu. Mäler, *marks*, but Male, *times*.—Denkmal, *monument*, has -mäler or -male.—Scheit; plu. Scheiter and Scheite.—Schild; usually der Schild, die Schilde, but also das Schild, die Schilder, especially in the sense of *signs*.—Trumm; used only in plu., die Trümmer; and even this has been replaced in part by the weak Trümmern.—Tuch; plu. Tücher, *pieces of cloth, shawls*; also in compounds, as Handtücher, *towels*; but Tuche, *kinds of cloth*.—Wort; plu. Wörter, *disconnected vocables*; but Worte, *words*, in connected discourse.

b. The foreign neuters that have come into Class 3 are Hospita'l or Spita'l, *hospital*, plu. -ale or -äler; Regime'nt, *regiment*, plu. -er for military regiments, but -e in other senses; Kamisö'l, *waistcoat*, plu. -ole or -öler; Kapitäl, *capital of a column*, plu. -äle or -äler.

c. For the uninflected plu. of monosyllabic neuters see § 283, 1.

1. The masculines of Class 3 are :

Bösewicht, <i>villain</i> .	Mann, <i>man</i> .	Strauß, <i>nosegay</i> .
Geist, <i>spirit</i> .	Ort, <i>place</i> .	Vormund, <i>guardian</i> .
Gott, <i>God</i> .	Rand, <i>rim</i> .	Wald, <i>forest</i> .
Irrtum, <i>error</i> .	Reichtum, <i>riches</i> .	Wurm, <i>worm</i> .
Leib, <i>body</i> .	Strand, <i>bush</i> .	

a. These words are interlopers in Class 3, and the most of them have, or have had, secondary plurals in e. Bösewichte is less common than Bösewichter—Geiste is archaic or technical, = *essences*.—Leibe is archaic.—Mann forms Mannen in the sense of *vassals*.—For Ort see § 275, 2, a.—The plu. Rande is rare.—Sträuche is better than Sträucher, and Sträuße than Sträußer.—Wälder and Wärme are archaic.

b. Note the anomalous Wiking, *viking*, plu. Wifinger.

THE WEAK DECLENSION.

277. Feminines. The monosyllabic nouns referred to in § 92 number about sixty, some of the most common being Bahn, *track*; Form, *form*; Frau, *wife*; Pflicht, *duty*; See, *sea*; That, *deed*; Welt, *world*; Zahl, *number*; Zeit, *time*. A complete list need not be given, since all monosyllabic feminines not included under § 275, 1, are weak. The polysyllabic feminines are countless (cf. § 93, 1).

1. In Old German weak feminines took the ending (e)n in the gen. dat. and acc. sing. The inflection is now obsolete except in *auf Erden*, *on earth*, but is common in the classics as a poetic license ; e. g., *im Glanz der Sonnen*, *in the light of the sun* (S.).

278. Masculines. Here are included :

1. Nouns in e and a number of others that have lost an e, thus becoming (as a rule) monosyllabic. These last are :

Bär, <i>bear</i> .	Pagestolz, <i>bachelor</i> .	Dsch(e), <i>ox</i> .
Bursch(e), <i>lad</i> .	Held, <i>hero</i> .	Prinz, <i>prince</i> .
Christ, <i>Christian</i> .	Herr, <i>sir</i> .	Pfan, <i>peacock</i> .
Finf(e), <i>finch</i> .	Hirt, <i>shepherd</i> .	Schenk, <i>cup-bearer</i> .
Fürst, <i>prince</i> .	Lump, <i>vagabond</i> .	Spatz, <i>sparrow</i> .
Ged, <i>fop</i> .	Mensch, <i>man</i> .	Sproß, <i>scion</i> .
Genoß, <i>companion</i> .	Mohr, <i>Moor</i> .	Steinmetz, <i>mason</i> .
Gesell(e), <i>companion</i> .	Narr, <i>fool</i> .	Thor, <i>fool</i> .
Graf, <i>count</i> .		

a. Some of the above, as Bursche (in the plu.), Finf (in the sing.), Ged, Pagestolz, Lump, Pfau, admit of strong inflection. Note also the phrase *Narrs genug*, *fool enough* (W.).

b. The titles Fürst, Graf, Prinz (but not Herr) are regularly uninflected when used without the article before a proper name ; e. g., Fürst Bismarcks Reden, *Prince Bismarck's speeches* ; ein Brief an Graf von Moltke, *a letter to Count Von Moltke* ; mit Prinz Karl, *with Prince Karl* ; but Herrn Schmidts Haus, ein Brief an Herrn Schmidt, etc. Note also the undeclined title in *ich hat er erwählt zum Fürst der Liebe*, *he has chosen me Prince of Love* (S.) ; *willst du der Liebe Fürst dich würdig nennen* (S.).

2. The bulk of foreign words in t, ant, ent, denoting persons ; also words ending in the Greek suffixes arch, graph, ist, frat, log(e), nom, soph, and some others not easily classifiable ; e. g., Poe't, *poet* ; Bandi't, *bandit* ; Protesta'nt, *protestant* ; Refere'nt, *reviewer* ; Mona'rch, *monarch* ; Geogra'ph, *geographer* ; Soziali'st, *socialist* ; Demokra't, *democrat* ; Philolo'g, *philologist* ; Astrono'm, *astronomer* ; Philo'so'ph, *philosopher* ; Satra'p, *satrap* ; Katholi'k, *catholic* ; Rebe'll, *rebel* ; Vetera'n, *veteran*.

a. Foreign words in t and nt that do not denote persons are mostly strong, second class, as Sala't, *salad* ; Grani't, *granite* ; Rhome'nt,

moment; *Horizo'nt*, *horizon*. But a few have come into the weak declension; e. g., *Brilla'nt*, *brilliant*; *Elefa'nt*, *elephant*; *Plaue't*, *planet*; *Kome't*, *comet*.

3. Ethnic names in *ar*, as *Barba'r*, *barbarian*; *Bulga'r*, *Bulgarian*; *Janitscha'r*, *Janizary*; *Magya'r*, *Magyar*; *Tata'r*, *Tartar*; *Ungar*, *Hungarian*. Also *Baier*, *Bavarian*, and *Pommer*, *Pomeranian*.

THE MIXED DECLENSION.

279. Masculines. These may be grouped under three heads, to wit:

1. The following words, which are normally strong in the singular, but weak in the plural:

<i>Bauer</i> , <i>peasant</i> .	<i>Nachbar</i> , <i>neighbor</i> .	<i>Stachel</i> , <i>goad</i> .
<i>Dorn</i> , <i>thorn</i> .	<i>Nerv</i> , <i>nerve</i> .	<i>Strahl</i> , <i>ray</i> .
<i>Gaum</i> , <i>palate</i> .	<i>Psalm</i> , <i>psalm</i> .	<i>Unterthan</i> , <i>subject</i> .
<i>Gebatter</i> , <i>gossip</i> .	<i>See</i> , <i>lake</i> .	<i>Better</i> , <i>cousin</i> .
<i>Konsul</i> , <i>consul</i> .	<i>Sporn</i> , <i>spur</i> .	<i>Vorfahr</i> , <i>ancestor</i> .
<i>Maß</i> , <i>mas</i> .	<i>Staat</i> , <i>state</i> .	<i>Zins</i> , <i>interest</i> .
<i>Muskel</i> , <i>muscle</i> .		

a. The most of these occur also with weak forms in the sing. and strong in the plu. — *Dorn* has plu. *Dornen* = *thorns*, *Dörner* = *drills*; but one meets also with *Dorne* and *Dörne*. — *Gaum* is rare in the sing., its place being taken by *Gaumen*. — *Muskel* and *Nerv* are often fem., whence the weak plurals. — *Sporn* has plu. *Sporen*, less often *Sporne* and *Sporen*. — *Stachel* was once fem., whence the plu. *Stacheln*.

b. Several foreign words are of unsettled inflection; as *Faßa'n*, *pheasant*; gen. -s, plu. -en or -e; *Magne't*, *magnet*; gen. -s or -en, plu. -e or -en; *Tribu'n*, *tribune*; gen. -s or -en, plu. -e(n); *Pede'll*, *beadle*; gen. -s or -en, plu. -e(n).

c. In talk one often hears an n-plural where it does not belong; e. g., *Pantoffeln*, *slippers*; *Stiefeln*, *boots*. So also with neuters, as *Möbeln*, *furniture*, and even *Fensteru*, *windows*.

2. Several nouns in *e(n)* with genitive in *enß*. These are for the most part weak nouns in *e* that developed a secondary nominative in *en*, which gave rise to the genitive in *enß*, the rest of the inflection remaining weak. In some cases the secondary nominative in *en* has become the

usual form. If we start with that, the entire group may be regarded as of Class 1, strong declension. The words, in the form now usual for the nominative, are :

Frieden, <i>peace.</i>	Glaube, <i>faith.</i>	Same, <i>seed.</i>
Funke, <i>spark.</i>	Haufen, <i>heap.</i>	Schaden, <i>injury.</i>
Gedanke, <i>thought.</i>	Name, <i>name.</i>	Wille, <i>will.</i>
Gefallen, <i>favor.</i>		

a. Buchstabe, *letter*, and Schmerz, *pain*, sometimes form a gen. in *ens*, though they have no nom. in *en* (cf. the neuter Herz, § 97, 2, a). Fels, *rock*, originally strong, developed a secondary form, Felsen, under the influence of which Fels became weak ; we have now nom. Fels and Felsen, gen. Felses (rare), Felsen and Felsens, dat. Felsen and Fels, acc. Felsen and Fels, plu. Felsen (Felse archaic).

3. Latin masculines in *or*, plu. *o'ren*, together with a few of Greek origin in *on*, plural *o'nen* ; e. g., Do'ttor, plural Do'tto'ren ; Dä'mon, *demon*, plural Dämo'nen ; Å'on, *æon*, plural Åo'nen.

a. Påstöre, for Påstören, is provincial. Tenore, or Tënöre, *tenors*, is of Italian, not Latin origin.

280. Neuters. The neuters of the mixed declension are :

1. The following words :

Ånge, <i>eye.</i>	Hemd(e), <i>shirt.</i>	Juwel, <i>jewel.</i>
Bett, <i>bed.</i>	Hertz, <i>heart.</i>	Öhr, <i>ear.</i>
Ende, <i>end.</i>	Interesse, <i>interest.</i>	Weh, <i>pain.</i>

a. The older plurals Bette, Hemde, Hemder are now practically obsolete. For the inflection of Herz see § 97, 2, a. — Juwel, sometimes mas., has also plu. Juwel'e. — Weh forms plu. Wehen only in the sense of *birth-pains*.

2. Latin words in *um* (together with a few that have dropped *um*), several in *al* and *il*, and most Greek words in *ma* ; words in *ium*, *al* and *il* have the plural in *ien* if the Latin plural ended in *ia*. Examples with plural in *en* : Individuum, *individual*, Individuen ; Verb(um), *verb*, Verben (but see § 281, 1) ; Insekt, *insect*, Insekten ; Statut, *statute*, Statuten ; Drama, *drama*, Dramen ; Thema, *theme*, Themen. With plural in *ien* : Minera'l, *mineral*, Minera'lien ; Kapita'l, *capital*, Kapita'lien ; Fossil, *fossil*,

ſoffi'lien. Here belong also several plurals without singular ; as *Mobi'lien*, *movables* ; *Natura'lien*, '*specimens*' ; *ſci'lien*, *exact sciences*.

a. Greek words in *ma* that have lost their final vowel in German form the plu. in *me* ; e. g., *Äxi'o'm*, *axiom*, plu. *Äxi'o'me* ; *Proble'm*, *problem*, plu. *Proble'me*. Cf. § 281.

FOREIGN AND ANOMALOUS INFLECTIONS.

281. Latin and Greek Words that have become so far naturalized as to admit of German inflections are provided for in the preceding sections. It remains to consider those which, because of an intractable form, retain more or less the character of foreign words.

1. In the case of Latin and Greek words that have not become naturalized the nom. sing. is now generally used for the entire sing. (but a gen. in *s* is always permissible unless the word ends in a sibilant), the nom. plu. for the entire plu. ; thus *das Verbum*, *the verb*, *des Verbum(s)*, *dem Verbum*, *die Verba*, *der Verba*, etc. The practice of using Latin inflections in German discourse, though once very common, is now on the wane, and is hardly to be approved, though still often met with. For Goethe's *Blätter des Codicis*, *leaves of the codex*, one would now prefer *Blätter des Codex*. So also in allen diesen Casus (not *Casibus*), in all these cases ; die Bildung solcher Composita (not *Compositorum*), the formation of such compounds.

a. A few words in *s* that are thus indeclinable in the sing. form German plurals in *en* ; e. g., *Globus*, *globe*, plu. *Globen* ; *Rhythmus*, *rhythm*, plu. *Rhythmen*. So also words in *ismus*, *ism*, as *Solecismus*, *solecism*, plu. *Solecismen*. The plu. of *Atlas*, *atlas*, is *Atla'nten* ; of *Primas*, *primate*, *Prima'ten* ; of *Klima*, *climate*, *Kli'mata* or *Kli'mate*.

b. Words that admit a German plu. are sometimes given a foreign plu. instead ; e. g., *Adjecti'v*, *adjective*, plu. *Adjective*, or *-a* ; *Factum*, *fact*, plu. *Facten* or *Facta*.

282. The Plural in s. Words borrowed from languages that have a plural in *s* often retain such plural in German ; e. g., *Clowns*, *Plubs*, *Lords*, *Strikes*, *Parts*, *Beefsteaks*, *Chefs*, *Babies*, *Bills*, from the English, and *Chefs*, *Genies*, *Abbés*, *Adieus*, *Arrangements*, *Bicycles*, from the French.

1. A plu. in *s* is also sometimes given to words, both German and foreign, which are not nouns, but are used as such ; e. g., *die Facit's*,

the amounts (Lat. *facit, it makes*); *die Amens, the amens*; *die Wens und die Abers, the ifs and the buts*.

2. Through Low-German influence a plu. in *s* is sometimes given (in familiar language or for humorous effect) to genuine German words instead of the regular form; e. g., *Fräuleins, misses*; *Mädele, girls*; *Jungens, lads*; *Kerle, fellows*.

283. Defective Inflection.

1. The poets, especially Goethe, sometimes drop the case-ending from the first of two nouns connected in the same construction; e. g., *an Tier und Vögelu fehlt es nicht, there is no lack of beasts and birds* (*Faust*, I. 238); *von Sonn- und Welten, of suns and worlds* (*ibid.*, I. 279).

2. Monosyllabic neuters, and also *Mann*, once formed an uninflected plu. identical in form with the nom. sing. Such plurals are common in early modern German, and even later in poetry; e. g., *brei arme Kind, three poor children* (G.); *über vierzehn Jahr, over fourteen years* (G.) There is no elision in such cases.

INFLECTION OF PROPER NAMES.

284. Personal Names. The brief statements in §§ 99–100 need to be supplemented as follows :

1. Down to about the beginning of this century names of persons were more fully inflected than at present, forming a gen. in *ens* as well as *s*, and a dat. and acc. in *(e)n*; e. g., *Goethens, Goethen, Gertrudens, Gertruden*. So, too, the gen. in *s* was used after the article; e. g., *das Ansehn des Homers, the prestige of Homer* (L.); *die Leiden des jungen Werthers, the sufferings of young Werther* (G.). With names in *e* or a sibilant the gen. in *ens* is still admissible, but is becoming quaint, though some authorities still advocate it; for *Helenens, Margens*, say rather *Helenes, Mar'*. (Colloquially, *Fritz seine Bücher* may take the place of *Fritz' or Fritzens Bücher*.) The dat. and acc. in *en* are quite antiquated for surnames, and are becoming so for baptismal names.

a. But when a proper name with preceding adjective and article is followed by the noun on which the gen. depends, the gen. in *s* is still the rule; thus one would say *des jungen Werthers Leiden*.

b. To mark the gen. an apostrophe is needed only after a sibilant; e. g., *Foß' Schriften, Voss writings*; but *Schillers, Ciceros Briefe, Schiller's, Cicero's letters*.

2. More restricted than formerly, again, is the use of Greek and Latin inflections; for *Musäi Schriften write Musäus' Schriften* or *die Schriften des Musäus*. Well-known classical names are apt to take

the article, after which, of course, there is no inflection; e. g., die Gedichte des Horaz, *the poems of Horace*. Biblical names still retain to a greater degree their Latin inflections; e. g., die Bücher Moses, *the books of Moses*; die Briefe Pauli, *the letters of Paul*.

a. The name Jesus Christus forms gen. Jesu Christi, dat. Jesu Christo, acc. Jesum Christum.

3. A plu. of modern surnames is often formed in s; as die Grimms, die Brentanos, *the Grimms, the Brenanos*.

a. In phrases like bei Müllers, at (the) *Müllers'*, or Engels sind ver-
reist, *the Engels have gone away*, we have a gen. sing. (cf. § 246, 5, d) which has come to be felt as a plu.

b. Christian names form a plu., when one is needed, in e, en or s; as die Heinrichs, die Maxen, die Ottos, die Berthas.

c. Latin names in o, gen. onis, make a plu. in ne or nen; as die Scipionen, die Catone.

d. Note finally die Judasse, *the Judases*. But classical names should not be treated thus; say die Plautus, not die Plautusse.

285. Names in Connection with Titles. The rule of apposition in § 270 does not fully cover the inflection of names used with titles. Thus:

1. When a name is preceded by a title (other than Herr) that is without the article, only the name is inflected; e. g., Kaiser Wilhelms Regierung, or die Regierung Kaiser Wilhelms, *the reign of Emperor William*; mit König Friedrichs Macht; Fürst Bismarcks Reden; das Lied von Prinz Eugen; Doktor Schmidts Patienten; but Herrn Schmidts Haus; ein Brief an Herrn Schmidt.

a. If a preceding title has the article, then only the title is inflected, and even that may drop an s, not an en; e. g., die Regierung des Kaisers Wilhelm; die Reden des Fürsten Bismarck; die Wohnung des Doktor(s) Wagner.

b. For the conduct of Fräulein Müller one may say das Betragen des Fräuleins Müller, or, treating the title as fem., der Fräulein Müller. The last might be plu., an ambiguity which can be avoided by saying von Fräulein M. Des Fräulein M. is not to be approved, though often heard. Quite proper is Ihre Fräulein Tochter, nom. and acc., or Ihrer Fräulein Tochter, gen. and dat.

c. The practice of adding in to a title to denote the wife of a man bearing the title is obsolescent; for Mrs. Dr. say Frau Doktor; Frau

Doktorin means that the lady herself is a doctor. Still more obsolete is the addition of *in* to surnames to denote female members of the family, as *Luise Müllerin* for *Luise Müller* (S.); *die Karstin*, *Frau Karsch*.

2. A descriptive appositive must be declined whether the name is itself declined or not; e. g., *die Wohnung des Doktor Wagner, des berühmten Naturforschers, of Dr. Wagner, the famous naturalist*.

3. When two or more names occur together only the last is subject to inflection; e. g., *Ernst Moritz Arndts Gedichte, E. M. Arndts poems*.

a. With names containing *von* the gen. inflection should go with the preceding name if the phrase denotes place or descent, but with the second if it denotes only nobility; e. g., *die Ansprüche Rudolfs von Habsburg, the claims of Rudolf of Hapsburg*; *die Gedichte Heinrich von Kleists, the poems of H. von Kleist*.

SYNTAX OF THE ADJECTIVE.

286. The Uninflected Attributive. The following statements are supplementary to § 101 :

1. In poetry an adjective is often uninflected before a neuter noun (less often before a masculine or feminine) in the nominative and accusative singular; e. g., *ein redlich Wort, an honest word* (S.); *ein furchtbar, wütend Schrecknis, a fearful, raging terror* (S.); *lieb Knabe, dear boy* (S.); *hat Sie gut Bier und Wein* (U.)? i. e., *gutes Bier und guten Wein*.

a. So, too, in colloquial phrases and ballad nicknames; e. g., *bar Geld, cash*; *auf gut Glück, for good luck*; *Schön Süßchen, Fair Susie*.

2. An attributive adjective which follows its noun is uninflected. The usage occurs chiefly in poetry; e. g., *Röslein rot, little red rose*; *bei einem Wirt wundermild, with a wondrously generous host* (U.); *der Räuber groß und wild, the robber, tall and fierce*; *ein Schloss so hoch und hehr, a castle so high and grand*; *mein Vater selig, my late father*.

3. An uninflected adjective is sometimes used to characterize a measure, weight, coinage, or the like; e. g., *ein Glas bayerisch, a glass of Bavarian (beer)*; *fünf Thaler bar, five dollars cash*.

4. Where two or more adjectives occur together in verse, inflection is sometimes confined to the last; e. g., *mit grausam, teuflischer Lust, with cruel, fiendish delight* (S.);

ein stolz, verbrießlich, schwerer Narr, *a proud, peevish, stolid fool* (S.). Here grausam, stolz and verbrießlich have the form but not the force of adverbs. Such cases must be distinguished from those in which a true adverb occurs, as in ein herrlich schön geformter Mann, *a man of gloriously beautiful form* (G.).

a. Official designations like Kaiserlich Deutsche Post, *Imperial German Mail*, and Königlich Sächsische Regierung, *Royal Saxon Government*, fall under the head of compound adjectives (§ 109, 5).

5. Lauter, and the archaic eitel, are uninflected in the sense of *sheer, nothing but*; e. g., lauter Unsinn, *sheer nonsense*; mit lauter Wasser, *with nothing but water*; but mit lauterem Wasser, *with pure water*. So, too, genug, *enough*, which follows its noun; also, adjectives in crisi and several pronominals. For ganz and halb see § 109, 3.

287. Stems in Unaccented el, en, er show some difference of usage in the matter of contraction. Except before em and en, they usually drop the e of the stem unless both e's be retained; e. g., ein dunkler Tag; ein offenes Fenster; and(e)re Leute; nichts Besseres or Beßres. Before em and en stems in el and en prefer to drop the e of the stem, those in er that of the ending; thus bei offenem Fenster; mit edlem Stolz (but mit edelm Stolz is not uncommon); die ander(e)n (much better than die andren); zu was Besserm (better than Beßrem).

288. Variable Inflections. Certain cases of variation between strong and weak inflection require particular attention.

1. The use of the weak genitive before a noun in (e)s, without preceding article (§ 107, 5), as in voll frohen Lebens, *full of joyous life* (G.), is of quite modern origin (17th century). It is still condemned by some grammarians, but is common in the classics and prevails in the usage of to-day, though some affect the strong form. It is due to a feeling that two strong forms in s should not come together. Schiller has, in *Wallenstein*, both stehendes Fußes

and stehenden Fußes ; in *Tell*, both wildes Laufß and muntern Laufß. Goethe's usage is similarly inconsistent. Argument may be said to favor the strong form, usage the weak.

a. Pronominal adjectives prefer the strong form ; e. g., keineswegs, meines Wissens, jedes Umstands, anderes Sinnes. In allenfalls and jedenfalls we have, according to Grimm, not a weak gen., but an acc. with adverbial s.

2. In the nom. of address the adjective is properly strong, as in werter Herr, *worthy sir* ; geehrte Herren, *honored sirs*. But lieben Freunde is not uncommon for liebe Freunde.

3. The use of a weak adjective after all forms of der, dieß, jen-, jed-, and after uninflected forms of ein, kein and the possessives, is now a settled practice ; but exceptions are met with, especially after die, diese and jene in the nom. and acc. plu.

a. After the forms (nom.-acc. pl.) alle, andere, beide, einige, etliche, manche, mehrere, solche, viele, wenige, and also after gewisse, sämtliche and verschiedene, usage permits either strong or weak inflection, but seems to favor weak after alle, beide, manche, solche, and strong after the others. Except in the nom.-acc. pl. these words quite regularly weaken a following adjective.

b. After zweier and dreier strong inflection is the rule, but weak occurs.

4. With personal pronouns the rule is : weak inflection except after the nominative and accusative singular ; but strong forms occur after mir, dir, ihm, and also after uns and euch when accusative.

a. Strong inflection in these cases marks a less intimate association of noun and adjective, the latter, with its noun, being felt as an appositive even though not set off by a comma. Thus the usual dat. of du armer Kind is dir armen Kinde, but this easily becomes dir, armen Kinde. Cf. further : ihr schönen Damen, *ye fair ladies*, but ihr, schöne Damen, *you, fair ladies* ; euch, tapfre Helden, soll ein Weib bezwingen ? *shall a woman conquer you, brave heroes ?*

5. In general two successive adjectives are either both strong or both weak, according to what precedes ; e. g., guter alter (not alte) Wein ; ein schönes neues (not neue) Haus. But when the first adjective is a strong genitive or dative,

the second becomes weak if it is not co-ordinate in meaning with the first, but is a standing epithet of the noun ; e. g., mit frischem, klarem Wasser, *with fresh, clear water*, but mit frischem kölnischen Wasser, *with fresh cologne* ; ein Muster hoher sittlichen Güte, *a model of high moral excellence*, i. e. a moral excellence which is high, not an excellence which is high and moral ; von großem politischen Interesse, *of great political interest*. In such cases co-ordinate adjectives are usually separated by a comma.

a. In like manner the adjectives of reference which dispense with the article (§ 224, 3, b) may weaken a following adjective ; e. g., folgender bedeutende Umstand, *the following important circumstance*.

289. The Predicate Adjective. (Supplementary to § 110.)

1. The uninflected appositional predicate must be distinguished from the inflected attributive in agreement with a noun understood ; e. g., an Hoffnung reich, im Glauben fest, dacht' ich—, *rich in hope, firm in faith, I thought—* (G.) ; der Kaiser, kühn durch die errungenen Siege, *the emperor, emboldened by the victories won* (S.) ; but alle Menschen, schlechte wie auch gute, *all men, bad as well as good* ; weiterer Verkehr, friedlicher und kriegerischer, *further intercourse, peaceful and warlike*.

a. While the appositional predicate is not rare, especially in participial constructions, it is much less common in German than in English. The latter is compelled to place the adjective after its noun whenever the adjective is qualified by a phrase ; but in most such cases German prefers a prepositive attributive, the phrase being thrown in between the adjective and a preceding article. That is to say, such phrases as *a young woman proud of her beauty, a boy prone to idleness, in a manner very painful to me*, become in German, usually, eine junge, auf ihre Schönheit stolze Dame ; ein zur Faulheit geneigter Knabe ; in einer für mich höchst schmerzlichen Weise.

2. Of the adjectives which are used only in the predicate and hence never inflected (§ 109, 4), the most important are as follows :

abhold, <i>unfriendly</i> .	gar, <i>done</i> .	not, <i>necessary</i> .
abwendig, <i>alienated</i> .	getrost, <i>confident</i> .	nütze, <i>useful</i> .
ansichtig, <i>in sight</i> .	gewahr, <i>aware</i> .	quer, <i>oblique</i> .
angst, <i>anxious</i> .	gewärtig, <i>expectant</i> .	quitt, <i>quits</i> .
ausfindig, <i>apparent</i> .	gram, <i>offended</i> .	schuld, <i>to blame</i> .
bereit, <i>ready</i> .	habhaft, <i>in possession</i> .	teilhaft, <i>participant</i> .
brach, <i>fallow</i> .	handgemein, <i>hand to hand</i> .	nupfaß, <i>unsuited</i> .
eingedenk, <i>mindful</i> .	kund, <i>known</i> .	verlustig, <i>lacking</i> .
feind, <i>hostile</i> .	leid, <i>grievous</i> .	

a. Several of the above occur chiefly in set phrases; as *abwendig machen*, *alienate*; *ausfindig machen*, *find*; *gewahr werden*, *notice*; *leid thun*, *make sorry*; *verlustig gehen*, *lose*.

b. In old German predicate adjectives were declined—a state of affairs from which has survived *voller*, as stereotyped case-form of *voll*; e. g., *da der Himmel voller Sterne glüht*, *since the sky shines full of stars* (G.); *das Faß ist voller Wein*, *the cask is full of wine*. Of like origin are *halber*, *half*, and *selber*, *self*.

290. The Substantive Adjective. An uninflected adjective is sometimes used substantively in set phrases; e. g., *zufrieden jauchzet groß und klein*, *great and small shout contentedly* (G.); *ein Buch für alt und jung*, *a book for old and young*; *gleich und gleich gesellt sich gern*, *birds of a feather flock together*. Analogous is the elliptical use of the adjective in such a phrase as *von jung auf*, *from youth up*.

1. The names of languages are substantive adjectives which are indeclinable, except immediately after *das*; e. g., *ich lerne Deutsch*, *I am learning German*; *wie heißt es auf Englisch?* *in mein geliebtes Deutsch*, *into my beloved German* (G.); *die Merkmale eines guten Französisch*, *the marks of a good French*. But *er spricht das Deutsche gut*; *im Deutschen lügt man*, *wenn man höflich ist* (G.). Yet one says *das heutige Deutsch* (not *Deutsche*).

2. Several English nouns are represented in German by substantive adjectives that follow the rules of adjective declension; e. g., *ein Beamter*, *an official*, *der Beamte*, *eines Beamten*, *die Beamten*; *mein Verwandter*, *my kinsman*, *der Verwandte*, *die Verwandten*; *das Äußere*, *the exterior*, but *sein Äußeres*, *his or its exterior*. Such words are subject to the same uncertainty of inflection as other adjectives after

alle, andere, etc. (§ 288, 3, a); e. g., alle Gelehrte(n); viele Beamte(n).

a. Such a substantive adjective, if preceded by a strong adjective, may become weak, especially in the neut. and the gen. pl.; e. g., ein schönes Äußere (instead of Äußeres), *a beautiful exterior*; ein Kreis lieber Verwandten. So, too, one meets with ein großer Gelehrte, *a great scholar*, and sein reicher Verwandte, *his rich relative*; but Gelehrter and Verwandter are better. In the nom.-acc. pl. without article Verwandte, Beamte, are better than Verwandten, Beamten. But in the dat. sing. without article usage prefers the weak form; e. g., man könnte ihm als Beamten (rather than Beamtem) wenig vorwerfen, *one could reproach him with little as official* (Andresen). Notice further ein dummer Junge (not Jünger), *a stupid youth*.

291. Adjectives and Prepositions. As in English the use of prepositions after adjectives is highly idiomatic. The following examples will illustrate (see further under prepositions):

achtſam auf (acc.), *heedful OF*.
arm an (dat.), *poor IN*.
aufmerksam auf (acc.), *attentive TO*.
bange vor (dat.), *afraid OF*.
begierig nach, *eager FOR*.
beſchämt über (acc.), *ashamed OF*.
beſorgt um, *anxious ABOUT*.
blaß vor (dat.), *pale WITH*.
blind auf or an (dat.), *blind IN*.
böſe auf (acc.), *angry AT*.

eiferſüchtig auf (acc.), *jealous OF*.
empſänglich für, *susceptible TO*.
empfindlich gegen, *sensitive TO*.
fähig zu (or gen.), *capable OF*.
krank am Herzen, *sick AT heart*.
neidiſch auf (acc.), *envious OF*.
reich an (dat.), *rich IN*.
ſicher vor (dat.), *safe FROM*.
ſtolz auf (acc.), *proud OF*.
verliebt in (acc.), *enamored OF*.

292. Comparison with er and eſt is not confined, as in English, to short words; e. g., der allerchriſtlichſte König, *the most Christian king*; das allererbärmlichſt-langweiligſte Ding von der Welt.

1. A participle should not be compared unless it is in use, or admits of use, as an adjective in the positive degree; e. g., reizender, *more charming*; am bedeutendſten, *most important*; die gewagteſte Annahme, *the boldest assumption*. But exceptions are very frequent in the classics; e. g., etwas Unterrichtsrenderes, *something more instructive* (H.); an

dem in die Augen fallendsten Orte, *in the most obvious place* (L.) ;
auf der blühendsten Wiese, *on the most flowery meadow* (U.)

2. Adjectives in *isch* either retain the *e* of the superlative ending *est*, or else drop it and drop also the *j* ; e. g., *der nützlichste* or *der nützlichte*.

293. Umlaut in the Comparative and Superlative is to be regarded as the rule if the stem-vowel is *a*, *o* or *u* (not when it is *au*). But there are the following exceptions, those marked with an * occurring both with and without umlaut :

*bang, <i>afraid</i> .	*fromm, <i>pious</i> .	morſch, <i>rotten</i> .	ſchmal, <i>narrow</i> .
barſch, <i>rude</i> .	*geſund, <i>well</i> .	nackt, <i>naked</i> .	ſchroff, <i>steep</i> .
blau, <i>bright</i> .	*glatt, <i>smooth</i> .	*naß, <i>wet</i> .	ſtarr, <i>fixed</i> .
*blaß, <i>pale</i> .	*grob, <i>rude</i> .	platt, <i>low</i> .	ſtolz, <i>proud</i> .
bloß, <i>bare</i> .	hohl, <i>hollow</i> .	plump, <i>clumsy</i> .	ſtraff, <i>tight</i> .
brav, <i>brave</i> .	höf, <i>kindly</i> .	raſch, <i>swift</i> .	ſtumm, <i>mute</i> .
bunt, <i>motley</i> .	lahl, <i>bald</i> .	roh, <i>rough</i> .	ſtumpf, <i>blunt</i> .
*dumm, <i>dull</i> .	*ſarg, <i>stingy</i> .	*rot, <i>red</i> .	toll, <i>mad</i> .
dumpe, <i>low</i> .	*klar, <i>clear</i> .	rund, <i>round</i> .	voll, <i>full</i> .
faß, <i>dun</i> .	knapp, <i>tight</i> .	ſacht, <i>gentle</i> .	wahr, <i>true</i> .
faß, <i>pale</i> .	lahm, <i>lame</i> .	ſanft, <i>gentle</i> .	wund, <i>sore</i> .
faſch, <i>false</i> .	laß, <i>lazy</i> .	ſatt, <i>sated</i> .	*zahm, <i>tame</i> .
faß, <i>flat</i> .	loß, <i>loose</i> .	ſchlaff, <i>loose</i> .	*zart, <i>tender</i> .
fröh, <i>glad</i> .	matt, <i>faint</i> .	ſchlan, <i>slender</i> .	

a. Bänger, bläßer, glätter, nätter are better than banger, blaffer, etc. In the other doubtful cases the form without umlaut is to be preferred.

294. Absolute and Relative Comparison. In relative comparison one object is compared with another or with others, as in *er iſt älter als ich* ; *die Roſe iſt die ſchönſte aller Blumen*. Absolute comparison expresses simply an eminent degree ; e. g., *eine ältere Dame*, *an elderly lady* ; *die neueren Sprachen*, *the modern languages* ; *ein höchſt lehrreiches Buch*, *a most instructive book*.

1. The relative superlative is usually preceded by *der* and may be qualified by a prefixed *aller*, by some other partitive genitive, or by a phrase with *von* ; e. g., *der allertüchſte Held*, *the boldest of all heroes* ; *der Güter höchſtes*, *the*

highest of blessings; dem ärmlichsten von allen Erdenköhnen, *the poorest of all the sons of earth* (G.).

a. Except allerliebste a relative superlative without der may not stand in the predicate: one may say das Bild ist allerliebste, *is most lovely*, but not ist schönste, nor allerhöchste.

2. The absolute superlative is generally denoted by an adverb, as höchst, äußerst, sehr, recht, überaus, durch und durch; or by composition, as wunderschön, *wonderfully fine*; blutwenig, *mighty little*; pudelnass, *wet as a drowned rat*.

a. Occasionally the inflected superlative is used absolutely; e. g., weil es die wenigsten können, *since very few can do it* (G.); Leidenschaften, die sich in seinem schönsten Leibe darstellten, *passions which showed themselves in his most beautiful body* (Arndt). But in the last example wunderbar schönste would be more idiomatic.

3. After ein an inflected superlative is not in general to be approved, since a *highest* is necessarily THE *highest*. Still one meets with ein höchstes Wesen, *a supreme Being*; cf. also es giebt ein Äußerstes in allen Dingen, *there is an extreme in all things*. Goethe is fond of this construction.

4. For the *greatest possible* one may say der größtmögliche or der möglichste große. The former is more logical, the latter probably more usual. An awkward double superlative, der größtmöglichste, also occurs.

5. The phrase with am (§ 112) forms a relative superlative capable of use only in the predicate. Its ordinary and proper function is to compare an object not with other objects, but with itself under other conditions; e. g., Schiller war am größten als Dramatiker, *S. was greatest as dramatist*. Here am größten = *at the greatest*; cf. English *at his best*. Cf., further, es wäre mir am liebsten, *it would be most agreeable to me*, i. e. *I should prefer*, but es wäre mir äußerst lieb, *it would be extremely agreeable to me*.

a. But modern German often uses the phrase with am in comparing an object with other objects.

295. Comparison with mehr and am meisten is less common than with *more* and *most* in English (§ 292). The form with mehr is to be preferred whenever the comparison is

between different qualities rather than between different degrees of the same quality; e. g., *er ist mehr gelehrt als Flug*, *he is more learned than wise*.

a. But even in this case good writers sometimes use the comparative in *er*; thus Goethe has *ernster als lieblich*, *more serious than winsome*.

1. *Mehr* and *am meisten* are also used in comparing the indeclinables in § 289, 2; e. g., *sie war mehr schuld als ich*, *she was more to blame than I (G.)*; *was mir am meisten leid thut*, *what grieves me most*.

2. Aside from the above cases, comparison with *mehr* and *am meisten* may occur where it is not strictly required, especially with participial adjectives; e. g., *niemand ist mehr geplagt*, *more plagued (G.)*; *der am meisten gebildete*, *the most cultivated (G.)*; *ein mehr besonnenes Gemüth*, *a more circumspect disposition (Platen)*.

3. Note that the simple *meist* as modifier does not form a superlative, but = *meistens*, *for the most part*; e. g., *sie ist meist liebenswürdig*, does not mean *she is most amiable*, but *she is amiable as a general thing*.

296. Defective and Irregular Comparison. (Supplementary to § 114).

1. The following adjectives, denoting position, have no positive except in the form of the preposition or adverb from which they are derived; *äußer*, *outer*; *hinter*, *hinder*; *inner*, *inner*; *nieder*, *lower*; *ober*, *upper*; *unter*, *lower*; *vorder*, *further forward*. The superlative is formed in each case by adding *st* to the comparative; *der äußerste*, *der hinterste*, etc.

2. *Mittler*, *middle* (superlative *mittelft*), has positive meaning, the real positive *mittel* having gone out of use except in compounds: thus *die Mittelstufe* or *die mittlere Stufe*, *the middle stage*.

3. The stem of *erst*, *first*, appears in *ehc*, *before*, and *ehcr*, *ere*; that of *letzt*, *last*, in the obsolete *laß*, *late*. *Erstest* and *lettest* occur, but are needless monstrosities.

4. For Goethe's *meiner* = *mehr mein*, see § 308, 2.

USE OF THE NUMERALS.

297. Notes upon the Cardinals. The form *eins* is used in counting (where no noun is thought of), except when *und* follows; e. g., *eins, zwei, drei; einmal eins ist eins; hundert und eins*; but *ein und zwanzig*. So too in giving the time, e. g., *halb eins, half past 12*. But in all these cases *ein* is also correct, and is preferred in parts of Germany.

a. *A thousand and one nights* (the noun being fem.) = *tausend und eine Nacht*; but *a hundred and one reasons, or years* (the noun being mas. or neu.), = *hundert und ein Gründe, Jahre*.

1. The declined forms *zweier, dreier, zweien, dreien* are apt to be used when the case would not otherwise be obvious; e. g., *durch zweier Zeugen Mund, by the mouth of two witnesses* (G.); *was zweien zu breit ist dreien zu enge, too broad for two, too narrow for three*.

a. Down to about the close of the 18th century the form *zween, twain*, was used for the mas. and neu., and *zwo* for the fem.; thus Voss wrote *zwo Nächte zugleich und zween der Tag*. These forms, as also the ordinal *zwot- = zwit-*, are now obsolete or dialectic.

2. The numbers from *drei* to *neunzehn* are generally unvaried, but may form a nominative or accusative in *e* (less often a dative in *en*) in colloquial language, when no noun follows; e. g., *es waren unser fünfe, five of us*. Note also the phrases *auf allen viere, on all fours*; *mit viere, with coach and four*; *vor viere, before 4 o'clock* (G.).

3. *Fünfzehn, fünfzig* are better than *funfzehn, funfzig*. *Fufzehn, fünfzig* are colloquial. The short forms *sechzehn, sechzig, siebzehn, siebzig*, are more common than *sechszehn, sechszig, siebenzehn, siebenzig*.

4. *Hundert* and *tausend* can be used as substantives; e. g., *viele Hunderte, many hundreds*; *zu Tausenden, by thousands*. *Million* is regularly so used; hence *zwei Millionen*, not *zwei Million*.

298. Expressions of Time. In giving a date the year is designated by a cardinal number, with or without preceding *im Jahre*; e. g., *Schiller ist 1805 gestorben* (or *im Jahre 1805*, but *in 1805* is not good), *Schiller died in 1805*.

1. The day of the month is designated by an inflected ordinal, with preceding article, followed by the name of the month without preposition ; thus am 4. (or 4ten, both being read vierten) Juli, 1776, *on July 4, 1776*. In dating a letter the accusative without preposition (den 4. Juli, 1776) is usual.

2. For the time of day the following are the usual forms of expression : um sechs (Uhr), *at six (o'clock)* ; es ist 6 vorbei, or nach 6, *it is past 6* ; ein Viertel (auf) 7, *a quarter past 6* ; halb 7, *half past 6* ; drei viertel (auf) 7, *a quarter to 7*.

3. *It happened in the fifties* = es geschah in den fünfziger Jahren, or in den Fünfzigern. The same for *a man in the fifties*.

299. Numeral Derivatives. Besides those mentioned in § 118 are to be noted :

1. Iteratives in mal, as dreimal, *thrice* ; multiplicatives in fach, as dreifach, *threefold* ; variatives in erlei, denoting number of kinds, as dreierlei, *of three kinds* ; ordinal adverbs in ens, as drittens, *thirdly*.

2. The obsolete or archaic compounds of selbst ; e. g., ich fuhr selbstbitt(er), *I traveled with two others* (myself the third) ; selbstviert, *with three others*, etc. Selbander, *with one other*, takes the place of selbstweit, ander having once been commonly used in the sense of *second* (*secundus*) ; cf. am andern Tage, *on the following day*.

SYNTAX OF THE PRONOUN.

THE PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

300. The Genitive of the personal pronouns occurs mostly with verbs, adjectives and numerals ; e. g., schone meiner, *spare me* (Heine) ; ihr Instrumente spottet mein, *mock me* (G.) ; dein denk' ich alle Zeit, *I think of thee* (song) ; seiner uneingedenk, *unmindful of him*. After nouns it is rare ; e. g., durch die Vergessenheit deiner, *forgetfulness of you* (H.) ; aus Verachtung euer, *from contempt of you* (S.).

1. The short forms *mein*, *dein*, *sein*, are older than *meiner*, *deiner*, *seiner*, and are probably possessives in their origin. They occur chiefly in poetry. In the genitive plural the original and proper forms are *unser* and *euer*, but *unser* and *euer* occur in the classics; e. g., *und eurer wahrlich hätt' ich nicht gefehlt*, *I should not have missed you* (S.); *ja dann bedarf es unserer nicht mehr* (S.).

2. The old gen. *es* still survives in certain locutions, but is no longer felt as a gen.; e. g., *ich bin es müde*, *bin es zufrieden*, *I am tired of it*, *satisfied with it*, where it is felt as an acc.; *es nimmt mich Wunder*, *I wonder*, where it is felt as a nom. (§ 265, 1, d).

301. The Pronouns of Address. The literary use of the pronouns of address is a somewhat complicated subject, the bare essentials of which are as follows:

a. Originally *du* was the only pronoun used in addressing one person. In the 9th century the plu. *ihr* began to be employed in certain social relations for politeness' sake, *du* being retained for all cases where formal politeness would be either unnecessary or out of place, e. g., in addressing intimates, inferiors, the lower animals, inanimate objects, the heart, the soul, one's self in soliloquy; also in prayers and apostrophes to supernatural beings, absent or imaginary persons, abstract qualities, etc. This has always been, and still largely continues to be, the usage of the higher poetry.

1. In the classics, then, *ihr*, as applied to one person, is polite or deferential, while *du* is simply natural. *Du* may imply familiarity or contempt, but it may also comport with the highest regard—a regard that feels no need of artificial speech.

a. Thus in Goethe's *Iphigenie* and *Tasso* the characters use only *du*. Sometimes fine shades of meaning turn upon the use of the pronoun: thus in *Tell*, l. 1691, the change from *ihr* to *du* marks the clearing up of a lover's misunderstanding. In *Faust*, l. 300, the transition from *du* to *ihr* marks a descent from the tone of reverence to that of everyday polite intercourse. In *Nathan* the hero uses the polite *ihr* to the obscure Templar, but stands on his dignity in returning the Sultan's *du* with *du*.

2. Toward the end of the 16th century began the practice of using *Herr*, *Frau* and *Fräulein* as a polite circum-

location for *ihr*. This led presently to the use of *er*, *he*, and *sie*, *she*, as pronouns of address.

a. Both usages survive in the classics; e. g., *was steht dem Herrn zu Diensten?* *how can I serve the gentleman* (i. e. *you*, *Faust*, l. 1322)? *komme der Herr nur wieder mit zurück*, *just come back again with me* (*Nathan*, I, 3, where the Friar, who usually says *ihr* to the Templar, several times substitutes the more ceremonious *der Herr*); *such' Er den reiblichen Gewinn*, *seek you* (i. e. *let him, the 'gentleman,' seek*) *honest gain* (*Faust*, l. 548); *ach seh' Sie nur*, *oh, just see* (*ibid.*, l. 2881)!

b. *Er* was at first the acme of politeness; it survived longest as a form of address to a social or official inferior, as from ruler to subject, master to servant, teacher to pupil. In the classics the sudden transition from *du* to *Er* may denote vexation, as in *Faust*, l. 548 and l. 2304; that from *Er* to *du* as in *Faust*, l. 2881, an increase of cordiality, a putting aside of ceremony.

3. The next stage was the employment of *Sie*, *they*, in the sense of *you*.

a. This grew out of the use of a verb in the 3. plu. with titles; e. g., *Eure Majestät sind*, *your majesty are*, instead of *is*; *Herr Doktor wurden catechisiert*, *the doctor were catechized* (*Faust*, l. 3523). In such a locution as the last, if a pronoun were to take the place of *Doktor*, it could only be *sie*, *they*. This awkward form of address, which poetry for the most part repudiates, became established about the middle of the 18th century.

4. At present, then, in the language of common life, one uses *Sie* in addressing strangers (one or more), acquaintances, or any but very intimate friends. Social differences count for nothing, except that for princes and high dignitaries the old forms *Euer* (*Eure*) *Gnaden*, *Exzellenz*, etc., are still in use. *Du* is said to a member of one's family, an intimate friend, a very young child, an animal or a thing. *Ihr* is appropriate only as plural; i. e., in addressing several persons each one of whom would be *du*. In advertisements and notices to the public at large good usage avoids a pronoun of direct address.

5. As to the writing of the pronouns of address usage is still somewhat unsettled. *Sie* and *Ihr*, when they mean *you* and *your*, are always given a capital. Also *Er*, *Sie* = *she*, and their possessives, are best written with a capital when used in address. As to *du*, *dein*,

ihr, *ener*, there is no uniformity ; but the rules recommend that they be given a capital in letters, where the word will fall under the eye of the person addressed.

302. Omission of Personal Pronouns. As a rule a pronominal subject is expressed, except in the imperative, but *ich*, *du*, *er*, *sie*, *es*, are often omitted in colloquial language ; e. g., (*ich*) danke Ihnen, *thank you* ; (*ich*) bitte, '*please*' ; (*es*) schadet nichts, *it does no harm* ; (*ich*) heiße Magister (*Faust*, l. 360) ; (*du*) erkennest dann (*ibid.*, l. 422) ; (*er*) geht da strada (*ibid.*, l. 2867).

a. For the omission of *es* with impersonal verbs see § 204, 2.

1. Far less common is the omission of *wir*, *ihr*, *sie* (pl.), but cases occur.

2. In the imperative *du* and *ihr* are omitted unless emphatic, as in *führe du mein Heer*, *do thou lead my army* (S.). The other pronouns *er*, *sie*, *wir*, *Sie*, are always expressed.

3. The omission of *ich* in letter-writing is characteristic of the commercial style ; e. g., *Ihr Geehrtes vom gestrigen Datum habe erhalten*, (*I*) *am in receipt of your favor of yesterday*.

303. Special Uses of *es*. Besides serving as pronoun of reference to a neuter noun, *es* has a variety of special uses, as follows :

1. As indefinite subject of impersonal verbs ; e. g., *es regnet* ; *es thut mir leid*. The poets often use such an impersonal *es* to convey an idea of something mysterious, vast, or gruesome ; e. g., *bahnlos liegt es hinter mir*, *a trackless waste lies behind me* (S.) ; *regt sich's nicht quillend schon?* *is there not already a quickening stir* (G.) ?

a. The *es* in *es giebt*, *there is*, denotes in a general way the situation, or state of affairs, which 'gives', i. e. affords, or produces, what is denoted by the object (cf. § 340). Quite similar is the *es* in *es hat Gefahr*, *there is danger* ; *es steht Siebe*, *there is a fight on*.

2. As subject of *ist* or *find* (without reference to the gender or number of the predicate noun) in expressions

of identity ; e. g., *es ist mein Bruder ; es ist meine Schwester ; es sind Freunde von mir, they are friends of mine.*

a. But for *it is I, it was you*, etc. (where the predicate is itself a pronoun), German reverses the order, saying *ich bin es, du warst (Sie waren) es*, etc.

3. As expletive, or formal subject, with all sorts of verbs, to anticipate a real subject which, for any reason, is to come after the verb. This use of *es* is only in part parallel to that of English *there* ; e. g., *es war einmal ein König, there was once a king ; es lebe die Freiheit ! long live freedom ! es irrt der Mensch, man errs.*

a. The office of the expletive in such cases is simply to justify the inversion. In old German, however, and even later in poetry, the inversion may occur without *es* ; e. g., *sah ein Knab' ein Röslein stehn, a boy saw a little rose growing (G.).*

4. As indefinite object with certain verbs, taking the place of English *it, things, matters* ; e. g., *es ist ohne Beispiel, wie sie's treiben, how they carry things on (S.) ; wie wir's dann so herrlich weit gebracht, how we have brought matters so gloriously far (G.).*

a. Sometimes *es* is used loosely for an object or subject inferrible from, but not distinctly contained in, the context. Cf., e. g., *Faust*, II. 285, 534.

5. To avoid repetition of a noun, adjective, pronoun, or clause ; e. g., *er ist glücklich (ist Gelehrter, ist einer der Großen), ich bin es nicht, he is happy (is a scholar, is one of the leaders), I am not ; wie viel Uhr ist es ? ich weiß es nicht, what time is it ? I do not know.*

6. To refer to a number of persons in a general way ; e. g., *was sich sonst an meinem Lied erfreuet, wenn es noch lebt, they who (was) once delighted in my song, if they still live (Faust, I. 24).*

304. The Reflexive. In a simple independent sentence the reflexive of the third person is always *sich* ; e. g., *sie hatte kein Geld bei sich, she had no money with her ; der Krieg bringt Elend mit sich, war brings misery with it ; sie haben eine schöne Zukunft vor sich, they have a fine future before them.*

a. But in old German, just as in the English of the above examples, the personal pronoun was used reflexively in the dat. The usage is common down to the 18th century; e. g., *die Heiden sind ihnen selbst ein Gesetz*, *the heathen are a law unto themselves* (Lu.).

b. *Sich* not referring to the subject is rare, but one may say *die Freundschaft verbindet die Menschen unter sich*, *binds men among themselves*, i. e. *together*.

1. In a subordinate clause *sich* refers to the subject of the clause, the subject of the principal verb being referred to by a personal pronoun; e. g., *er belobte die Soldaten, die sich gehorsam gegen ihn bewiesen hatten*, *he praised the soldiers who had shown themselves obedient to him* (Blatz).

a. So, too, when the subordinate clause is represented by an infinitive or an adjective: e. g., *sie bat ihn sich zu entschuldigen und sie zu begleiten*, *to excuse himself and accompany her*; *er borgte das ihm nötige Geld*, *he borrowed the money needful to him*.

2. *Sich* as reciprocal may be ambiguous; *sie gefallen sich*, may mean *they please themselves* or *they please each other*. The uncertainty can be removed by the use of the true reciprocal *einander*, the adverb *gegenseitig*, *mutually*, or the Gallicism *der eine, der andere*, — *sie gefallen sich, der (die) einem (der) andern*.

3. Observe that the usual equivalent of the objective *myself, thyself*, etc., is the simple *mir, dich*, etc. *Selbst* or *selber* is added only when emphasis is desired.

THE POSSESSIVES.

305. The Absolute Possessive. In agreement with a noun the possessive is always some form of *mein, dein, sein, unser, euer, ihr*, inflected as in § 125; but for the possessive used absolutely, i. e., without a noun, there is a choice between three, in the predicate sometimes four, forms of expression; e. g., *your judgment is more favorable than mine* = *Ihr Urteil ist günstiger als meines*, or *das meine*, or *das meinige*.

a. In meaning these forms are to a large degree interchangeable, but *der meine* belongs in general to more stately, *der meinige* to more familiar diction. In the predicate the uninflected form implies simple

ownership, while inflection may denote **emphasis or contrast**; e. g., das Buch ist mein, but es ist nicht dein Buch, es ist meines.

1. Letters end with such formulas as Hochachtungsvoll Ihr (der Ihre, der Ihrige), *respectfully yours*; ganz der Ihrige, der Deinige, etc.; Ihr (Dein) treuer, ergebener, treuester, ergebenster, etc.

2. *A friend of mine, a relative of yours* = ein Freund von mir, ein Verwandter von Ihnen.

306. The Compounds *meinetwegen*, *meinesgleichen*, etc.

1. *Meinetwegen* comes from an old dat. plu. *minen wegen* (i. e., *meinen Wegen*) used adverbially. Developing an excrescent *t* the phrase became *meinentwegen*, which is still sometimes met with, though the usual form drops *n* before *t*. The *halben* of *meinet halben* is also a dat. of *Halb*, *half*, *behalf*, *sake*; here again the stages were *meinen Halben*, *meinent halben*, *meinet halben*. *Meinetwillen* comes from *um meinen Willen*, *for my sake*, with the same phonetic development as in the other cases.

2. In *meinesgleichen* we have the adjective *gleich*, *like*, governing a preceding gen., which logically should be the personal pronoun *mein* or *meiner*, but became the possessive, giving *my like* instead of the *like of me*. The *s* is hard to account for. It may be due to the analogy of *desgleichen*, or of noun-stems with gen. in *s*. After *meines* the adjective naturally took a weak form.

3. Such compounds as *meinerseits*, *on my part*, and *meinestells*, *for my part*, come under § 251, 3.

307. Notes upon *sein* and *ihr*. As in English the possessive of the third person may refer reflexively to the subject of the sentence (= Latin *suus*) or to another noun (= Latin *ejus*); e. g., die Sonne vollendet ihre Reise, *the sun completes its journey*; ihr Anblick giebt den Engeln Stärke, *its aspect* (i. e., *the sight of it*) *gives strength to the angels* (G.).

1. Where an ambiguity might arise it should be avoided by the use of *der* or *derselbe* for the possessive that does not refer to the subject of the sentence; e. g., er verdrängte seinen Bruder und trat an dessen Stelle (or an *Seine* Stelle *desseinen*), *he crowded out his brother and took his* (the brother's) *place*; er besuchte seinen Sohn und dessen Frau, *he visited his son and his daughter-in-law*.

a. Such an ambiguous possessive as appears in the English *As ordered his servant to polish his boots* can be avoided in German by the right use of the dative : *er befahl seinem Bedienten ihm die Stiefel zu putzen* has reference to the master's boots, *sich die Stiefel zu putzen*, to the servant's own boots. But many would be content to say *seine Stiefel* and let the ambiguity stand, as in English.

2. Formerly *sein* might refer to a fem. noun, *ihr* being not yet in use as reflexive possessive. Traces of this usage survive in colloquial phrases ; e. g., *die Sache hat seine Richtigkeit*, *the thing has its good side* ; *sein Thor kennt jede Kuh*, *every cow knows her own gate*.

a. Note further the stereotyped adverb *seiner Zeit*, meaning not only *in his* or *its time*, but *in her time*, *in our time*, or simply *in due time* ; e. g., *wir waren seiner Zeit muntere Bursche*, *we were merry lads in our day*.

308. Archaisms and Irregularities. In popular poetry the possessive (of course uninflected) may follow its noun ; e. g., *Roland gedacht' im Herzen sein* = *in seinem Herzen*, *in his heart*.

1. The form *Ihro*, in *Ihro Majestät*, *Your Majesty*, is an old gen. plu. of *sie*, introduced in quite modern times after the analogy of *Dero* (§ 309, 5). It is used only in princely titles, and is either *mas.* or *fem.*, *sing.* or *plu.*

2. The comparison of a possessive, as in Goethe's *nun ist das meine meiner als jemals*, *now mine is more mine than ever*, is a bold poetic license. Ordinarily one would say *mehr mein*.

THE DEMONSTRATIVES.

309. Der. (Supplementary to §§ 129–131).

1. The inflection of *der* was at first precisely that of the definite article, the long forms *dessen*, *deren*, *denen*, being of quite modern origin. Present usage prescribes *dessen*, *deren*, *denen*, when the pronoun is used absolutely, but *des*, *der*, *den*, when a noun follows ; e. g., *des Adels rühme dich*, *boast of that nobility* (S.) ; *infolge dessen*, *in onsequence of that*.

a. But *des*, *der*, are used absolutely in compounds ; e. g., *deshalb*, *deshwegen* (also *deßentwegen*), *dergleichen*, etc. Other archaic exceptions

occur in the classics ; e. g., *des* wird Jupiter ergrimmt, *at that Jupiter becomes wroth* (G.) ; die Gegenwart *des*, der die Donner wirft, *the presence of him that hurls the thunderbolts* (S.).

2. For the genitive plural of *der* the usual form is now *deren*, unless a relative clause follows, in which case *derer* is apt to be preferred, especially if the pronoun refers to persons ; e. g., *deren* habe ich viele gesammelt, *I have collected many of them* (G.) ; die Mißgunst *derer*, die das Übermaß meines Glückes beleidigte, *the ill-will of those whom the excess of my happiness offended* (W.).

a. *Derer* occurs before noble names even if there is no relative ; e. g., das Schloß *derer* von Stein, *the castle of the Von Steins*.

3. *Der* is the pronoun most often used before a genitive or phrase with *von*, to take the place of a noun previously mentioned ; e. g., die Wege Gottes sind verschieden *von denen* des Menschen, *the ways of God are different from those of men* ; die Bevölkerung Londons ist größer als die *von Paris*, *greater than that of Paris*. *Derjenige* also occurs in this use, but is not so good.

4. Das, for *die* referring to persons, is usually contemptuous ; e. g., das schneudert wie die Schnecken, *those fellows dawdle like snails* (S.).

5. *Dero* is an old gen. plu. once common in ceremonious address before high titles ; as *Dero Gnaden*, *Your (properly their) Grace*.

310. The Compounds of *da* do not refer to persons, but exceptions occur in familiar language ; e. g., ein Paar Kerle, worüber sie streiten können, *a brace of fellows to quarrel about* (G.) ; ein Vater hatte drei Söhne, davon (cf. § 314) war der älteste klug und geschäft, *three sons of whom the eldest was shrewd and clever* (Gr.).

1. A compound of *da* should not stand as the antecedent of a relative ; e. g., *I thought of what you said* = ich dachte an das (not daran), was du sagtest.

2. Tmesis of a *da*-compound is rare ; e. g., *da* behüte mich Gott vor (= davor behüte mich), *God keep me from that*.

311. The Determinatives. *Derjenige* is an emphatic *der* used to particularize the antecedent of a relative ; e. g., das ist *derjenige*, von dem wir redeten, *that is the man we were*

talking about ; diejenige Freiheit, die ich mir herausnehme, *the (particular) liberty I take* (Kant).

1. Derse/lbe must refer to something already known. It is a frequent substitute for *er*, *sie*, *es* ; e. g., Kleinigkeiten, die er von Marianen erhalten oder derselben geraubt hatte, *trifles that he had received from Mariane or stolen from her* (G.).

a. Some prescribe that derselbe always be substituted for the acc. *es* governed by a preposition ; e. g., das Kind ist krank ; wir wollen für dasselbe sorgen, *we will take care of it*. But others repudiate this rule and prefer für *es*.

b. Observe the contractions *am selben Tag* = *an demselben Tag*, *zur selben Zeit* = *zu derselben Zeit* ; sometimes also *zu dieser (jener) selben Zeit*, *at this (that) selfsame time*. *Selbig-*, for *selb-*, is obsolescent.

c. *Einundderselbe*, *one and the same*, is best written as one word with *ein* uninflected ; thus *an einunddemselben Tage*, rather than *an einem und demselben*.

d. In ceremonious address *Dieselben*, sometimes with prefixed *Ho*h, *Hö*chst, *Allerhö*chst, may take the place of *Sie*.

2. *Solch* is sometimes used, but not very elegantly, for *derselbe* ; e. g., ich glaube, meine Gedanken sind wahr ; prüfen Sie solche, *I believe my thoughts are true ; test them* (S.).

3. The indeclinables *selbst* and *selber*, while treated in Part I for convenience with the personal pronouns, are not strictly of that class, since they do not denote a person, but emphasize pronouns of every person and also nouns. They may be regarded as a species of determinatives.

a. The two forms *selbst* and *selber* do not differ in meaning, but *selbst* may be used adverbially = *even*, while *selber* can not. Further, *selber* always follows the word it emphasizes, while *selbst* may precede or follow. Cf. § 289, 2, b.

THE INTERROGATIVES.

312. *Wer* and *was* never agree with a noun, seeming exceptions with *was* being old partitive genitives which have lost an *s* ; e. g., *was Wunder(s)*, *what wonder* ; *was Teufel!* *what the deuce!* Cf. § 253, 2, b.

1. *Wessen* is less used than *whose* ; for *whose picture is that?* idiom prefers (referring to the person portrayed) *wer ist das auf dem Bilde?*

(referring to the owner of the picture) wem gehört das Bild? *The form* *wes* is rare except in compounds, but occurs adjectively; e. g., *wes* Sinnes der Herr sei, *of what mind the master may be* (G.).

2. Colloquially, not so often in literature, *was* is used after prepositions that govern the dative; e. g., *zu was* taugt es? *what is it good for?* *mit was* kann ich dienen? *how can I serve you?* Here *wozu* and *womit* would be better. On the other hand *warum*, *wofür*, etc., are very often, but unnecessarily, substituted for *um was*, *für was*, etc.

3. *Was* is very common in the sense of *warum*; e. g., *was* reitest du so schnelle? *why do you ride so fast* (G.)? This *was* is an adverbial accusative.

313. *Welch* and *was für*. The neuter *welches* is sometimes used absolutely (like *es* and *das*) without reference to the gender or number of a following predicate noun; e. g., die Eltern fanden einen ganzen Tag, *welches* der schönste Name sei, *queried which was the most beautiful name* (Riehl).

1. *Was für* is always used adjectively; *was für ein*, usually so, but sometimes without a noun. In the latter case *ein* has pronominal inflection; e. g., ein Grund ist es allerdings, aber *was für einer!* *a reason it is to be sure, but what kind of one!*

THE RELATIVES.

314. *Der* and *welch*. *Der* as relative is of secondary origin, having developed out of the demonstrative *der*. Hence the frequent use of the latter, especially in folktales, where one would expect a relative; e. g., es war einmal ein alter König, *der* war krank, *he was sick*, instead of *der* krank war, *who was sick*. Cf. also the example with *davon* in § 310.

1. The genitive singular of *der* is *dessen*, *deren*, *dessen*, the genitive plural *deren* (not *derer*) and the dative plural *denen*; but short forms, identical with those of the article *der*, occur in the classics; e. g., die Krone, *der* (for *deren*) mein Fürst mich würdig achtete, *the crown of which my prince*

deemed me worthy (G.); *die Heil- und Finderungskraft, der wir stündlich bedürfen* (G.).

2. The use of *der* as 'compound' relative (containing its own antecedent) is not uncommon; e. g., *ach! der mich liebt und kennt, ist in der Weite, alas, he who loves and knows me is far away* (G.). Such a *der* differs from *wer* in that it refers to a particular antecedent.

3. In early modern German a relative is often preceded by *als*, the effect being a subaudition of cause; e. g., *ihr habt diesen Menschen zu mirbracht, als der das Volk abwende, ye have brought this man unto me as one that perverteth the people* (Lu.). Later this *als* became all but pleonastic and has now gone out of use, though common in Lessing and Goethe; e. g., *Aeneas, als welcher sich an den bloßen Figuren ergötzet, Aeneas, who delights in the mere figures* (L.); *aus dem Zimmer, als in welchem sie allein Ruhe hatte, from the room in which alone she had peace* (G.).

315. Wer and was. The implied antecedent of *wer* must be expressed (always *after* *wer*), if there is change of construction; e. g., *wer nicht denkt, dem wird sie geschenkt, who does not think, to him it is given* (G.). In other words, *wer* can stand only for *der*, *der* (not for *dem*, *der*, nor for *den*, *der*).

a. The rule applies also to *was*, but less rigidly, since the form *was* is both nom. and acc.; thus it is permissible to omit *das* in *was ich nicht weiß, (das) macht mich nicht heiß, what I don't know doesn't bother me*; or even in *was mich nicht brennt, (das) blas' ich nicht, what doesn't burn me I don't blow*.

1. Distinguish between the interrogative in *wer könnte das glauben? who could believe that?* the indefinite relative in *es ist wahr, was man auch glauben mag, it is true, whatever one may think*, and the exclamatory indefinite in *wer so etwas glauben könnte! as if any one could believe that!*

2. In general *was* is not used in referring to a definite noun, but exceptions occur in good writers; e. g., *die Alten kannten das Ding nicht, was wir Höflichkeit nennen, the ancients did not know the thing which we call politeness* (L.). Conversely, *das* or *welches* is sometimes used for *was* in referring to a sentence; e. g., *ihm hatte man Hilarien bestimmt, das ihm sehr wohl bekannt war, they had destined Hilarie for him, which was very well known to him* (G.).

3. The form *wes* is still sometimes used adjectively, just as often in the classics; e. g., *wes Standes er auch sein mochte*, of whatever station he might be. Without a noun *wes* is archaic, save in compounds.

4. *Was* referring to persons is not uncommon in familiar language; e. g., *früh übt sich, was ein Meister werden will*, he who wishes to become a master practices early (S.).

316. Relative Adverbs. A compound of *wo* or *wes* is never positively required except when the antecedent is not a noun or pronoun; thus in *the book of which we were speaking, the task I am working upon*, one may say *das Buch, von dem, von welchem, or wovon; die Aufgabe, an der, an welcher, or woran*. But in *he rises early by which he saves much time*, one can only say *wodurch*, not *durch welches*, nor *durch das*, though *durch welches Mittel* would be permissible. So also *ich war krank, weshalb* (not *wegen dessen*) *ich nicht schreiben konnte*, for which reason I could not write.

1. So as relative is now archaic, but was once very common; e. g., *heilig ist das Gesetz, so dem Künstler Schönheit gebietet*, holy is the law which, etc. (S.).

2. An untranslatable *da* is sometimes added to a relative as a kind of generalizing particle; e. g., *wen da dürstet, whoever thirsts; keiner, der da dichtet, no one, who makes poetry* (G.). But the usage is now quaint.

3. *Da* and its compounds usually have demonstrative force, rarely that of a relative; as in *die Zeiten, da ich noch selbst im Werden war*, the times when I myself was still growing (G.). *Almo* and *woselbst*, relative particles = *wo*, are archaic.

THE INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

317. All. The undeclined *all* is most common before *der* or a possessive in the nominative and accusative singular, masculine and neuter; e. g., *all der Schmerz, all the pain; all das Leid; all seinen Kummer*. In the genitive it is rare but occurs; e. g., *der Schauplatz all meiner Glückseligkeit*, the scene of all my happiness (G.).

1. The form *alle* occurs mostly after prepositions that govern the dative ; as *von alle dem*, *from all that* ; *aus alle dem* ; *troß alle dem*. But it may stand as nominative ; e. g., *alle das Reigen*, *all the leaning* (G.) ; *alle sein Mammon*, *all his wealth* (S.).

2. *Alles* may mean *everybody*, as in *alles tanzte wie toll*, *everybody was dancing like mad* (G.). It may also follow *wer*, *was* and even *wem*, without change of form ; e. g., *wer alles war da* ? *who all was there* ? *wem alles gabst du das Geld* (Gr.) ?

3. *All* does not admit of weak inflection : one says *der Vater unser aller* (not *allen*) ; *das alles*, *dies alles*, *nach dem allem* (better than *allen*). For *allenfalls*, see § 288, 1, a.

4. In the classics *all* sometimes = *jed-*, *every* ; e. g., *aller Zustand ist gut*, *every condition is good* (G.) ; *bei allem irdischen Ding* (S.) ; *die Frauen alles Standes* (G.). In these cases present usage would prefer the sing. of *jed-* or the plu. of *all*. Cf. *alle Tage*, *every day* ; *alle paar Minuten*, *every few minutes*. Quite common are : *wir haben allen Grund*, *allen Anlaß*, *every reason*, *every occasion*.

5. In like manner early writers use *all* in the sense of *ganz*, *the whole* ; e. g., *allen Winter* (Logau) ; *durch alles Leben* (Frank). One would now say *den ganzen Winter*, *durch das ganze Leben*. Cf. *die ganze Nacht*, *all night* ; *ganz Amerika*, *all America*. But *alle Welt* is still common, along with *die ganze Welt*, for *all the world*, *tout le monde*.

6. After *ohne*, *all* and *jed-* occur sometimes in the sense of *Eng. any* ; e. g., *ohne allen* (or *jeden*) *Begriff*, *without any idea*.

7. Note finally the idioms in *aller Eile*, *in all haste* ; in *aller Frühe*, *very early in the morning* ; also *es* (der *Wein*, die *Freude*) *ist alle*, i. e., *is all gone* ; *er wird sein bißchen Geld bald alle machen*, *he will soon make an end of* (run through) *his little money*.

318. **Ein-**. As pronoun *ein-* may take the place of (irgend) *jemand*, *some one*, *any one* ; e. g., *da liegt schon einer tot*, *there lies some one dead* (G.) ; *da fragt niemand*, *was einer glaubt*, *what any one believes* (S.).

1. The neuter form *eins* may refer to a person ; e. g., *nun sag' mir eins*, *now let some one tell me* (G.) ; *wenn unser eins am Spinnen war*, *when you and I were at our spinning* (G.).

a. More often it is used, sometimes almost untranslatable, as cognate object of *singen*, *trinken* and other verbs; e. g., *eins singen*, *sing a song*; *eins trinken*, *take a drink*; *wenn dir das Mädchen feimt, da liebt sie eins zum Spaß*, *she just falls in love for fun* (G.).

319. Einig- and its Synonyms. For the singular of *einig*-present usage prefers a substitute (*ein*, *irgend ein*, *ein wenig*, *etwas*), but it is not uncommon in literature; e. g., *aus Furcht des Todes oder sonst einiges Dinges*, *from fear of death or some other thing* (Claudius); *nach einiger Pause*, *after a short pause* (G.); *nicht ohne einiges Bedenken*, *not without some hesitation*.

1. The plu. *einige* implies, according to Grimm, *more than two but less than five*. For five or more one says *mehrere*, *eine Menge*, *manche*, *vieler*. The ill-sounding *einige wenige* occurs in the sense of *a few*, but *a few* is better denoted by *einige* alone, or else by *ein paar*. Note the orthographic distinction in *ein paar Minuten*, *a few minutes*, but *ein Paar Stiefel*, *a pair of boots*.

a. *Etlische*, *weldche* and *etweldche* have the same meaning as *einige*, but *etweldche* is obsolete and *etlische* becoming so.

2. *Einige* may precede a numeral; e. g., *einige zwanzig*, *twenty odd*. The article *ein* is sometimes used in a similar way; e. g., *ein acht Tage*, *some eight days*.

3. *Mehre* for *mehrere* is not good. For the phrase *morgen ein Mehres*, *more to-morrow* (L.), one would now prefer *morgen mehr*, *Weiteres*, or *das Weitere*.

320. Etwas, was, nichts. Both *was* and *etwas* may mean *something of importance*; e. g., *laßt mich auch etwas sein*, *let me be something too*; *sie rüsten sich schnell, denn sie dünken sich was*, *for they think themselves 'some' (G.)*.

1. The acc. of *etwas* forms a common adverb = *somewhat*, *a little*; e. g., *etwas kalt*, *somewhat cold*. Distinguish therefore between *etwas besser*, *somewhat better*, and *etwas Besseres*, *something better*.

2. *Nichts*, though classed for convenience with pronominals, is really a substantive—the gen. of *nicht* = *naught*,—which is still preserved as a dat. in the phrases *zumichte werden*, *come to naught*, and *mit nichten*, *by no means*. In early modern German *nicht* took a partitive gen.; e. g., *und hätte der Liebe nicht*, and *had not love*, i. e., *naught of love* (Lu.). This construction still occurs in the phrase *hier ist meines Bleibens nicht*, *there is no staying here for me*.

321. Man and its Compounds. *Man*, from *Mann*, like French *on* from *homo*, does not individualize at all, whence it is never preceded by *irgend*, though it may approach the meaning of *irgend jemand*; e. g., *man pocht*, *there is a knock, some one is knocking*. Most often it is an indefinite representative of people at large, mankind, the public, as in *man sagt*, *they say, it is said*; *man kommt zu sehn*, *man will am liebsten schaun*, *people come to see, they wish to gaze* (G.).

1. Again, *man* may take the place of a personal pronoun of any person. Goethe often uses it for *ich* in describing his own doings, and interchanges it with *wir* in the same sentence. *Man schweige* is much the same, only less brusque, as *schweige*, *schweigt*, or *schweigen* Sic. The policeman says *wer ist man?* *was will man hier?* for *who are you?* *what do you want here?*

2. *Jemand* and *niemand* are compounds of *man* with *ex-* and *in-* respectively. For the dative and accusative present usage prefers the uninflected form, though the dative in *em* and (less often) the accusative in *en*, still occur. Their plural is supplied by *einige* and *keine*.

322. Viel and wenig. With these words there is great freedom in the use of uninflected forms. Inflection is required only after *der* or a possessive; e. g., *daß viele Geld*, *daß er besitzt*, *the large amount of money that he possesses*; *troß seines vielen Geldes*; *mein Weniges*, *my little*.

a. But *wenig* after *der* or a possessive and in agreement with a noun in the singular is not common. For *sein wenigcs Talent*, *his little talent* (G.), one would now prefer *sein geringes Talent*, *sein kleines*, or *sein bißchen Talent*.

1. Except after *der* or a possessive, inflection prevails in the plural and genitive singular (where it may be needed to show case), non-inflection in the nominative singular, masculine and neuter; elsewhere both are about equally common. Examples: *schon viele Tage*, *these many days* (S.); *er freut sich vieler Ehre*, *enjoys much honor*; *viel Lärm um nichts*, *much ado about nothing*; *viel Geschrei und wenig Wolle*, *much noise and little wool*; *viel Dant*, *many*

thanks; mit vieler Mühe; mit wenig Wiß und viel Behagen (G.); viel Grüße hat er aufgetragen (G.).

2. Sometimes inflection is associated with the idea of variety; e. g., ich meine nicht vieles, sondern viel; ein wenig, aber mit Fleiß; *I mean not (a little in) much, but much (in little); a small quantity, but with care* (L.). Stahr writes: ich habe vieles gesehen, hier und da auch viel, *many things, here and there also much (of importance)*; wer vieles bringt, *he who offers a great variety* (G.); viel Wein, *much wine*; vieler Wein, *many kinds of wine*.

THE VERB.

SUPPLEMENTARY DETAILS ON CONJUGATION.

323. Haben and sein as Auxiliaries. All transitive verbs (including reflexives), the modal auxiliaries and many intransitives are conjugated with haben.

1. With a very few exceptions (bleiben, geschehen, gelingen, glücken, sein), the verbs that form their perfect tenses with sein contain the idea of transition from one place or condition to another. They either denote literal motion, as gehen, kommen, or else a change of status, as altern, bersten.

a. Often this idea of change is given by a prefix, and thus we may have a compound conjugated with sein, while the simple verb takes haben; e. g., einschlafen, *sleep*, and einschlafen, *fall asleep*; stehen, *stand*, and erstehen, *arise*. Such compounds are quite numerous and only a few specimens of them are given in the list below. The most important of the verbs that take sein are, then, the following, together with their intransitive compounds:

altern, *grow old*.
aufstehen, *arise*.
begegnen, *meet*.
bersten, *burst*.
bleiben, *remain*.
eilen, *hurry*.
einschlafen, *fall asleep*.
erscheinen, *appear*.
ertrinken, *drown*.
erwachen, *awaken*.
fahren, *go*.

fallen, *fall*.
fliegen, *fly*.
fliehen, *flee*.
fließen, *flow*.
folgen, *follow*.
frieren, *freeze*.
gedeihen, *thrive*.
gehen, *go*.
gelingen, *succeed*.
genesen, *recover*.
geschehen, *happen*.

gleiten, *glide*.
glücken, *succeed*.
klimmen, *climb*.
klettern, *clamber*.
kommen, *come*.
kriechen, *creep*.
laufen, *run*.
quellen, *gush forth*.
reisen, *set out*.
reiten, *ride*.
rennen, *run*.

rinnen, <i>flow</i> .	finken, <i>sink</i> .	verarmen, <i>grow poor</i> .
ſcheitern, <i>be wrecked</i> .	ſpringen, <i>spring</i> .	verhungern, <i>starve</i> .
ſchleichen, <i>creep</i> .	ſteigen, <i>climb</i> .	wachſen, <i>grow</i> .
ſchmelzen, <i>melt</i> .	ſterben, <i>die</i> .	weichen, <i>recede</i> .
ſchreiten, <i>stride</i> .	ſtürzen, <i>rush</i> .	werden, <i>become</i> .
ſchwimmen, <i>swim</i> .	treten, <i>step</i> .	ziehen, <i>pass</i> .
ſein, <i>be</i> .		

b. Intransitives that do not come under any of these heads are conjugated with *haben*. This is the case not only with verbs which contain no idea of motion, as *ſchlafen*, *sleep*, but also with verbs of motion that denote simply a verbal activity, without any idea of transition from one point to another. Verbs of motion that are usually of this character are omitted from the list above. Such are, e. g., *hüpfen*, *hop*; *knieen*, *kneel*; *rauſchen*, *rustle*; *ſchwanken*, *waver*; *ſchweben*, *sweep*; *tanzen*, *dance*. But any of these may take *ſein*, if they express transition; e. g., *der Vogel iſt durchs Fenſter gehüpft*, *has hopped through the window*.

c. On the other hand several of the verbs in the list above may take *haben* if the tense denotes simply a verbal activity, or a temporal, rather than a local, relation; e. g., *die haben ſchon was Rechts geſprungen*, *have danced a good bit* (G.), but one would say *ſind ins Waſſer geſprungen*, *have leaped into the water*; *er hat viel gereiſt*, *he has traveled much*, but *er iſt nach Paris gereiſt*, *has set out for Paris*; *das Kind hat erſt heute gegangen*, *has never walked until to-day*, but *iſt heute von einem Stuhl zum andern gegangen*, *walked from one chair to the other*; *iſch habe eine Stunde geritten*, *I rode for an hour*, but *iſch bin außs Land geritten*, *rode into the country*; *iſch habe fortgefahren*, *I continued*, but *iſch bin fortgefahren*, *I went away*.

d. The general principle regulating the use of *haben* and *ſein* is simple: *haben* calls attention to a verbal action, *ſein* to the state or condition that has resulted from the action. There is, however, much confusion of the two auxiliaries, *ſein* being often used where the rule would call for *haben*; cf. Goethe's *iſt viel gereiſt* (*Faust*, l. 3019). Even *ſtehen*, *ſißen* and *liegen* are sometimes conjugated with *ſein*. On the other hand, *begegnen* and *folgen* occur with *haben*.

324. Omission of the Auxiliaries. The auxiliaries of tense are often omitted at the end of a dependent clause; e. g., *dasjenige, was wir von andern gehört* (sc. *haben*), *that which we have heard from others* (G.); *das iſt im Feld derſelbe Rain, wo wir dereinſt gegangen* (sc. *ſind*), *the selfsame tract where we once walked*.

a. In this way it is often possible to avoid an unpleasant concurrence of auxiliaries; e. g., *der Sieg, den er errungen (hatte), hatte bewiesen, daß—, the victory he had won had proved that—; was damit gewonnen worden (war), war unbedeutend, what had been gained by this, was insignificant.*

b. The frequent omission of the auxiliary is characteristic of certain authors, e. g., Lessing, Goethe, Richter. With writers on style the matter is a moot-question, some advocating, others disapproving, the '*hatte-war* style.' In general it is not well to omit the auxiliary if an ambiguity of mode or tense would result. On the other hand, in such a sentence as the following, quoted by Wustmann, the two final *war's* would be intolerable: *da die Zeit, für die das Herrenhaus gewählt worden (war), abgelaufen war, since the time had expired for which the House of Lords had been chosen.*

325. Periphrastic and Causal Auxiliaries. Standard German recognizes no auxiliary corresponding to English *do* in *I do believe, I did think*, etc., but *thun* is so used in dialect and the usage is more or less reflected in literature; e. g., *die Augen thäten ihm sinken, his eyes sank, i. e., did sink* (G.); *(ich) that ihn recht herzlich lieben, I loved him right heartily* (G.).

a. *Thun* as auxiliary usually has pret. ind. *thät*, not *that*. See the examples above.

1. *Lassen, let*, is sometimes called a causative auxiliary, but its meaning may be permissive as well as causal; e. g., *laß mich gehen auf deiner Spur, let me go upon thy track* (permissive); *die Mutter ließ einen Pfaffen kommen, had a priest come* (causal); *ich lasse mir meinen Hermann nicht schelten, I will not let my Hermann be scolded* (G.).

a. On the peculiar passive use of the active inf. after *lassen*, as in the last example, see § 366, 1, a.

b. *Machen, make*, also occurs as causative auxiliary: e. g., *ihr habt mich weiblich schwitzen machen, you have made me sweat vigorously* (G.).

326. Omission of the Augment *ge*.

1. The prefix *ge* was not at first a necessary element of the perfect participle. In composition with verbs the particle had various functions, one of which was to give a 'perfective' meaning; e. g., *do der haubtman gelas den brief, when the captain had read the letter, the preterite*

gelaſ denoting the completion of the action. Becoming thus associated with the idea of completed action, the particle attached itself more and more to the perfect participle and finally became a regular 'sign' of that form.

a. The above statement sufficiently explains the occasional occurrence in the classics of such participles as *gefunden*, for *gefunden*; *fommen*, for *gefunden*, etc. They are survivals.

2. At present the following classes of verbs regularly form their perfect participle without *ge* :

a. Inseparable compounds and verbs in *ie' ren*, — because of a feeling that *ge* should not immediately precede an unaccented syllable.

b. The modal auxiliaries, and also *heißen*, *helfen*, *lassen*, *sehen*, when the participle occurs in connection with an infinitive ; e. g., *ich habe es nicht thun können*, *I have not been able to do it* ; *er hat mich rufen lassen*, *he has had me called*. The old participle of these verbs looks and sounds like an infinitive ; for which reason several weak verbs that have followed their analogy put the infinitive in place of the participle when an infinitive precedes. Such are, quite regularly, *hören*, which seems to have followed *sehen*, and sometimes also *brauchen*, *lehren*, *machen* and *lernen* ; e. g., *ich habe sagen hören*, *I have heard say* ; *ich hatte ihn kennen lernen*, *I had learned to know him* ; *ihr habt mich schwitzen machen*, *you have made me sweat* (G.).

c. *Werden* in the passive voice, to avoid two concurrent forms with *ge*.

d. Certain adjective compounds, as *hausbad*, *home-baked*, *homely* (*baden* instead of *gebaden*) ; *halbwach*, *half-grown*.

327. Use of the Connecting Vowel and the Endings. The rules in § 176 present the normal usage of to-day, but there are many exceptions. Solemn or stately diction tends to long forms, easy talk to short, while the poet may take advantage of either for his meter's sake ; e. g., *rebst du von einem, der da lebet* (S.) ? *ich habe gelebt und geliebet* (S.) ; *die schönste Jungfrau sitzet* (Heine) ; *begreife nicht, was er an mir find't* (G.). Here the normal forms would be: *redest*, *lebst*, *geliebt*, *sitzt*, *findet*.

1. In talk it is usual to drop the connecting vowel *e* in the pres. ind.
2. sing. after a sibilant (contrary to § 176, 3). In such cases the *f* of the ending *st* is also dropped and the form becomes identical with the 3. sing. ; thus *du wißt*, instead of *wißt* ; *du ließt*, for *liest* ; *du läßt*,

for *lässest*; *du sitzt*, for *sitzest*. In the pret. such contractions (*du aßt*, for *du aßest*, from *essen*) are much more rare.

a. So too a final *t* of the stem is not heard (though it is best to write it) before *st*; i. e., *hältst*, *giltst*, *sichtst*, are pronounced, usually, *hålst*, *gilst*, *sichst*.

2. In the imv. 2. sing. the ending *e* belongs properly to all weak verbs. If, therefore, it is omitted, an apostrophe is proper; e. g., *lieb' solang du lieben kannst*; *solg' nur dem alten Spruch* (G.). But *saß'*, *preß'*, and the like, become *saß*, *preß*.

a. Strong verbs have no ending in the imv. 2. sing. after a radical *t* or *ie* changed from *e*; thus *håst*, *tritt*, *ließ*. In other cases the use of the final *e* is in large measure optional. It is quite uniformly omitted in *fomm*, *saß* and *lauf*. In *beiß(e)*, *fließ(e)*, *geh(e)*, *halt(e)*, *lauf(e)*, *schlaf(e)*, *schlag(e)*, *schrei(e)*, *schweig(e)*, *steh(e)*, *stoß(e)*, *thu(e)*, *trag(e)*, *zich(e)*, the omission of *e* is at any rate so common that no apostrophe is needed.

b. Strong verbs with radical *e* that have vowel-change in the pres. ind. should have it also in the imv. 2. sing.; but *trete* for *tritt*, *nehme* for *nimm*, *messe* for *miß*, and other such substitutions of weak for strong inflection, are common in good writers.

3. In early modern German a spurious final *e* is sometimes found in the pret. ind. 1. and 3. sing. of strong verbs; as *sahē* for *sah*.

328. Strong and Weak Conjugation.

1. As in the case of nouns, so in that of verbs, the terms 'strong' and 'weak' were introduced by Grimm. They were intended to contrast those verbs which form their pret. by means of an internal vowel-change, thus seeming to rely upon their own inner 'strength', with those which have the 'weakness' to rely upon foreign aid in the shape of a suffix. The terms are fanciful, but convenient and in universal use. They are at any rate better than 'old' and 'new', and far better than 'irregular' and 'regular'.

2. The characteristic 'ablaut' of strong verbs (sometimes translated by *gradation*, as *umlaut* is by *mutation*), is a definite series of changes undergone by the radical vowel in different forms derived from the same root. It is by no means confined to verbs; thus with *binden*, *band*, *gebunden*, cf. the nouns *Binde*, *Baud*, *Bund*.

3. The vowel-change of the pres., in strong verbs, is always a species of *umlaut*, though it is not always marked by the modern sign of *umlaut*. It is due (cf. § 21) to the former presence of an *i* in the endings of the 2. and 3. sing. Thus *du trägst*, *er trägt*, represent an earlier

du tragst(t), er tragt; whereas the forms now without umlaut had no i in the ending: *ich trage*, from *ih tragu*, *wir tragen*, from *wir tragen(es)*, etc.

a. Verbs with radical *ie* formerly made a pres. ind. 2. and 3. sing. and an imv. 2. sing. in *eu*; e. g., *fliegst*, *flengt*, instead of *fliegt*, *fliegt*, from *fliegen*; *freuchst*, *freucht*, instead of *friedst*, *friedt*, from *frieden*. These archaic forms are often met with in the classics.

4. In Old and Middle German the pret. of most strong verbs had two different ablaut-stages, i. e., two different radical vowels, one for the sing., the other for the plu.; thus *ich sang*, *I sang*, but *wir sungen*, *we sang*; *ich reit*, *I rode*, but *wir riten*, *we rode*. In modern German the vowel of the sing. has usually prevailed for the entire tense. In some cases, however, the vowel of the plu. was transferred to the sing. (cf. Eng. *I sang* and *I sung*), giving rise to doublets, such as *ich stand* and *ich stund*. Such double preterites were once common, and one of them, *ward*, *wurde*, still survives. *Ward* is more stately and bookish than *wurde*.

a. The secondary vowel of the pret. is much more apt to appear in the subj. than in the ind.; thus while *ich sturb*, from *sterben*, no longer occurs, *ich stürbe*, is common. It even has the advantage of *ich stürbe*, in that it is not liable to be confounded by the ear with *ich sterbe*. There are many such cases.

329. Ablaut Classes.

1. It is impossible to draw up a classification of strong verbs that will appreciably facilitate the learning of their forms. They must simply be memorized one by one. The only classification that is of any use (and its value is scientific rather than practical) is that which groups together those verbs which originally had the same series of vowel-changes in their principal parts. Such a group is called an ablaut class.

2. There are in all seven such classes. Since, however, the classification is based primarily upon the older forms, which have undergone great changes with the lapse of time, it can not be made fully intelligible without detailed historical explanations which lie beyond the scope of this work. (Consult Brandt's *German Grammar*, §§ 122 ff. and 459 ff.) In the subjoined scheme is given, first, the vowel of the inf.; then, after the first dash, the vowel of the pret., and after the second dash the vowel of the perf. pple. The statistical numbers refer to the list in § 331. The classes, then, are as follows:

Class I: Ablaut *ei* — *i*, *ie*, — *i*, *ie*; e. g., *reiten*, *ritt*, *geritten*; *bleiben*, *blieb*, *geblieben*. 43 verbs.

Class II : Ablaut *ie, ï, au, — o — o* ; e. g., *fließen, floß, geflossen* ; *lügen, log, gelogen* ; *saufen, soff, gesoffen*. 33 verbs.

Class III : *e, i, — a short — u short, o short* ; e. g., *werfen, warf, geworfen* ; *binden, band, gebunden*. 47 verbs.

Class IV : Ablaut *e, ä — a long — o* ; e. g., *brechen, brach, gebrochen* ; *gebären, gebär, geboren*. 16 verbs.

Class V : Ablaut *i, e, ie, — a long — e* ; e. g., *bitten, bat, gebeten* ; *geben, gab, gegeben* ; *liegen, lag, gelegen*. 15 verbs.

Class VI : Ablaut *a — u — a* ; e. g., *fahren, fuhr, gefahren*. 15 verbs.

Class VII : Vowel-change which looks like ablaut, but is not ; *a, an, ei, o, u — ie — a, au, ei, o, u* ; e. g., *fallen, fiel, gefallen* ; *laufen, lief, gelaufen* ; *stoßen, stieß, gestoßen*. 18 verbs.

Remark. A few verbs have passed out of the class to which they originally and properly belong. Thus *bellēn, bark*, formerly made **pret.** *ball, pple.* *gebollen*. But *ball* early gave way to *boll* (with the vowel of the *pple.*), and *bellēn, boll, gebollen*, does not conform to any of the seven classes as above given. In the list below such cases are denoted by a bracketed number ; e. g., *bellēn [III]* means that the verb once belonged to Class III.

330. Irregular Weak Verbs. Nine weak verbs have in the preterite and perfect participle a vowel-change which looks like ablaut. These are :

<i>Inf.</i>	<i>Pret. ind.</i>	<i>Perf. pple.</i>	<i>Pret. subj.</i>
<i>brennen, burn,</i>	<i>brannte,</i>	<i>gebrannt,</i>	<i>brennte.</i>
<i>bringen, bring,</i>	<i>brachte,</i>	<i>gebracht,</i>	<i>brächte.</i>
<i>denken, think,</i>	<i> dachte,</i>	<i>gedacht,</i>	<i>dächte.</i>
<i>diinken, seem,</i>	<i>deuachte,</i>	<i>gedeuacht,</i>	<i>deuachte.</i>
<i>kennen, know,</i>	<i>kante,</i>	<i>gekannt,</i>	<i>kante.</i>
<i>nennen, name,</i>	<i>nante,</i>	<i>genannt,</i>	<i>nente.</i>
<i>rennen, run,</i>	<i>rannte,</i>	<i>gerannt,</i>	<i>rennte.</i>
<i>senden, send,</i>	<i>sandte,</i>	<i>gesandt,</i>	<i>sendete.</i>
<i>wenden, turn,</i>	<i>wandte,</i>	<i>gewandt,</i>	<i>wendete.</i>

a. *diinken, senden* and *wenden* are often regular ; *brennen, kennen, nennen* and *rennen*, rarely so.

1. The only other weak verbs that present any irregularities are *haben* (§ 171), the modal auxiliaries (§ 189) and *wissen* (§ 190).

331. List of Strong Verbs.

The following list is meant to contain all the verbs of late modern German that have any strong forms. After the principal parts is given, first, the pres. ind. 2. sing., from which the 3. sing. can usually be got by simply dropping *f* of the ending *st*; thus, *du bäckst*, *er bäckt*. Whenever the 3. sing. cannot be got in this way, as in *du glüht*, *er glüht*, it is given separately. Next comes the pret. subj. 1. sing., and then the imv. 2. sing., the latter distinguished by an *!*. The Roman numeral gives the ablaut class to which the verb belongs or belonged (§ 329, remark). Obsolete forms are enclosed in *[]*, forms that are not to be recommended in *()*. For *beginnen*, *verderben*, etc., see under *-ginnen*, *-berben*.

Baden, *bake*, *bak*, *gebaden*; *bäckst*; *bülte*; *bad(e)!* VI. — Often weak throughout, except that there is no ppl. *gebadt*. *Buf* has short *u*. *Gebaden* without *ge* occurs in *hausbaden*, *neubaden*, etc.

bären, *-bar*, *-boren*; *-hierst* or *-bärst*; *-bäre*; *-hier!* or *-bäre!* IV. — Only in *gebären*, *give birth to* (earlier *geberen*, whence *gebierst*, *gebieret*, *gebier!*). *Gebäre* as pret. subj. is avoided, being like the pres.

Beißen, *bite*, *biß*, *gebissen*; *beiß(e)st*, *beißt*; *bisse*; *beiß(e)!* I.

Bellen, *bark*, *[boll]*, *[geboffen]*; *[bißst]*; *[bölle]*; *[biß!]* III. — Now always weak, but strong forms occur in the classics. Grimm wrote: *ein Hund bellt noch heute, wie er zu Anfang der Schöpfung boll*, with weak pres. and strong pret. in the same sentence.

Bergen, *hide*, *barg*, *geborgen*; *birgst*; *bürge* or *bürge*; *birg!* (*berge!*). III.

Bersten, *burst*, *barst* *[borst]*, *geborsten*; *birdest* or *birst*, *birst*; *börste* or *bärste*; *birst!* III. — Often weak throughout.

Biegen, *bend*, *bog*, *gebogen*; *biegst* *[beugst]*; *böge*; *biege!* *[beug!]* II.

Bieten, *offer*, *bot*, *geboten*; *bietest* *[beutst, beut]*; *böte*; *biete!* *[beut!]* II.

Binden, *bind*, *band*, *gebunden*; *bindest*; *bände*; *-binde!* III.

Bitten, *ask*, *bat*, *gebeten*; *bittest*; *bäte*; *bitte!* V.

Blasen, *blow*, *blies*, *geblasen*; *blä(ef)st*, *bläst*; *bliese*; *blas(e)!* VII. — Sometimes weak in pres. The pret. *blus* (Claudius) is jocular.

Bleiben, *remain*, *blieb*, *geblieben*; *bleibst*; *bliebe*; *bleib(e)!* I.

bleichen, *-blich*, *-blichen*; *-bleichst*; *-blühe*; *-bleich(e)!* I. — Strong only in *erbleichen*, *verbleichen*, *turn pale*, *die*, which may be weak in the pret. *Bleichen*, *bleach*, is weak.

Braten, *roast*, *briet*, *gebraten*; *brätst*, *brät*; *briete*; *brate!* VII. — Sometimes weak, but no *gebratet*.

brechen, *break*, *brach*, *gebrochen*; *brichst*; *bräche*; *brich!* (*breche!*) IV. — *Radebrechen*, *murder* (a language), is weak: *radebrechte*, *geradebrecht*.

deihen, =dich, =diehen; =deihst; =diehe; =deihe! I.—Only in *gebeihen*, *thrive*.

verben, =darb, =dorben; =dirbst; =dürbe or =därbe; =dirb! III.—Only in *verderben*, *ruin, be ruined*, which is apt to be weak when *transitive*. *Verderbt* means *morally corrupt*; ein verderbtes Herz, but ein verborbener (*bankrupt*) Kaufmann.

Dingen, *hire*, bang, gedungen; dingst; dinge! III.—Originally, and still usually, weak. Pret. subj. always dingte, not dänge, nor dänge. *Bedingen*, *stipulate*, is usually weak, always so in the ppl. adj. *bedingt*, *conditioned*.

Dreschen, *thresh*, drausch or drosch, gedroschen; drisch(es)t, drischt; drösch(e) or dräsch(e); driß! III.—Often weak.

drießen, =droß, =droßten. Only in *verdrießen*, *vex*, which is hardly used except in the 3. sing.; verdrießt [=dreußt]; verdröße. II.

Dringen, *press*, drang [drung], gedrungen; bringst; dränge [bränge]; dringe! III.

Essen, *eat*, aß, gegessen; issest or ißt, ißt; äße; iß! (esse!) V.—*Geessen* contracted to *geßen* (cf. *Faust*, l. 2838), where *ge* ceased to be felt as a prefix, and so was prefixed anew.

Fahren, *go*, fuhr, gefahren; fährst; führe; fahre! VI.

Fallen, *fall*, fiel, gefallen; fällt; fiele; falle! VII.

Fangen [fahen], *catch*, fing (fieng), gefangen; fängst [fäht]; finge (fienge); fange! VII.

Fechten, *fight*, focht, gefochten; ficht(es)t, ficht; föchte; ficht! [III.]—Sometimes weak.

fehlen, =sahl, =sohlen; =siehst; =söhle or =sähle; =sieh! (=sehle!) IV.—Only in *befehlen*, *command*, and *empfehlen*, *recommend*. *Fehlen*, *fail*, is weak.

Finden, *find*, fand, gefunden; findest; fände; finde! III.

Flechten, *braid*, flocht, geflochten; flicht(es)t, flicht; flöchte; flicht! [III.]—Sometimes weak.

fleßen, =fließ, =flißen; =fließ(es)t, =fleißt; =flisse; =fleisse! I.—Only in *sich besleßen*, *attend to*.

Fliegen, *fly*, flog, geflogen; fliegst [fleugst]; flöge; fliege! [fleug!] II.

Fliehen, *flee*, floh, geflohen; fliecht [fleuchst]; flöhe; fliehe! [fleuch!] II.

Fließen, *flow*, floß, geflossen; fließ(es)t [fleußt], fließt [fleußt]; flöße; fließe! [fleuß!] II.

Fragen, *ask*, fragte (frug), gefragt; fragst (frägst); fragte; frage! VI.—A weak verb that has developed strong forms after the analogy of *schlagen* and *tragen*. But the weak forms are better.

Fressen, *eat* (said of animals), fraß, gefressen; frisst or frist, frist; frühe; friß! (fresse!) V.—A compound of *ver* and *essen*.

Frieren, *freeze*, fror, gefroren; frierst; fröre; friere! II.

Gären, *ferment*, gor, gegoren; gierst; göre; [gier!] [IV.]—Usually weak, especially in the figurative sense *be perturbed*.

Geben, *give*, gab, gegeben; giebst (gibst); gäbe, geb! (gib!) V.

Gehen, *go*, ging (gieng), gegangen; gehst; gange (gienge); geh! VII.

Gelten, *be worth*, galt, gegolten; gilst, gilt; gölte or gälte; gilt! (gelte!) III.

-geffen, -gaß, -geffen; -giff(ef)t or -gist, -gist; -gäße; -giß! (-geffe!) V.—Only in *vergeffen*, *forget*.

Gießen, *pour*, goß, gegossen; gieß(ef)t [geußt], gießt [geußt]; göße; gieße! [geuß!] II.

-ginnen, -gann, -gonnen; -ginnst; -gänne or -gönne; -ginne! III.—Only in *beginnen*, *begin*. *Begonnte* for *begann*, occurs in the classics.

Gleichen, *be like*, gleich, geglichen; gleichst; gleiche; gleiche! I.—Usually weak in the transitive sense *make like*.

Gleichen, *shine*, gliß, geglißen; gleiß(ef)t, gleißt; glisse; gleiße! I.—Now usually weak, but little used in any form.

Gleiten, *glide*, glitt, geglitten; gleitest; glitte; gleite! I.—Sometimes weak.

Glimmen, *glimmer*, glomm, geglommen; glimmst; glömmе; glümme! [III].—Sometimes weak.

Graben, *dig*, grub, gegraben; gräbst; grübe; grabe! VI.

Greifen, *seize*, griff, gegriffen; greifst; griffe; greife! I.

Greinen, *grin*, [grinn], [gegrinnen]; greinst; [grinne]; greine! I.—Now weak, and used only in the sense of *whine*, *cry*.

Halten, *hold*, hielt, gehalten; hältst, hält; hielte; halte! VII.

Hängen, *hang*, hing (hieng), gehangen; hängst; hinge (hienge); hange! VII.—There is also a weak *hängen*, which, like *hängen*, is both transitive and intransitive.

Haue, *hew*, hieb, gehauen; haust; hiebe; haue! VII.—*Hieb* is for *hiew*; there is no change of stem, as in *gehen*, *ging*.

Heben, *raise*, hob or hub, gehoben; hebst, hübe or höbe; hebe! [VI.]—The old pple. *gehoben* survives in *erhaben*, *exalted*.

Heißen, *call*, *be called*, hieß, geheißen; heiße(ef)t, heist; hieße; heiße! VII.

Helfen, *help*, half, geholfen; hilfst; hüße or hälfe; hilf! (helfe!) III.

Reißen, *quarrel*, [riß], [ge~~ri~~ssen]; reißt; [riße]; reise! I.—Now always weak.

Reisen, *choose*, for, *geforen*; ries(e)t; röre; rieße! II.—Often weak. Cf. *küren*.

Reichen, *cleave*, *klob*, *gekloben*; reichst; röße; rieße! II.—Usually weak, and little used in any form.

Klimmen, *climb*, *klimm*, *geklimmen*; klimmst; klümme; klimme! [III.]—Often weak.

Klingen, *sound*, *klang*, *geklingen*; klingst; klänge; klinge! III.—Often weak.

Kneifen, *pinch*, kniff, *gekniffen*; kneiffst; kniffe; kneife! I.—Often weak.

Kneipen, *pinch*, [knipp], [geknippen]; kneipst; [knippe]; kneipe! I.—Now always weak. *Kneipen*, *drink*, is weak.

Kommen, *come*, *kam*, *gekommen*; kommst (kömmst); käme; *komm*! [IV.]—*Kömmst*, *kömmt*, are common in the classics, but *kommst*, *kommt*, are to be preferred.

Kreischen, *scream*, *kriech*, *gekriechen*; kreisch(e)t, kreischt; kriech; kriech; *kriech*! I. See under *kreißen*.

Kreißen, *scream*, [kriß], [gekriffen]; kreiß(e)t, kreißt; [kriße]; kreisse! I.—Both *kreißen* and *kreischen*, related words, are often weak, *kreißen* now regularly so.

Kriechen, *creep*, *kroch*, *gekrochen*; kriechst [kreichst]; kröche; krieche! [kreich!] II.

Küren, *choose*, for, *geforen*; kürst; röre; küre! II.—Often weak. The pret. for, of *kießen*, gave rise to the spurious present *küren*.

Laden, *load*, *lud*, *geladen*; lädst, lädt; lüde; lade! VI.—*Laden*, *invite*, was at first weak, but early became confounded with *laden*, *load*. Both now prefer weak forms in the pres., strong in the pret.

Lassen, *let*, *ließ*, *gelassen*; lässest or läßt, läßt; ließe; laß! VII.

Laufen, *run*, *lief*, *gelaufen*; läufst (lauft); ließe; lauf! VII.

Leiden, *suffer*, *litt*, *gelitten*; leidest; litte; leide! I.—*Entleiden* and *verleiden*, from *Leid*, are weak. So is *bemitleiden*, *pity*, from *Mitleid*.

Leihen, *lend*, *lieh*, *geliehen*; leihst; liehe; leihe! I.

Lesen, *read*, *las*, *gelesen*; lies(e)t, ließt; läse; lies! (lese!) V.

Liegen, *lie*, *be situated*, *lag*, *gelegen*; liegst; läge; liege! V.

-lieren, *-lor*, *-loren*; *-lierst*; *-löre*; *-lier*! II.—Only in *verlieren*, *lose*.

-lingen, *-lang*, *-lungen*; 3. sing. *-lingt*; *-länge*. III.—Only in *gelingen*, *succeed*, and *mißlingen*, *fail*. Used impersonally.

Löschen, *go out, put out* (of a light), *löscht, gelöscht*; *löscht(est), löscht*; *lösche*; *löscht*! [III].—Often weak, especially, when transitive. Originally *leschen*, whence *leschest, lescht, lescht*!

Lügen, *lie, speak falsely*, *log, gelogen*; *lügt*; *lüge*; *lüge*! II.

Mahlen, *grind*, [muht], *gemahlen*; [mähst]; [mähle]; *mähle*! VI.—Now weak, except *gemahlen*.

Reiden, *shun*, *mied, gemieden*; *meidest*; *miede*; *meide*! I.

Reifen, *milk*, *molt, gemolken*; *milfst*; *mölle*; *milft*! [III].—Now usually weak.

Reissen, *measure*, *maß, gemessen*; *misstest* or *mißt*, *mißt*; *mäße*; *miß*! (messe!) V.

Rehmen, *take*, *nahm, genommen*; *nimmst*; *nähme*; *nimm*! (nehme!) IV.

-nesen, -nas, -nesen; *-nes(est), -nest*; *-näse*; *-nese*! V.—Only in general, *recover*.

-nießen, -noß, -nossen; *-nieß(est), -nießt*; *-nöße*; *-nieße*! II.—Only in *genießen, enjoy*.

Pfeifen, *whistle*, *pfiß, gepfiffen*; *pfeißt*; *pfiße*; *pfeife*! I.

Pflegen, *attend to*, *pflog [pflog], gepflogen*; *pflegst*; *pflege [pflege]*; *pflege*! [IV].—Weak in the sense of *nurse*, or *be accustomed*.

Preisen, *praise*, *pries, gepriesen*; *preis(est), preist*; *prieße*; *preise*! I.—Sometimes weak.

Quellen, *gush forth*, *quoll, gequollen*; *quillst*; *quölle*; *quill*! [III].—Du *quillst*, er *quillt*, early gave rise to a weak *quillen*. *Quellen, soak*, is weak.

Rächen, *avenge*, [rach], [gerochen]; *rächst*; [röche]; *räche*! [IV].—Now weak.

Raten, *advise*, *riet, geraten*; *rätst, rät*; *riete*; *rate*! VII.—Rarely weak.

Reiben, *rub*, *rieb, gerieben*; *reibst*; *riebe*; *reibe*! I.

Reißen, *tear*, *riß, gerissen*; *reiß(est), reißt*; *risse*; *reisse*! I.

Reiten, *ride*, *ritt, geritten*; *reitest*; *ritte*; *ritte*! I.

Riechen, *smell*, *roch, gerochen*; *riechst [reuchst]*; *röche*; *rieche! [reuch!]* II.

Ringen, *wrestle*, *rang, gerungen*; *ringst*; *ränge [ränge]*; *ringe*! III.—*Ringen, form a ring*, and *beringen, give a ring to*, are weak. So is *umringen, surround*, usually; but *umrang, umrungen* occur.

Rinnen, *run* (of water), *rann, geronnen*; *rinnst*; *räume* or *röume*; *rinne*! III.

Rufen, *call*, *rief, gerufen*; *rufft*; *riefe*; *rufe*! VII.—Rarely weak.

Salzen, *salt*, [fielz], gefalzen. VII.—Now weak, except *gefalzen*.

Saufen, *drink*, [off, ge]offen; [äufst; offe; aufe! II.—Often weak.

Saugen, *suck*, [og, ge]ogen; [augst; öge; auge! II.—Often weak.

Schaffen, *create*, [chuf, ge]chaffen; [chafft; chüfe; chaffe! VI.—*Schaffen*, meaning *work*, *procure*, *command*, is weak.

Schallen, *sound*, [choll, ge]chollen; [challst; chölle; challe! [III].—Now usually weak, except in stately diction. The forms blend two verbs, viz., a weak *schallen* and a now obsolete *schellen*, [chall, ge]chollen.

Schehen, [chah, -]schehen; 3. sing. -[chieht, -]chähe. V.—Only in *geschehen*, *happen*, and there only in 3. sing.

Scheiden, *part*, [chied, ge]chieden; [scheidest; schiebe; scheibe! I.—Weak forms are rare and always transitive. Notice the doublet *beschieden*, *appointed*, but *bescheiden*, *modest*.

Scheinen, *seem*, [chien, ge]chienen; [scheinst; scheine; scheine! I.

Schelten, *scold*, [chalt, ge]cholten; [chiltst, chilt; chölte or chälte; chilt! (schelte! III.—Rarely weak in pres.

Scheren, *shear*, [chor, ge]choren; [chierst; chöre; chier! [IV.].—Often weak.

Schieben, *shove*, [chob, ge]choben; [chiebst; chöbe; chiebe! II.

Schießen, *shoot*, [choß, ge]schossen; [chieß(est) [chueßt], chießt [chueßt]; chöße; chieße! [chueß! II.

Schinden, *flay*, [chund, ge]chunden; [chindest; chünde; chinde! [III].—Rarely weak.

Schlafen, *sleep*, [chlies, ge]chlafen; [schläfst; schlief; schlaf! VII.

Schlagen, *strike*, [chlug, ge]chlagen; [schlägst; schläge; schlage! VI.

Schleichen, *creep*, [chlich, ge]chlichen; [schleichst; schliche; schleiche! I.

Schleifen, *whet*, [chliff, ge]chliffen; [schleifst; chliße; schleife! I.—Weak in the sense of *slip* or *drag*.

Schleiben, *slit*, [chliß, ge]chliffen; [schleib(est), schleift; chliße; schleibe! I.

Schliessen, *slip*, [chloff, ge]chlossen; [schliesst; chlöße; schlief! II.

Schließen, *shut*, [chloß, ge]geschlossen; [schließ(est) [chleußt], chließt [chleußt]; chlöße; chließe! [chleuß! II.

Schlingen, *wind*, [chlang, ge]chlungen; [schlingst; schlänge; schlinge! III.

Schmeißen, *dash*, [chmiß, ge]chmissen; [schmeiß(est), schmeißt; chmisse; chmeiße! I.

Schmelzen, *melt*, [chmolz, ge]chmolzen; [schmilz(est), schmilzt; chmöße; chmilz! [III.].—Often weak, especially when transitive.

Schnauben, *snort*, [chnob, ge]chnoben; [chnaubst; chnöbe; chnaube! II.—Now usually weak, but strong forms occur.

Schneiden, *cut*, [schnitt, geschnitten; schneidest; schnitte; schneide! I.

Schnieben, *snort*, [schnob, geschnoben; schniebst; schnöbe; schniebe! II.
—Now usually weak; a secondary form of schnauben.

Schrauben, *screw*, [schrob, geschroben; schraubst; schröbe; schraube! II.—Originally, and still usually, weak.

Schrecken, *be afraid*, [schraf, [geschroden]; schridst; schräte; schrid! IV.—Often weak, especially when transitive = *frighten*. Most common in erschrecken; erschroden takes the place of geschroden.

Schreiben, *write*, [schrieb, geschrieben; schreibst; schriebe; schreibe! I.

Schreien, *cry*, [schrie, geschrieen; schreist; schree; schreie! I.

Schreiten, *stride*, [schritt, geschritten; schreitest; schritte; schreite! I.

Schroten, *grind*, [schriet], geschroten. VII.—Weak, except geschroten.

Schwären, *fester*, [schwör (schwur), geschworen; schwierst; schwöre (schwüre); schwier! [IV.]—Now usually weak in pres., sometimes so in pret. Ppl. always geschworen.

Schweigen, *be silent*, [schwie, geschwiegen; schweigst; schwiege; schweige! I.—Schweigen, *silence*, is weak.

Schwellen, *swell*, [schwell, geschwollen; schwellst; schwölle; schwill! (schwelle!) [III.]—Weak when transitive.

Schwimmen, *swim*, [schwamm (schwomm), geschwommen; schwimmst; schwämme (schwömmen); schwimme! III.

Schwinden, *vanish*, [schwand [schwund], geschwunden; schwindest; schwände [schwünde]; schwinde! III.

Schwingen, *swing*, [schwang [schwung], geschwungen; schwingst; schwänge [schwünge]; schwingen! III.—Beschwingen, *endow with wings*, is weak.

Schwören, *swear*, [schwör or schwur, geschworen; schwörst; schwüre or schwöre; schwöre! [VI.]—Rarely weak.

Sehen, *see*, [sah, gesehen; siehst; sähe; sieh! (sehe!) V.

Sein, *be*, war, gewesen; bist, ist; wäre; sei! V. (sein replacing wesen).

Sieden, *boil*, [sott, gekottet; siedest; sötte; siebe! II.—Now usually weak; but gekottet as adjective is still common.

Singen, *sing*, [sang [sung], gesungen; singst; sänge [sünge]; singe! III.

Sinken, *sink*, [sank [sunk], gesunken; sinkst; sänte [sünke]; sinke! III.

Sinnen, *think*, [sann, gesonnen; sinnst; sänne; sinne! III.—Sometimes weak. Gesonnen sein = *to intend*; gesinnt sein, *to be minded*.

Sitzen, *sit*, [saß, gelesen; sitzt (es)t, sitzt; säße; sitze! V.

Spalten, *split*, [spalt, gespalten. VII.—Now weak, except gespalten.

Speien, *spit*, spie, gespien; speist; spee; speie! I.—Often weak.

Spinnen, *spin*, spann [spoun], gesponnen; spinnt; spünne or spänne; spinne! III.

Spießen, *split*, spieß, gespiessen; spießt; sprieße; sprieße! I.—Sometimes weak, but rare at best, spalten taking its place.

Sprechen, *speak*, sprach, gesprochen; sprichst; spräche; sprich! (sprech!) IV.

Sprossen, *sprout*, sproß, gesprossen; sprießt; spreußt, sprießt [spreußt]; sproße; sprieße! [spreuß!] II.

Springen, *spring*, sprang [sprung], gesprungen; springst; spränge [spränge]; springe! III.

Stechen, *prick*, stach, gestochen; stichst; stäche; stich! [steche!] IV.

Stechen, *stick*, stak, [gestochen]; stichst; stäke; stich! IV.—Now usually and preferably weak.

Stehen, *stand*, stand [stund], gestanden; stehst; stände or stünde; steh! VI.

Stehlen, *steal*, stahl, gestohlen; stiehlst; stähle or stöhle; stieh! (stehle!) IV.

Steigen, *climb*, stieg, gestiegen; steigst; stiege; steige! I.

Sterben, *die*, starb [sturb], gestorben; stirbst; stürbe or stürbe; stirb! (sterbe!) III.

Stieben, *scatter*, stob, gestoben; stiebst; stöbe; stiebe! II.

Stinken, *stink*, stank, gestunken; stinkst; stänke; stinke! III.

Stoßen, *push*, stieß, gestoßen; stößt; stöße; stoße! VII.

Streichen, *stroke*, strich, gestrichen; streichst; striche; streiche! I.

Streiten, *contend*, stritt, gestritten; streitest; stritte; streite! I.

Thun, *do*, that, gethan; thust; thäte; thu! Irregular.

Tragen, *carry*, trug, getragen; trägst; trüge; trage! VI.—*Beanttragen*, *propose*, and *beauftragen*, *commission*, are not compounds of tragen. Cf. § 343.

Treffen, *hit*, traf, getroffen; triffst; träfe; triff! (treffe!) IV.

Treiben, *drive*, trieb, getrieben; treibst; triebe; treibe! I.

Treten, *tread*, trat, getreten; trittst; träte; tritt! (trete!) V.

Triesen, *drip*, troff, getroffen; triesst (treußt); tröße; tries! [trenf!] II.—Now usually weak.

Trinken, *drink*, trank [trunk], getrunken; trinkst; tränke [trünke]; trinke! III.

Trügen, *cheat*, trog, getrogen; trügst; tröge; trüge! II.

Wachsen, *grow*, wuchß, gewachsen; wächst; wüchse; wachse! VI.—*Wachst*, without umlaut, is rare. The ppl. without *ge* occurs in *halbwachsen*, *half-grown*.

Wägen, *weigh*, wog, gewogen; wägst; wäge; wäge! [II.]—Cf. wiegen and -wegen.

Waschen, *wash*, wusch, gewaschen; wäscht(ef)t, wäscht; wüsch; wasche! VI.—Du wasch(ef)t, er wascht, without umlaut, are rare.

Weben, *weave*, web, gewoben; webst; möbe; webe! VI.—Now usually weak.

-wegen, -wog, -wogen; -wegst; -möge; -wege! [V.]—Only in *bewegen*, *move*, which is weak, except in the sense of *induce*.

Weichen, *recede*, wich, gewichen; weichst; wiche; weiche! I.—*Beichen*, *soften*, is weak.

Weisen, *show*, wies, gewiesen; weis(ef)t, weist; wiese; weise! I.

Werben, *sue*, warb [wur], geworden; wirbst; würde or wärbe; wirb! (werbel) III.

Werden, *become*, ward or wurde, geworden; wirst, wird; würde; werde! III.

Werfen, *throw*, warf [wurf], geworfen; wirfst; würde or wärfe; wirf! (werfe!) III.

Wiegen, *weigh*, wog, gewogen; wiegst; möge; wiege! II.—The same as wägen and -wegen. *Wiegen*, *rock*, is weak.

Winden, *wind*, wand, gewunden; windest; wände; winde! III.—*Winben*, *sniff*, is weak.

-minnen, -wann, -wonnen; -winnt; -wönne or -wänne; winne! III.—Only in *gewinnen*, *win*.

-wirren, in *verwirren*, *confuse*; always weak, but with strong pple. *verworren*, along with *verwirrt*. III.

Reißen, *accuse*, zieh, gezogen; ziehst; ziehe; reiße! I.

Ziehen, *draw*, zog, gezogen; ziehst [zechst]; zöge; ziehe! [zech!] II.

Zwingen, *force*, zwang, gezwungen; zwingst; zwänge; zwing! III.

USE OF THE MODAL AUXILIARIES.

332. While it belongs to lexicography rather than grammar to explain in detail the meanings of words, the modal auxiliaries are of such peculiar idiomatic importance as to justify a departure from the rule in their case. The brief account in § 191 is therefore recapitulated and amplified in the following sections.

333. **Dürfen**. The root-meaning is *need*, in which sense it is used by Luther with a gen.; e. g., *die Gesunden dürfen des Arztes nicht*, *need not a physician* (Luke v, 31). This sense is now given by *bedürfen*.

1. From the meaning *be in want of* it was an easy step to *have occasion for*, as in Lessing's *was darf ich jeden Thoren fragen: wer ist der größte Mann? what need (occasion) have I to ask?* This sense is now given by *brauchen*.

2. From the last meaning came naturally that of *have authority*, hence, *be allowed, be justified in*. This is the usual meaning of *dürfen* in modern German. Sometimes it approaches *können*, or, with a negative, *müssen*, and is to be translated by *may, can, must*, according to the connection. Examples: *ich darf annehmen, I may assume; darf ich bitten? may I ask? ich durfte mich ärgern, I had a right to be annoyed; er ist krank und darf nicht ausgehen, can not, must not, go out (for he may (possibly) not go out, one would say er kann möglicherweise nicht ausgehen); hier bin ich Mensch, hier darf ich's sein, I can be, may be, have the right to be one (G.); ich darf nicht sagen wie, I can not, must not, say how (because propriety forbids), but ich kann nicht sagen wie, I can not say how (because I am unable).*

3. *Dürfen* early became confounded with the now obsolete *turren, dare* (*ich tar, I dare; ich torste, I durst*), whence the occasional meaning of *dare, venture*; e. g., *wer darf mir's ins Gesicht sagen? who dares say it to my face? ich darf behaupten, I dare assert*. But the student should, in general, be wary of translating *dürfen* by *dare*.

4. The pret. subj. *dürfte* is used in mild expressions of probability; e. g., *man dürfte manches einwenden, one might make many objections; diese Mittel dürften sich nicht bewähren, these means may not prove effective; das dürfte der Fall sein, may be the case*.

334. Können. The original meaning, *to know*, is preserved in a few phrases, mostly of the school; e. g., *kannst du die Regel (das Spiel, den Katechismus)? do you know the rule (the game, the catechism)? Können Sie Deutsch? do you know German?* Here no verb is understood, though it may seem natural to supply one.

1. Very often it expresses simple ability, being then = *vermögen*; e. g., *du kannst ja alles, Tell, you can do everything you know (S.); wenn ich etwas auf dich könnte, if I could influence you somewhat (G.); was kann die Welt mir wohl gewähren? what can the world offer me, pray (G.)?*

2. Most commonly it denotes possibility, variously conditioned by circumstances, inclination, the nature of things; e. g., *ich kann nicht hohe Worte machen (G.), I can not make fine phrases (it being contrary to my nature); kann das natürlich geschehen? can that happen naturally? das kann der Fall sein, that may be the case (much the same as das mag der Fall sein).*

a. If the conditioning circumstances imply a right, or permission, können may take the place of dürfen; e. g., nun könnt ihr hereinkommen, *now you can (may) come in*; kein Kaiser kann, was unser ist, verschenten, *no emperor can (has the right to) give away what is ours* (S.).

3. Akin to the last is that meaning which implies that there is good reason for the action; e. g., Sie können mir glauben, *you may well believe me*; darauf kannst du stolz sein, *you have reason to be proud of that*; in diesem Sinne kannst du's wagen, *you can afford to venture it* (G.).

a. Hence können may convey a request, a suggestion, a mild command or remonstrance. Thus (to a child): kannst du nicht einmal zu mir kommen, *come and see me, won't you*; (to a servant): Sie können mir eine Flasche Wein bringen, *you may bring me, etc.*; ich könnte später zurückkehren, *I might return later (I suppose)*; so etwas können Sie glauben? *can you believe such a thing?*

335. Mögen. The radical meaning is *to be able* and this sense is occasionally met with in modern German; e. g., da keiner dich ergründen mag, *since none can fathom thee* (G.); du magst es prächtig malen, *you can (i. e., you are the man to) paint it gloriously* (Geibel). But this sense is now for the most part given by können, with which mögen is sometimes pleonastically associated; e. g., was ich kann und mag, *as much as ever I can*.

1. More common, but still not the most common, is the meaning of possibility, conditioned by outward circumstances; e. g., ohn' ihn mag ich auf Erden, mag dort nicht selig werden, *without him I can not be happy* (Bürger); was mag wohl drinne sein? *what can be in it, pray* (G.)? er möchte ein böses Gewissen haben, *he possibly had a bad conscience* (L.); wie möchte das zu erweisen sein? *how could that be proved?*

a. Möchte is common in narrative to denote a rough approximation; e. g., ungefähr zwei Monate möchte ich so zugebracht haben, *I may have spent about two months thus*.

b. Out of the general meaning of possibility grows the permissive or concessive force of mögen; e. g., ein Ding mag noch so narriſch sein, *however foolish a thing may be*; mag er kommen oder gehen, was ſchier's mich, *he may come or go, what do I care* (L.). As thus used in indirect discourse it may denote a mild command; e. g., ſie rief, er möge gehen, wohin er wolle, *she called to him to go where he chose*.

2. The subjunctive forms may serve as a periphrasis for a potential or optative mode; e. g., die Straße wird beſtreut, damit die Pferde nicht ausgleiten mögen, *that the horses may not slip* (G.); des Himmels Heere mögen dich bededen, *may heaven's hosts protect thee* (U.); möchte ich doch

im stände sein, *would that I were able* (G.). Note that in the first two of these examples a simple optative subjunctive would be undistinguishable from the indicative.

3. The usual office of *mögen* now is to denote a wish, choice or preference; e. g., sie mag sich gerne putzen, *she likes to adorn herself* (G.); magst du ein redlich Wort von mir vernehmen? *do you want to hear an honest word* (S.)? ich möchte wissen, *I should like to know*; ich möchte bittere Thränen weinen, *I would fain weep* (G.); es möchte kein Hund so länger leben, *no dog would care*, etc. (G.). The infinitive is often omitted; e. g., behalten Sie es für sich, ich mag es nicht, *I do not care for it*; warum magst du, was du nicht vermagst? *why do you wish to do what you can not do?*

336. *Müssen*. In the oldest German *müssen* usually means *to have liberty, to be permitted*, i. e., it corresponds to the modern *dürfen*. This sense appears now only in negative sentences, where *müssen* is sometimes interchangeable with *dürfen*; e. g., das mußt du nicht thun, *you must not do that*; ihr müßt nur nicht erschrecken, *you must not be frightened* (S.).

1. The modern *müssen* generally implies a constraint from without, as of circumstances, authority, duty, logic; e. g., durch diese hohle Gasse muß er kommen (S.), *he must come* (there being no other way); Sigeth muß fallen, *Sigeth must fall*; ich muß gestehen, *I must confess*; ich mußte lachen, *I had to laugh*; ihr müßtet euch schweigend fügen, *you should have yielded* (S.), = ihr hättet euch fügen sollen.

2. Less often it denotes certainty, assurance; e. g., dieser Mensch muß ein Mörder sein, *'no doubt this man is a murderer'* (Acts xxviii, 4); man muß keinen Philosophen kennen, wenn man glaubt, *one must needs be a stranger to philosophers*, etc. (L.); es müßte der Teufel dahinter stehen, *the devil would needs be in it* (G.).

3. It may denote that something is so fated, ordained; or it may present a voluntary action as due to constraint; e. g., weh mir, was muß ich hören? *alas, what must I hear?* warum mußtest du mich verlassen? *why did you have to leave me?* ich setzte mich hin, um zu arbeiten, und war in guter Laune; nun aber mußte ein langweiliger Besuch mich stören, *a tedious call had to interrupt me*, i. e., *it was my fate to be interrupted*.

337. *Sollen*. The radical meaning of *sollen*, to which *Schuld* is a verbal abstract, is that of obligation, duty. The pret. subj., with present force, corresponds to English *should, ought to*, while the pres. ind. may denote a peremptory command; e. g., er sollte sich schämen, *he*

ought to be ashamed; du sollst nicht stehlen, *thou shalt not steal*. So in toasts; e. g., der König soll leben! *long live the king!*

1. More often, however, sollen denotes not that something *ought to be*, but that it *is to be*, in accordance with another's will or decree; e. g., er soll gleich kommen, *he shall come at once* (i. e., *I promise that he shall*); die Wahl sollte bald gehalten werden, *the election was soon to be held*. Thus often in confident promises; e. g., in deine Hütte soll der Schweizer wallen, *to thy hut the Swiss shall journey* (S.).

a. Hence sollen corresponds to English *shall* in deliberative questions; e. g., was soll ich thun? *what shall I do?* *what am I to do?* was soll der Mensch verlangen? *what shall man desire* (G.)?

b. Similar to the last is the use of sollen in was soll der Hut? *what is the hat meant for* (S.)? was soll es bedeuten? *what is it meant to signify?* i. e., *what construction is to be put upon it?*

2. Very often it is used in reporting on hearsay, or on the authority or claim of others; e. g., das Buch soll sehr interessant sein, *is said to be very interesting*; soll (or sollte) das möglich sein? *can that be possible?* i. e., *shall (or should) one be expected to believe it?*

3. Now and then sollte (pret. subj.) has about the force of the conditional; e. g., ich sollte meinen, *I should think*; man sollte glauben, *one would believe*.

338. **Sollen** denotes etymologically a will or intention on the part of the subject; e. g., ich will euch lehren Gesichter machen, *I will teach you to make faces* (G.); du willst uns gar noch grob begegnen? *do you actually mean to insult us* (G.)?

a. Very often, however, it denotes a wish rather than a will, especially if there is no infinitive; e. g., was wollt ihr da? *what do you want there?* er will noch Dank, *he even wants thanks*. Still fainter is the radical meaning in wollen Sie so gut sein, *will you be so kind* (polite request); wir wollen einen Papst erwählen, *we will choose a pope* (proposal).

1. Since the intent is apt to be followed by action, wollen often comes to have the meaning *to be on the point of*; e. g., er will gehen, *he is about to go* (common in stage directions); die Uhr schrillte (screeched) wie immer, wenn sie eben schlagen wollte, *whenever it was about to strike*; der Krieg schien sich nun auf deutschen Boden spielen zu wollen, *seemed about to play* (S.).

2. Specially important is the idiomatic use of wollen with non-personal subjects, which strictly can have no will. The shades of meaning thus given are many and subtle; e. g., das will euch nicht behagen, *that won't suit you*, i. e., *doesn't suit you at all* (G.); das will nichts sagen, *that*

means nothing; es will eben verlauten, *it is just being noised abroad*; es will ohnehin regnen, *it is bound to rain any way*; das Buch will studiert sein, *the book must be studied* (cf. § 344, 1).

3. Wollen often implies a claim, an attitude, a seeming intention, on the part of the subject; e. g., willst heller sehen als deine edeln Väter? *dost claim to see more clearly* (S.)? er will es gehört haben, *he claims to have heard*; ich will es nicht bemerkt haben, *I will act as if I had not noticed it*; ich will es gern gelogen haben, *I am ready to be called a liar for saying it*; ich such' ihn überall, allein er will mir nicht begegnen, *he is bound not to meet me, seems bent on not meeting me* (G.); wir warteten lange auf ihn, da er aber nicht kommen wollte, etc., *but since he didn't seem inclined to come*; mit der Wahl wollte es immer mehr ernst werden, *it was bent on becoming*, i. e., *the prospect seemed, more and more serious*.

a. Care must be taken in all cases to avoid confounding wollen with a mere auxiliary of the future; es will mir nicht einleuchten, *I do not understand it at all*, is different from es wird mir nie einleuchten, *I shall never understand it*; er will mir nicht begegnen, in the above example, from er wird mir nicht begegnen, *he will not meet me*. Nevertheless wollen sometimes approaches werden pretty closely; e. g., ich weiß nicht, was das werden will, *I do not know what will come of it* (werden wird would be cacophonous).

4. Notice finally the use of the subjunctive in das wolle Gott nicht, *God forbid*; wolle Gott, daß, *would to God that*; ich wollte lieber nichts davon wissen, which may mean *I had rather know nothing of it*, as well as *I preferred to know*; wie wollte es auch zu euren Ohren kommen? *how should it come to your ears* (G.)?

IMPERSONAL VERBS.

339. The Personal and the Impersonal Construction. With certain verbs there is a choice between a personal and an impersonal form of expression; e. g., between es dauert mich and ich bedaure, *I am sorry*; between mich friert and ich friere, *I am cold*.

1. In these cases the impersonal form properly denotes an involuntary experience, the personal a voluntary activity of the subject; thus mir träumte, als stünde ich, *I dreamed (the dream came to me) that I stood* (G.); er träumt von einer Palme, *he is dreaming of a palm-tree* (Heine); mich hungert, *I am hungry*, but er hungert aus Geiz, *he goes hungry from avarice*. Still the distinction is often ignored in practice; thus Grimm writes damit ihr nicht friert and damit euch nicht friere, with *precisely the same sense*.

340. *Es giebt*, with object in the accusative, is used in the sense of *there is*, if the object is plural, *there are*; e. g., *es giebt was Neues*, *there is something new*; *heute wird's noch ein Gewitter geben*, *there will be a shower yet to-day*; o, *giebt es Geister in der Luft*, *if there are spirits in the air* (G.).

1. On the *es* of this phrase cf. § 303, 1, a. Since the pronoun denotes a general situation, *es giebt* should not be used if the object is a concrete thing definitely limited in time or place. Thus one would not say *es giebt einen Dieb* (but *es ist ein Dieb*) *im Hause*, *there is a thief in the house*; not *es giebt* (but *es sind*) *10 Mark in dem Beutel*, *there are 10 marks in the purse*. The object is apt to be a neuter pronoun, a plural, an abstract, an infinitive; e. g., *was giebt's?* *what's up?* *what's the matter* (S.); *es giebt im Menschenleben Augenblicke*, *there are moments*, etc. (S.); *es muß auch solche Ränze geben*, *there must be such fellows* (G.); *hier giebt's zu thun*, *here is work to do* (G.); *hier giebt's zu unterscheiden*, *here there is a distinction to be made* (L.); *was giebt's zu essen?* *what is there to eat?*

a. The use of the nom. after *es giebt*, as in *es giebt frischer Hering*, *there is fresh herring*, is provincial. So, too, is the use of *geben* for *giebt* when the object is plu.; e. g., *er ist ein Ranz, wie's mehr noch geben*, *such as there are many more* (G.).

COMPOUND VERBS.

341. The Adverbial Prefixes which form separable compounds are as follows, the * marking those that may be inseparable:

<i>ab</i> , off, down.	<i>entzwei</i> , in two.	<i>ob</i> , over, upon.
<i>an</i> , at, on.	<i>entgegen</i> , toward.	* <i>über</i> , over.
<i>auf</i> , up.	<i>fort</i> , away, forth.	* <i>um</i> , around.
<i>aus</i> , out.	<i>gegen</i> , against.	* <i>unter</i> , under.
<i>bei</i> , by, with.	<i>in(ne)</i> , in.	<i>vor</i> , before.
<i>bevor</i> , before.	<i>heim</i> , home.	* <i>wieder</i> , again.
<i>da(r)</i> , there.	<i>her</i> , hither.	<i>weg</i> , away.
<i>dazwischen</i> , between.	<i>hin</i> , thither.	<i>zu</i> , to.
* <i>durch</i> , through.	<i>hinter</i> , behind.	<i>zurück</i> , back.
<i>ein</i> , into.	<i>mit</i> , with.	<i>zusammen</i> , together.
<i>empor</i> , up.		

a. To these must be added a number of compound particles formed by combining some two of the above words, the compounds of *da(r)*, *her* and *hin* being especially numerous; e. g., *davon*, off; *dahin*, thither;

herauf, *up here*; herein, *in here*; hinab, *down there*; hinüber, *over there*; einher, *along*; umher, *around*; zuvor, *before*; überein, *in accord*; voraus, *in advance*.

1. Bevor hardly occurs as separable prefix except in bevorstehen, *impend*.—Da occurs in dableiben, dastehen, but is rare, dar being preferred, as in darbieten, darreichen, darstellen. In composition with another particle da is preferred before consonants, dar before vowels; thus dabei, damit, but daran, daraus.—Gegen and in are hardly used alone, their places being taken by entgegen, and ein or inne.

2. Of the separable prefixes, some, as ab, ein, empor, fort, heim, weg, hin and her and their compounds, are used only in composition with verbs or in the predicate after sein; while others are in use as prepositions or as ordinary adverbs. Distinguish between the compound davonkommen, in für diesmal kommst du so davon, *for this once you shall get off thus* (G.), and the simple verb kommen modified by the adverb davon, in ich bin eben davon gekommen, *I have just come from it* (e. g., from the concert).

3. As to compounds of durch, über, um, unter, wieder, separable composition accents the idea of the prefix and is apt to be preferred if the meaning is literal, while inseparable composition is associated more with figurative meanings; e. g., unsern Zustand hatte sie längst durchblickt, *she had long since seen through* (i. e., *comprehended*) *our condition* (G.), but ich nahm ein Fernrohr und blickte durch, *I took a spy-glass and looked through*; die Kälte durchdringt das ganze Haus, *permeates the whole house*, but das Dach war morisch und das Wasser drang durch, *the water pressed through*; der Kutscher hat ein Kind überfahren, *ran over a child*, but er hat uns übergefahren, *he drove us over* (e. g., *over the bridge*).

a. In many cases, however, the two modes of composition are used interchangeably without perceptible difference of meaning; thus Goethe writes: am 29. durchging ich die Rolle, *I went through the rôle*, and in the next sentence: ich ging dieselbe Rolle durch.

342. Phrase-Compounds. By this name we designate those compounds in which the first part (the separable prefix) is an adjective, a noun, or a prepositional phrase. They may be divided into three groups, as follows:

1. Compounds of adjective and verb, the adjective having a factitive sense; e. g., bloßstellen, *expose*; festhalten, *hold fast*; freisprechen, *acquit*; hochachten, *esteem*; losgehen, *go off*; totschlagen, *kill*; wahrnehmen, *perceive*; weismachen, *hoax*. These and some others follow the ordinary rules of separable composition; thus festhalten, hielt fest, festgehalten.

a. But a few such compounds are inflected like a simple stem; e. g., lieblosen, *caress*, lieblosste, geliebtest. So also weisagen and wahrsagen, *prophecy*. Like the latter are also certain quasi-compounds derived from stems already compounded; as frühstücken, *breakfast* (from Frühstück), frühstückte, gefrühstückt; langweilen, *bore* (from Langweile); frohloden, *rejoice*; rechtfertigen, *justify*.

2. Compounds of noun and verb, the noun being the object; e. g., achtgeben, *heed*; danken, *thank*; fehlschlagen, *miscarry*; glückwünschen, *congratulate*; hochhalten, *hold court*; höhnen, *mock*; höhnsprechen, *defy*; lobfingen, *praise*; preisgeben, *give over*. These and some others follow the rules of separable composition; thus teilnehmen, *participate*, nahm teil, teilgenommen. But höhnen admits of both höhndete and lachte höhnt.

a. Other such compounds are inflected like a simple stem, a strong verb becoming weak; e. g., brandschlagen, *levy tribute*; lobhüdeln, *flatter fulsomely*; lustwandeln, *walk for pleasure*; mutmaßen, *conjecture*; radebrechen, *torture*; wetterleuchten, *lighten*; willfahren, *gratify*; thus zu lustwandeln, lustwandelte, gelustwandelst; zu radebrechen, radebrechte, geradebrecht. Like these again are certain quasi-compounds, as argwöhnen, *suspect* (from Argwohn); brandmarken, *stigmatize* (from Brandmarke); handhaben (handhabte, gehandhabt), *handle*; hofmeistern, *play the pedant with*; ratschlagen (ratschlagte, geratschlagt), *take counsel*; wechlagen, *lament*; wetteifern, *emulate*.

b. Whether the separated noun of such compounds is to be written with a capital, or not, will depend upon how far it has lost its substantive character. The matter is not yet very strictly regulated; thus while the rules prescribe nahm teil and saub statt, they also prescribe sagte Dank. Formerly all such nouns were given a capital, as they still must be if qualified by an adjective; thus ich nahm daran teil, but ich nahm daran keinen Teil. For such matters the wisest must consult the official rules (see Appendix I), or else Duden's *Orthographisches Wörterbuch*.

c. Numerous compounds of a verb with a noun or adjective admit of use only as participial adjectives or substantive infinitives; e. g., fruchtbringend, *fruitful*; sinnbethörend, *sense-distracting*; rotblühend, *red-blooming*; das Atemholen, *the drawing of the breath*. But there are no verbs, fruchtbringen, atemholen, etc.

3. Compounds of prepositional phrase and verb, as auseinandersetzen, *explain*; durcheinanderwerfen, *jumble together*.

a. Here may be noticed a numerous class of verbal phrases which are in all respects separable compounds, except that phrase and verb are not written as one word in the inf. and perf. pple. Their spelling is, again, in a very unsettled state. Examples are: zuliebe thun, *do for the love of*; von statten gehen, *go off*; zu stande (or zustande) kommen, *come to pass*; in stand (or instand, also in Stand) setzen, *put in position*; zu Grunde gehen, *go to ruin*.

343. Compounds of Compounds. These always have the first prefix separable, as in anerkennen, *recognize*, auferziehen, *bring up*. Seeming exceptions are not really compounds, but are derived from nouns; as beauftragen, *commission* (from Auftrag); benachrichtigen, *apprise* (from Nachricht); verabscheuen, *abhor* (from Abscheu). Such verbs are weak and inseparable; thus beauftragte, beauftragt.

1. While verbs doubly compounded are regularly separable (auferziehen, erzog auf), there are some of them that are avoided in forms where separation would be in order; e. g., auferstehen, *rise from the dead*; auferlesen, *select*; einverleiben, *embody*. One can say er ist auferstanden, or als er auferstand, but not er erstand auf. Some writers even prefer er anerkannte to er erkannte an.

USE OF THE PASSIVE VOICE.

344. Werden and Sein. The true passive with werden denotes an activity, the quasi-passive with sein a state; e. g., es wird behauptet, *it is asserted*; dorthin wurde ich gezogen, *I was drawn thither* (G.); sein gepudertes Haar war in eine runde Locke aufgesteckt, *was fastened up into a round mass* (G.); der Entschluß war gefaßt, *the resolution was formed*, i. e., *had been previously formed* (G.); diese ist teils auf Felsen gebaut, *is built partly on rocks* (G.).

a. Such a form as ich bin gezwungen, *I am compelled*, has reference, then, to the state of constraint in which I find myself, whereas ich werde gezwungen implies an agent. Ich bin gezwungen forms a perf. ich bin gezwungen gewesen, *I was constrained*.

1. In old German sein was used as auxiliary of the passive, and survivals of this usage are still often met with; e. g., in the inv., sei

gelobt regularly takes the place of werde gelobt. So also one says *seid gegrüßt*, not *werdet gegrüßt*, *be greeted*, and *laß es dir gesagt sein*, for *be assured*. Instead of *werde überredet*, for *be persuaded*, usage prefers *laß dich überreden*. Noteworthy is the use of *sein* after *wollen* = *müssen*; e. g., *das Buch will nicht nur durchblättert, sondern studiert sein*, *must be not only perused but studied*.

2. The pple. *geboren*, *born*, is used with *sein* in speaking of living persons, with *werden* in speaking of the dead: *ich bin geboren*, *I was born*, but *Luther wurde geboren*, *Luther was born*. *War geboren* is properly a pluperfect in sense.

3. The clumsy forms ending in *worden sein* are very rare in the classics.

345. Notes on the Passive Construction. The fundamental use of the passive is to furnish a form of statement in which the action itself, or the object of it, is made more prominent than the active agent; thus in *der Blitz traf den Baum*, *lightning struck the tree*, one thinks primarily of the lightning, but in *der Baum wurde vom Blitz getroffen*, of the tree.

a. It follows, therefore, that the passive is out of place if the connection shows that the agent is the real subject of thought.

1. With verbs that take two accusatives in the active, both accusatives become nominatives in the passive; e. g., *man nannte ihn Wilhelm den Verschwiegenen*, *they called him William the Silent*, becomes *er wurde Wilhelm der Verschwiegene genannt*.

a. After *lehren*, *teach*, the acc. of the thing-object is sometimes retained, but the construction is rare. Instead of *ich wurde die Musik gelehrt*, *I was taught music*, one says *ich wurde in der Musik unterrichtet*, or *die Musik wurde mir gelehrt*.

2. Exceptions to the general rule that intransitive verbs can only be used impersonally in the passive (§ 198), occur in talk and even in the classics; e. g., *von Jammer gefolgt*, *schreitet das Unglück*, *misfortune strides on followed by wailing* (S.). Here and elsewhere *gefolgt von* imitates the Fr. *suivi de*. Other verbs so used occasionally are *helfen*, *glauben*, *helfen*, *schmeicheln*; but it is better to follow the rule and to say *mir wurde geholfen*, *geglaubt*, *geholfen*, *geschmeichelt* and not *ich wurde geholfen*, etc.

SYNTAX OF NUMBER AND PERSON.

346. Congruence of number. A verb agrees with its subject in number.

a. Singular titles may take a plural verb; e. g., Eure Majestät (Exzellenz, Hoheit, Durchlaucht) haben befohlen, *Your Majesty (Excellence, Highness, Serene Highness) has ordered*; Herr Doktor wurden catechisiert, *the doctor was catechized* (G.). Except in ceremonious address to high dignitaries this construction is no longer common.

1. A collective noun takes a singular verb unless there is a plural appositive; e. g., die Menge macht den Künstler irr' und scheu, *the crowd makes the artist confused and shy* (G.); das Volk ist frei (G.); but eine Menge Gäste waren versammelt, *a number of guests were assembled*. Cf., however, Schiller's das junge Volk der Schnitter fliegt zum Tanz.

2. After the expletive es the verb takes the number of the logical subject; e. g., es reden und träumen die Menschen viel, *men talk and dream much* (S.).

a. After es, dieß, daß, in expressions of identity, the verb takes the number of the predicate noun; e. g., das sind Taschenspielerstücke, *those are juggler's tricks* (G.).

3. Two or more connected subjects require a plural verb only when they denote different persons or things that do not form a unity; otherwise—and the cases are very much more common than in English—the verb stands in the singular; e. g., der König und die Kaiserin . . . machten endlich Friede, *the king and the empress finally made peace* (Bürger); der ganze Himmel und Juno erstaunten darüber, *all Olympus and Juno were astonished at it* (L.); Altar und Kirche prangt in Festesglanz, *altar and church are bright with festal splendor* (S.); der Strom, das Meer, das Salz, gehört dem König (S.); und Fels und Meer wird fortgerissen (G.).

a. Very often, especially in poetry, position favors the singular verb, it being made to agree with the nearest subject; e. g., Meister rührt sich und Gefelle, *master and man bestir themselves*.

b. Singular subjects connected by oder, weder . . . noch, nicht allein . . . sondern auch, sowohl . . . als, take a singular verb.

347. Congruence of Person. A verb agrees with its subject in person.

1. Where there are subjects of different person, the general rule is that the plural verb stands in the first person, if the first person is represented among the subjects, otherwise in the second; e. g., *was du und ich dereinst im Himmel hoffen*, *what you and I hope for one day in heaven* (S.); *du und er seid beide im Irrtum*, *you and he are both in error*.

a. If the verb precedes, or if the subjects are connected by *oder*, *weber* . . . *noch*, *nicht allein* . . . *sondern auch*, *sowohl* . . . *als*, the verb is apt to agree with the nearest subject; e. g., *in dieser Sache irrst du und ich*, *in this matter you and I are mistaken* (Blatz); *entweder du oder ich muß sterben*, *either you or I must die*.

USE OF THE TENSES.

348. The following account of the tenses must be understood as referring primarily to the tenses of the indicative mode. In the other modes the time-idea is more or less complicated with other matters; so that the use of tenses in these modes can best be dealt with in treating of the modes themselves.

1. There is nothing in German corresponding to the English 'progressive' forms, *I am going*, *I have been thinking*, etc. Where a pres. ppl. occurs after *sein*, it is felt as a descriptive adjective, as in *sie ist reizend*, *she is charming*; *das ist empörend*, *that is revolting*. In such a case, therefore, as *diese Entwicklung ist schon abh. beginnend* (Gr.), the meaning is not *is beginning*, but *is in an incipient stage*. Cf., however, Lessing's *er ist die Gräfin hier nicht vermutend*, *he is not expecting the countess*, which approaches pretty close to the English usage.

349. The Present is the tense of present time and of general statements true without regard to time; e. g., *die Sonne tönt nach alter Weise*, *the sun makes music as of old* (G.); *Genießen macht gemein*, *pleasure makes vulgar* (G.).

1. As in English, and even more freely, the pres. may take the place of a fut., to denote a present purpose, or a confident expectation; e. g., *entschuldigen Sie mich einen Augenblick*, *ich bin gleich zurück*, *I shall be back directly*; *warte nur*, *ich frieg' ihn schon*, *just wait, I'll get him* (G.).

2. The historical present for the preterite is common in vivid narration; e. g., *plötzlich wurden die Pferde angehalten*,

drei Räuber überfallen den Wagen und verlangen von dem Reisenden sein Geld, *suddenly the horses were stopped, three robbers attack the carriage and demand of the traveler his money* (Auerbach).

3. For the English perfect, denoting that which has been and still is, German uses the present, generally with an adverb of time; e. g., der arme Knabe wartet lange, *has been waiting long* (G.); schon viele Tage seh' ich's schweigend an, *these many days I have been noticing* (S.).

4. For the pres. as mild imperative, see § 363, 3, c.

350. The Preterite refers to a particular past time defined by the connection. It is thus the tense for narrating past events in their relation to one another; e. g., es war einmal ein junger Kerl, der ließ sich als Soldat anwerben, hielt sich brav und war immer der Tapferste, wenn es blaue Bohnen regnete, *there was once a young fellow who enlisted as a soldier, behaved bravely and was always foremost when it was raining bullets* (Gr.).

1. Just as in Eng., the pret. may denote a repeated or a continued past action. The former is called the 'iterative,' the latter the 'durative' pret. Examples: wenn ich so saß bei einem Gelag, *whenever I was sitting thus at a drinking bout* (G.); Goethe kümmerte sich wenig um die Politik, *cared little for politics*.

2. For the distinction between the pret. and the perf. see § 351.

351. The Perfect denotes primarily a present status that has resulted from a past action; e. g., ich habe mir ein Pferd gekauft, *I have bought me a horse*, i. e., *I have a horse got by buying*; Christ ist erstanden, *Christ has arisen*, i. e., *is now on high* (G.).

1. Very frequently, however, the perfect is used, without any implied reference to present time, to report an isolated past occurrence. In such cases English employs the preterite; e. g., Shakespeare hat etwa vierzig Dramen geschrieben, *S. wrote some forty plays* (English permits *has written* only in speaking of a living person); es ist dir recht

geschehen, *it served you right*; wo ist er? ich hab' ihn rufen hören, *where is he? I heard him call* (G.).

a. The perf., then, is the tense for reporting isolated or unconnected facts, while the pret. is the tense for narrating events in their connection. With the pret. one thinks of the time when the thing occurred, with the perf. (save as it may be accompanied by an adverb of time), only of the fact that it occurred.

b. But in the written language the pret. encroaches largely upon the domain of the perf., and must very often be translated by the Eng. perf. Thus Steffens' autobiography is called *Was ich Erlebte*, i. e., *what I have experienced*. Cf. Goethe's *was ich irrte, was ich strebte, was ich litt und was ich lebte*, sind nur Blumen hier im Strauß, *what I have done amiss*, etc. In poetry the two tenses are often used interchangeably; e. g., *ich hatte selbst oft grüßenhafte Stunden, doch solchen Trieb hab' ich noch nie empfunden*, *I have often had crotchety hours myself, but I have never yet felt*, etc. (G.); *da lief ich frisch hinzu, so wie ich war, und mit der Art hab' ich ihm's Bad gesegnet*, *then I ran up quickly just as I was and with my axe I blessed his bath* (S.).

c. In the spoken language, on the other hand, especially that of the uneducated, the perf. encroaches on the domain of the pret. In some of the South-German dialects the pret. is practically extinct, the perf. having taken its place. Even good literature is affected to some extent by this tendency.

352. The Pluperfect denotes a past status resulting from a previous action, or an action completed prior to some past time. It corresponds closely to the English pluperfect; e. g., *ich hatte Holz gefällt im Wald*, *I had been cutting wood in the forest* (S.); *er war mit König Friedrichs Macht gezogen in die Prager Schlacht*, *had marched to the battle of Prague* (Bürger).

353. The Future and Future Perfect correspond in the main to the English tenses of like name; e. g., *wird uns das Reich beschützen?* *will the empire protect us* (S.)? *er wird seine Arbeit bald vollendet haben*, *he will soon have completed his work*.

1. By a usage not exactly paralleled in English the future may denote a present, and the future perfect a past, probability ('presumptive' future); e. g., *es wird Schnee*

befannt sein, *it is probably known to you*; du wirst gehört haben, *you have probably heard*.

2. After wenn the fut. is apt to be replaced by the pres., and the fut. perf. by the perf., just as in Eng.; e. g., wenn einst ich tot bin . . . nun du, mein Auge, . . . nun ausgeweint hast, *when some day I am dead and thou, mine eye, hast done with weeping* (Kl.).

3. For the fut. as mild imperative see § 363, 3, c.

USE OF THE MODES.

354. The indicative corresponds closely to the English indicative and presents, as a mode, no peculiar difficulties. On the other hand the subjunctive, which is all but extinct in English, is fully preserved in German, and has a variety of special uses which require particular attention.

THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

355. **Classification of Uses.** While the indicative is the mode of actuality, the subjunctive is, broadly speaking, the mode of contingency; it denotes that something is commanded, desired, possible, contrary to fact, reported, thought, or asked. Its various uses may be grouped under five general heads, viz.: the imperative subjunctive, the optative subjunctive, the potential subjunctive, the unreal subjunctive, and the dependent subjunctive.

1. For the name 'subjunctive' the Germans employ 'conjunctive' (Konjunktiv). The mode is named in both languages, from its use in expressing a 'subjoined', 'conjoined', i. e. dependent idea (the fifth of the above-named uses). This is upon the whole the most important and characteristic function of the mode. It is, however, of frequent occurrence in sentences that are not formally dependent, while, on the other hand, any of the first four varieties may occur in a dependent sentence.

356. **The Imperative Subjunctive** denotes a command and is usually translatable by *let*. It occurs in the first and third persons (rarely in the first singular), where it fills out the inflection of the imperative; e. g., edel sei der Mensch, *let man be noble* (G.); doch gehen wir, *but let us go* (G.); gesteh' ich's nur, *just let me confess* (G.).

a. Here belongs the *inv.* with *Sei*, — haben Sie die Güte, *have the kindness*, being in its origin = *let them have the kindness* (§ 301. 3).

1. A special variety of the imperative subjunctive is the so-called 'concessive' subjunctive, which concedes a proposition to get a basis for some further statement; e. g., *es sei Fabel oder Geschichte, be it (whether it be) truth or fable* (L.); *ich bin bei dir, du seist auch noch so ferne, I am with thee, however distant thou mayest be* (G.).

a. The concessive subjunctive followed by *denn* or *dann* has acquired, through the omission of the old negative particle *ne*, the force of a negative condition translatable by *unless*; i. e., *es ne sei denn, be it not so then*, became *es sei denn, unless it be*. Examples: *und kommt man hin . . . erhält man nichts, man bringe denn was hin, one gets nothing unless one brings something there* (G.); *doch eher stimm' ich nicht mit ein, es regne denn in meinen Wein, unless it rains in my wine* (L.).

357. The Optative Subjunctive denotes a wish; e. g., *umsonst sei all dein Ringen, may all thy striving be in vain* (U.); *wären wir nur den Berg vorbei, if we were only past the hill* (G.); *des Himmels Heere mögen dich bedecken, may heaven's hosts protect thee* (U.).

1. The present wishes for what is possible and is expected to happen, the preterite that what is so were not so, or *vice versa*, and the pluperfect that what was not so had been so, or *vice versa*; e. g., *seine Seele ruhe in Frieden, may his soul rest in peace*; *wüßte ich nur, did I but know* (but I do not know); *hätte ich nur gewußt, had I but known* (but I did not know); *wär' ich weit von hier, would I were far from here* (S.); *o, wäre ich . . . entseelt dahingefunken, would that I had fallen lifeless* (G.).

a. As thus used in the pret. and plup. this subjunctive is practically identical with the unreal subjunctive in conditional clauses. In each of the above examples a conclusion can be supplied in thought.

358. The Potential Subjunctive expresses possibility or contingency. It is usually to be translated by *may, might, could, would*; e. g., *er wär' ein Narr, he would be a fool* (G.); *ein heiliger Wille lebt, wie auch der menschliche wollte, however the*

human will may waver (S.); ich hätte gern nur immer fortgewacht, *I should have liked to keep right on sitting up* (G.).

1. Here belongs, as a special variety, the so-called 'diplomatic' subjunctive, used in modest or tentative expressions of opinion; e. g., ich dünkte, *I should think* (a modest substitute for ich denke); nicht daß ich wüßte, *not that I am aware of*; es wäre wohl an der Zeit, *it might perhaps be in order*; das dürfte gefährlich sein, *that might be dangerous*.

2. Another variety is the 'dubitative' subjunctive, used in questions and exclamations. It usually expresses a real certainty or assurance under the form of a pretended doubt or hesitation, or else it denotes a pretended surprise that what really is (or was) so, should be (or should have been) so; e. g., wer wüßte das nicht? *who wouldn't know that?* was hätten wir zu fürchten? *what should we have to fear?* da ließe sich ein Pakt mit euch schließen? *so a compact might be made with you* (G.)? das wär' antik! *can that be antique?* you call that antique (G.)? das wär' sie denn! *can that be she?* so that is she, is it (G.)? er hätte das gesagt? ich glaube es nicht, *can he have said that?* I do not believe it (L.); gastfreundlich hätte England sie empfangen? *you pretend that England received her hospitably* (S.)?

3. This subjunctive is regularly used in hypothetical relative sentences; e. g., was wär' ein Gott, der nur von außen stieße? *what would a God be who should only interfere from without* (G.)? wer sie nicht kannte, wäre kein Meister, *any one who did not (i. e., should not) know them would be no master* (G.). Often such a clause is best rendered in English by a participle; e. g., wie ein Strahl der Sonne, der zu heiß das Haupt mir träfe, *like a sunbeam falling too hot upon my head* (G.).

4. Observe that the potential subjunctive may stand in a dependent clause without being in the technical sense, a 'dependent' subjunctive; e. g., das sag' ich euch, damit ihr's wißet, *I tell you that that you may know it* (S.).

359. The Unreal Subjunctive supposes what is (or was) not so, and states what would be (or would have been) so under the supposition; e. g., wenn ich ein Vöglein wär, und auch zwei Flüglein hätt', flög ich zu dir, *if I were a little bird and had two little wings, I would fly to thee* (folk-song); wäre Herder methodischer gewesen, so hätte ich . . . die köstlichste Anleitung gefunden, *if Herder had been more methodical, I should have found most valuable guidance* (G.).

1. The unreal subjunctive occurs both in the condition (protasis) and in the conclusion (apodosis), when the supposition is contrary to fact. The pret. refers to present time, the plup. to past. The condition may be expressed by means of a conjunction, usually wenn, or by the interrogative order. In the conclusion the subjunctive mode may be replaced by the conditional.

a. Closely akin to the unreal subjunctive is the potential subjunctive, used in the pret. to denote a future possibility; e. g., wenn man uns überraschte, *if some one should surprise us* (S.); und träte sie den Augenblick herein, wie würdest du für deinen Frevel büßen, *were she to come in this moment, how you would atone*, etc. (G.). In such cases there is always a present unreality, but it is of no importance, the thought turning altogether upon the future contingency. The two varieties may be closely associated; e. g., wäre nur ein Zaubermantel mein, und trüg' er mich in fremde Länder, *if I only had (unreal) a magic mantle, and it would (potential) carry me*, etc. (G.).

b. If the conclusion is omitted, the condition may be undistinguishable from an optative subjunctive; e. g., hätte ich das nur gewußt! *if I had only known that!* On the other hand the potential subjunctive may often be construed as the conclusion of an implied condition; e. g., er wär' ein Narr, *he would be a fool* (sc. *if he were to marry her, Faust*, I. 3571).

2. In poetry the pret. indic. sometimes takes the place of the unreal plup. subj. in the condition; e. g., mit diesem zweiten Pfeil durchschöß ich auch, wenn ich mein liebes Kind getroffen hätte, *with this second arrow I should have shot you through if I had hit my dear child* (S.); und tratst du, Herr, nicht zwischen uns herein, so stünde jetzt auch ich, etc., *if thou hadst not come between us, I should now be standing*, etc. (G.).

a. On the other hand an unreal subjunctive in the condition may be followed by an indic. in the conclusion, to denote strong assurance; e. g., und wohnt' er droben auf dem Eispalaß, . . . ich mache mir Bahn zu ihm, *and if he dwelt up there in the ice-palace, I will (instead of I would) make my way to him* (S.).

3. A special case of unreal subjunctive is the common construction after *als ob*, *als wenn*, *as if*, in which the conclusion is omitted; e. g., *ich halte Egmont hier, als ob ich ihm noch was zu sagen hätte*, *I will keep E. here as (I would do) if I had something to say to him* (G.); *er war so stolz darauf, als ob die Erfindung sein gewesen wäre*, *as if the invention had been his* (G.).

a. Very frequently *ob* or *wenn* is omitted, in which case the clause takes the inverted instead of the dependent order; e. g., *da ward's so eng ihr in der Welt, als hätte sie Lieb' im Leibe*, *as if it had love in its body* (G.).

b. The tenses follow the rule given above, but the pres. may stand for the pret., unless the form would be identical with the corresponding form of the indic.; i. e., one may say *als sei er*, or *als ob er sei*, instead of *als ob er wäre*, and *als habe er*, or *als ob er habe*, for *als ob er hätte*, but not *als ob sie haben*, nor *als haben sie*, for *als ob sie hätten*.

360. The Dependent Subjunctive occurs in the object-clause after verbs of *telling, thinking, feeling, asking* and the like; e. g., *sie sagen, er les' auch in den Sternen die künftigen Dinge*, *they say that he also reads the future in the stars* (S.); *ihr fühlet nicht, wie schlecht ein solches Handwerk sei*, *you do not feel how vile such a trade is* (G.); *er fragte, wen er vor sich sähe*, *he asked whom he saw before him* (Gr.); *es hieß, er denk' ihn ganz darum zu kürzen*, *it was said that he was thinking to deprive him of it altogether* (S.).

a. The effect of this subjunctive is to express uncertainty, or at any rate to put the content of the object-clause on another's authority. It is thus very commonly used in reporting statements, opinions, rumors, etc., without quoting literally (indirect discourse). *Daß* is often omitted, in which case the clause has normal order. Such a sentence as *es ist falsch* becomes, then, when reported in the direct form: *„es ist falsch“*, *sagt er*, or *er sagt: „es ist falsch“*; in the indirect form: *er sagt, daß es falsch sei*, or *er sagt, es sei falsch*.

1. Not every object-clause with *daß* requires the subjunctive. If the content of the clause is a fact, or appears

as such to the speaker, the indicative is used. The subjunctive indicates that what is stated is matter of report, opinion, assertion, fear, hope, or the like, and relieves the speaker of responsibility for it ; e. g., *ich schwör' euch zu, mir ist's als wie ein Traum, I swear to you, it is like a dream to me* (G.). Here the speaker avers what is in his own mind and is to him a fact, hence the indicative ; but if the person addressed were to report the saying, he would give it the form : *er schwört (or schwor) mir zu, es sei ihm wie ein Traum.*

a. On the other hand, by an elliptical construction, the dependent subj. may stand in clauses that are not formally object-clauses, to imply that what is stated is matter of rumor, pretense, hope, fear, or the like ; e. g., *er ist zurückgetreten, weil er krank sei, he has retired because (as he alleges, or as people say) he is sick, but weil er krank ist, because he is (actually) sick.* The indic. accepts the report as true, the subj. waives responsibility for it. Observe, then, the force of the modes in the following sentence from Andresen : *Mein Bruder widerriet, weil die Sache gefährlich sei, und weil er den Direktor nicht kennt, my brother objected, because (in his opinion) the thing was dangerous, and because (as a matter of fact) he does not know the director.*

2. Naturally, therefore, those verbs that imply certainty, as verbs of knowing, seeing, proving, showing, comprehending, and phrases such as 'it is clear,' 'the fact is,' are apt to be followed by the indicative; thus one would not say *ich weiß, daß es falsch sei* (but *ist*), nor *es ist klar, daß er recht habe* (but *hat*), since the uncertainty of the subjunctive would contradict the certainty of the governing clause. Still, good writers often use the subjunctive even after this class of verbs ; e. g., *du siehst, wie ungeeignet ich sei, you see how unfit I am* (G.) ; *wir wissen, daß sehr oft deutsches u oder o dem gr. oder lat. e zur Seite stehe, we know that German u or o often corresponds to Greek or Latin e* (Gr.).

3. On the other hand, verbs of thinking and communicating (feeling, believing, hoping, fearing, inferring, asserting, writing, teaching, confessing, denying, etc.) are apt to be followed by the subjunctive, though the indicative is always possible if the object-clause is felt as a fact.

This last will be the case especially when the verb is in the first person ; e. g., *ich fühle* (behauppte), *daß ich schuldlos bin*, *I feel (assert) that I am blameless* ; but, usually, *er fühlt* (behaupftet), *daß er schuldlos sei*. After a past tense, however, these verbs prefer the subjunctive without regard to person.

4. When the object-clause is an indirect question the subjunctive is no longer usual after a verb in the present tense ; thus, for *tell me who he is and how he lives*, one does not say : *sagen Sie mir, wer er sei und wie er lebe*, but *wer er ist und wie er lebt*. In the classics, however, the subjunctive is quite common ; e. g., *und merkt euch, wie der Teufel spaße*, *observe how the devil jokes* (G.). Cf. also the second example under § 360. The easy admissibility of either mode is shown by Goethe's line : *Nicht was der Rnecht sei, fragt der Herr, nur wie er dient* (*Faust*, l. 8794). After a past tense the subjunctive was and still is the rule.

5. When a dependent subj. has a verb depending on it (as often happens in sustained indirect discourse), such verb also stands in the subj., unless it states a fact which is not a part of the narration, but rests on the narrator's own authority ; e. g., *es klagte, daß dieser Tag, welcher mein Glück mache, — wenn er es anders mache — sein Unglück auf immer entscheide*, *it complained that this day which made my happiness, — if it really did make it, — decided his unhappiness forever* (L.) ; *fordert er, daß ihm Du Chatel ausgeliefert werde, den er den Mörder seines Vaters nennt*, *he demands that Du Chatel be given up to him, whom he calls the murderer of his father* (S.).

361. Sequence of Tense in Object-Clauses. The tense of a dependent subjunctive is influenced, (1) by its own natural tense, i. e., the tense it had, or would have, in the direct form ; (2) by the tense of the principal verb ; (3) by the necessity of resorting, in certain cases, to a change of tense in order to render the subjunctive distinguishable from the indicative. We have, then, the following principles :

1. After a present or future the natural tense remains unchanged (but see 2, a, below), save that a preterite

indicative (as well as a perfect) usually becomes a perfect subjunctive; e. g., *he says that he is right* becomes *er sagt, daß er recht habe*; *he says that he was right*, *er sagt, daß er recht gehabt habe* (or *daß er recht hatte*, but not *daß er recht hätte*, which might mean *would be right*); *er meint, es sei nicht mehr zu ertragen*, *thinks it is no longer to be borne* (S.); *sie meint, du seiest entflohen*, *she thinks you ran away* (or, *have run away*; one can not tell which the direct form would be). Cf. Schiller's *Tell*, ll. 92-95.

2. After a past tense the tense of the dependent verb is more variable. A natural present may remain present, or may become preterite; e. g., *he said he was sick* (i. e., *he said: I am sick*), becomes *er sagte, er sei krank*, or *er sagte, er wäre krank* (as in English). A natural preterite indicative becomes perfect subjunctive; *he said he came too late* (*he said: I came too late*) becomes *er sagte, er sei zu spät gekommen* (*fäme* would mean *would come*, or would correspond to a direct *I come*, and *wäre gekommen* would mean *would have come*). A natural future remains, or else becomes present conditional; e. g., *he said he would be there* (*he said: I shall be there*) becomes *er sagte, er werde* (or *würde*) *da sein*.

a. As to the choice between *er sagte, er sei krank*, and *er sagte, er wäre krank* (the direct form being *ich bin krank*) both literary usage and grammatical authority now favor the former. In Old German, however, the latter was the rule. Speaking broadly, South Germans prefer *sei*, North Germans *wäre*. The latter use the pret. freely even after a pres. tense, saying *er sagt, er wäre krank*, for *he says that he is sick*. Both usages are abundantly illustrated in good literature; e. g., *sie glaubten, es wäre Hahnengeschrrei*, *they thought it was the crowing of the cock* (Heine); *die Abergläubischen meinen, du hättest einen Kobold*, *the superstitious think you have a kobold* (Tieck); (usual sequence) *seine reine Seele fühlte, daß sie die Hälfte seiner selbst sei*, *that she was half of himself* (G.).

b. But while there is in the main a free choice between the pret. and pres. subj., the former is to be employed in those forms in which the subj., if pres., would not be distinguishable from the indic.; thus, while one may say for *he said he had the headache*, *er sagte, er habe Kopfschmerz*, or *er sagte, er hätte Kopfschmerz*, one may not say *ich sagte, ich habe* (but only *ich hätte*), nor *sie sagten, sie haben* (but only *sie hätten*).;

THE CONDITIONAL AND IMPERATIVE.

362. The Conditional Mode is simply a potential, or unreal, subjunctive used in the conclusion of conditional sentences. The present refers to present time and corresponds to the preterite subjunctive, while the perfect refers to past time and corresponds to the pluperfect subjunctive; e. g., *und träte sie den Augenblick herein, wie würdest du für deinen Frevel büßen, were she to come in, how you would atone* (G.).

1. For the most part there is a free choice between the subjunctive and the conditional, but the former is avoided when it would be undistinguishable from the indicative, as is regularly the case with weak verbs; i. e., there is a free choice between *ich wäre* and *ich würde sein*, or between *ich ginge* and *ich würde gehen*, but not between *ich machte* and *ich würde machen*.

a. In indirect discourse after a past tense the conditional is preferable if futurity is to be denoted; e. g., *ich erfuhr, daß ich Sie hier treffen würde, I learned that I would find you here* (L.). Here *träte* would not do.

2. The use of the conditional in the condition, while not uncommon in good writers, is not to be approved; for *if it would only rain soon*, say *wenn es doch bald regnete*, rather than *wenn es doch bald regnen würde*. Still, cf. Goethe's *würdest du es ahnen können, du wärest Teufel g'nug, if you could understand it, you would be devil enough*, etc. In passive conditions *würde . . . werden* is avoided; e. g., *würden wir von ihr betroffen, if we should be caught by her* (G.).

363. The Imperative denotes a command. Properly it has only a second person, the first and third being supplied from the subjunctive (§ 356).

a. Strictly the *impv.* has but one tense, though a kind of *perf.* sometimes occurs in locutions like *er habe es umsonst gethan, let him have done it in vain*, i. e., *let it be in vain that he has done it*.

1. The subjects *du* and *ihr* are omitted unless emphatic, but other subjects are expressed; e. g., *sei mein Freund! be my friend! sei du mit mir! be thou with me! schweigt! be silent! but er schweige! man schweige! schweigen wir! always with pronoun.*

2. The inv. often has concessive or conditional force. See § 356, 1 and 1, a.

3. Substitutes for the imperative are as follows:

a. The inf., in placards and brusque commands; e. g., *rechts fahren! keep to the right! Maul halten! hold your tongue!*

b. The perf. pple.; e. g., *hinaufgeschaut! look up (G.)! Cf. § 369, 4.*

c. The indic., pres. or fut., in mild commands; e. g., *Karl, du kommst mit mir; du aber, Fritz, wirst zu Hause bleiben, Karl, you come with me; but you, Fritz, will stay at home.*

d. Lassen with infinitive in place of the regular passive inv.; e. g., *laß dich überreden! be persuaded! Cf. § 341, 1.*

THE INFINITIVE.

364. Nature and Development of the Infinitive.

1. In its origin the inf. is a verbal noun having the force of the Eng. verbal in *ing* (which must not be confounded with the pres. pple. in *ing*). In old German it was inflected and the dat. with *zu* (*ze tragene, for bearing, ze ritene, at riding*), being of frequent occurrence, became a stereotyped phrase (*zu tragen, to bear, zu reiten, to ride*). This phrase developed uses of its own and encroached upon the simple inf., while the latter usurped, in a few cases, the functions of a pres. pple.

2. We have, then, in modern Ger.: (1) the substantive inf., translatable usually by the verbal in *ing*; (2) the old inf. without *zu*, corresponding in the main to the Eng. inf. without *to*, but in part to the pple. in *ing*; (3) the inf. with *zu*, corresponding in the main to the Eng. inf. with *to*.

365. The substantive Infinitive generally has the article, forms no plural, and is modified by adjectives, not by adverbs; e. g., *das Rauchen ist verboten, smoking is forbidden; ich liebe nicht das laute Lieben, I do not love loud loving (U.); da hört er ein Singen wie Flöten so süß, there he hears a singing, etc. (S.); vergeß mir Hören, Sehn und Denken, hearing, sight and thought forsake me (G.).*

1. Such a verbal with *ein* sometimes denotes vehemence, frequent repetition or indefinite continuance. See § 230, 2, a.

2. The substantive inf. is a noun not a verb, and does not admit a separate object in the acc., as it may in Eng. The object becomes either an objective gen., a dat. with *von*, or else it is written in *acc.*

word with the inf.; e. g., *he is not the man for (the) making (of) a speech* = er ist nicht der Mann zum Halten einer Rede (not eine Rede), or zum Redehalten; *writing letters is tedious* = das Schreiben von Briefen, or das Brief(e)schreiben, ist langweilig.

a. Adverbial modifiers must be written with the inf. in one word; hence such words as das Umsichgreifen, *the spreading*; das Nebeneinandergehenftwerden, *the simultaneous execution*; das Nichtsichdagegenfinden, *the non-existence hitherto*.

366. The Infinitive without zu occurs in various constructions as follows:

1. After the modal auxiliaries and lassen; also after thun, when used as auxiliary or with nichts als, *nothing but*; e. g., es kann sein, *it may be*; wir mögen das nicht wieder hören, *we do not want to hear that again* (G.); laß alles Sinnen sein, *let all speculation alone* (G.); was thu' ich weiter fragen? *why do I ask further?* er hat nichts als schimpfen gethan, *he did nothing but call names*.

a. The inf. with lassen has active force only when its subject is at the same time the object of lassen, as in laß mich dir etwas sagen, *let me tell you something*. Through the omission of the object-subject in such locutions as the last, the inf. acquired passive force; i. e., laß ein Licht holen, *let (some one) bring a candle*, came to be felt as = *let a candle be brought, have a candle brought*. Laß dir sagen is thus the same thing as laß dir gesagt sein (§ 344, 1) which also occurs. This use of the inf. then gave rise to the peculiar impersonal passive seen, e. g., in es läßt sich hoffen, *it lets itself be hoped*, i. e., *there is room for hope, it may be hoped*.

b. This use of the active inf. with passive meaning gives rise sometimes to ambiguity; e. g., er ließ den Kutscher fahren, may mean *he let the coachman go*, or *he had him drive*, or *he had him driven*. In such cases the connection must determine the sense.

c. When lassen is followed by an acc. and that in turn by an intransitive verb with predicate noun, such noun stands regularly in the acc.; e. g., laß mich deinen Freund sein, *let me be your friend* (G.). So one would say heiß ihn einen braven Knaben sein, *bid him be a good boy*. But the nom. occurs now and then in good writers; e. g., laß den Grafen dieser Gesandte sein, *let the Count be this envoy* (L.)

2. As true infinitive after fühlen, heißen, helfen, hören, lehren, lernen, machen, nennen, sehen; e. g., ich fühle! ein Herz in meinem Busen schlagen, *feel a heart beat* (W.); heiß mich nicht reden, heiß

mich schweigen, *do not bid me speak, bid me be silent* (G.); helft den gemeinen Feind mir niederhalten, *help me keep down*, etc. (S.); ich hab' ihn rufen hören, *I heard him call* (G.); wenn ich dich ihn könnte verachten lehren, *could I teach you to despise him* (G.); ich habe jetzt dich kennen lernen, *have learned to know to you* (G.); der Rausch macht mich lachen, *makes me laugh* (G.); daß nenne ich doch beweisen, *I call that proving* (W.); er sah ihn fallen, *he saw it fall* (G.).

a. Several of the above verbs, notably heißen, helfen, lehren, lernen, machen, may take the inf. with zu; e. g., o, lehre mich das Mögliche zu thun, *teach me to do what is possible* (G.).

b. After fühlen, hören, sehen, the active inf. may have passive force, just as after lassen and with a similar possibility of ambiguity; e. g., so hört und sieht man dich beneiden, *thus one hears and sees you envied*. Ich sah ihn schlagen, might mean *I saw him strike* or *I saw him struck*.

3. In place of a present participle, to denote a status, after bleiben, finden, haben, liegen, stehen; e. g., alles blieb stehen, *everything (or everybody) remained standing*; die Uhr ist stehen geblieben, *the clock has stopped*; heraustretend fand ich den Himmel von Sternen blinken, *I found the sky glittering with stars* (G.); ich habe Geld im Kasten liegen, *I have money lying in the box* (Gr.); Genua liegt schlafen, *Genoa lies sleeping* (S.); was steht ihr hordchen? *why stand you listening* (S.)?

a. With all of these verbs, however, except perhaps bleiben, the pres. pple. is, the more common construction. Between ich finde ihn schlafen, and ich finde ihn schlafend, there is no difference unless it be that the pple. better expresses duration. Cf. Schiller's *Jungfrau*, l. 447.

4. After gehen, fahren, reiten, and some other verbs of motion, but only in set phrases; as spazieren gehen (reiten, fahren) *go walking (riding, driving)*; sich schlafen legen, *lie down to sleep*; jagen gehen, *go hunting*.

5. As subject of verbs, and as predicate after sein and heißen (particularly after das heißt = das nennt man mit Recht, *that is properly called*); e. g., blasen ist nicht flöten, *blowing is not playing the flute* (G.); dieses heißt die Zeit verlieren, *this is*

losing time (U.); *das hieße die ganze Sache verderben, that would be to ruin the whole cause* (G.).

a. The inf. in the first example is distinguishable from the true substantive inf. by the fact that a modifier would have to be an adverb, not an adjective.

6. As brusque inv.; e. g., *Maul halten ! hold your tongue !*

7. In the idiom *er hat gut reden, it is all well enough for him to talk.*

367. The Infinitive with zu — often called the ‘prepositional infinitive’ — is used:

1. To denote purpose; e. g., *man kommt zu schaun, they come to gaze* (G.); *ich eile fort ihr ewiges Licht zu trinken, I hasten away to drink her eternal light* (G.); *sie nahmen mir’s, um mich zu kränken, they took it from me in order to pain me* (G.); *man gab mir zu verstehen, they gave me to understand*; *ich habe nichts zu essen, I have nothing to eat.*

a. The original force of this inf. is seen if we translate it by *for* with a verbal: *they come for seeing; I have nothing for eating.* When the inf. denotes the purpose for which the subject acts, it is now usually preceded by *um*, as in the third example above, but it is very common without *um* in classical poetry.

b. To denote a purpose which is not the purpose of the subject, modern German prefers in general a substantive inf. with *zum*, or else an equivalent verbal noun; e. g., *he gave me the letter to copy, er gab mir den Brief zum Abschreiben* (not *abzuschreiben*); *he sent me the book to look at, er schickte mir das Buch zur Ansicht* (not *anzusehen*). Sometimes the purpose can be made the purpose of the subject by the use of *lassen*; e. g., *he brought me the watch to repair, er brachte mir die Uhr, um sie reparieren zu lassen* (to have it repaired). It should be observed, however, that exceptions to this rule are common in talk and even in good writers; e. g., *er weckte mich, um den Sonnenaufgang anzusehen, he woke me to see the sunrise, i. e. that I might see it* (Heine).

c. As in Eng., the prepositional inf. may denote destiny or result under the form of purpose; e. g., *sie schieden, um sich nie wiederzusehen, they parted never to see each other again.*

2. As subject of verbs; e. g., *euch zu gefallen war mein höchster Wunsch, to please you was my highest wish* (G.).

3. As object or complement of verbs; e. g., *hör’ auf mit deinem Gram zu spielen, cease to play with your grief* (G.); *da*

befchlossen sie zu bleiben, *there they decided to remain* (S.); mit der Hand winkt' er mir zu gehen, *with his hand he signed to me to go*; was willst du dich das Stroh zu dreschen plagen? *why will you trouble yourself to thresh straw* (G.)? ich nehme mich in acht, mit solchen Hexen öffentlich zu gehen, *I am careful not to appear in public with such witches* (G.).

a. The verbs and verbal phrases that are thus followed by the inf. with *zu* are literally too numerous to mention, but the use of the construction corresponds in the main pretty closely to that of the Eng. inf. with *to*. The chief difference is that Ger. does not tolerate an inf. with subject-accusative; for *I know him to be a liar, I judge him to be about 30 years old*, Ger. says: ich weiß, daß er ein Lügner ist; ich glaube, daß er, etc. Still, classical writers, notably Lessing, sometimes use the construction in imitation of the Latin; e. g., bis er den rechten Zeitpunkt gekommen zu sein glaubte, *until he believed the right time to have come* (L.).

4. As predicate with passive meaning after sein, bleiben, scheinen, stehen; e. g., das ist zu erwarten, *that is to be expected*; das steht nicht zu ändern, *that remains unchangeable*. Cf. § 370, 1.

5. As complement of nouns and adjectives; e. g., es ist wohl Zeit zu scheiden, *it is time to go, I think* (G.); dies ist die Art mit Hexen umzugehen, *that is the way to deal with witches* (G.); das wäre schwer zu beweisen, *that would be hard to prove*; ihr wäret wert, gleich in die Eh' zu treten, *you would be fit to enter the married state at once* (G.).

a. The construction is very common after adjectives preceded by *zu*; e. g., ich bin zu alt um nur zu spielen, *too old merely to play* (G.). Observe, however, that the familiar Eng. construction seen in *the story is too good for me to believe, the book is too deep for him to have written* (it), where an inf. with subject different from that of the principal verb is mediated by means of *for*, can not be imitated in Ger.; instead of it we have als daß followed by the potential subj.: die Geschichte ist zu gut, als daß ich daran glauben könnte; das Buch ist zu tief, als daß er es hätte schreiben können.

b. An inf. which complements the meaning of a noun or an adjective does not need um, though the useless particle is very often inserted. One meets constantly with sentences of the type: er war geistig genug, um den Gedanken zu erfassen, aber es fehlte ihm an Mut, um denselben auszuführen, *he was clever enough to seize the idea, but he*

lacked courage to carry it out. But *um* is superfluous in both cases. Notice, then, the difference between *ich gab mir die Mühe ihn zu besuchen, I took the trouble to visit him*, and *ich gab mir viel Mühe, um ihn zu besuchen, I took much trouble in order to visit him.*

6. After the prepositions *ohne* and *(an)statt*, as well as *um*; e. g., *ich muß euren Kummer noch vergrößern, statt ihn zu heilen, I must increase your grief instead of healing it* (S.); *sie gehen an dem Hut vorbei, ohne darauf zu achten, they pass by the hat without noticing it* (S.).

a. Other prepositions do not govern the inf. directly, but combine with an anticipating *da*; e. g., *keiner dachte daran, den Hut zu grüßen, no one thought of greeting the hat* (S.); *er ist nicht dazu gemacht, anstrengend zu arbeiten, he is not made for working hard* (Gr.).

7. Absolutely in exclamations; e. g., *was! am Rand des Grabs zu liegen! what! to lie with his last breath* (G.)! und nun — *ums Haar sich auszuraufen! and now — it's enough to make one tear out one's hair* (G.)!

THE PARTICIPLE.

368. The Present Participle is used :

1. As adjective, adverb, and substantive; e. g., *schäumende Weine, foaming wines* (G.); *man möchte rasend werden, one could go mad* (G.); *in auffallend kurzer Zeit, in a surprisingly short time*; *die Liebenden, the lovers*; *die Entsagenden, the votaries of renunciation* (G.).

a. In the predicate after *sein* the pres. pple., has adjectival force and denotes a state or a quality. It does not form a tense as it may in Eng. Cf. § 348, 1.

b. A participial adjective has active force and the noun it qualifies should be the subject of the action, as in *ein liebendes Herz, a heart that loves*. But there are some phrases in use which are exceptions; e. g., *der betreffende Punkt, the point concerned*; *eine vorhabende Reise, an intended journey*; *fahrende Habe, movables*; *die reitende Post, the mounted mail*. Others are also current which are more or less dubious; *for essende Waren, eatables*, say rather *Esswaren*; *for blasende Instrumente, wind-instruments* (G.), say rather *Blasinstrumente*; *for fallende Sucht, falling-sickness, Fallsucht*, etc.

2. As appositional predicate, to denote a concomitant act or state; e. g., *wir Schwestern saßen, die Wolle spinnend, we*

sisters used to sit spinning the wool (G.); und ihr Fuß war Götterbrot, glühend wie der Wein, *and her kiss was ambrosia, glowing like wine* (G.).

a. Observe that this pple. denotes a concomitant act or state, not one which is past or to come. Still, exceptions occur, just as in Eng.; e. g., *dieß sagend ritt er trutziglich von dannen*, *saying* (i. e., *having said*) *this he rode away defiantly* (S.); in Zug ans Land steigend *kehrten wir im Döfen ein*, *disembarking in Zug we put up at the 'Ox'* (G.). In the permissible phrase *das nächstens erscheinende Buch*, *the book soon to appear*, the idea of futurity is contained in the adverb. Cf. § 370, a.

b. The pple. may denote means, but not cause; e. g., *kannst du mich schmeichelnd je belügen*, *if you can ever deceive me by flattering* (G.); und als wir sie frisch rudend bald erreicht, *and when we had presently reached it by rowing briskly* (S.); versinkte stampfend, *sink out of sight by stamping* (G.). But for the Eng. causal pple., seen e. g., in the sentence *having nothing else to do, I went to the theater*, Ger. uses a clause with a causal conjunction: *da ich sonst nichts zu thun hatte, ging ich ins Theater*.

c. The appositional pple. usually refers to the subject, but may refer to an oblique case, if there is no chance of ambiguity; e. g., und *find' ihn hier . . . spitfind'ge Rätsel lösend*, *and find him here guessing cunning riddles*; noch *zuckend*, mit des Panthers Zähnen *zerreißen sie des Feindes Herz*, *still quivering* (i. e., *the heart*) *they rend with the teeth of the panther the heart of their foe*. Such a construction as this last, however, is admissible only in poetry; in prose one would say *das noch zuckende Herz*. Still less admissible in prose is the use of a pple., referring to some word not contained in the sentence at all; e. g., *erst knieend laß die treue Widmung dir gefallen*, *hohe Frau*, *first kneeling let my loyal homage please thee*, i. e., *accept the homage I offer on my bended knees* (G.).

369. The Perfect Participle is used most frequently in the conjugation of the perfect tenses and the passive voice. Besides this it occurs:

1. As adjective, adverb, and substantive; e. g., *geehrter Herr*, *honored sir*; *die Bedrückten*, *the oppressed*; ein *verfluchter schlauer Herr*, *a cursedly sly fellow*.

a. As adjective the perf. pple. of transitive verbs has passive force, while that of intransitives conjugated with *sein* denotes the state that has resulted from the action; e. g., *der gefällte Baum*, *the felled tree*; *der gefallene Baum*, *the fallen tree*, = *der Baum, der gefallen ist*; ein *mißlungener Versuch*, *an attempt that has failed*, = *ein Versuch, der mißlungen ist*.

b. In general, then, one can not use adjectively the perf. pple. of an intransitive conjugated with *haben*, because such verbs form no passive. That is, one can not say *das geschlafene Kind*, *the slept child*, for *das Kind*, *das geschlafen hat*, though one may say *das eingeschlafene Kind* for *das Kind*, *das eingeschlafen ist*. There are, however, a few participial adjectives with active force formed from intransitives conjugated with *haben*. Such are *erfahren*, *experienced*; *gereist*, *traveled* (ein *Gereister*, *a traveled man*, just as in Eng.); *geschworen*, *sworn* (die *Geschworenen*, *the jurors*); *studiert*, *studied* (ein *Studierter*, *an educated man*); *trunken*, *drunk*; *verbieht*, *meritorious*; *verschwiegen*, *silent*.

c. There is in Ger. no perf. active pple., though one meets with awkward attempts to form one by means of *habend*; e. g., *die rühmlichst gekämpft habende Brigade*, *the brigade that had fought most creditably*. Compounds such as *ungefrühstückt*, for *without having breakfasted* (*Bismarck*), and *ungebetet*, *without having said grace* (*Gerok*), are quite on a par with 'unbreakfasted' and 'unprayed' in Eng. Still less admissible, grammatically, is the use of a perf. pple. with an object, though it is not so very uncommon, especially when the object is *sich*; e. g., *das den Grafen befallene Unglück*, *the misfortune that had befallen the Count (G.)*; *an diesem nach und nach sich verbreiteten Geheimniß*, *this mystery that had spread abroad gradually (G.)*.

2. As appositional predicate, in the same way and under the same restrictions, as the present participle (§ 368, 2, a, b); e. g., *beschämt nur steh' ich vor ihm da*, *I just stand there before him ashamed (G.)*; *entfernt von dir . . . ergötzt mich noch dein liebevolles Bild*, *remote from thee, thy dear image still delights me (G.)*.

3. In absolute construction, mostly with an accusative absolute; e. g., *sie singt hinaus in die finstere Nacht, das Auge vom Weinen getrübet*, *she sings out into the dark night, her eyes dimmed with tears (S.)*.

4. With imperative force, through the omission of auxiliary and subject; e. g., *frisch gewagt!* *venture boldly*; *hinaufgeschaut!* *look up!* (G.)

5. With *kommen* and *gehen* as the equivalent of a pres. pple.; e. g., *da kommt mein Weib gelaufen*, *thereupon my wife comes running (S.)*. But in *verloren gehen*, *to be lost* (es ist verloren gegangen, *it is lost*), the participle has passive force.

6. As predicate after *heißen*; e. g., *das heiß' ich endlich fortgeschritten*, *I call that getting along fast (G.)*; *das heißt die Willfür auf die Spitze*

getrieben, *that is carrying arbitrary caprice too far* (Andresen). But in this last case treiben would seem to be better on account of the object Willfür.

370. The Gerundive. This is in form the present participle preceded by zu and, when used attributively, declined like any adjective. Its force is that of a future passive participle, denoting feasibility, obligation, propriety; e. g., eine nie zu vergessende Freude, *a never-to-be-forgotten joy*; ein schwer zu erfüllender Wunsch, *a wish difficult of fulfillment*.

a. For the gerundive in the predicate see § 367, 4. Since the gerundive has passive force it should not be formed from intransitive verbs. Such locutions as das bald zu erscheinende Buch, *for the book soon to appear*, are ungrammatical.

SYNTAX OF THE ADVERB.

371. Classification of Adverbs. With respect to their function adverbs may be divided into two classes: simple adverbs and adverbial conjunctions.

a. The simple adverbs denote relations of time, place, degree and manner. They may modify a verb as in gut schreiben, *write well*; an adjective, as in sehr gut, *very good*; an adverb, as in sehr gerne, *very gladly*; a prepositional phrase, as mitten im Feuer, *right in the fire*; a noun, as in der Mann hier, *the man here*; or they may stand in the predicate, as in es ist vorbei, *it is past*.

b. The adverbial conjunctions modify adverbially the verb of the sentence in which they stand, but serve at the same time to indicate the logical connection of the clause with what precedes or follows; e. g., zwar ist es leicht, doch ist das Leichteste schwer, *to be sure it is easy, yet the easy is hard* (G.). Since the conjunctive aspect of these words is more important than the adverbial, they are treated further on under the head of conjunctions (§ 380).

1. With respect to their origin adverbs may be divided into three groups: (1) primitive words and compounds of such, as da, *there*; darüber, *over there*; (2) derivatives formed by means of a suffix, as theils, *partly*; blindlings, *blindly*; (3) adjectives in the stem-form, as gut, *well*.

372. Primitive Adverbs. These denote time, place and direction ; e. g., *jetzt, now* ; *dann, then* ; *hier, here* ; *dort, yonder* ; *dahin, thither* ; *auf, up* ; *unter, down*. Many of them are in use as prepositions and as verbal prefixes (§ 341).

a. Words of this kind may be called demonstrative or positional adverbs. A few of them form adjectives in *ig*, as *hierig, from hier*, *dortig, jetzig, damalig*, which are used prepositively ; e. g., *der damalige König, the then king* (never *der damals König*) ; *das hiesige Theater, the theater of this place*. Cf. also § 296, 1.

1. Besides the demonstrative adverbs there are a few others that admit only of adverbial use, the corresponding adjective, if there be one, having either a different form or a different meaning. Such are *balb, soon* (adj. *balbig*) ; *eben, just, lately* (eben as adj. = *smooth, even*) ; *fast, almost* (see below, § 373, 3) ; *gar, quite* ; *gern, gladly* ; *kaum, scarcely* ; *schon, already, quite* ; *sehr, very* ; *wohl, well, perhaps*. *Schon* has numerous idiomatic uses as a particle of assurance ; e. g., *schon gut, all right* ; *schon das erste Wort, the very first word* ; *das sieht schon besser aus, that looks decidedly better* ; *er wird schon kommen, be assured he will come*. *Wohl*, while cognate with *well*, does not often modify verbs in that sense : *he writes well* = *er schreibt gut*. When used in the sense of *well*, it is accented, but its most common use is that of an unaccented particle of doubt or uncertainty ; e. g., (with stress) *ich weiß sehr wohl, I know very well* ; *es ist wohlbeachtet, it is well known* ; (without stress) *Sie wissen wohl, you probably know* ; *es ist wohl bekannt, it is doubtless known*.

373. Adverb and Adjective. Most adjectives can be used in the stem-form adverbially ; e. g., *so kalt verläßt ihr die gemeine Sache? do you thus coldly desert the common cause* (S.) ? *schon wieder so stolz beschneiden? again already so proudly modest* (L.) ?

1. While Ger. has no adverbial suffix of universal applicability, the suffix *lich*, cognate with *ly*, does form a number of adverbs which can not be used adjectively ; e. g., *freilich, to be sure* (*frei* = *free*) ; *schwerlich, hardly* (*schwer* = *heavy, difficult*) ; *sicherlich, surely* ; *wahrlich, truly*. Cf. also *hoffentlich, as may be hoped* (from *hoffend*) ; *wissentlich, knowingly* (from *wissend*), and others like them. But most derivatives in *lich* admit also of adjectival use ; e. g., *gütlich, kindly* ; *neulich, recent(ly)* ; *gänzlich, entire(ly)*.

2. Many adverbs are simply case-forms of adjectives, the genitive being the most common ; e. g., *rechts, to the right* ;

straßs, directly; zusehends, visibly; höchstens, at the most; zweitens, secondly. Where the ending appears to be *ens*, the *en* is inflectional.

a. The suffix *wärts*, cognate with *ward* in *toward, homeward*, is the gen. of an old adj. *wert* of uncertain meaning. It is applied to prepositions and nouns; e. g., *vornwärts, forward; heimwärts, homeward; mauerwärts, toward the wall.*

b. The acc. neut. (undistinguishable from the stem) of a pronominal adjective is often used adverbially; e. g., *etwas kalt, somewhat cold; viel größer, much greater.* So, too, comparatives and superlatives; e. g., *besser bekannt, better known; höchst seltsam, very strange.*

3. In Old Ger. adverbs were regularly formed from adjectives by means of the ending *o*; thus *sconi, beautiful*, but *scono, beautifully*. As *i* caused umlaut while *o* did not, we have several pairs like *schön — schön; fast — fest; früh (rare) — früh; spat (rare) — spät*. The old adverbial ending still persists, though no longer required in *fern(c), gern(c), lang(c)*. So often in poetry for the meter's sake; e. g., *warte nur balde (G.); und schnell und unbegreiflich schnelle (G.).*

4. The modifier of a participial substantive is regularly an adjective, not an adverb, e. g., *ein gründlicher Gelehrter, a thorough scholar; ein naher Verwandter, a near relative.*

374. Adverbs from Nouns. These are always case-forms, the genitive being the most common; e. g., *abends, in the evening, evenings; vormittags, forenoons; teils, in part; flugs, speedily.* Often there is a limiting adjective; e. g., *größtenteils, in great part; keineswegs, by no means; gewissermaßen, in some sense; dergestalt, in such way.*

a. When *s* had thus come to be felt as an adverbial suffix and not as a case-ending, it was often applied in places where it could not be a case-ending; e. g., *nachts, by night* (from a fem. noun); *seitens, on the part of* (von Seiten); *allerdings* (aller Dinge, gen. plu.); *jedenfalls, in any case* (auf jeden Fall).

b. Adverbs in *lings* are, in their origin, adverbial genitives of nouns in *ling*; e. g., *blindlings, in the manner of a blind person* (Blindling), *blindly*. Hence what appears to be an adverbial suffix *lings* applied to adjectives; e. g., *jählings, precipitately*.

1. A very few adverbs are in their origin datives; e. g., *morgen, tomorrow; mitten, in the midst*, shortened from *inmitten*.

2. A somewhat larger number are accusatives (§ 266), e. g. *heim, home*; *weg, away*; *weise, in stückweise, piecemeal*; *zwangsweise, by force*; *teilweise, partly*. The conversion of an adverb in *weise* into an adjective, as in *die teilweise Erneuerung*, for *the partial restoration*, is hardly to be approved, though it is becoming common.

375. Comparison of Adverbs. As a rule only those adverbs which admit of adjectival use can be compared; e. g., *willst heller sein als deine edeln Väter?* *dost claim to see more clearly than thy noble fathers* (S.)? *die geht am weitesten, she goes farthest* (S.).

1. Of the list in § 372, 1, *eben, fast, gar* and *schon* are not compared. *Bald* sometimes has *halber* (*bälber*), *am baldesten* (*bälbesten*), but these forms are avoided in favor of *eher, am ehesten*. *Geru* has *lieber, am liebsten*. *Sehr* compares, like *viel*, by means of *mehr, am meisten*. *Besser, am besten* are rare, their place being taken by *besser, am besten*.

2. The phrase with *am* forms a relative, that with *auf* an absolute, superlative; e. g., *sie sang am besten, she sang best*, i. e. *better than any one else*; but *sie sang aufs beste, she sang her best*, i. e. *as well as she could*. Further examples: *der Mensch ist aufs nächste mit den Tieren verwandt, man is very closely related to the animals* (G.); *von allen Geistern, die verneinen, ist mir der Schalk am wenigsten zur Last, the rogue is least burdensome to me* (G.).

a. An absolute superlative is also made with the ending *ens*; e. g., *höchstens, at the most*; *meistens, for the most part*; *wenigstens, at least*; *ich danke bestens, my best thanks*.

3. A few uninflected superlatives are used adverbially; e. g., *höchst, in the highest degree, very*; *äußerst, exceedingly*; *meist, for the most part*; *jüngst, lately*; *längst, long since*.

4. Comparison that belongs properly to an adverb should not be transferred to a following adjective; thus, say *schwerer wiegende Gründe*, not *schwerwiegendere Gründe*, for *more weighty reasons*; *die höchstgestellten*, rather than *die hochgestellten*, for *those in the highest position*. There are, however, a few well-established exceptions; e. g., *hochverehrtester*, for *höchstverehrter, most honored sir*; *die wohlunterrichtesten*, for *die am besten unterrichteten, the best informed people*.

SYNTAX OF THE PREPOSITION.

376. Prepositions and their Cases. Prepositions govern cases, thus forming phrases which generally have adverbial force, but may modify a noun; e. g., *die Sonne tönt nach alter Weise, the sun makes music in the old way* (G.); *ein Kampf ums Leben, a battle for life*.

1. Historically prepositions are most closely akin to adverbs. Even the old monosyllabic prepositions are adverbs in their origin, and the most of them are still in use as adverbs (separable prefixes). Their case-governing power is of secondary origin, having been acquired through association.

2. The accusative is used after *biß, durch, für, gegen, ohne, sonder, um* and *wider*. (For meanings, examples and comments, see § 377.)

3. The dative is used after *auf, bei, mit, nach, von* and *zu*; also after *ab, außer, binnen, entgegen, gegenüber, gemäß, nächst, nebst, samt, seit* and *zuwider*.

4. The dative or accusative is used after *an, auf, hinter, in, neben, über, unter, vor* and *zwischen*.

a. The acc. answers to the questions 'whither'? 'how long'? the dat. to the questions 'where'? 'when'? But there are numerous phrases that do not come under this rule. See the list in § 377.

5. The genitive is used after (an) *statt, außerhalb, diesseits, halb, infolge, inmitten, innerhalb, jenseits, kraft, längs, laut, ob, oberhalb, trotz, um . . . willen, unangesehen, unbeschadet, ungeachtet, unterhalb, (ver)mittelt, vermöge, während, wegen* and *zufolge*.

a. Besides the above there is a large number of prepositional adverbs that govern the gen. Most of them are of recent coinage and the number is constantly increasing. They are not included under § 377. Such are:

abzüglich, with deduction of.

angesichts, in view of.

anlässlich, apropos of.

antwortlich, by way of reply to.

ausschließlich, exclusive of:

behuß, for the sake of.

betreffs, concerning.

bezüglich, concerning.

einschließlich, inclusive of.

gelegentlich, apropos of.

hinſichtlich, *concerning.*

inhaltlich, *according to the content of.*

mangels, *in lack of.*

namens, *in the name of.*

rückſichtlich, *concerning.*

ſeitens, *on the part of.*

unfern, *not far from.*

unweit, *not far from.*

vorbeſtaltlich, *with reservation of.*

zugänglich, *with addition of.*

zwecks, *for the purpose of.*

b. Even adverbs of direction, like *nördlich, to the north*, *rechts to the right*, *abſeits, to one side*, are sometimes construed with a gen., but *von* with dat. is better; say *nördlich vom Dorfe*, not *nördlich des Dorfes*, for *north of the village*. The same is to be said of *unfern* and *unweit*, though the prepositional use of these has become very common. They are sometimes followed by the dat. The order of preference should be: (1) *unweit von dem Dorfe*, (2) *unweit des Dorfes*, (3) *unweit dem Dorfe*.

377. List of Prepositions.

The use of prepositions is highly idiomatic and constitutes a difficult subject for the learner. It is hoped that the following alphabetical list, with the accompanying comments and illustrations, may be found useful for reference.

Ab, dat. As prep. a rare word. It occurs in South Ger. dialect and in the language of business, in the sense of *from* (= *von*); e. g., *ab der Poſt, from the post-office*. So of the delivery of goods: *ab Hamburg*, *ab Bahnhof (from depot)*, *ab hier*, etc.

An, dat. and acc., *at, by, on.*

a. With dat. it denotes: (1) Position at or near, in phrases of rest; e. g., *am Tiſche ſitzen, sit at table*; *am Abend, at evening*; *es iſt an der Zeit, it is in order*; *am 4. Juli, on the 4th of July*. It may be = *on*, in the sense of *near to*, or *clinging to* a surface not level; e. g., *das Schloß am Meer, the castle on the sea*, but *das Schiff auf dem Meere, the ship on the sea*; *an der Wand, on the wall* (of a picture), but *auf der Mauer* (of a person standing 'on the wall'); *am Bergeſabhang, on the hill-slope*, but *auf dem Berge, on the hill*. (2) Official position; e. g., *an einer Uni-verſität lehren, to teach at a university*, but *auf einer Uni-verſität ſtudieren*. (3) Occupation, concern; e. g., *an einer Aufgabe arbeiten, work at a task*; *an der Feier teilnehmen, take part in the celebration*. (4) The sphere of plenty and want, increase and decrease; e. g., *reich (arm) an Gütern, rich (poor) in goods*; *Mangel an Verſtand, lack of sense*; *an Stärke abnehmen (zunehmen), decrease (increase) in strength*. (5) The seat of defect, disease, peculiarity; e. g., *krank am Herzen, sick at heart*; *beſchädigt am Fuße, injured in the foot*; *es iſt an ſich merkwürdig, it is remarkable in itself*. (6) The occasion of suffering and death; e. g., *an einem Fieber krank ſein, be sick with a fever*; *an der Schwindsucht ſterben, die of con-*

sumption. (7) The seat of evidence; e. g., man sieht dir's an den Augen an, *one can see by your eyes*; jemand am Gesicht erkennen, *recognize one by his face*. (8) The means of guidance; e. g., ein Tier am Seile führen, *lead an animal by a rope*.

b. With acc. it denotes: (1) The goal of motion; e. g., ans Fenster gehen, *go to the window*; einen Ring an den Finger stecken, *put a ring on one's finger*; an das Ziel gelangen, *arrive at the goal*. (2) The goal of thought; e. g., denkst ihr an mich, *do you think of me*; glaubst du an Gott? *dost thou believe in God?* jemand an den Tod mahnen, *remind one of death*. (3) The object to or for which, after certain verbs; e. g., an einen schreiben, *write to one*; Waren an einen verkaufen, *sell wares to one*. (4) With bis, the end of a period or space; e. g., bis an sein selig Ende, *even to his blessed end*; bis an die Ohren, *up to the ears*.

Anstatt, gen.; from *Statt*, *place, stead*, governed in the dat. or acc. by an, hence = *instead*; e. g., anstatt der goldenen Lieder, *instead of golden songs*. Sometimes with tmesis; e. g., an Sohnes statt, *in a son's stead*. In talk sometimes with dat.: anstatt mir, anstatt dem Vater. But an meiner Statt, anstatt des Vaters, are better.

Auf, dat. and acc., *on, upon*.

a. With dat. it denotes: (1) Position upon, in phrases of rest; e. g., auf dem Boden stehen, *stand upon the ground*; auf dem Rücken liegen, *lie upon one's back*; auf dem Flüsse rudern, *row upon the river*. (2) Location at, in numerous phrases; e. g., auf der Burg sitzen, *reside at the castle*; auf dem Rathause (der Universität, dem Ball, der Messe) sein, *be at the town-hall (the university, the ball, the fair)*. (3) Status, in a looser locative sense; e. g., auf dem Wege, *on the way*; auf der Neige, *on the decline*; etwas auf dem Spiele haben, *have something at stake*; auf seinem Kopfe bestehen, *insist on one's opinion, be obstinate*; das hat nichts auf sich, *that amounts to nothing* (i. e., *it is a basis with nothing on it*). See under an.

b. With acc. it denotes: (1) The goal of motion; e. g., aufs Dach klettern, *climb upon the roof*; sich aufs Bett legen, *lie down upon the bed*. The verb of motion need not be expressed; e. g., Wasser auf meine Mühle, *water to my mill*. (2) The goal of perception, attention, preparation, hope, desire, waiting, etc.; e. g., auf die Uhr sehen, *look at the clock*; auf gutes Wetter warten (hoffen), *wait (hope) for good weather*; sich auf den Krieg rüsten, *prepare for the war*. Hence often in wishes, healths, etc.; e. g., auf gute Gesundheit, *here's to your health*; auf gut Glück, *for good luck*; auf Wiedersehn, *good-bye*. Cf. further: Ich bin hier auf kurze Zeit, *for a short time* (looking ahead); auf jeden Fall, *in any case, at all events*. (3) Close sequence; e. g., auf Leid kommt Freud, *after sorrow comes joy*; ich thue es auf deinen Rat (Befehl, Wink), *on your advice (command, suggestion)*; ich glaube dir aufs Wort, *I take you at your word*. (4) Manner; e. g., auf diese Weise, *in this manner* = *so*.

dieser Weise; auf Deutsch, *in German*; auf eigene Hand, *on one's own hook*. (5) The direction of feeling, after various adjectives, as böse, eifersüchtig, neidisch, stolz; e. g., sie ist stolz auf ihre Schönheit, *proud of her beauty*. (6) The limit of extent, often with bis; e. g., drei Viertel auf zwei, *a quarter to two*; bis auf Speis' und Trank, *even to food and drink*.

Aus, dat., *out of, from*. It denotes: (1) An inner point of departure, with verbs of motion and sensation; e. g., aus der Reihe treten, *step out of the ranks*; einen aus dem Wasser (den Flammen, der Not) retten, *rescue one from the water (the flames, trouble)*; aus dem Fenster sehen, *look out of the window*. (2) Simple aloofness, with verbs of rest, or without verb; e. g., laß mich aus der Sache, *leave me out of the affair*; aus den Augen, aus dem Sinn, *out of sight, out of mind*. (3) Origin, both local and logical; e. g., er stammt aus guter Familie (aus der Schweiz), *he comes of good family (from Switzerland)*; das weiß ich aus Erfahrung, *I know it from experience*; es geschah aus Unkenntnis, *from ignorance*. (4) Motive; e. g., aus Liebe (Haß, Eifersucht) handeln, *act from love (hate, jealousy)*. (5) Material; e. g., es ist aus Holz gemacht, *made of wood*.

Außer, dat., *outside of, beside(s)*. Formerly with gen., which survives in außer Landes gehen, *go abroad*. It stands before nouns of condition, state, and before pronouns; e. g., außer Atem, *out of breath*; außer Dienst, *out of service*; außer acht lassen, *leave out of account*; er ist außer sich, *he is beside himself*. Before nouns of place it was once common, but außerhalb is now preferred; e. g., außer dem Lager, *outside of the camp* (Lu.); außer der Stadt, *outside the city* (S.). It is often used in the sense of *except*; e. g., außer mir ist kein Gott, *there is no God but me*.

Außerhalb, gen., *outside of*; e. g., außerhalb des Thores, *outside the gate*; außerhalb des Gesetzes, *outside of the law*. Sometimes with dat. in the classics and even now; e. g., außerhalb seinem Vaterlande (S.); außerhalb dem eingezäunten Hofe, *outside the enclosed court* (Freytag).

Bei, dat., *by, at, near, with*. It denotes: (1) Simple proximity; e. g., beim Fenster, *by the window*; die Schlacht bei Waterloo, *the battle of, i. e. near, W.* (2) Location at, with, among, at the house of, in the works of; e. g., bei einem Gelag, *at a drinking-bout*; bei der Arbeit, *at work*; bei uns zu Lande, *in our country*; beim Onkel wohnen, *live at one's uncle's*; bei einem Professor hören, *hear lectures under a professor*; die Stelle findet sich bei Schiller, *is found in S.* (3) Status, condition, concomitancy; e. g., er ist bei Jahren, *well along in years*; er ist noch bei vollen Kräften, *still in full vigor*; bei sich, *in one's senses*; ich bin bei Gelde, *I am in funds*; bei Nacht, *at night*; bezeiten, *at times, betimes*: bei gutem Wetter, *the weather being good*; bei dieser Sachlage, *in view of this situation*; bei offenem Fenster schlafen, *sleep with open window*; beim Gehen, *in walking*. (4) Ground of assertion, prohibition, etc.; e. g., beim Himmel! *by*

heaven! das ist bei Strafe verboten, *forbidden under penalty*; bei Leib und Leben! *not for your life!* (5) Measure; e. g., bei einem Haare, *by a hair's breadth*; bei weitem, *by a long way*. (6) Point of seizure; e. g., jemand bei der Hand ergreifen, *seize one by the hand*.

Binnen, dat. and gen., *within*. Formerly of place or time, now only of time; e. g., binnen einiger Tage, *within a few days*; binnen drei Monaten, *within three months*. The dat. now prevails.

Bis, acc., *to, till*. It denotes a limit of motion, time, or space; e. g., ich gehe mit bis Leipzig, *I will go along as far as L.*; von Leipzig bis (nach) Dresden, *from L. to D.*; bis Freitag, *till Friday*. It is often followed by an adverb or another prep.; e. g., bis heute, *until to-day*; bis zum Ende, *to the end*; er steckt in Schulden bis an die Ohren, *he is up to the ears in debt*. So in numerical approximations; acht bis zehn Jahre, *eight or ten years*.

Diesseits, gen., *this side of*; from Seite with adverbial &. Diesseits des Mondes, *this side the moon*. The dat. occurs in old writers.

Durch, acc., *through, by*. It denotes: (1) Transition through space or time; e. g., durch die Luft fliegen, *fly through the air*; durch die Nacht wachen, *watch through the night*. Figuratively: es fuhr mir durch den Kopf, *it flashed through my head*. With verbs of perception: durch ein Fernrohr sehen, *look through a telescope*. Often emphasized by an added hindurch; e. g., durch viele Jahre hindurch, *through many years*. On the adverbial durch, in die ganze Nacht durch, *the whole night through*, cf. § 266. (2) Means, including personal mediation, but not direct agency, for which see under von; e. g., etwas durch List erlangen, *get something by cunning*; er ließ mir durch einen Boten sagen, *sent word by a messenger*. (4) Ground, cause, occasion; e. g., ich bitte dich durch Gottes Gnaden, *I pray you by God's grace*; durch einen Zufall, *by an accident*; elend durch mich, *miserable through me* (G.).

Entgegen, dat., *against, toward*. It is really an adverb (separable prefix), but when the verb of motion is omitted it may take on the character of a postpositive preposition; e. g., dem Schnee, dem Regen, dem Wind entgegen, *in face of snow and rain and wind* (G.); ihr steigt hinauf, dem Strom der Reuß entgegen, *facing the current* (S.).

Für, acc., *for*. It implies: (1) Interest, benefit; e. g., etwas für einen thun, *do something for one*; für Weib und Kinder beten, *pray for one's wife and children*. (2) Exchange, equivalence; e. g., für einen handeln, *act for* (i. e. *in lieu of*) *one*; es ist für Geld nicht zu haben, *not to be had for money*; ich halt' ihn für einen Schelm, *take him for a scamp*; fürliebnehmen, *put up with things*. (3) Sphere of application, limitation; e. g., Arznei für ein Fieber, *medicine for a fever*; für einen Narren spricht er gar nicht schlecht, *not badly for a fool* (G.); ich für mein Teil, *I for my*

part; genug für heute, *enough for to-day*; ich ging im Walde so für mich hin, *all by myself*. (4) Succession; e. g., Schritt für Schritt, *step by step*.

Für is of like origin with vor. The two are often confounded in early modern Ger. and even in the classics; e. g., für Furcht sterben, *die of fear* (S.); weinte für Freuden, *wept for joy* (G.). Für for vor may of course take the dat.; e. g., was hätte er dann noch für seinem Mädchen voraus (S.)?

Gegen (gen), acc., *toward, against, facing*. It denotes: (1) The direction of motion, effort or purpose; e. g., gegen den Strom schwimmen, *swim against the current*; was können wir gegen Abrechts Heere? *what can we do against A.'s armies* (S.)? sich gegen die Thüre stemmen, *brace one's self against the door*. So with nouns; e. g., ein Mittel gegen die Cholera, *a remedy against the cholera*. With verbs of motion gegen is rare in the sense of *toward*, but may occur if the verb is such as to preclude the idea of hostility; thus gegen die Stadt marschieren, *means to march against the city*, but gegen die Stadt spazieren, gegen den Rhein wandern, are permissible, though nach, or nach . . . zu, is preferred. (2) Direction of feeling, friendly or hostile; e. g., freundlich gegen das Volk, *friendly toward the people*; taub gegen die Bitte, *deaf to the request*; Ehrfurcht gegen das Alter, *respect for age*. (3) Offset, exchange, comparison; e. g., Waren gegen bar Geld verkaufen, *sell wares for cash*; Kriegsgefangene gegen einander austauschen, *exchange prisoners*; gegen ihn bin ich nichts, *beside him I am nothing*; ein Mehr von zwanzig gegen zwölf, *a majority of twenty to twelve* (S.). (4) Approximation; e. g., gegen Abend, *toward evening*; gegen drei Monate, *about three months*. (5) Position facing; e. g., ein Fenster gegen Süden, *a window facing the south*.

In early modern Ger. gegen usually took the dat. and this construction is met with now and then in the classics; e. g., ihr werdet gegen der Menge wenig sein, *few in comparison with the multitude* (G.). The short form gen is common in the Bible and still survives in set phrases; e. g., gen Himmel, *toward the sky*.

Gegenüber, dat., *opposite, in face of, in relation to*. It generally follows its noun and is more often adv. than prep. It is used: (1) Of literal position; e. g., der Kirche gegenüber, or gegenüber der Kirche, *opposite the church*. (Gegenüber von, after Fr. *vis-à-vis de*, also occurs.) (2) Of status; e. g., die Stellung des Staates der Kirche gegenüber, *the attitude of the state in relation to the church*; dieser Thatsache gegenüber bin ich sprachlos, *in face of this fact*. Tmesis is common in older writers; e. g., in der Wüsten gegen Moab über, *in the desert over against Moab*.

Gemäß, dat., *according to, in harmony with*. Strictly the adj. gemäß (§ 260) used adverbially. It usually follows its noun; e. g., der Natur gemäß (or naturgemäß) leben, *live according to nature*; demgemäß,

accordingly. Nowadays often with gen.; e. g., gemäß Ihres Schreibens, *according to your letter*; befehlsgemäß, *according to orders*.

Halb, halben, halber, gen., *because of, on account of*. Stereotyped case-forms of the old noun *Halb*, *side, direction*; always postpositive. Examples: fürstlicher Hochbegrißung halb, *in the interest of a princely greeting* (G.); dieser Hoffnung halben, *on account of this hope*; der Studien halber, *in the interest of study* (Ranke). Now chiefly in compounds; meinethalb(en), altershalber, amtsalber, krankheitsalber, etc.

Hinter, dat. and acc., *behind*.

a. With dat. it denotes: (1) Position behind, with verbs of rest; e. g., er ist hinter dem Hause, *behind the house*; hinter dem Berge wohnen, *live on the other side of the mountain*. (2) Concealment; e. g., hinter des Lehrers Rücken, *behind the teacher's back*; es steht etwas dahinter, *there's something behind it*. (3) Support; e. g., er steht hinter mir als Bürge, *he stands behind me as security*.

b. With acc. It denotes the goal of motion; e. g., hinter's Haus gehen, *go behind the house*; schreib' es dir hinter's Ohr, *make a note of it*.

In, dat. and acc.; with dat., *in*, with acc., *into*.

a. The dat. marks position, in space or time; e. g., in der Stadt wohnen, *live in the city*; im Flusse waten, *wade in the river*; in einem Buche lesen, *read in a book*; er starb im Jahre 1800, *died in the year 1800*.

b. The acc. implies a goal of motion, perception, duration; e. g., in die Stadt gehen, *go into the city*; in den Fluß (hinein) waten, *wade into the river*; in ein Buch sehen, *look into a book*; er lebte bis ins Jahr 1800, *he lived into the year 1800*. Where a goal of motion is implied Ger. requires the acc. more strictly than Eng. requires *into*; e. g., man pflanzt einen Baum in die Erde, *plants a tree in the ground*; ich stecke die Hand in die Tasche, *put my hand in my pocket*. Notice, too, the acc. in phrases of extent; e. g., 20 Fuß in die Höhe, *20 feet high*; wie kann's euch in die Länge freuen? *how can you like it for a steady thing* (G.)?

Infolge, gen., *in consequence of*; = in Folge.

Inmitten, gen., *in the midst of*; = in der Mitte.

Innerhalb, gen., *within, inside of*; of both time and place; e. g., innerhalb des Schlosses, *within the castle*; innerhalb des Jahres, *within the year*. Common also with dat.

Jenseits, gen., *on that side of, beyond*; jenseits dieser Berge, *beyond these mountains*. Cf. diesseits.

Kraft, gen., *on the strength of, in virtue of*; e. g., kraft des Berliner Vertrages, *in virtue of the Berlin treaty*. Shortened from in Kraft.

Längs, gen., *along*; e. g., längs des Flusses, *along the river*. Common also with dat. An adverbial gen. of *lang*, with spurious umlaut.

Laut, gen., *according to*; e. g., laut des geschlossenen Bundes, *according to the treaty of alliance*. Sometimes with dat. Shortened from nach Laut, *according to the purport*.

Mit, dat., *with*. It denotes: (1) Association, joint activity (friendly and hostile); e. g., komm, geh mit mir, *come, go with me*; mit einem Gegner streiten, *contend with an adversary*; mit Gott, *with God's help*. (2) Concern, often in a very loose sense; e. g., wie steht es mit Ihrem Herzen? *how is it with your heart (G.)?* was giebt's mit dem Bauer da? *what's the matter with the peasant there (S.)?* hinaus mit ihm! *out with him!* ich bin mit der Sache fertig, *done with the affair*. (3) Concomitancy, in phrases of manner; e. g., mit Recht, *rightly*; mit wenig Wiß, *with little wit*. (4) Appurtenance; e. g., Götz mit der eisernen Hand, *Götz with the iron hand*. (5) Means; e. g., mit einem Messer schneiden, *cut with a knife*; mit Genuß betrügen, *deceive with pleasure*. (6) Contemporaneousness; e. g., die Welt wird schöner mit jedem Tag, *every day*; mit der Zeit, *in course of time*.

Mitsamt, dat.; the same as *samt*.

Mittels, *mittelfst*, gen., *by means of*; e. g., mittelfst ihres Ansehens, *by means of their prestige*. *Mittels* is an adverbial genitive of *Mittel*; *mittelfst* has an excrescent *t*.

Nach, dat., *after, to, according to*. It denotes: (1) Approach, direction of motion, with names of places; e. g., nach Berlin gehen, *go to Berlin*; nach Hause eilen, *hurry home*. The object may be an adverb; e. g., nach oben, *up*; nach unten, *down*. Direction, without the idea of arrival, may be expressed by nach . . . zu; e. g., wir fuhren nach der Stadt zu, *drove toward the city*. (2) The direction of effort, desire, attention, etc.; e. g., nach einem schlagen, *strike at one*; nach einem Ziele schießen, *shoot at a mark*; nach Ruhm streben, *strive for glory*; sich nach Ruhe sehnen, *long for rest*. (3) Sequence; e. g., nach einem reden, *speak after one*; eins nach dem andern, *one after the other*; nach kurzer Zeit, *after a short time*; nach Tisch, *after dinner*. (4) Accordance, often with object preceding; e. g., nach meiner Ansicht, *according to my view*; allem Aufsteine nach, *according to all appearances*; ich kenne ihn dem Namen nach, *know him by name*; es riecht nach Schwefel, *it smells of (like) sulphur*.

Nächst, dat., *close by, next to*; e. g., nächst der Brücke, *close by the bridge* (S.). The superlative of *nach*, used adverbially.

Neben, dat. and acc., *close by, beside*.

a. With dat. it denotes: (1) Simple juxtaposition; e. g., neben einem sitzen, *sit next to one*; neben der Thüre schlafen, *sleep by the door*. (2) Addition or comparison; e. g., du sollst keine andre Götter neben mir haben,

no other gods beside me; du hast noch eine Klugheit neben deiner Liebe, *shrewdness along with your love* (S.); neben ihm bin ich ein Stümper, *a bungler in comparison with him*.

b. With acc. it follows verbs of motion in the sense of *beside, close to*; e. g., er stellte sich neben den Ofen hin, *placed himself by the stove* (S.); er setzte sich neben sie, *sat down beside her* (G.). But the dat. is not infrequent even after verbs of motion.

Nebst, dat., *along with, together with*; e. g., der Vater nebst seinen beiden Söhnen, *together with his two sons*. From *nebens*, an adverbial amplification of *neben*, with exerescent t.

Ob, dat., *above, over, on account of*; e. g., ob Erden (archaic), *above ground, on earth*; der Priester sprach den Segen ob dem Paare, *pronounced the blessing over the pair* (Lenau); ob all dem edlen Wein, *over, i. e., on account of, all the noble wine* (U.). Ob is now rare and confined to stately diction. It occurs also with gen.; e. g., ob des seltsamen Gerätes, *on account of the strange implement* (S.).

Ohne, acc., *without*; e. g., ohne guten Grund, *without good reason*. The object may be an inf. with zu or a clause with daß; e. g., bezeugt nur, ohne viel zu wissen, *without knowing much* (G.); er sündigt, ohne daß er es weiß, *sins without knowing it*. Formerly common with dat., and gen., whence the survivals *ohne dem, aside from that*, and *zweifelsohne, doubtless*.

Oberhalb, gen., *above*; e. g., oberhalb des Dorfes, *above the village*. Also with dat.: oberhalb dem Walde, *above the forest*.

Samt, dat., *together with*; e. g., der Vater samt den Kindern, *the father together with the children*.

Seit, dat., *since, from the time of*; e. g., seit dem letzten Kriege, *since the last war*. Formerly also with gen., whence *seit alters, from of old*. The object may be an adverb or adjective; e. g., seit gestern, *since yesterday*; seit kurzem, *recently*.

Sonder, acc., *without*; obsolete except in a few phrases such as *sonder Gleichen, without peer*; *sonder Zweifel, doubtless*. Formerly used also with dat. and gen.

Trotz, gen. or dat., *in spite of, in competition with, hence, as well as*; e. g., trotz aller Bemühungen, *in spite of all efforts*; trotz dem schlechten Wetter, *in spite of the bad weather*; trotz alle dem, *for all that*; darauf verstehen wir uns trotz einer Nation in der Welt, *we understand that as well as any nation in the world* (L.). Shortened from zu(m) *Trotze*.

Über, dat. and acc., *over, beyond*.

a. With dat. it denotes: (1) Position, with verbs of rest; e. g., über allen Gipfeln ist Ruh', *over all the hill-tops is rest* (G.); er wohnt über

dem Meere, *lives across the sea*. (2) Occupation; e. g., über einem Buche sitzen, *sit over a book*; über einem Gespräch den Zug veräumen, *miss the train over* (i. e., *through being absorbed in*) *a conversation*.

b. With acc. it denotes: (1) The goal of motion; e. g., er gießt ihm ein Glas Wein über den Kopf, *pours a glass of wine over his head* (G.); Jammer über die Welt bringen, *bring sorrow over the world*; über eine Brücke gehen, *go over a bridge*. So with nouns that imply crossing; e. g., der Übergang über die Donau, *the crossing of the Danube*. (2) Superiority; e. g., über ein Volk herrschen, *rule over a people*; über den Feind siegen, *prevail over the enemy*. (3) Excess; e. g., das geht über alle Vernunft, *beyond all reason*; über alle Beschreibung schrecklich, *terrible beyond all description*; über zwei Jahre, *over two years*. But this last may also mean *two years hence*; cf. heute über acht Tage, *a week from to-day*; über Nacht, *over night*. Further: einmal über das andere, *time after time*; Briefe über Briefe, *letters upon letters*. (4) Occasion, theme; e. g., über einen Vorfall lachen (weinen, sich freuen), *laugh (weep, rejoice) over an occurrence*; über die Kunst schreiben, *write upon art*; über das Erhabene, *On the Sublime*. So in exclamations: pfui über dich! *out upon you!* According to Brandt, über ein Buch einschlafen, *to fall asleep over a book*, implies that the book is dull, while über einem Buche einschlafen means *simply to fall asleep while reading*.

Um, acc., *about, around*. It denotes: (1) Simple position, often with following her or herum; e. g., ums Feuer stehen, *stand about the fire*; alle treten um ihn, *come around him* (G.); um den Teich (herum) spazieren, *walk round the pond*. (2) Approximation; e. g., um Weihnachten, *about Christmas*; um drei Stunden, *about three leagues*. In giving the time of day, however, um denotes *exact time*; e. g., um 3 Uhr, *at 3 o'clock*. (3) Concern, solicitude; e. g., es handelt sich ums Leben, *it is a question of life*; um eine Sache streiten, *contend about a matter*; um etwas bitten, *ask for something*. (4) Exchange, offset, price; e. g., alles ist euch feil um Gold, *purchasable for gold* (S.); um alles in der Welt, *of (for) all things in the world*. (5) Degree of difference; e. g., um einen Zoll zu breit, *too wide by an inch*; um ein Haar, *by a hair's breadth*. (6) Loss, deprivation; e. g., einen ums Leben bringen, *deprive one of life*.

Um . . . willen, gen., *for the sake of*; e. g., um Gottes willen, *for God's sake*; i. e., um Gottes Willen, *for the will of God*.

Unangesehen, gen., *not considering*.

Unbeschadet, gen., *without detriment (or prejudice) to*. Rarely with dat.

Ungeachtet, gen., *notwithstanding*. Formerly not uncommon with dat., whence bemungedachtet (as well as dessenungeachtet), *nevertheless*.

Unter, dat. and acc., *under, among*.

a. With dat., in constructions of rest, it denotes: (1) Simple position; e. g., unter einem Baume sitzen, *sit under a tree*; Gretchen unter vielem Volke, *among many people* (G.). So, too, as the equivalent of a partitive gen.; e. g., viele unter den Soldaten, *many among the soldiers*. (2) Status, with reference to superior authority, governing conditions, etc.; e. g., unter einem Offizier dienen, *serve under an officer*; unter Druck setzen, *groan under oppression*; unter solchen Umständen, *under such circumstances*; ein Buch unter der Presse, *a book in press*. (3) Contemporaneousness, concomitancy; e. g., unter der Regierung Karls, *under the reign of Karl*; unter dem Donner der Kanonen vorrücken, *advance amid the roar of cannon*.

b. With acc. it denotes the goal of motion; e. g., etwas unter den Tisch werfen, *throw something under the table*; ich komm' gar wenig unter Leute, *I go little among people* (G.).

Unterhalb, gen., *below*; e. g., unterhalb des Dorfes, *below the village*. Sometimes with dat.

Vermittelt, gen., *by means of*. The same as *mittelt*.

Vermöge, gen., *in virtue of, by dint of*; e. g., vermöge seines Fleißes, *by dint of his industry*.

Von, dat., *from, of*. As we have seen (§ 247), von and the dat. may take the place of the gen. in nearly all the latter's uses. Aside from this it denotes: (1) The starting-point; e. g., von Berlin nach Leipzig fahren, *travel from Berlin to Leipzig*; von nun an, *from now on*. (2) Residence, origin; e. g., der Kaufmann von Venedig, *the merchant of Venice*; Rudolf von Habsburg, *Rudolf of Habsburg*. Hence, in modern times, as a mere sign of nobility; e. g., Fürst von Bismarck, *Prince von Bismarck*. (3) Agency, with passive verbs; e. g., Amerika wurde von Columbus entdeckt, *was discovered by Columbus*. (4) Source; e. g., von allen Seiten, *from all sides*; von der Luft leben, *live on air*; von wem haben Sie das? *from whom have you that?* das ist nicht gut von dir, *not kind of you*; von Geburt ein Deutscher, *a German by birth*; naß vom Regen, *wet with rain*. (5) Separation, release; e. g., das Gute vom Schlechten unterscheiden, *distinguish the good from the bad*; frei von Stolz, *free from pride*; von der Arbeit ruhen, *rest from toil*. (6) Concern; e. g., von der Politik reden, *talk of politics*; die Lehre vom Zufall, *the doctrine of chance*. (7) Specification; e. g., ein Mann von vierzig Jahren, *a man of forty*; ein Engel von einem Weibe, *an angel of a woman*.

Vor, dat. and acc., *before*.

a. With dat. it denotes: (1) Position in place or time; e. g., vor dem Spiegel stehen, *stand before the mirror*; vor 3 Uhr, *before three o'clock*; vor einem Monat, *a month ago*; vor Christus, *B. C.* (2) Cause, mostly with words of emotion; e. g., vor Freude weinen, *weep for joy*; Kurcht

vor dem Tode, *fear of death*. (3) Precedence; e. g., vor allen Dingen, *before all things*; vor einem den Vorrang haben, *take precedence of one*. (4) Exposure, security; e. g., einen vor der Kälte schützen, *protect one from the cold*; sicher vor dem Feinde, *safe from the enemy*; vor dir hab' ich keine Geheimnisse, *I have no secrets from you*.

b. With acc. it denotes the goal of motion; e. g., vor den Spiegel treten, *step before the mirror*; sich vor den Kopf schießen, *shoot one's self in the head*; vor einen Baum rennen, *run into a tree* (G).

Während, gen., *during*; e. g., während des Abends, *during the evening*. The pple. of wahren, *endure*; währendes Tages, *while the day endures* (§ 251, 1), became während des Tages. Sometimes with dat.

Wegen, gen., *on account of*; e. g., wegen des Wetters, *on account of the weather*. Often postpositive, e. g., der Geschäfte wegen, *because of business*. Sometimes with dat.

Wider, acc., *against* (but not in a physical sense); e. g., wider das Recht, *contrary to law*.

Zu, dat., *to, at, for*. It denotes: (1) The direction of motion or effort, usually with the idea of arrival; e. g., komm du nur oft zu mir herüber, *come over to my house* (G.); sie sang zu ihm, sie sprach zu ihm, *she sang to him, she spoke to him* (G.); zu Bett gehen, *go to bed*; zur Kirche gehen, *go to church*; zu Grunde gehen, *go to ruin*; zu Boden fallen, *fall to the ground*; von Ort zu Ort, *from place to place*; von Zeit zu Zeit, *from time to time*. Observe that zu is not used after verbs of motion before names of towns; e. g., *to go to Berlin* is nach Berlin gehen. Sometimes postpositive (with or without preceding nach) in the sense of *toward*; e. g., (nach) der Straße zu, *toward the street*. (2) Position in space or time, with verbs of rest; e. g., zu Hause, *at home*; zu Weihnachten, *at Christmas*; im Rathaus zu Bremen, *in the town-hall at Bremen*. (But with names of towns in is more usual.) So, too, of the seat of feeling, e. g., es ist mir wohl zu Mut, *comfortable in mind*. Observe the idiomatic use of zu with particles of motion; e. g., zur Thür hinaus, *out of* (i. e., *out at, by way of*) *the door*. (3) Purpose, destination, resultant status; e. g., Wasser zum Trinken, *water for drinking*; zum Beispiel, *for example*; zu meiner großen Freude, *to my great delight*; das ist nicht zum Lachen, *not for laughter, no laughing-matter*; zum Entzücken! *charming!* zu nichte werden, *come to naught*; zu Tode ärgern, *vex to death*; eine zur Frau nehmen, *take one to wife*. (4) Manner, rate, degree; e. g., zu Fuß, *on foot*; zu Wasser, *by water*; zu Deutsch, *in German*; zu drei Mark das Stück, *at three marks a piece*; zu Hunderten, *by hundreds*; zum Teil, *in part*. (5) Excess, addition; e. g., dazu, zudem, *besides*.

Zufolge, gen., *in consequence of*.

Zu wider, dat., *against*; e. g., das Glück war uns zuwider, *against us*.

Zwischen, dat. and acc., *between*. The dat. follows verbs of rest, the acc. verbs of motion.

SYNTAX OF THE CONJUNCTION.

378. Classification of Conjunctions. Conjunctions connect the members of compound or complex sentences (cf. § 410). Those that connect sentences of equal syntactical rank are called 'co-ordinating' conjunctions, while those that introduce dependent clauses are called 'subordinating.' The former class may be subdivided, with reference to their influence on the word-order, into general connectives and adverbial conjunctions.

1. Conjunctions are mainly of adverbial origin, and are not always easily distinguishable from adverbs. The guiding principle is that an adverb modifies a single word, usually the verb, of its clause, while a conjunction limits the clause itself, showing its logical relation to what precedes or follows. But a considerable number of adverbs (see below, § 380, 1) may perform either function, or both at the same time.

379. The General Connectives aber, allein, sondern, denn, oder and und do not affect the word-order; e. g., aber die Sonne duldet kein Weißes, *but the sun endures nothing white* (G.); denn er war unser, *for he was ours* (G.); Weib, mach' Platz, oder mein Roß geht über dich hinweg, *woman, give way, or my horse will run over you* (S.).

1. Of the three words for *but*, allein and aber are used without appreciable difference of meaning, but allein always begins its clause, whereas aber may come after one or more words, being then equivalent to *however*; e. g., ich aber blieb mit kummervoller Seele, *I however remained with sorrowful soul* (S.). Sondern is used only after a negative, and introduces a contrast which excludes or contradicts what goes before; e. g., das ist kein Grund, sondern nur ein Vorwand, *that is no reason, but only a pretext*; er kam nicht, sondern er blieb ruhig zu Hause, *he did not come, but remained quietly at home*. But if the second proposition does not exclude the first, aber is used even after a negative; e. g., er kam nicht, aber er blieb nicht ohne Grund zu Hause, *he did not come, but he had reason for remaining at home*. Sondern is especially common in the correlative phrase nicht allein (or nicht nur) . . . sondern auch, *not only . . . but also*.

2. Denn, *for*, always begins its clause and is thus easily distinguishable from the inferential denn, *then* (§ 380), which never stands first.

3. Oder, *or*, is often preceded by a correlative *entweder*, *either*; e. g., *entweder ihr kennt mich nicht, oder ihr seid sehr böshaft, either you do not know me, or you are very malicious* (G.). *Entweder* sometimes causes inversion, *oder* very rarely. *Oder* is often followed by a pleonastic and untranslatable *aber*; e. g., *ich will entweder siegen, oder aber sterben, I will conquer or die* (Gr.).

4. The use of *und* corresponds closely to that of *and*. Note, however, the frequent employment of inversion after *und*, with resumption of the subject by means of a pronoun, usually *derselbe*; e. g., *die Vorstellung beginnt um sechs Uhr, und wird dieselbe ungefähr drei Stunden dauern, the performance begins at 6 o'clock and will last about three hours*. This usage is characteristic of the commercial and official styles.

a. By the ellipsis of the verb really connected with what precedes *und* sometimes acquires concessive force; e. g., *du mußt, und kostet' es mein Leben, thou must and should it cost* (i. e., *though it should cost*) *my life* (G.).

380. The Adverbial Conjunctions are adverbs so far as they modify a particular word of the clause in which they stand, but conjunctions in that they show the logical relation of the clause itself to what precedes or follows. As conjunctions they are apt to begin the clause, in which case they cause inversion; but they may also follow the verb like any other adverb; e. g., *zwar ist es leicht, doch ist das Leichtste schwer, to be sure it is easy, but the easy is hard* (G.); *du magst zwar reden, du hast doch unrecht, you may talk, to be sure, but you are wrong*.

1. It would be impossible to draw up a complete list of the adverbial conjunctions, because they can not be distinguished sharply from other adverbs. Nor is it easy to classify them according to their meaning. Roughly speaking they are either additive (akin in meaning to *also*, *moreover*), adversative (meaning *but*, *yet*, *on the other hand*, *else*, *rather*), temporal (such as *soon*, *now*, *then*, *thereupon*, *firstly*), partitive (like *partly . . . partly*, *now . . . again*), consecutive (like *hence*, *therefore*, *accordingly*, *so*), or they express assurance, doubt, probability, etc. Some of the more common are as follows:

allerdings, to be sure.

also, so, then.

andrerseits, on the other hand.

and, also, too.

balb . . . bald, now . . . again.

dagegen, on the contrary.

damals, at that time.

damit, therewith.

dann, then.

darauf, thereupon.

darum, <i>therefore</i> .	nämlich, <i>namely, to explain</i> .
dazu, <i>besides</i> .	natürlich, <i>of course</i> .
dennach, <i>accordingly</i> .	noch, <i>yet, still</i> .
denn, <i>then</i> .	nun, <i>now</i> .
dennoch, <i>however</i> .	so, <i>so</i> .
deshalb, <i>therefore</i> .	sogar, <i>even</i> .
desgleichen, <i>likewise</i> .	sgleich, <i>directly</i> .
dessenungeachtet, <i>notwithstanding</i> .	sonst, <i>else, formerly</i> .
deswegen, <i>therefore</i> .	teils . . . teils, <i>partly . . . partly</i> .
doch, <i>but, yet, surely</i>	trotzdem, <i>nevertheless</i> .
ebenso, <i>likewise</i> .	überdies, <i>besides</i> .
endlich, <i>finally</i> .	übrigens, <i>moreover</i> .
erstens, <i>firstly</i> .	vielleicht, <i>perhaps</i> .
freilich, <i>to be sure</i> .	vielmehr, <i>rather</i> .
gleichfalls, <i>likewise</i> .	wohl, <i>perhaps, I presume</i> .
gleichwohl, <i>nevertheless</i> .	zudem, <i>besides</i> .
halb . . . halb, <i>half . . . half</i> .	zuerst, <i>first</i> .
ja, <i>indeed, of course</i> .	zuletzt, <i>last</i> .
jedoch, <i>nevertheless</i> .	zunächst, <i>next</i> .
nachher, <i>afterwards</i> .	zwar, <i>to be sure</i> .

a. Some of the above words, notably auch, doch, erstens, nämlich, often fail to cause inversion; e. g., auch das ist falsch, *that too is false*; du scheinst bedenklich, doch du scheinst vergnügt, *you seem pensive, yet you seem happy* (G.). Any word loses its power to cause inversion, when it is set off by a comma; e. g., nun, wir sehen einander wieder, *well, we'll see each other again* (G.). This is often the case with the ordinal adverbs, erstens, zweitens, ferner, endlich, etc.

b. Auch generally stands just before (with weak stress), or just after (with strong stress), the word to be made prominent; e. g., auch ich or ich a u ch, bin Dichter, *I too* (as well as others) *am a poet*; ich bin auch D i c h t e r, or Dichter a u ch, *I am a poet too* (as well as an orator). The former idea can also be expressed: ich bin a u ch Dichter.

c. Doch is primarily adversative, = *but, yet*, but its adversative force is often directed against an imaginary doubt, denial, opposition, or hesitation, so that it becomes merely a particle of emphasis, = *really, surely, I declare*; e. g., das ist doch unerhört, *that is really unheard of*; treten Sie doch herein, *come in, won't you?* höre doch, *do hear*. So in combination with ja or wohl; e. g., du bist ja doch der Herr, *thou art surely the Lord*; Sie sind doch wohl nicht krank, *you are not sick, I hope*. It quite regularly follows a verb put first for emphasis; e. g., glaub' ich doch, *I do believe*; hab' ich den Markt und die Straßen doch nie so einsam gesehen, *I never did see, etc.* (G.).

d. *Ja* as additive particle, = *indeed, in fact*, need not cause inversion; e. g., *setzte sich zu ihm, ja man dürfte beinah' sagen, auf ihn, sat down by him, indeed one might almost say, upon him* (G.). More often *ja* follows the verb with the sense of *course, you know*; e. g., *ich tadle ihn nicht, er ist ja nur ein Kind, I do not blame him, he is only a child, you know*; *Sie wissen ja, you know, of course*.

e. *Noch* may have additive or temporal force; e. g., *ihr seid noch ziemlich wohlgebaut, you are besides pretty well built* (G.); *das ist noch schlimmer, that is still worse*. As temporal particle it means *yet, still, up to*; e. g., *noch ist es Zeit, there is still time*; *noch vor kurzem, until lately, quite lately*; *das fehlte noch, that was yet lacking, that caps the climax*; *er kann noch lange leben, he may yet live long*.

f. *Run* differs from *jetzt* in that the latter only denotes present time as such, while *nun* implies a relation to what precedes; e. g., *ich bin jetzt beschäftigt, I am busy now*, but *nun traf es sich, now it happened* (as part of a narrative); *nun danket alle Gott, now all thank God* (in view of his favor).

g. *Wohl* is sometimes concessive; e. g., *wohl hat er Geld, aber er hat wenig Verstand, he has money, to be sure, but he has little sense*. Most often, however, it expresses a lack of perfect assurance, being a sort of verbal interrogation-point to be translated by *perhaps, probably, possibly, I presume, I should say*, etc.; e. g., *du hast wohl recht, you are probably right*; *es waren ihrer wohl zwanzig, there were twenty of them, I should think*; *wie spät ist es wohl? how late is it, I wonder?* The English *well* at the beginning of the sentence is usually given by *nun*, not by *wohl*; e. g., *nun, wie geht's? well, how goes it?* Cf. § 372, 1.

h. *So* is often used to resume the adverbial force of a preceding clause, especially a conditional clause; e. g., *wenn ich das gewußt hätte, so wäre ich nicht gekommen, if I had known that, I should not have come*; *und kommt er auch, so ist's ein Quack, and even if he comes, it is a fool* (G.). The use of this *so* is to make the inversion easier. It should not be translated.

381. The Subordinating Conjunctions introduce dependent clauses which sustain to some word in the main clause the relation of adverb, adjective or noun. They require that the inflected verb stand at the end.

1. Exceptions to the rule of order are not uncommon. Especially is a prepositional phrase often placed after the verb; e. g., *und als ich kam ins heimathliche Thal, when I came into my native valley* (S.). Cf.

also § 194. The most important of the subordinating conjunctions are as follows :

als, <i>as, when, than</i>	inwiefern, <i>how far.</i>	sowie, <i>as, just as.</i>
als ob, <i>as if.</i>	je + adv. or adj., <i>the—.</i>	wann, <i>when.</i>
als wenn, <i>as if.</i>		weil, <i>because.</i>
bevor, <i>before.</i>	je nachdem, <i>accord-</i>	wenn, <i>if, when.</i>
bis, <i>until.</i>	<i>ing as.</i>	wenn auch, <i>though.</i>
da, <i>as, since.</i>	nachdem, <i>after.</i>	wenngleich, <i>though.</i>
damit, <i>so that.</i>	ob, <i>whether.</i>	während, <i>while.</i>
daß, <i>that.</i>	obgleich, <i>though.</i>	wie, <i>how, as.</i>
dieweil, <i>because.</i>	obſchon, <i>though.</i>	wo, <i>where.</i>
ehe, <i>before.</i>	obwohl, <i>though.</i>	wo + prep., or partic- <i>le.</i>
falls, <i>in case.</i>	ſeit(dem), <i>since.</i>	wofern, <i>so far as, if.</i>
indem, <i>while.</i>	ſo, <i>if.</i>	zumal (da), <i>especi-</i>
indef (-deſſen), <i>while.</i>	ſo + adv. or adj	<i>ally as.</i>
inwiefern, <i>how far.</i>	as — as.	

a. Als translates Eng. *when* after a pret.; e. g., als ich noch ein Knab war, *when I was still a boy* (G.). It may also be = *as* before a historical pres.; e. g., als ich das Bergemach durchgehe, *as I go through the anteroom* (S.). After other tenses *when* is given by wenn, which see. Als is the proper conjunction to be used after a comparative; e. g., es iſt ſchlimmer, als ich anfangs vermutete, *it is worse than I at first supposed*; ich bin älter als du, *I am older than you*. So, too, after the positive degree preceded by ſo; e. g., es iſt nicht ſo ſchlimm, als du meiniſt, *not so bad as you think*; ich bin gerade ſo alt als du, *exactly as old as you*. In both these cases, however, and especially after the positive degree, it is very common to substitute wie for als. The usage is colloquial, but found abundantly in the best writers. Denn is now little used after a comparative, except to avoid an awkward repetition of als; e. g., Schiller war größer als Dichter denn als Philoſoph, *greater as poet than as philosopher*. Als wie, for als, is colloquial, but common in the classics.

b. Da with pret. may denote simple time, like als; e. g., da ihr noch die ſchöne Welt regiertet, *when you still ruled* (S.). So, too, to define Zeit; e. g., die Zeiten, da ich noch ſelbſt im Werden war, *the times when* (G.). More often, however, it is causal; e. g., da du, o Herr, dich einmal wieder nañt, *since thou doſt again draw near* (G.). Somewhat rare is the sense of *though*; e. g., da ſich mein Vater nicht leicht eine Ausgabe erlaubte, ſo war er dagegen nicht ſarg, *though my father did not like to ſpend money, still he was not niggardly* (G.); werd' ein Fürſtentnecht, da du ein Selbſtherr ſein kannſt, *become a vassal, where (though) you may be a sovereign* (S.).

c. Damit denotes purpose, not result, and is usually followed by the subjunctive; e. g., daß ſag' ich euch, damit ihr's wiſſet, *I tell you this that*

you may know it (S.). Auf daß, = *in order that*, is common in early modern Ger., but is now archaic; e. g., ehre Vater und Mutter, auf daß es dir wohl gehe, *honor thy father and mother in order that*, etc. (Lu.).

d. Daß may denote purpose or result; e. g., alle Blüten müssen vergehen, daß Früchte beglücken, *Wossoms must fade that fruits may bless* (G.). But for this daß modern prose prefers damit. Denoting result daß is apt to be preceded by so, auf solche Weise, dergestalt; e. g., er spricht so leise, daß man nicht versteht, *he speaks so low that one does not understand*. After zu . . . als, in result-clauses, the subjunctive is usual; e. g., er spricht zu leise, als daß man ihn verstehen könnte, *he speaks too low for one to be able to understand him*. — Most often daß introduces a substantive or adjective clause; e. g., ich glaube, daß er kommen wird, *I believe that he will come*; meine Behauptung, daß es falsch ist, *my assertion that it is false*. The subjunctive in an object-clause is due to the nature of the thought (§ 360), not to any governing power of daß; e. g., wer dachte, daß die Sache so stünde? *who thought that the affair stood thus?* er meinte, daß es zu spät sei, *he thought that it was too late*. — After verbs of saying, thinking, etc., daß may be omitted, the order becoming normal; e. g., ich glaube, er wird kommen, *I believe he will come* (instead of daß er kommen wird); er sagte, es wäre alles vorüber, *he said that all was over*. — A clause with daß may define a noun of time; e. g., es sind drei Jahre, daß ich hier wohne, *it is three years that I have been living here*; in der Zeit, daß ich bei ihm war, *in the time that I was with him*. — A daß-clause may depend on the preposition außer or ohne; e. g., er gleicht seinem Bruder, außer daß er blaue Augen hat, *except that he has blue eyes*; er kam niemals, ohne daß er ein Geschenk brachte, *without bringing a present*. — Notice finally the idiom: daß ich nicht wüßte, *not that I know of*.

e. Indem denotes contemporaneousness, often with the subaudition of cause. Usually it is best translated by a verbal in *ing*, or else by a participial construction; e. g., fürchte dich nicht, sagte Wilhelm, indem er auf sie losging, *'do not be afraid,' said Wilhelm, advancing toward her* (G.); indem er den Plan zu früh verriet, verdarb er die ganze Sache, *by betraying the plan too soon, he ruined the whole cause*.

f. Je + adv. or adj. introduces 'proportional' clauses, and is usually followed by (um) desto, less often by je, with inversion; e. g., je weniger eine Hand verrichtet, desto zarter ist ihr Gefühl, *the less a hand does, the more delicate is its feeling* ('the hand of little employment hath the daintier sense,' *Hamlet*); je mehr ihr lernt, je mehr vergeßt ihr, *the more you learn the more you forget* (L.).

g. Obgleich, obchon, obwohl often undergo tmesis; e. g., ob sich gleich auf Deutsch nichts reimet, *though nothing rhymes with 'deutsch'* (G.).

h. So + adv. appears in sobald, as soon as; sofern, as far as; solange, as long as; soviel, soweit, as far as. These words are sometimes, but

not now usually, followed by *als*; e. g., *solang' er auf der Erde lebt, as long as he lives on earth* (G.). A concessive *so*, = *however*, may precede almost any adj. or adv., with dependent order; e. g., *erfüll' dein Herz davon, so groß es ist, fill thy heart with it, great as it is*. But usually there is a following auch; e. g., *so schnell er auch lief, however fast he ran*.

i. *Wann* is now always interrogative, direct or indirect; e. g., *wann kommt er? when is he coming?* *ich weiß nicht, wann er kommt*.

j. *Weil* is now usually causal, as in *er ist dir neidisch, weil du glücklich wohnst, he is envious of you because you live happily* (S.). But in the classics, and even now in poetry, it is often found in its earlier temporal sense of *while*; e. g., *freut euch, weil der Frühling währet, rejoice while spring lasts* (Voss).

k. *Wenn* may have conditional or purely temporal meaning. The pret. after the temporal *wenn* implies repeated or customary action; e. g., *an euch nur dacht' ich, wenn ich sann und schrieb, I thought only of you when(ever) I mused and wrote* (G.). *Als ich sann und schrieb* would refer to one occasion. *Wenn* represents Eng. *when* before a pres. or a fut. tense; e. g., *wir kommen wieder, wenn der Ruckuck ruft, when the cuckoo calls*. The conditional *wenn* may be followed by any tense.

l. *Wie* as temporal conjunction denotes immediate sequence; e. g., *und wie er erwacht, in seliger Lust, as he awakens, on awakening*; *wie er das hörte, ging er fort, on hearing that*. It thus differs from *als* and *indem*, which imply contemporaneousness. More often *wie* denotes manner, = *how* or *as*; e. g., *ich weiß nicht, wie er lebt, I know not how he lives*; *wir sprachen vom Seemann, und wie er lebt, of the sailor and his way of living*; *es ist, wie ich dir sagte, it is as I told you*. A clause with *wie* may define a noun of manner; e. g., *die Art, wie er lebt, his way of living*. On the very common, but faulty use of *wie* for *als* in comparisons (*ich bin älter wie du, ich bin nicht so alt wie du*) see above under *als*.

m. Observe that *wann*, *wie*, *wo* and its compounds may be used as direct interrogatives, with the order as in Eng.; it is only when used indirectly in dependent sentences that they require the dependent order; e. g., *wo ist er? wann wird er kommen? where is he? when will he come?* *ich weiß nicht, wann er kommen wird, I do not know when he will come*. The prepositional compounds of *wo*, *woran*, *worauf*, etc., usually have relative force, but some of them serve also as indirect interrogatives; e. g., *die Frage, wovon die Rede ist, the question under discussion*; *ich weiß nicht, wovon die Rede ist, I do not know what the question under discussion is*. The particle *auch* (less often *nur* or *nimmer*) placed after an indirect *wann*, *wie* or *wo*, gives the force of Eng. *ever*; e. g., *ein heiliger Wille lebt, wie auch der menschliche wankte, a holy will lives, however the human will may waver* (S.); *wie das auch sein mag, however that may be*.

THE INTERJECTION.

382. Nature of the Interjection. The interjection does not form an integral part of the sentence, but is a sentence by itself, i. e., an independent expression of feeling or will.

1. Some interjections are used only as such, either alone or in connection with some other part of speech ; e. g., *ach!* *ah!* *ach, Gott!* *ah, God!* *dear me!* *psst!* *hush!* These may be called the interjections proper.

2. Others are nouns, adjectives, adverbs, verbs, phrases ; e. g., *heil!* *hail!* *herrlich!* *splendid!* *mun!* *well!* *sieh!* *look!* *Gottlob!* *God be praised!* Here belong all sorts of oaths, adjurations and by-words.

3. Others are calls to animals, imitations of sounds, refrains used in singing ; e. g., *hi!* *haw!* *wau!* *bow-wow!* *mian!* *mew!* *piff!* *bang!* *juchheifa!* *heifa!* *he!* *hurrah!* *heigho!* *hoho!*

4. While the interjection has no proper case-governing power and is usually followed by the nom., or by a prepositional phrase, it may be associated with a gen., dat. or acc. See §§ 255, 261, 1, a, 267, 3.

383. List of Interjections.

The interjections and interjectional phrases that fall under 2 and 3 in the above classification are too numerous to mention. The following list comprises only those of class 1, and of these only some of the more important. Such are :

<i>ach!</i> <i>ah!</i> <i>O!</i> <i>alas!</i>	<i>hallo!</i> <i>hello!</i>	<i>hui!</i> <i>whiz!</i>
<i>ah!</i> <i>ah!</i>	<i>he!</i> <i>o!</i>	<i>hurra!</i> <i>hurrah!</i>
<i>aha!</i> <i>aha!</i>	<i>heda!</i> <i>ho there!</i>	<i>juchhe!</i> <i>heigho!</i>
<i>au!</i> <i>O!</i>	<i>heifa!</i> <i>heigho!</i>	<i>ua!</i> <i>inleed!</i> <i>well now!</i>
<i>bah!</i> <i>bah!</i>	<i>hem!</i> <i>hm!</i> <i>hm!</i>	<i>o!</i> <i>oh!</i> <i>O!</i> <i>oh!</i>
<i>eh!</i> <i>eh!</i>	<i>ho!</i> <i>ho!</i>	<i>oho!</i> <i>oho!</i>
<i>ei!</i> <i>oho!</i>	<i>hoho!</i> <i>hoho!</i>	<i>pfui!</i> <i>pooh!</i> <i>fie!</i>
<i>ha!</i> <i>ha!</i>	<i>holla!</i> <i>hello!</i>	<i>psst!</i> <i>hush!</i>
<i>haha!</i> <i>haha!</i>	<i>hu!</i> <i>whew!</i>	<i>uff!</i> <i>ugh!</i>

1. It is usual to classify interjections according to the nature of the feeling they denote, but with some of the most common the meaning depends largely on the connection, the tone in which they are uttered, the accompanying gesture, etc. Thus *ach* most often expresses pain or regret, but it may denote surprise, or even delight. — *O*, *oh*, are often simply particles of address. — *Bah*, *pfui*, *uff*, express annoyance or disgust. — *He*, *heda*, *ho*, *hallo*, are used in attracting attention. — *Na* is deprecatory, a sort of verbal shrug of the shoulders.

WORD-FORMATION.

384. Of Derivation in General. Words are derived from roots, usually with the aid of prefixes and suffixes. Thus, looking at the noun *Geburt*, *birth*, we find that the prefix *ge* and the suffix *t* form a part of numerous other nouns, as well as this one, and have a meaning of their own. They are therefore called formative elements. The root is what remains when all such elements have been removed.

1. From a modern point of view it would seem, then, that the root of *Geburt* is the syllable *bur*. But *Geburt* comes from *gebären*, earlier *geberēn*, which, with its pret. *gebar*, and its pple. *geboren*, shows us the *same* root in the forms *ber*, *bar*, *bor*. This internal vowel-change, called, as we have seen, 'ablaut,' plays an important part in derivation.

2. The primary factors in derivation are, then, (1) the radical syllable with its possibilities of ablaut, (2) prefixes, and (3) suffixes. A root must always be present, though its exact meaning is not always determinable. Of the formative elements, suffixes play a much more important part than prefixes. In general a formative suffix is necessary to convert a root into a word. Many words which now seem to have no suffix had one originally; e. g., *Tag*, *day*, goes back to an earlier form *dhogh-o-s*, in which *o* is formative suffix and *s* the ending of the nominative. The root plus the formative suffix gives the stem; thus the old stem of *Tag* was *dhogh-o*, but in the modern form root and stem coincide. Some suffixes, e. g., *heit* in *Freiheit*, and *tum* in *Stirtum*, were once independent words; in the case of others no such origin is traceable. A suffix may cause umlaut, which thus enters as a secondary factor into derivation; e. g., *Frau*, *Fräulein*.

3. Finally, two or more words, each formed in the manner above described, may combine into a compound; e. g., *Geburtstag*, *birth-day*.

4. *Remark.* The etymology of German words can not be thoroughly studied without a knowledge of the older Germanic dialects and of

comparative Indo-European Philology (Appendix II). The following treatment of derivation, which does not presuppose such knowledge, must of necessity, therefore, be somewhat superficial.

THE DERIVATION OF NOUNS.

385. Nouns of Obscure Derivation. There are many nouns the derivation of which is obscure, either because there is no related verb which shows the root, or because the suffix, if there is one, has no definable meaning which enables us to associate the word with others of like ending. Such are, e. g., *Tag*, *day*; *Feder*, *feather*; *Haus*, *house*; *Busen*, *bosom*; *Wasser*, *water*.

1. Such nouns must count, for the student of modern German, as primitive words, though many of them can be explained by the help of comparative philology. Thus *Tag* probably comes from a root meaning *to burn*: the 'day' was the *warm* part of the four-and-twenty hours. Again *Feder* comes from a root meaning *to fly*, plus an instrumental suffix: it meant *means of flying*. But the syllable *Fed* is meaningless in modern German, as is also the suffix *er* applied to it, though there are other words in abundance in which *er* has a definable meaning; e. g., *Halter*, *holder*, from the root of *halten*, *hold*. Hence we may call *Feder* a primitive word, and *Halter* a derivative, though both are in reality derivatives.

386. Derivation by Ablaut. Many nouns are derived from strong verbal roots without the aid of a suffix. The root may appear as in the infinitive of the verb, or in some other ablaut-variation; e. g., *Fall*, *fall*, from *fallen*; *Biß*, *bite*, from *beißen*; *Schuß*, *shot*, from *schießen*; *Zoll*, *toll*, from *zählen*. The great mass of such derivatives are masculine (cf. § 234, 1, a.).

387. Derivation by Suffix. The great majority of nouns are formed by the aid of a suffix. Some of the suffixes are applied to a verbal root (usually, but not always, in the form shown by the infinitive), others to a verbal stem or to the stem of a noun or adjective. The following alphabetical list contains those which are most important, *i. e.*, those which are now felt, more or less distinctly, as

suffixes, and form derivatives that have a definite and easily discernible relation to the primitive base. Those suffixes that contain a front vowel (e, i) are apt to cause umlaut, but there are many exceptions.

1. **Dr**, attached to verbal roots, denotes the thing done, or a concrete manifestation of the action; e. g., *Bürde*, *burden*, from *-bären*, *bear*; *Freude*, *joy*, from *freuen*, *rejoice*; *Gemälde*, *painting*, from *malen*, *paint*; *Gelübde*, *vow*, from *geloben*, *vow*; *Zierde*, *ornament*, from *zieren*, *adorn*.

2. **E** is a very common suffix: (1) Attached to verbal roots it forms a multitude of feminines, which denote the action or its concrete effect, less often that which performs the action; e. g., *Lüge*, *falsehood*, from *lügen*, *lie*; *Lage*, *situation*, from *liegen*, *lie*; *Gabe*, *gift*, from *geben*; *Sprache*, *language*, from *sprechen*; *Fliege*, *fly*, from *fliegen*; *Schlange*, *serpent*, from *schlingen*, *wind*. A few masculines denote persons; e. g., *Bote*, *messenger*, from *bieten*, *bid*. (2) Attached to adjectives (always with umlaut, if possible), it forms abstracts; e. g., *Größe*, *greatness*, from *groß*; *Länge*, *length*, from *lang*; *Kürze*, *brevity*, from *kurz*.

3. **Ei', erri'**. *Ei* is of foreign origin, Lat. *ia*, Fr. *ie*, and is always accented. It is appended both to nominal and to verbal stems to form nouns of action and of place; e. g., *Heuchelei*, *hypocrisy*, from *heucheln*, *feign*; *Abtei*, *abbey*, from *Abt*, *abbot*. As it was often used after *er*, the suffix came to be felt as *erri*, and the latter is now much more common than the simple *ei*. *Eri* forms nouns of action, as *Malerei*, *painting*, from *malen*; of place, as *Bäckerei*, *bakery*, from *backen*; of condition, as *Sklaverei*, *slavery*, from *Sklave*; rarely also collectives, as *Reiterei*, *cavalry*, from *Reiter*. It often implies contempt, as in *Spielelei*, *Rinderei*, *child's play*; *Juristerei*, *pettifoggery*, from *Jurist*.

4. **El**, applied to verbal roots, denotes the instrument; e. g., *Zügel*, *rein*, from *ziehen*, *draw*; *Klingel*, *bell*, from *klingen*, *ring*; *Hebel*, *lever*, from *heben*, *lift*. In South-German dialect *el* forms diminutives and familiar nick-names; e. g., *Mädel*, *girl*, instead of *Mädchen*; *Seppel*, nick-name of *Joseph*.

5. **Er, ler, ner**. *Er*, applied to verbal roots denotes the agent; e. g., *Seher*, *seer*, from *sehen* *Jäger*, *hunter*, from *jagen*. It may also denote the instrument; e. g., *Schläger*, *sword*, from *schlagen*; *Bohrer*, *gimlet*, from *bohren*. Attached to noun-stems it denotes a resident or a functionary; e. g., *Bürger*, *citizen*, from *Burg*, *castle*; *Berliner*, *resident of Berlin*; *Vogler*, *fowler*, from *Vogel* *Gärtner*, *gardner*, from *Garten*. The use of the suffix *er* after nouns in *el* and *en* (as in the last two examples) gave rise to the two new suffixes *ler* and *ner*, which were then appended to nouns not ending in *el* or *en*; as *Künstler* *artist*, from *Kunst*, *art*; *Kellner*, *waiter*, from *Keller*, *cellar*.

6. **Seit, feit.** Seit, cognate with *hood*, in *falsehood*, and *head* in the archaic *drowsihead*, = *drowsiness*, was once an independent word, meaning *manner, person*. It forms abstracts from adjectives, and collectives from nouns; e. g., Freiheit, *freedom*, from frei; Schönheit, *beauty*, from schön; Menschheit, *mankind*, from Mensch; Christenheit, *Christendom*, from Christ. As appended to adjectives in ig, it took, by phonetic dissimilation, the form *feit*; e. g., Seligkeit, *blessedness*, from selig, became Seligkeit. The new suffix *feit* was then appended regularly to adjectives in ig, bar and sam; e. g., Freude, *joyfulness*, from freudig; Fruchtbarkeit, *fruitfulness*, from fruchtbar; Langsamkeit, *slowness*, from langsam.

7. **ſicht** forms from verbal roots a few nouns that denote the collective result of the action; e. g., Reſicht, *sweepings*, from ſehren, *sweep*; Spülicht, *washings*, from ſpülen.

8. **In**, cognate with *en* in *vixen*, earlier *ſyzen*, i. e., *she-fox*, forms feminines that correspond to masculines; e. g., Löwin, *lioness*; Königin, *queen*; Fürſtin, *princess*.

9. **ling**, cognate with *ling*, in *sapling*, *youngling*, is attached to adjectives, to denote one who possesses or exemplifies the quality; e. g., Fremdling, *stranger*, from fremd; Jüngling, *young man*, from jung; Erſtling, *firstling*. Applied to nouns it denotes connection, origin; e. g., Höſſling, *courtier*, from Hof; Sprößling, *scion*, from Sproß. Applied to verbal roots it denotes the agent or the object; e. g., Abſömmling, *descendant*, from abkommen; Findling, *foundling*, from finden. In several words its meaning is uncertain and not distinctly felt; e. g., Sperling, *sparrow* (cf. Eng. *starling*); Frühling, *Spring*, from früh; Schmetterling, *butterfly*.

10. **nis**, earlier spelling *niß*, *nuß*, cognate with *ness* in *goodness*, is applied to adjectives to denote a concrete manifestation of the quality; e. g., Wildnis, *wilderness*, from wild; Fäulnis, *rottenness*, from faul. Attached to verbal roots it denotes the action, its concrete effect, or the place where it is performed; e. g., Kenntnis, *the act of knowing*, from kennen; Betrübnis, *affliction*, from betrüben; Gefängnis, *prison*, from fangen.

11. **ſal**, attached to verbal roots, denotes the thing done or a concrete manifestation of the action; e. g., Schickſal, *fate*, from ſchicken, *send*; Trübsal, *trouble*, from trüben; Laßſal, *refreshment*, from laßen. Œel, with weaker accent, is another form of the same suffix; e. g., Räſel, *riddle*, from raten, *guess*; Überbleibſel, *remnant*, from überbleiben.

12. **ſchaft**, cognate with *ship* in *friendship*, was once an independent word meaning *character, being*. It is attached to nouns to form abstracts and collectives; e. g., Feindſchaft, *enmity*, from Feind; Mann-

ſchaft, *crew*, from Mann; Herrſchaft, *dominion*, from Herr; Botſchaft, *message*, from Bote.

13. **Lum**, cognate with *dom* in *kingdom*, was once an independent word meaning *status, condition*. It is applied to nouns to denote estate, province, sphere, and to adjectives to denote a concrete manifestation of the quality; e. g., Bürgertum, *citizenship*, from Bürger; Fürſtentum, *principality*, from Fürſt; Ältertum, *antiquity*, from Älter; Eigentum, *property*, from eigen, *own*; Heiligtum, *sanctuary, halidom*, from heilig. Observe that it does not form collectives as in Eng.; e. g., Chriſtentum *Christianity*; Chriſtenheit, *Christendom*. It is rarely attached to verbal roots, as in Wächſtum, *growth*, from wachſen.

14. **Ing**, cognate with *ing* in *ending*, forms from verbal roots nouns that denote the action or its effect; e. g., Warnung, *warning*, from warnen; Faſſung, *form, version*, from faſſen; Meinung, *opinion*, from meinen. It is rarely attached to adjectives, as in Feſtung, *fortress*, from feſt.

388. Derivation by Prefix. Not a few nouns are formed with the aid of a prefix. The word 'prefix,' as here employed, does not include prepositions, adverbs and other parts of speech, that have an independent existence. Such cases as, e. g., Anteil, *share*, and Fürwort, *pronoun*, come under the head of composition. It is also to be observed that many nouns which seem to come from a noun preceded by an inseparable prefix (be, ent, er, ge, ver, zer) are in reality from verbs; thus Beſtand, *constitution*, is not from be + Stand, but from beſtehen; Vorfall, *decay*, not from vor + Fall, but from vorfallen. The true prefixes, as thus limited, are few in number and, excepting ge, all accented. The more important of them are as follows:

1. **After**, identical with Eng. *after*, forms a few nouns denoting something secondary, spurious, false; e. g., Afterbild, *weak imitation*, from Bild; Äſtergott, *false god*, from Gott; Äſterrede, *calumny*, from Rede; Äſterwelt, *posterity*, from Welt.

2. **Ant**, the same as the unaccented ent, emp, in verbal compounds, appears in Antlik, *face*, and Antwort, *answer*. Its original meaning is *over against*.

3. **Erz**, Eng. *arch*, from Gk. ἀρχ-, means *chief, foremost*; e. g., Erzengel, *archangel*; Erzböſewicht, *arch-villain*; Erzdummkopf, *fool of fools*.

4. **Ge**, originally meaning *with*, is prefixed to noun-stems to form collectives, and nouns denoting joint action, association; e. g., Geſellſchaft,

mass of clouds, from Wolke, *cloud*; Gewässer, *waters*, from Wasser; Gefährte, *comrade, fellow-traveler*, from Fahrt, *journey*; Gefell(e), *companion* (originally *room-mate*, from Saal, *room*); Gespielt, *playmate*, from Spiel. Prefixed to verbal roots, it forms nouns which denote the action itself or its concrete effect; e. g., Gebrüll, *roaring*, from brüllen; Gerede, *talk*, from reden; Geschenk, *present*, from schenken; Gebäude, *building*, from bauen. Both classes of derivatives are apt to have the suffix e, and the great mass of them are neuter.

5. **Miß**, cognate with Eng. *mis* in *mistake*, means *wrong, amiss*; e. g., Mißbrauch, *misuse, abuse*, from Brauch, *use*; Mißgeburt, *monstrosity*, from Geburt; Mißmut, *ill-humor*, from Mut.

6. **Un**, cognate with *un* in *untrue*, is a negative prefix which besides being prefixed to adjectives, as in Eng., is freely used before nouns to reverse their meaning, or to denote something prodigious; e. g., Unmenſch, *monster*, from Menſch; Unſinn, *absurdity, chimera*, from Sinn; Unzahl, *countless number*, from Zahl; Unmaſſe, *prodigious mass*, from Maſſe.

7. **Ur**, cognate with *or* in *ordeal*, ultimately also with *out*, means *primitive, original, very ancient*; e. g., Urmenſch, *primeval man*; Urſprache, *original language*; Urquell, *original source*; Urahnſtamm, *remote ancestor*; Urgroßmutter, *great-great-grandmother*.

THE DERIVATION OF ADJECTIVES.

389. Primitive Adjectives. A large number of adjectives, the most of them monosyllabic, must count as primitive words; e. g., alt, *old*; gut, *good*; reich, *rich*; böſe, *base*; eitel, *vain*.

1. Speaking generally the monosyllabic adjectives are really derived, like the nouns, from verbal roots, and had originally a formative suffix; thus alt goes back to an ideal form *al-dá*, in which *da* is a participial suffix and *al* a root meaning to *grow* (cognate with Lat. *al-o, nourish*); so that alt meant originally *grown up*. But there is no root *al* in German, and *t* is not felt as a suffix; hence the word is to be regarded as primitive. There are, however, a few monosyllabic adjectives which are formed by ablaut from verbal roots that do exist in modern German; e. g., braún, *fallow*, from brechen, *break*; glatt, *smooth*, from gleiten, *slip*.

2. In many cases the old formative suffix has left traces of itself in the umlaut of the root-vowel, or in a final e, or both. Thus ſchön, *beautiful*, was once *seoni*, and the *i* caused umlaut before it disappeared. So böſe is from an older *bosi*, the suffix *i* remaining as e.

390. Adjectival Suffixes. Most adjectives are formed by means of a suffix. The term 'suffix' does not embrace independent words which appear as the final element of a compound and preserve their own proper meaning; e. g., *voll*, *full*, in *schmerzvoll*, *painful*; *reich* in *gedankenreich*, *rich in thought*, *thoughtful*. On the other hand it may properly include endings such as *-artig*, *-mäßig*, *-selig*, which, as suffixes, are not identical with the adjectives *artig*, *mäßig*, *selig*. The most important of the adjective-forming suffixes are, then, as follows:

1. **Artig**, a derivative of *Art*, *kind*, *manner*, forms adjectives of manner from nouns and adjectives; e. g., *blitzartig*, *lightning-like*, from *Blitz*; *hundartig*, *dog-like*, from *Hund*; *großartig*, *grand*, from *groß*; *fremdartig*, *strange*, from *fremd*. Notice also *derartig*, *of that kind*, from the adverbial gen. *der Art*.

2. **Bar**, from the root of *-bären*, *bear*, is attached to verbal roots, sometimes also to nouns, and very rarely to adjectives. Its Eng. equivalent is generally, though with some exceptions, an adjective in *able*, *ible*; e. g., *dienstbar*, *serviceable*, from *Dienst*; *schiffbar*, *navigable*, from *Schiff*; *mannbar*, *marriageable*, from *Mann*; *furchtbar*, *fearful*, *terrible*, from *Furcht*; *denkbar*, *thinkable*, from *denken*; *haltbar*, *tenable*, from *halten*; *lesbar*, *readable*, *legible*, from *lesen*; *offenbar*, *evident*, from *offen*.

3. **En, ern**. *En*, cognate with *en* in *wooden*, forms adjectives of material from nouns; e. g., *golden*, *golden*; *ledern*, *leathern*, from *Leder*. Its use after nouns in *er*, as in *ledern*, gave rise to the new suffix *ern*, which is more common than the original *en*; e. g., *bleiern*, *leaden*, from *Blei*; *hölzern*, *wooden*, from *Holz*; *stählern*, *of steel*, from *Stahl*.

4. **Er** forms indeclinable adjectives from names of cities; e. g., *der Kölner Dom*, *the Cologne Cathedral*. These adjectives are stereotyped genitives plural; but since they are no longer felt as genitives one should not say, *ein Verein Leipziger Lehrer* for *an association of Leipzig teachers*, but *ein Verein von Leipziger Lehrern* (§ 247, 2).

5. **Elei** forms, from numerals, indeclinable adjectives denoting the *number of kinds*; e. g., *einerlei*, *of one kind*; *mancherlei*, *of many kinds*. In their origin these words are adverbial genitives of an old fem. noun *Feie*, meaning *manner*, *way*.

6. **Fach** forms multiplicative adjectives from numerals. It corresponds to Eng. *fold*; e. g., *dreifach*, *threefold*; *vielfach*, *manifold*.

7. **Fältig, fältig**, a derivative of **Falt, fold**, forms multiplicative adjectives from numerals; e. g., dreifältig, or dreifältig, *threefold, triple*; mannigfaltig (or =fältig), *manifold*.

8. **Haft**, in its origin a pple. of **haben**, meaning *had, possessed, found*, is attached to nouns, rarely to verbal roots, and still more rarely to adjectives. It means *partaking of the nature of*; e. g., Knabenhaft, *boyish*, from Knabe; schalkhaft, *roguish*, from Schalk; fehlerhaft, *erroneous*, from Fehler; spaßhaft, *jocose*, from Spaß; böshaft, *malicious*, from böse (earlier *bos-i*); krankhaft, *sickly, morbid*, from krank; seßhaft, *wohnhaft, resident*, from sitzen and wohnen.

9. **Ich** forms from nouns a few adjectives of quality; e. g., thöricht, *foolish*, from Thor; nebelicht, *cloudy*, from Nebel; ölicht, *oily*, from Öl.

10. **ig**, cognate with *y* in *milky*, is one of the commonest of suffixes, being attached to nouns, adjectives, adverbs, and sometimes to verbal roots. Its force is that of the Eng. suffixes *y, ful, ous*; e. g., blutig, *bloody*, from Blut; freudig, *joyful*, from Freude; einig, *united*, from ein; wahrhaftig, *true*, from wahrhaft; heutig, *of to-day*, from heute; damalig, *of that time*, from damals; gültig, *valid*, from gelten.

11. **isch**, is cognate with *ish* in *boyish*, and is used in much the same way; e. g., kindisch, *childish* (with depreciatory meaning as compared with kindlich, *childlike*); weibisch, *womanish* (but weiblich, *womanly, feminine*). It is the preferred suffix to form adjectives from proper names and foreign words; e. g., römisches, *Roman* (as well as *Romish*); amerikanisch, *American*; bayerisch, *Bavarian*; logisch, *logical*; philosophisch, *philosophical*. A proper adjective in *isch* often takes the place of a limiting gen.; e. g., die Lessing'sche Theorie, *the theory of Lessing*.

12. **lich**, cognate with *ly* in *friendly*, is the most common of the adjectival suffixes. Attached to nouns it corresponds in the main to Eng. *ly, ous, ful*; e. g., göttlich, *godly, divine*, from Gott; täglich, *daily*, from Tag; gefährlich, *dangerous*, from Gefahr; schädlich, *harmful*, from Schade. After verbal roots its meaning is similar to that of *bar*; e. g., leidlich, *tolerable*, from leiden; thu(n)lich, *feasible*, from thun; möglich, *possible*, from mögen. Derivatives in *lich* and *bar* are sometimes formed from the same root with hardly perceptible difference of meaning; e. g., greifbar and greiflich, *that can be grasped*, from greifen. More often there is a difference of meaning, *bar* having a more distinctly passive force; e. g., ausführbar, *practicable*; ausführlich, *complete*; undenkbar, *unthinkable*, undenklich, *immemorial*. Attached to adjectives *lich* usually has weakening force; e. g., güttlich, *kindly*, from gut; reinlich, *cleanly*, from rein; süßlich, *sweetish*, from süß. **lich** forms a few derivatives that are used only as adverbs (e. g., freilich, § 373, 1), but it has never become, like Eng. *ly*, a true adverbial suffix. Adjectives

in iglich, e. g., *wonniglich*, *rapturous*, from *Bonne*, *wonnig*, belong now to stately diction and are becoming quaint.

13. *Los* is cognate with *less* in *endless* and is used in much the same way; e. g., *grundlos*, *groundless*; *freudlos*, *joyless*. As independent word it means *free from*, *rid of*.

14. *Mäßig*, a derivative of *Maß*, *manner*, forms adjectives of manner from nouns; e. g., *regelmäßig*, *regular*, from *Regel*, *rule*; *volkmäßig*, *popular*, from *Volk*.

15. *Sam*, cognate with *some* in *lonesome*, is attached to nouns, adjectives and verbal roots. After nouns it has the force of Eng. *-some*; e. g., *furchtſam*, *fearsome*, *timid* (with active meaning in contrast with *furchtbar*, *fearful*), from *Furcht*; *mühsam*, *toilsome*, from *Mühe*; *heilsam*, *wholesome*, from *Heil*. To adjectives it gives a modified meaning which is not definable in general terms; e. g., *langſam*, *slow*, from *lang*, *long*; *einfam*, *solitary*, *lonesome*, from *ein*, *one*; *wachſam*, *vigilant*, from *wach*, *awake*. Attached to verbal roots it forms verbals with passive, less often with active, meaning; e. g., *lenſam*, *tractable*, from *lenken*; *biegsam*, *flexible*, from *biegen*; *ſchweigsam*, *silent*, from *ſchweigen*; *aufmerſam*, *attentive*, from *aufmerken*.

16. *Selig*, derived from the noun-suffix *ſal* in such words as *trübſelig*, *sad*, from *Trübſal*, forms adjectives of manner, quality, character; e. g., *ſaumſelig*, *dilatory*, from *ſaumſal*; *mühselig*, *toilsome*, from *Mühsal*. In other cases the ending *ſelig* is the adjective *ſelig*, *happy*, e. g., *gottſelig*, *godly*, *happy in God*. In *glückſelig*, *happy*, from obsolete *Glückſal*, the independent *ſelig* is now felt.

391. Adjectival Prefixes. These are in general the same as the noun-forming prefixes mentioned in § 388. Thus:

1. *Erz*, always accented, forms absolute superlatives, mostly with a humorous tinge; e. g., *erzſauſ*, = *äußerſt ſauſ*, *extremely lazy*.

2. *Ge*, besides forming several adjectives that must count as primitive words, is prefixed to adjectives and verbal roots with a force which is not now distinctly felt and can hardly be defined in general terms (cf. § 396, 4); e. g., *genug*, *enough*; *genau*, *exact*; *gerecht*, *righteous*, from *recht*; *getreu*, *faithful*, from *tren*; *geſchelt*, *clever*, from *ſcheitben*; *gemäß*, *conformable*, from *meſſen*; *genehm*, *acceptable*, from *nehmen*.

3. *Un*, as negative prefix, is cognate with Eng. *un*, and is used in much the same way, except that its accent is variable. If the basic adjective is not derived from a verbal root, *un* usually has the chief stress; e. g., *u'nruhig*, *uneasy*; *u'richtig*, *incorrect*; *u'nfruchtbar*, *unfruitful*. Notice, however, such exceptions as *un'e'ndlich*, *infinite*;

ungeheu'er, *uncanny, prodigious*. The same principle holds if the basic adjective is derived from a verbal root, but is not a verbal in *bar*, *lidh*, or *ſam*; e. g., u'nerhört, *unheard of*; u'naugenehm, *unpleasant*; u'nbequem, *uncomfortable*. Verbals in *bar*, *lidh* and *ſam* generally accent the root syllable; e. g., unde'nſbar, *unthinkable*; ungla'n'blidh, *incredible*; unbie'gſam, *inflexible*. But in some of this last class the accent is unsettled; e. g., u'nerzeih'lidh, or unverzei'h'lidh, *unpardonable*. Observe finally that *un* may form negatives to which there is no corresponding positive; e. g., unſä'g'lidh, *unspeakable*; u'nerhofft, *unhoped for*.

4. *Ur*, always accented, has the same force as in nouns; e. g., uralt, *very ancient*.

THE DERIVATION OF VERBS.

392. Primitive Verbs. All verbs that are derived directly from a monosyllabic root, with no other suffix than the usual *en* of the infinitive, must count as primitive words. Such are all of the strong verbs and a large number of older weak verbs; e. g., *haben, have; holen, fetch; reden, talk*.

1. It is to be noted, however, that the modern *en* of the inf. represents several different suffixes of the older language. One of the most common of these was the syllable *ja*, which has caused umlaut in some stems that, under the above definition, would have to be regarded as primitive; e. g., *hören, hear*, goes back to an earlier **hōr-ja*n.

393. Derivation by Umlaut. Many verbs are derived by umlaut of the root-vowel from verbal roots, nouns and adjectives. The umlaut is due to the old suffix *ja*, and is not always marked by the modern sign of umlaut. Thus we have :

1. A number of factitive verbs from strong roots, but with the root-vowel of the preterite, less often that of the infinitive; e. g., *tränken, make drink, water*, cognate with *drench*, from *trinken*; *führen, make go, lead*, from *ſahren*; *wenden, make turn*, from *winden*; *legen, make lie, lay*, from *liegen*; *ſetzen, make sit, set*, from *ſißen*; *fällen, make fall, fell*, from *ſällen*.

a. In a few such factitives there is change of the final consonant; e. g., *äßen, make eat, etch*, from *eſſen*; *ſchnißen, carve*, from *ſchneiden*; *beißen, macerate*, from *beißen, bite*; *ſchmüden, adorn*, from *ſchmiegen, lie*

smooth. The same mode of formation appears in the weak verb *wedten*, *awake* (transitive), from *wachen*, *be awake*.

2. Numerous derivatives from nouns and adjectives, the umlaut being due to analogy, or to the fact that the basic word has it; e. g., *fürchten*, *fear*, from *Furcht*; *füßten*, *kiss*, from *Ruß*; *gründen*, *found*, from *Grund*; *bäumen*, *rear*, from *Baum*; *schwärzen*, *blacken*, from *schwarz*; *öffnen*, *open*, from *offen*; *grünen*, *be green*, from *grün*.

394. Denominatives without Umlaut. A verb formed from a noun or adjective is called a 'denominative.' Many such of late origin are formed without umlaut, by simply adding *en*. They are mostly intransitive. Examples: *hausen*, *dwell*, from *Haus*; *wurzeln*, *be rooted*, from *Wurzel*; *landen*, *land*, from *Land*; *altern*, *age*, from *Alter*; *kranken*, *be ill* (cf. *kränken*, *grieve*); *erstarken*, *grow strong* (cf. *stärken*, *strengthen*).

395. Derivation by Suffix. The verbal suffixes are appended to the root, thus forming a new stem which then receives the *n* or *en* of the infinitive. The most important of them are as follows:

1. **Ch** forms a very few intensives; e. g., *hordchen*, *harken*, from *hören*; *schnardchen*, *snore*, from *schnarren*, *grunt*.

2. **El** forms iteratives, often with diminutive or derisive force, from verbs, nouns and adjectives; e. g., *tänzelu*, *caper*, from *tanzu*, *dance*; *grübelu*, *grub*, from *graben*, *dig*; *lächelu*, *smile*, from *lachu*, *laugh*; *hüstelu*, *cough slightly*, from *hustu*, *cough*; *liebclu*, *make love*, 'spoon,' from *lieben*; *handclu*, *act*, *trade*, from *hand*; *kränkclu*, *be sickly*, from *krank*.

3. **Er** forms iteratives and intensives, often with causative force; e. g., *plätschern*, *spatter*, from *plätzchen*, *splash*; *glimmern*, *glimmer*, from *glimmen*, *shine*; *zögern*, *linger*, from *ziehen*, *draw*; *stäubern* or *stöbern*, *fly like dust*, from *stauben*. In several verbs of this formation the root is onomatopoeic and does not appear in any simpler form; e. g., *flüstern*, *whisper*; *räusperu*, *clear the throat*. Different is the *eru* of verbs derived from adjectives (perhaps comparatives) in *er*; e. g., *säubern*, *clean*, from *sauber*; *vergrößern*, *enlarge*, from *größer*.

4. **Ier**, always accented, is of foreign origin, being derived from *Fr. ir, ier*, in such verbs as *partir*, *étudier*. In general the suffix is

attached only to foreign roots, as *studieren*, *study*; *regieren*, *rule*; *etablieren*, *establish*; *telegraphieren*, *telegraph*. In a few cases, however, the base is German; e. g., *buchstabieren*, *spell*, from *Buchstabe*; *stolzieren*, *strut*, from *stolz*. Verbs in *ieren* are very numerous, an immense number of them having been coined unnecessarily. The present tendency, at least in dignified writing, is to discard those for which there are good native equivalents; e. g., to use *gründen* or *einrichten* for *etablieren*; *ärgern* for *regieren*; *ankündigen* for *annoncieren*, etc.

5. **ig**, as verbal suffix, is simply the adjectival suffix *ig* applied at first in such cases as *einigen*, *unite*, from *einig*, or *mäßigen*, *moderate*, from *mäßig*, and then extended by analogy to stems that have no adjective in *ig*; e. g., *reinigen*, *cleanse*, from *rein*; *benachrichtigen*, *inform*, from *Nachricht*; *endigen*, *end*, from *Ende*.

6. **zen** is attached to several pronouns and onomatopoeic roots. The verbs in *zen* mean to *utter the word or sound* denoted by the base; e. g., *duzen*, *address with du*; *ihren*, *address with ihr*; *ächzen*, *groan*, *say ach*; *seufzen*, *sigh*; *schluchzen*, *sob*.

396. Derivation by Prefix. The unaccented inseparable prefixes are briefly treated in Part I, § 208. The account there given is amplified in the following paragraphs:

1. **Be**, i. e. *bei* weakened by loss of stress, is thought to have meant originally *by, around, on all sides*, as in *befchneiden*, *cut around, trim, circumcise*. But this force is now rarely apparent. Usually when prefixed to a verbal root *be* has intensive or perfective force, denoting thoroughness of operation, or the completed effect of the action upon an object; e. g., *befragen*, *ply with questions, question*, from *fragen*, *ask*; *befehen*, *look at carefully, inspect*, from *sehen*; *begraben*, *bury*, from *graben*, *dig*; *bestehen*, *withstand, insist*, from *stehen*; *bedenken*, *consider*, from *denken*. Often the difference between the simple verb and the compound is one of construction rather than of meaning; e. g., *befolgen*, *follow* (acc.), from *folgen* (dat.); *beachten*, *heed* (acc.), from *achten* (gen., or acc. with *auf*).

a. Prefixed to nouns *be* forms verbs that mean *to provide with, bestow, convert i. to*, that which is denoted by the stem; e. g., *benäuteln*, *mantle*, from *Mantel*; *beeinflussen*, *influence*, from *Einfluss*; *befreunden*, *befriend*, from *Freund*. Some of these derivatives have the suffix *er*, others *ig*; e. g., *begeistern*, *inspire*, from *Geist*; *bevölkern*, *people*, from *Volk*; *beenden*, *terminate*, from *Ende*; *beherzigen*, *encourage*, from *Herz*. A few derivatives in *be*, from nouns, occur only in the perf. pple.; e. g., *benachbart*, *neighboring*, from *Nachbar*; *bejahrt*, *along in years*, from *Jahr*.

b. Prefixed to adjectives *be* forms verbs that mean *to invest with*, or *put in operation*, the quality denoted by the stem; e. g., *befeligen*, *make happy*, from *selig*; *befähigen*, *make capable*, *authorize*, from *fähig*. The stem may be a comparative; e. g., *berreichern*, *enrich*, from *reich*; *beförbern*, *further*, from *vorder*.

2. *Ent*, weak form of the accented *ant*, in *Antwort*, meant originally *over against*, in *return*; cf. *entgelten*, *re-pay*, *re-quite*. As prefixed to verbal roots it has now two clearly defined uses. First, it forms inchoatives or inchoatives (denoting the beginning of an action); e. g., *entblühen*, *blossom*, *come to bloom*, from *blühen*; *entzünden*, *kindle*, from *zünden*; *entschlafen*, *fall asleep*, from *schlafen*. Secondly, it denotes separation or removal, involving often a simple undoing or reversal of the action denoted by the root; e. g., *entgehen*, *escape*, from *gehen*; *entnehmen*, *take away*, *borrow*, from *nehmen*; *entbeden*, *discover*, from *beden*; *entbinden*, *unfasten*, from *binden*.

a. Prefixed to nouns it has privative force; e. g., *enthaupten*, *behead*, from *Haupt*; *entblättern*, *deprive of leaves*, from *Blätter*; *entschädigen*, *indemnify*, from *Schade*. Before adjectives that contain already the idea of aloofness, separation, it has simply factitive force; e. g., *entfremden*, *alienate*, from *fremd*, *strange*; *entblößen*, *expose*, from *bloß*, *bare*; *entäußern*, *alienate*, from *äußer*, *outward*.

b. Aside from its inchoative and privative use, *ent* forms a number of verbs in which the force of the prefix is dimly felt, the compound differing but slightly perhaps from the simple verb; e. g., *entbieten*, *offer*, from *bieten*, *offer*; *entrichten*, *set right*, *discharge* (a debt), from *richten*, *set right*; *enthalten*, *contain*, from *halten*, *hold*.

c. The three verbs *empfangen* (*empfangen*), *empfehlen*, and *empfinden*, contain the prefix in the form *emp*, *ntf* having become *mpf*.

3. *Er*, the same as the accented *ur* in *Urquell*, ultimately also cognate with *aus*, *out*, meant originally *out*, *forth*, *to the end*. According as it looks to the beginning or the end it forms, from verbal roots: (1) Intransitive inchoatives; e. g., *erstehen*, *stand forth*, *arise*, from *stehen*; *erblühen*, *blossom*, from *blühen*; *erwachen*, *awaken* (*come into the state of wakefulness* denoted by the durative *wachen*). (2) Transitive perfectives, denoting attainment of a goal; e. g., *erdenken*, *think out*, *excogitate*, from *denken*; *erjagen*, *hunt down*, *capture by hunting*; *erfahren*, *experience* (*reach by going*, or *living*); *erbetteln*, *get by begging*.

a. Prefixed to adjectives *er* forms inchoatives and factitives; e. g., *erkranken*, *fall ill*; *erblinden*, *become blind*; *ermuntern*, *make cheerful*, *cheer up*; *erneuern*, *renew*; *sich erdreissen*, *make one's self bold*, *presume*. Cf. also, from a noun-stem, *sich ermannen*, *make one's self a man*, *nerve one's self*.

4. **Ge**, called by the Grimm Dictionary, which devotes some eighteen pages to it, 'the most wonderful word of our language,' meant originally *with, together*. It is possibly cognate with Lat. *cum-, con-, co-*. The radical meaning is still dimly felt in *gerinnen, run together, curdle*, and *gefrieren, cool together, freeze, con-geal*. (Cf. the nouns *Gebrüder, brothers*, belonging together in family or firm; *Gefährte, fellow-traveler*, etc.)

a. From the meaning *together* came that of fitness, appurtenance; e. g., *gehören, belong to*; *gebühren, befit*; *geziemen, beseem*.

b. Hence also the perfective force of *ge* (cf. Lat. *conficio* with *facio*); e. g., *gelangen, arrive at*; *gereichen, reach to, suffice*; *geraten, come into*; *genesen, get well*; *gewinnen, gain*. Out of this meaning grew its use as sign of the perf. pple. (§ 326, 1).

c. In a few verbs *ge* has durative force, denoting a permanent or persistent condition; e. g., *sich gebaren, behave one's self*; *gebenken, think of, intend*; *geruhen, please, be minded* (not from *ruhen*, but from an obsolete root cognate with *reck*); *gebären, bear, be in a state of bearing*.

d. In many cases, however, the force of *ge* is quite indeterminate. Indeed some of the explanations given above may be classed as doubtful, and in no case is the force of *ge* very distinctly felt even by educated speakers. In *glauben, Glück, Gnade*, it appears reduced to *g*.

5. **Ver**, cognate with *for* in *forgive*, at first meant *forth, away*. Like *er* it may look to the beginning or the end, and forms, accordingly: (1) Verbs that denote a final departure or removal from a previous status; e. g., *vergehen, pass away*; *vertreiben, drive out*; *versenden, send away, despatch*; *vergiesen, pour out, spill*. (2) Perfectives that denote a final issue, closing up, using up, or wasting, as the result of the action; e. g., *verblühen, go out of bloom, fade*; *verbluten, bleed to death*; *veressen, i. e., devour, eat up, devour*; *verschwinden, vanish*; *vergraben, bury*; *versiegeln, seal up*; *verbrauchen, use up*; *verspielen, waste in play*.

a. Out of the first meaning grows that which simply negatives the meaning of the basic verb (cf. *dis-pense* and *dis-unite*); e. g., *verbieten, forbid*, from *bieten, offer*; *vergeffen, forget*, from obsolete *geffen, get*; *versagen, refuse*.

b. The final issue being often conceived as wrong, *ver* comes to mean *amiss, wrongly, in excess, too long*; e. g., *verkehren, pervert (give a wrong turn)*, from *kehren, turn*; *verurtheilen, misjudge*; *verführen, lead astray, seduce*; *versitzen, sit too long*; *verschlafen, oversleep*.

c. Prefixed to a noun or adjective *ver* has factitive force; e. g., *vergolden, gild*, from *Gold*; *vergöttern, idolize*, from *Gott*; *verewigen, eternalize*; *verlängern, make longer*, from *länger*.

d. In some cases the perfective force of *ver* is so weakly felt that the compound hardly differs appreciably from the simple verb; e. g., *vermeiden, avoid*, and *meiden*; *verleugnen, deny*, and *leugnen*.

6. *3er*, without cognate in modern English, means *asunder, apart, in pieces*; e. g., *zerreißen, tear in pieces*; *zertreten, crush by treading*; *zerfallen, fall to pieces*.

DERIVATION OF PRONOUNS AND PARTICLES.

397. The Pronouns. Of the derivation of pronouns there is little to be said. The personal pronouns, as also the simple possessives and demonstratives, are primitive words formed from pronominal roots. The amplified possessive-stems *meinig, deinig, etc.*, have the adjectival suffix *ig*. *Derfelbe* is a compound of *der* and *selb*, cognate with *self*, which was sometimes uninflected in older German, but is now always inflected with the sense of English *same*.

1. Of the intensives *selber, selbst*, the former is a stereotyped nom. sing. mas. of *selb*, while the latter comes from the gen. *selbes* with excrement *t*, due perhaps to superlatives in *st*.

2. The relative pronouns are of secondary origin, *der* being the demonstrative *der*, and *welch* the interrogative *welch*, which is from the old interrogative stem *hva, hve*, with suffix *lich* = *like*. *Welch* is thus = *what-like*. The same suffix appears in *solch* = *so-like*. *Wer* and *was* are interrogatives, the *r* being the ending of the nom. sing. mas., and *s*, representing an older *t* (cf. Eng. *what*), that of the neu.

3. The indefinite pronouns are either primitive words (*all, ander, beide, jed-, man, viel*), compounds of *such* (*jemand* = *je* + *man*, *nirmand* = *nir* + *man*, *jedermann* = *jeder* *Mann*), or they have adjectival suffixes already mentioned (*einig, etlich, jeglich, wenig, manch*, which is identical with *mannig* in *mannigfalt*).

398. The Particles have been pretty fully treated, with respect to their derivation, in preceding sections. Those adverbs which are simply uninflected adjectives have, of course, the derivation of adjectives. On the adverbial suffixes (*e*), *en*, *ling*, *wärte*, *weise*, see §§ 373-4.

1. The prepositions and conjunctions are mainly of adverbial origin (§§ 376, 378, 1). For the derivation of those prepositions that are not primitive words consult the list in § 377. The conjunctions are either primitive words and compounds of *such*, or they have the derivation of adverbs. There are no principles of derivation applicable to them as a class. The same is true of the interjections.

WORD-COMBINATION.

COMPOUND NOUNS.

399. Of Noun-Composition in General. Two or more words combined into one and used substantively constitute a compound noun. The last element is nearly always a noun, has weak stress and determines the gender and declension of the whole. The first element may be any part of speech; it has strong stress and contains the dominant idea; e. g., *Fra'chtzu'g*, *freight-train*; *Ḥhne'llzu'g*, *fast train*; *Ei'senbahn=Angelegenheiten*, *railway-affairs*.

1. A few compound nouns have an adjective, adverb or phrase as final element; e. g., *Ja'h'rhū'ndert*, *century*; *Ḥ'e'bemo'h'l*, *farewell*; *Nimmerf'att*, *never-full* (of a glutton or toper); *Ḥ'tellbid'ein*, *rendez-vous*; *Ḥ'pringins'feld*, *jump-a-field*, *romp*; *Garan's* (from *gar an's*), *finishing-stroke*. But such compounds are comparatively rare and stand apart from the ordinary principles of composition.

400. Compounds of Noun and Noun are the most numerous class. They are formed in German much more freely than in English and hence can not always be translated by an equivalent compound. The important facts relating to them are as follows:

1. The first element may be the simple stem—the earliest mode of composition; e. g., *Ḥ'aush'err*, *head of the house*; *Buch'h'andlung*, *book-store*; *Ḥ'aterland*, *native country*.

a. Observe, however, that many nouns now monosyllabic once had a stem-suffix. The final vowel of this suffix, becoming *e*, rendered the 'stem,' for the purposes of composition, in some cases like the plu., with which it later became confused; e. g., *Tagebud'*, *day-book*, *diary* (not *days-book*, though it looks so); *Ḥ'undes'steuer*, *dog-tax*; *Ḥ'jerdefleish*, *horse-flesh*. In *Ḥ'räutigam*, *bridegroom*, i. e. *bride-man*, and *Nachtigall*, *nightingale*, i. e. *night-singer*, the old stem-suffix persists as *i*.

2. More often the first element is the genitive singular in (e)s, (e)n, or the genitive plural in er, en, e; e. g., *Ḥ'eistes-kraft*, *intellectual power*; *Knaben'alte'r*, *boyhood*; *Frauen'kloster*, *nunnery*; *Ḥ'eister'reich*, *spirit-realm*; *Gän'sestall*, *goose-pen*;

Mäusefraß, *damage done by the gnawing of mice*. Possibly the last two cases should come under 1, *a*, above.

a. The ending (e)s of *mas.* and *neu.* nouns, having come to be felt simply as a connecting link in compounds, was then applied also to *feminines*, which would not take it as separate words; e. g., *Liebesbrief*, *love-letter*; *Geburtstag*, *birth-day*; *Wahrheitsliebe*, *love of truth*; *Festungsmauer*, *fortress-wall*. It is thus now quite commonly applied to *feminines* in *t*, *heit*, *keit*, *schaft*, *ung*.

b. So, too, the ending *en* may be added to *fem.* nouns in the *sing.*; e. g., *Ehrenwort*, *word of honor*; *Sonnenaufgang*, *sunrise*. But these nouns once had *en* in the *gen.* regularly. In other cases the final *e* of a *fem.* in *e* is dropped; e. g., *Schullehrer*, *school-teacher*.

3. With respect to its meaning the first element may limit the second in almost any syntactical relation. Thus it may be equivalent to

a. An appositive; e. g., *Gottmenschen*, *God-men*; *Sternblume*, *star-flower*.

b. A genitive, which may be: (1) Partitive, as in *Landesteil*, *part of the land, district*. (2) Objective, as in *Thronbesteigung*, *mounting of the throne*; *Kaiserwahl*, *imperial election*. (3) Subjective, as in *Blitzschlag*, *lightning-stroke*. (4) Of specification, as in *Gefühlsmann*, *man of feeling*. (5) Of connection, as in *Fürstensohn*, *son of a prince*; *Meereswelle*, *wave of the sea*.

c. An accusative, as in *Schuhmacher*, *shoemaker*.

d. A prepositional phrase denoting purpose, destination, material, source, instrument, place, manner, etc.; e. g., *Wasserglas*, *glass for water*; *Strohhut*, *straw hat*; *Freudethränen*, *tears of joy*; *Dampfschiff*, *steamboat*; *Wasserfahrt*, *journey by water*; *Fußsoldat*, *foot-soldier*.

4. While in general no hyphen is needed between the parts of a compound, very long or unusual compounds should be bisected or trisected for the convenience of the eye; e. g., *Feuerversicherungs-Gesellschaft*, *fire-insurance company*; *Persönlichkeits-Veränderungs-Nachweisung*, *report on changes of personnel*. But there is no fixed rule on this subject.

401. Compounds of Adjective and Noun. The adjective is uninflected and the compound has a specific meaning, different from that which would be given by the inflected adjective in agreement with the noun; e. g., *Jungfrau*, *young (unmarried) woman*; *Schwarzwald*, *Black Forest*;

Altstadt, *old-town, old part of town*; Sauerkraut, *sauerkraut*; Hellseher, *clairvoyant*.

a. A few spurious compounds contain an inflected adjective in agreement; e. g., die La'ngewe'ile, *tedium*, gen.-dat. der Lange(n)weile; das Hohelied, *Song of Solomon*, des Hohenliedes, dem Hohenliede; der Hohepriester, *high-priest*, ein Hohepriester, des Hohenpriesters, zwei Hohepriester; der Geheim(e)rat, *privy counsellor*, ein Geheim(er)rat, des Geheim(en)rats, zwei Geheim(e)räte, die Geheim(en)räte.

1. Substantive adjectives take the form of a weak gen. plu.; e. g., Armensteuer, *poor-tax*; Krankenhaus, *house for the sick, hospital*; Heiligenschein, *saintly halo*.

2. Here belong also compounds of numeral and noun; e. g., Dreieck, *triangle*; Biergespann, *coach and four*.

402. Compounds of Verb and Noun. The first element is the simple root, sometimes with a connecting *e*, which represents an earlier stem-suffix; e. g., Schießpulver, *gun-powder*, from schießen, *shoot*; Rennwort, *noun*, from nennen; Hörsaal, *lecture-room*, from hören; Lesebuch, *reading-book*, from lesen; Heißesatz, *postulate*, from heißen.

403. Compounds of Particle and Noun are quite numerous; e. g., Jawort, *assent*, from ja; Jetztzeit, *present time*, from jetzt; Fürwort, *pronoun*; Anhöhe, *acclivity*; Vorrecht, *prerogative*; Mißmut, *ill-humor*; Oberhaupt, *chieftain*; Unterabteilung, *subdivision*.

1. Numerous words which might seem at first sight to come under this head are not compounds of particle and noun, but derivatives of a compound verb; e. g., Ausgang, *exit*, from ausgehen; Wohlthat, *benefit*, from wohlthun; Überzieher, *overcoat*, from überziehen.

COMPOUND ADJECTIVES.

404. Noun and Adjective. This is the most common type of compound adjective. The first element may be the stem or the genitive. It denotes various syntactical relations, which are easily understood. Examples: geistreich, *clever, spiritual*; geistesarm, *intellectually poor*; hoffnungsvoll, *hopeful*; menschenleer, *devoid of men, uninhabited*; herzkrank, *sick at heart*; arbeitsfähig, *capable of work*.

1. Many compounds of this type imply comparison, the first element being intensive; e. g., *riefengroß*, *tall as a giant, gigantic*; *blitzschnell*, *quick as lightning*; *morgensön*, *beautiful as the morning*; *blutarm*, *poor to the very blood, very poor* (but it may also mean *poor in blood*); *pudelnäß*, *soaking wet* (wet as a poodle emerging from the water).

2. The second element may be a participle (sometimes without *ge*), the first denoting the object, agent, instrument, or some adverbial relation; e. g., *herzerreißend*, *heart-rending*; *gottverlassen*, *God-forsaken*; *meerumgeben*, *sea-girt*; *herzgeliebt*, *dearly beloved*; *grunbversehrt*, *radically perverted*; *hausbacken*, *home-baked, homely*.

a. *Vergeffen*, *forgotten*, occurs with active force as if for *vergeßend*; e. g., *pflichtvergeffen*, *ehrvergeffen*, *duty-forgetting, honor-forgetting*.

405. Adjective (or Adverb) and Adjective. Compounds of two adjectives, denoting a combination of the two qualities, are quite common. The first has the stem-form and is thus not formally distinguishable from an adverb; e. g., *altdeutsch*, *old German*; *tollkühn*, *foolhardy*; *hellgrün*, *bright green*.

a. Compounds of these adjectives also occur; e. g., *althochdeutsch*, *Old High German*; *rotweißblau*, *red white and blue*.

1. In such a compound as *edel-stumm* (G.), though we can hardly translate it except by *nobly mute*, *edel* is not a true adverb. Where the first element is an adverb the second is a participle; e. g., *neubacken*, *new-baked*; *halbwachsen*, *half-grown*; *heißgeliebt*, *servently loved*; *hochgepriesen*, *highly-praised*.

2. A noun with preceding adjectival modifier is converted into a compound adjective by means of the suffixes *ig*, *isch*, *lich*, both elements taking the stem-form; e. g., *einäugig*, *one-eyed*; *altmodisch*, *old-fashioned*; *fremdsprachlich*, *pertaining to foreign languages*. The usual suffix is *ig*.

406. Other Types of Compound Adjective occur, but are less common. Thus the first element may be:

1. The pronoun *selbst*; e. g., *selbstverständlich*, *obvious*.
2. A verbal root; e. g., *lernestrig*, *eager to learn*; *denkwürdig*, *memorable*.
3. A particle; e. g., *anstellig*, *handy*; *abholb*, *ungracious*.

OTHER COMPOUNDS.

407. The Composition of Verbs, the subject being bound up with that of conjugation, has been fully treated in preceding sections. For inseparable composition see §§ 206-8 and 396; for compounds of separable particle and verb, §§ 210-12 and 341; for compounds of adjective and verb, or noun and verb, §§ 213 and 342; for compounds of compounds, §§ 214 and 343.

408. Compound Particles generally accent the second element. A compound adverb may consist of (1) noun + adverb, as *stromau'f*, *upstream*; (2) adverb (preposition) + adverb, as *sofo'rt*, *at once*; *bahi'n*, *thither*; *umhe'r*, *round about*; *überau's*, *altogether*; *zuglei'ch*, *at the same time*; (3) preposition + case, as *überhan'pt*, *in general*; *vorha'nden*, *at hand*, *extant*; *inde'ssen*, *meanwhile*.

a. But the first element receives the accent if it is a pronoun or adjective, or if it is formed by means of one of the adverbial suffixes; e. g., *be'mgemäß*, *accordingly*; *be'rgestalt*, *in such way*; *mei'netwegen*, *on my account*; *a'llerbings*, *to be sure*; *neu'erbings*, *recently*; *a'ndernfalls*, *in the other event*; *vo'rmittags*, *forenoons*; *zu'sehens*, *visibly*; *te'ilweise*, *partly*. Some other exceptions occur; e. g., *au'ßerhalb*, and other compounds of *halb*, *i'rgendwo*, *be'nnoch*. *Ein'mal* means *once* (and no more); *einma'l*, *once (upon a time)*, *just*.

1. Compound prepositions consist of preposition + case; e. g., *ansta'tt*, *instead*; *inso'fge*, *in consequence of*. *Binnen* is a compound of *bei* and the adverb *innen*. For others consult the list in § 377.

2. Compound conjunctions consist of two adverbs or of conjunction + adverb; e. g., *wiewohl*, *although*; *sobald*, *as soon as*; *obgleich*, *obwohl*, *although*. *Diemeil*, archaic for *because*, is the adverbial acc. *die Weil(e)*, *the while*.

THE SENTENCE.

409. Since the analysis of the sentence and the nomenclature applicable thereto are the same for German as for English, a brief treatment of the subject in its general aspects will be sufficient.

410. The Simple Sentence consists of a single subject and a single verb, each perhaps with modifiers. The subject is always a noun or pronoun. The modifiers of the subject may be: article, attributive adjective, limiting

genitive, adnominal phrase, appositive (appositional predicate) and sometimes an adverb. The modifiers of the verb may be: object, predicate, adverb, dependent infinitive.

1. With respect to its form the simple sentence is either (1) assertive, as *er hat das Ziel erreicht*, *he has reached the goal*; (2) interrogative, as *hat er das Ziel erreicht?* (3) optative-imperative, as *möge er das Ziel erreichen*, *may he reach the goal*, or *er behalte das Ziel im Auge*, *let him keep the goal in view*. To these may be added (4) the exclamatory type, which, however, may have the dependent form; e. g., *wie schnell er das Ziel erreicht hat!* *how quickly he has reached the goal!* Cf. § 413, 1, b.

a. An initial verb with following *doch* renders an assertive sentence emphatic; e. g., *ist doch die Stadt wie gefegt*, *really the city is as if swept* (G.).

b. Any of the above forms may be negated by the adverb *nicht*. As in English, double negation is now regarded as vulgar and ungrammatical, but it is common in the spoken language and is found abundantly in the best literature of all periods; e. g., *es ist als hätte niemand nichts zu treiben*, *it is as if no one had anything to do* (G.); *nur kein Geld hat sie nicht*, *only she hasn't any money* (L.). See the multitude of examples in the Grimm Dictionary, under *kein*.

c. A pleonastic *nicht* may occur (1) in exclamatory sentences, (2) in dependent clauses after a verb of denying, doubting, forbidding, hindering, or the like, and (3) after a comparative; e. g., from Gleim, *wie munter war sie nicht!* *how lively she was!* i. e., what degree of liveness did she *not* exhibit? *wie schwer sind nicht die Mittel zu erwerben!* *how hard the means are to obtain* (G.)! *ich will zwar nicht leugnen, daß an diesen Büchern nicht manches zu verbessern sein sollte*, *I will not deny that many things in these books might be capable of improvement* (L.); *wer zweifelt, daß ihr nicht . . . die Großmut selber seid?* *who doubts that you are magnanimity itself* (L.)? *das ist sogar unendlich wahrer als ihr es selbst nicht empfindet*, *that is indeed infinitely more true than you yourself feel* (G.). This last usage is due to French influence and has now gone out of vogue.

411. The Compound Sentence consists of two or more simple sentences co-ordinately connected; e. g., *die Kunst ist lang und kurz ist unser Leben*, *art is long and our life is short* (G.).

a. A sentence consisting of two connected subjects with one verb, or of two verbs with one subject, may be classed as 'partly compound.'

1. The conjunctions that unite the members of a compound sentence are the general connectives (§ 379) and the adverbial conjunctions (§ 380).

412. The Complex Sentence consists of two sentences, one of which is subordinate to some word in the other; e. g., *ich sehe nicht, warum du fragst, I do not see why you ask.* The important characteristic of the dependent clause is the final position of the verb.

1. A clause may be dependent in fact without being so in form; e. g., *geschrieben steht: im Anfang war das Wort, it is written: in the beginning was the Word.*

2. Every dependent clause performs the function of a substantive, an adjective, or an adverb. We have to do, therefore, with three kinds of

DEPENDENT CLAUSES.

413. Substantive Clauses are introduced by *daß*, a relative pronoun, or an indirect interrogative. The latter may be either an interrogative pronoun, a compound of *wo*, or one of the conjunctions *ob*, *wann*, *wie*, *wo*, rarely *als*.

1. The clause may be subject, object (of verb or preposition *ohne*), predicate, or appositive; e. g., *was wirklich ist, ist vernünftig, what is real is rational*; *wie sie die Augen niederschlägt, hat tief sich in mein Herz geprägt, her way of casting down her eyes has impressed itself deeply on my heart (G.)*; *ich fühle wohl, daß mich der Herr nur schont, I feel sure that you are only sparing me (G.)*; *du bist am Ende — was du bist, you are after all — what you are*; *er sündigt, ohne daß er es weiß, he sins without knowing it*; *der Satz, daß alle Menschen gleich sind, the proposition that all men are equal.*

a. As to the mode and tense of object clauses, see §§ 360–61.

b. The omission of the verb before object clauses with *was*, *wie*, *was für*, has given rise to exclamatory sentences of dependent form; e. g., *was du nicht alles zu erzählen haßt! what all haven't you to tell (G.)! wie*

alles sich zum Ganzen webt! *how everything weaves itself into a whole* (G.)! But exclamatory sentences do not by any means always have this form. Cf. Goethe's wie lieb' ich dich! wie blüht dein Auge! wie liebst du mich!

c. A substantive clause is often anticipated by a compound of *da*; e. g., der Wert der Erfindung besteht darin, daß sie überall anwendbar ist, *the value of the invention consists therein that it is universally applicable*. So a *daß*-clause may follow an interjection; e. g., ach! daß die Menschen so unglücklich sind! *alas, that people are so unfortunate* (G.)!

d. Clauses with *als ob*, or *als* with inversion (§ 359, 3, a), while formally adverbial, sometimes have substantive character; e. g., damit Sie nicht glauben, als handelte ich übereilt, *that you may not believe that I acted overhastily* (G.).

414. Adjective Clauses modify a noun or pronoun and are introduced by a relative pronoun, a compound of *wo* (rarely *da*), or one of the conjunctions *als*, *da*, *wann* (rare), *wenn*, *wie*, *wo*; e. g., der Gott, der Eisen wachsen ließ, *the God who caused iron to grow*; den lieb' ich, der Unmögliches begehrt, *I love him who desires the impossible* (G.); man durchsuchte alle Örter, wo Fremde wohnen konnten, *all places where strangers might dwell* (S.); die Zeiten, da ich noch selbst im Werden war, *the time when I myself was still growing* (G.).

415. Adverbial Clauses either define an adverb or limit the verb of the main sentence. They are introduced by the subordinating conjunctions and may be classified as follows (see § 381 for further examples and comments).

1. Local, introduced by *wo* and its compounds, rarely by *da*; e. g., bleibt, wo ihr seid, *remain where you are*; überall, wohin mein Fuß mich trug, *everywhere where my feet carried me* (S.).

2. Temporal, introduced by *als*, *bevor*, *bis*, *da*, *ehe*, *indem*, *indes*, *nachdem*, *seit(dem)*, *sobald*, *solange*, *so oft*, *wann* (archaic), *wenn*, *während*, *wie*, *wo* and its compounds; e. g., damals schien er mir gewandt, als ich ihn noch nicht verstand, *at that time he seemed to me clever when I did not yet understand him* (G.); bleibt doch, bis meine Wirtin kommt, *remain, won't you, until my wife comes* (S.).

3. Conditional, introduced by *als* with inversion (§ 359, 3, a), *als ob*, *als wenn*, *es sei denn daß* (§ 356, 1, a), *falls*, *im Falle daß*, *so* (archaic), *wenn*; e. g., wir könnten viel, wenn wir zusammenstünden, *we could do much if we stood together* (S.). For the mode of conditional clauses see § 359.

a. As a variety of conditional clause we may regard the restrictive clause introduced by *inwiefern*, *inwieweit*, *sofern*, *soweit*, *wofern*; e. g., *er ehrt die Wissenschaft, sofern sie nützt, he honors science so far as it is useful* (G.).

b. A conditional clause is often thrown into the form of an interrogative sentence: e. g., *o, giebt es Geister in der Luft, O, if there are spirits in the air* (G.).

4. Concessive, introduced by *obgleich*, *obschon*, *obwohl*, *ob zwar*, *so* + adverb or adjective, *wenn auch*, *wenngleich*, *wenn schon*, *wiewohl*, *wie auch*, *trotzdem daß*, *ungeachtet daß*; e. g., *gehorden will ich, ob ich gleich hier noch manches sagen könnte, I will obey, though I might say much on this point* (G.); *so gut man wählt, kann man sich doch betrügen, however well one chooses (though one choose ever so well), one may be mistaken*.

a. Concession can be expressed by simple inversion with following *gleich*, *auch*, *schon*, *und* (§ 379, 4, a); e. g., *ist gleich die Zahl nicht voll, although the number is not complete* (S.); *und sollt' er auch straucheln überall, and though he should stumble everywhere* (S.).

5. Causal, introduced by *da*, *indem*, *weil*, *zumal* (*da*); e. g., *ich kann fröhlich scheiden, da meine Augen diesen Tag gesehen, I can depart happy, since my eyes have seen this day* (S.).

6. Proportional, introduced by *je*, *je nachdem*, *wie*; e. g., *je eher du zu uns zurückkehrst, je schöner wirst du uns willkommen sein, the sooner you return to us, etc.* (G.).

7. Comparative, introduced by *als*, *wie*, *gleichwie*, *sowie*; e. g., *der träge Gang des Krieges that dem König ebensoviel Schaden, als er den Rebellen Vorteil brachte, the slow progress of the war injured the king just as much as it profited the rebels* (S.); *ihr seht die Sachen, wie man die Sachen eben sieht, you see things as people do just see them* (G.).

a. The clauses with *als ob*, *als wenn*, classed above as conditional, are strictly a combination of comparative and conditional.

b. Where the verb is the same in both clauses, it is often omitted in the second, just as in English; e. g., *du nimmst es höher, als ich selbst (es nehme), you take it more seriously than I myself* (G.).

8. Final, denoting purpose, and introduced by *daß*, *damit*, *auf daß* (archaic); e. g., *eilt heim mit sorgender Seele, damit er die Frist nicht verfehle, hurries home with anxious heart, in order that he may not fail to be on time* (S.).

9. Consecutive, denoting result, and introduced by *daß*, usually with preceding *so*, *der Art*, *dergestalt*, etc.; e. g., *der Wind wehte so stark, daß wir kaum rudern konnten, the wind blew so hard that we could scarcely row*.

... The peculiar use of the *daß*-clause after a comparative or *zu* (§ 367, 5, a) grew out of an ellipsis of *so*; i. e., *er ist größer (zu groß), als daß der Neid ihm Schaden könnte*, *he is too great for envy to injure him*, stands for *er ist größer als so groß, daß*, etc.

WORD-ORDER.

416. Types of Word-Order. We have to distinguish three types of word-order according as the finite verb occupies second place, first place, or last place, in relation to other elements of the sentence.

a. Essentially, then, the subject of word-order is all bound up in the position of the finite verb. This is the basis of classification and the point which should receive the learner's attention before everything else.

1. That arrangement in which the finite verb occupies second place may be called the *assertive order*. It presents two cases. If the subject precedes, as in *er ist da*, we have the *normal order*. If an adjunct of the verb precedes, thus requiring the subject to follow the verb, as in *da ist er*, we have the *inverted order*.

a. The terms 'normal' and 'inverted' are used in a somewhat conventional sense. It is not to be understood that the order *er ist da* is either more ancient or more common than the order *da ist er*. From the German point of view there would be no serious impropriety in taking the latter as the starting-point, and regarding the former as an 'inversion.' Indeed, some recent grammarians ignore this distinction entirely and call every sentence 'normal,' in which the finite verb occupies second place. It is, however, convenient for some purposes to keep the term 'inversion' in its traditional sense.

2. That arrangement in which the finite verb occupies first place, as in *ist er da*, may be called the *interrogative order*, though its use is not confined to interrogative sentences.

3. That arrangement in which the finite verb occupies last place, as in *(ich weiß nicht) ob er da ist*, being characteristic of dependent clauses, may be called the *dependent order*.

417. The Normal Order is used for independent assertive sentences in which no other element precedes the subject in order of thought. The arrangement is: first, the subject and its modifiers; second, the finite verb; third, the adjuncts of the verb; last, the non-finite part of the verb. Examples: *der Schäfer putzte sich zum Tanz, the shepherd dressed himself for the dance (G.); das enge Leben steht mir gar nicht an, the narrow life does not suit me at all (G.); ihr habt ihn treulich eingefungen, you have faithfully sung him to sleep (G.).*

1. Observe that in the normal order the finite verb must have second place; no adjunct of the verb may intervene between it and the subject. Thus, where English says *I really believe, he soon returned*, etc., German says *ich glaube wirklich, er kehrte bald zurück*.

a. A few words are excepted from this rule, viz.: *aber*, quite frequently; *auch*, when its force falls on the preceding subject; sometimes also *doch*, *indessen*, *jedoch*, *dagegen*, *troßdem*, *nämlich*, *also*, and a few others; e. g., *das also war des Pudels Kern, so that was the kernel of the poodle (G.)*. Other exceptions may occur in case of phrases possessing a quasi-adnominal character; e. g., *Morley*, in *seiner englischen Literaturgeschichte*, fügt Angaben . . . bei, *Morley, in his History of English Literature, adds statements*, etc. (Scherer). So very often in poetry, which cares little for rules of order; e. g., *der alte Winter*, in *seiner Schwäche*, zog sich in rauhe Berge zurück, *Old Winter, in his weakness, has retired*, etc. (G.).

b. There is, however, no limit to the number of words, phrases and even clauses, which may precede the finite verb, provided that they all belong to the subject and so form one element of the sentence; e. g., *König Jakob von England*, der gleichgültig zugeesehen hatte, wie sein Eidam die böhmische Krone verlor, erwachte aus seiner Fühllosigkeit, *King James of England, who had looked on indifferently while his son-in-law lost the Bohemian crown, awoke from his apathy (S.)*.

2. The non-finite part of the verb (i. e., the infinitive or participle of a compound tense, or an adverb that has become so closely associated with the verb as to form a part of it, under the name of a 'separable prefix,') comes last, a participle preceding an infinitive; e. g., *er reißt morgen ab, he departs to-morrow; er wird morgen abreisen, he will depart*

to-morrow; er ist schon abgereist, *he has already departed*; er wird wohl schon abgereist sein, *he has probably departed already*.

3. As to the adjuncts of the verb (object, predicate-word, adverb), these are arranged after the finite verb in accordance with principles to be explained below (§ 421-4). The arrangement of these elements is the same in all three (or four) types of word-order.

4. While the normal order is most common in assertive sentences, it is also frequently used for imperative sentences; e. g., er stehe fest und sehe hier sich um, *let him stand fast and look about him here* (G.).

418. The Inverted Order is used for independent assertive sentences, in which some adjunct of the verb comes first in order of thought. The arrangement is the same as in the normal order, except that the subject follows the verb instead of preceding it; e. g., den Göttern gleich' ich nicht, *I am not like the gods* (G.); ungern heb' ich das Gastrecht auf, *I do not like to refuse hospitality* (G.); doch ist es jedem eingeboren, *yet it is natural to every one* (G.).

a. The element put first may be an adverb, object, predicate-word, or a part of the verb itself. The initial position does not necessarily imply emphasis any more than in the case of the subject. In talk it simply reflects the order in which the thought presents itself to the speaker's mind. In studied writing it may be a matter of style.

1. Observe then that when an adjunct of the verb begins the sentence, the finite verb itself must have second place: neither the subject nor any second adjunct may intervene before the verb. Where, then, English says *true it is*; *money I have not*; *evidently you are wrong*; *beautiful to be sure she is not*, German must say: wahr ist es; Geld habe ich nicht; offenbar haben Sie unrecht; schön ist sie freilich nicht.

a. An exception to this rule is permitted in the case of doch, ja, nämlich, and, in general, of any adverb which is separated by a pause from what follows and hence is not felt as beginning the sentence; e. g., doch viel ist mir bewußt, *yet much is known to me* (G.); gewiß, Albert ist

der beste Mensch unter dem Himmel, *certainly, Albert is the best man under the sun* (G.). The same principle applies also, of course, to interjections; e. g., fürwahr! es ist sehr wohl gethan, *forsooth, it is very well done* (G.). To bring a word under this exception it is not necessary that the separating pause be written. Thus in the last two examples Goethe actually wrote: gewiß Albert ist, and fürwahr es ist.

b. For a similar reason the general connectives, und, aber, allein, sondern, denn, and entweder . . . oder, precede the subject without causing inversion: they are not felt as adjuncts of the verb, but simply as connecting links.

c. Excepted from the rule, again, are initial adverbs the force of which is felt with the subject rather than with the verb; e. g., auch ich, *I too*; selbst der König, *even the king*; nur der, *only he*.

d. From the general principle stated above it follows that a sentence should not begin with two adverbs, unless they are so connected as to form in reality but one element of the sentence; e. g., den andern Morgen war leider das magische Gerüst wieder verschwunden, *the next morning, alas, the magic stage had again disappeared* (G.). Here one could not say den andern Morgen leider war, nor leider den andern Morgen war, though it would be permissible to say den andern Morgen, leider, war, since the pause makes leider parenthetical and thus deprives it of the character of a direct adjunct of war verschwunden. On the other hand, connected adverbs count as one element: e. g., gegen Abend um die bestimmte Zeit ward Wilhelm abgeholt, *toward evening at the appointed time they called for Wilhelm* (G.).

2. A preceding subordinate clause having the value of an object or an adverb has the same effect upon the order as any other object or adverb; e. g., ob er gefährlich verwundet ist, wissen wir nicht, *whether he is dangerously wounded we do not know* (L.); als ich noch ein Knabe war, sperrte man mich ein, *when I was yet a boy they shut me up*.

a. Such a clause is very often resumed by a pronoun or an adverb, which makes the inversion easier; thus in the last two examples one might say ob er gefährlich verwundet ist, das wissen wir nicht; als ich noch ein Knabe war, da sperrte man mich ein. When there is no resuming particle, the subject is sometimes allowed to precede the verb; e. g., wie es in solchen Fällen zu gehen pflegte, niemand war vorbereitet, *as is wont to happen in such cases, no one was prepared* (G.).

b. Parenthetical sentences meaning *said he, thought he, and the like*, put the verb first because what precedes is the object; e. g., „verzeih' mir," sagte Wilhelm lächelnd, *'pardon me,' said Wilhelm with a smile* (G.).

3. An appositive preceding the subject is treated like an adjunct of the verb and causes inversion; e. g., *nachdenkend über dieses Abenteuer, ging er nach seinem Zimmer, meditating upon this adventure, he went to his room* (G.).

4. The usual position of the subject in the inverted order is immediately after the verb, but an unemphatic pronoun or adverb may come between; e. g., *auf dem Schauplatze hatten sich viele Zuschauer eingefunden, in the theater a number of spectators had found places* (G.); *endlich kamen wirklich Menschen an, at last persons actually arrived* (G.).

5. If an inverted clause is followed by another co-ordinate clause having the same subject, an adverb may not precede the second verb unless the subject is repeated; e. g., *da kam sie zu einem königlichen Garten und beim Mondenschein sah sie, daß—, thereupon she came to a royal garden and saw by the moonlight that—* (Gr.). Here it would have been equally correct to say *und sah beim Mondenschein, daß*, but not *und beim Mondenschein sah, daß*.

a. For the unnecessary resumption of the subject after *und* by means of *derselbe*, see § 379, 4.

b. If the second clause of the compound sentence has a new subject, it usually stands in the normal order; e. g., *endlich kam er zurück und sie begrüßte ihn mit Freude, at last he came back and she greeted him with joy*.

6. The effect of inversion without the form of it can be produced by using the expletive *es* to anticipate a subject which, for stylistic, metrical or other reasons, it is desired to have follow the verb; e. g., *es reden und träumen die Menschen viel, men talk and dream much* (S.); *es irrt der Mensch, so lang er strebt, man errs as long as he strives* (G.).

419. The Interrogative Order puts the finite verb first. It is used:

1. In all interrogative sentences except such as begin with a subject-pronoun; e. g., *kennst du den Faust? knowest thou Faust* (G.)? *was wettet ihr? what will you wager* (G.)? But: *wer weiß? who knows?*

2. In optative sentences; e. g., wären wir nur den Berg vorbei, *would that we were past the hill* (G.).

a. But the subject may precede in an optative sentence; e. g., des Himmels Heere mögen dich bedecken, *may heaven's hosts protect thee* (U.). So, too, with the real subject anticipated by *es*; e. g., *es* lebe die Freiheit, *long live freedom*.

3. In imperative sentences, more especially when the verb is in the second person; e. g., betracht' ihn recht, *look at him carefully* (G.); führe du mein Heer, *lead thou my army* (S.); bezähme jeder die gerechte Wut, *let every one control his righteous wrath* (S.); gesteh' ich's nur, *just let me confess*.

a. But imperative sentences may also take the normal or the inverted order, especially in the third person; e. g., er stehe fest und sehe hier sich um, *let him stand firm and look about him here* (G.); jetzt gehe jeder seines Weges still, *now let each quietly go his way* (S.); doch gehen wir, *but let us go* (G.).

4. In conditional sentences; e. g., irre ich nicht, *if I am not mistaken*; hat etwas Wert, es muß zu Tage kommen, *if a thing has value, it must come to the light* (G.).

x 5. In emphatic assertive sentences, the verb being usually followed by *doch*; e. g., sind doch ein wunderbar Volk die Weiber, *indeed, women are a strange race* (G.). Such a sentence is often best translated by a question.

a. In older German the finite verb might come first without special emphasis, and traces of this freedom are preserved in poetry; e. g., sah ein Knab' ein Röslein stehn, *a boy saw a little rose growing*. But in prose one would now need to say: Es sah ein Knab' u. s. w.

420. The Dependent Order is used in dependent clauses introduced by a relative pronoun or particle, an indirect interrogative, or a subordinating conjunction; e. g., ich bin der Geist, der stets verneint, *I am the spirit that always denies* (G.); weh mir, wenn du nichts Besseres weißt, *woe is me if you know of nothing better* (G.); wer weiß, wo nun es die vier Winde haben? *who knows where the four winds have it now* (G.)?

a. A sentence may be logically but not formally dependent, i. e., it may be without a subordinating conjunction. Such a clause takes the

x *Dann ist das wunderliche Kind
bis zum alten Herrn
Wiesbaden: Am 1. Mai 1891.*

normal order; e. g., du siehst, ein Hund und kein Geistes ist da, *you see, a dog and no spirit is there* (G.); sie meint, du seist entflohen, *she thinks you have run away* (G.).

b. In the universality of its application the dependent order is a comparatively recent development of literary usage. Early modern German allows the finite verb considerable freedom of position, and this freedom it still preserves in colloquial language and in poetry; e. g., wenn es nicht wär' durch falsche Leut' verraten worden, *if it had not been betrayed by treacherous persons* (G.); ich weiß nicht, was soll es bedeuten, *I know not what to make of it* (Heine); wenn ich so saß bei einem Gelag, *when I would be sitting thus at a revel* (G.); wenn mit Blumen die Erde sich kleidet neu, wenn die Brunnlein fließen im lieblichen Mai, *when the earth clothes itself anew with flowers, when the springs flow in lovely May* (S.).

1. A special case is presented by the compound tenses of the modal auxiliaries and those verbs (§ 326, 1, b), which follow their analogy in substituting what looks like the infinitive for the participle. In such case the tense-auxiliary precedes the two 'infinitives' and may be separated from them by intervening words; e. g., ich sehe nicht, wie mein Bruder hätte schöner ausgebildet werden können, *I do not see how my brother could have been better educated* (G.).

a. Lessing is fond of omitting the tense-auxiliary in such cases; e. g., so merken die Ausleger sehr wohl an, daß der Dichter hierdurch jene als Barbaren, diese als gesittete Völker schildern wollen, *the commentators remark very properly that the poet intended by this to represent the former as barbarians, the latter as civilized people*.

b. Aside from the case just mentioned, some writers occasionally prefer to place the tense-auxiliary before instead of after the perfect infinitive of a compound tense; e. g., es scheint dem Leser weit kürzer auf dem Papiere, als es den Zuschauern wird vorgekommen sein, *it seems to the reader much shorter on paper than it probably appeared to the spectators* (L.).

2. The dependent order may occur in exclamatory sentences through the omission of a governing verb; e. g., wie sich die platten Bursche freuen! *how the low fellows enjoy themselves* (G.)!

3. The subject of a dependent clause usually stands just after the introductory connective, but a short unem-

phatic pronoun or adverb often intervenes before it; e. g., *du stehst nur hier, weil dich mein Vater brauchte, you only stand here because my father used you (G.).*

4. In old German the finite verb might stand at the end in sentences not dependent, and traces of this freedom are preserved in poetry; e. g., *denk', Kind, um alles in der Welt, der Herr dich für ein Fräulein hält, the gentleman takes you for a fine young lady (G.).*

POSITION OF ADJUNCTS.

421. Adjuncts of the Noun. An attributive adjective or participle precedes its noun and is preceded by its own modifiers; e. g., *von echtem, aus der Quelle geschöpftem Golde, of genuine gold obtained from the source (G.); ein berühmter, und damals wegen seiner Talente sehr geschätzter Weltmann, a gentleman of reputation, who was at that time very much esteemed for his talents (G.).*

1. An appositive generally follows its noun, but may precede; if an adjective or participle, it usually follows its own modifiers, but may precede them for stylistic reasons. Thus it would be natural to say: *durch diese Worte tief gerührt, brach sie in Thränen aus, deeply touched by these words, she burst into tears.* But if a relative clause were to follow *Worte*, one might prefer to change the order and say: *tief gerührt durch diese Worte, die offenbar vom Herzen kamen, brach sie in Thränen aus.*

2. A limiting genitive, except a proper name, generally follows its noun, but exceptions are very frequent, especially in poetry.

422. Adjuncts of the Verb: A General Principle. The adjuncts of the verb come in the reverse order of their importance, the more weighty elements tending toward the end.

1. Observe that this is only a general tendency, the operation of which is more or less crossed and interfered with by other considerations. As a tendency, however, it is important. It explains, in the first place, the final position of the infinitive or participle of a compound tense: these, being felt as parts of the verb are of course, highly essential elements of the predication.

2. The same principle explains the final position of an adverb, adjective, noun or phrase, that has become so intimately associated with the verb as to form a part of it; e. g., *auf in aufstehen*; *bloß in bloßstellen*; *Teil in teilnehmen*; *in Stand in instandsetzen*.

3. So, too, we can account for the final position of a predicate adjective in relation to a limiting genitive; e. g., *du bist dir nur des einen Triebes bewußt*, *thou art conscious only of the one impulse*. Here *bewußt* is felt as the important element of the predication. On the other hand a weighty prepositional phrase may easily follow a predicate adjective; e. g., *sie ist sehr stolz auf ihre Schönheit*, *she is very proud of her beauty*.

423. Position of Objects. From the general principle just stated it follows that short, unemphatic, pronominal objects tend toward the beginning; e. g., *ich kenne ihn schon seit Jahren*, *I have known him these many years*; *ich habe ihm längst vergeben*, *I have long since forgiven him*.

1. The least emphatic pronouns are *es* and the reflexive, which accordingly precede; e. g., *ich gab es dir*, *I gave it to you*; *sie nähert sich ihm*, *she approaches him*. As between these two *sich* comes first, but with exceptions.

2. In general a direct object (especially if it denote a person) is of more importance than an indirect object (especially if it denote a thing), and hence comes nearer the end; e. g., *der Anblick giebt den Engeln Stärke*, *the sight gives strength to the angels*. But where both objects are persons, or both things, this relation may easily be reversed; e. g., *sie stellte den Herrn ihrem Bruder vor*, *she introduced the gentleman to her brother*; *er widmete seine Kräfte dem Dienste des Vaterlands*, *he devoted his powers to the service of his country*.

a. On the other hand an accusative object very regularly precedes a genitive or a prepositional phrase; e. g., *der lange Krieg beraubte das Vaterland seiner kräftigsten Söhne*, *the long war robbed the country of its*

strongest sons (Gr.); er befreite die Philosophie von ihren Fesseln, *freed philosophy from its fetters*.

424. Position of Adverbs. The general rule is that the adverbs of direction (auf, ab, her, hin, etc.) are of most importance: they accordingly come last under the name of separable prefixes; e. g., die Sonne geht jetzt um 6 Uhr auf, *the sun rises now at 6 o'clock*.

1. Next in importance are the negative adverbs nicht, nie, niemals, keineswegs; these accordingly tend toward the end, especially in emphatic negations; e. g., das Leben ist der Güter höchstes nicht, *life is not the highest of blessings* (S.); daß die Beschränkung die Unendlichkeit keineswegs ausschließe, *that limitation by no means excludes infinity* (S.); ich kann die Stelle nicht übersetzen, *I can not translate the passage*.

a. But a negative adverb that is not felt as an adjunct of the verb usually stands before the particular word or phrase that it modifies; thus one would ordinarily say in prose: das Leben ist nicht das höchste der Güter.

2. An adverb of time generally precedes one of place or manner; that is, among the relations denoted by adverbs that of manner or degree is more important than that of place, place more important than time. But this order of precedence varies easily under the influence of special emphasis.

425. Dependent Infinitives are preceded by their own modifiers; e. g., du brauchst dich nicht darüber zu ängstigen, *you do not need to trouble yourself about that*; Wilhelm konnte sich nicht entschließen, die Rolle des lebenden Königs dem Pedanten zu überlassen, *could not make up his mind to leave the rôle of the living king to the pedant*.

1. The prepositional infinitive is often incorporated in the sentence as one of the verbal adjuncts, especially if it stands alone or has no modifier of great importance; e. g., das Mädchen fing zu weinen an, *began to cry*; da sie zu weinen

anfang, as she began to cry. But one would say: sie fing an, heftig zu weinen; da sie anfang, heftig zu weinen.

426. Dependent Clauses. Since dependent clauses have the value of substantives, adverbs or adjectives, their position falls under the rules already given. Thus:

1. An adverbial clause should not intervene between subject and verb in the normal order. Such a type of sentence as *the party, though it had suffered defeat, was not discouraged*, must become: die Partei war, obwohl sie eine Niederlage erlitten hatte, keineswegs entmutigt; or else: die Partei war keineswegs entmutigt, obwohl sie, etc.; or else: obwohl die Partei eine Niederlage erlitten hatte, war sie, etc.

2. So, too, a sentence should not begin with two adverbial clauses. In English we may say: *As soon as the horses were ready, although it was still very early, we got under way*. This becomes in German: Sobald die Pferde bereit waren, machten wir uns, obwohl es noch sehr früh war, auf den Weg; or else: machten wir uns auf den Weg, obwohl es noch sehr früh war.

3. Whether a dependent clause should be incorporated in the structure of the main sentence or attached to it as an appendix, is a question of style. An important principle is that a sentence should not end weakly after a subordinate clause. Thus one would not say: er fuhr, sobald er gefrühstückt hatte, ab, but er fuhr ab, sobald er gefrühstückt hatte, *he left as soon as he had breakfasted*. On the other hand one might very well say: er fuhr, sobald er gefrühstückt hatte, in der größten Eile ab.

4. To explain further the principles according to which clauses are concatenated into more or less elaborate periods, is the province of a treatise on style, rather than of a grammar.

1

APPENDICES.



APPENDIX I

ORTHOGRAPHY.

1. **Spelling Reform in Germany.** German spelling is based in a general way upon the usage handed down by the writers, grammarians and lexicographers of the eighteenth century. But this traditional spelling, while much better than our own, is not free from defects. It represents simple sounds by compound signs, as in *Saal*, *hier*, *thun*; different sounds by the same sign, as in *Bad* - *da*, *gehen* - *Tag*; the same sound by different signs, as in *Glas* - *Haß*, *Bäume* - *Freude*, and it has a much-used silent *h*. Differences of usage with regard to these and other points led, in 1876, to a movement for governmental regulation of orthography. Prussia, Bavaria, Saxony, Württemberg and other German governments published official spelling-books, and the spelling thus prescribed is slowly making its way toward universal acceptance. It should be said, however, that the government rules do not aim at a thorough and scientific reform, but only at a working compromise between the ideal demand and the facts of usage.

2. **The Prussian Rules**, which furnish the orthographic standard of this work, are contained in a small pamphlet of forty-six pages, entitled *Regeln und Wörterverzeichnis für die deutsche Rechtschreibung zum Gebrauch in den preussischen Schulen*. But since the 'rules' admit of not a few exceptions in favor of conventional usage, one can not easily spell by them without frequently referring to the accompanying 'word-list'; and as this, in turn, contains only a limited number of representative words, the student, or at any rate the teacher, should have at hand Duden's *Orthographisches Wörterbuch*. This excellent manual, which costs but thirty-seven cents, seldom leaves one in doubt about even the smallest detail of the Prussian spelling. It also has foot-notes which exhibit the divergent spellings prescribed by other governments. Practically we have followed Duden in this grammar.

3. **The Old Spelling and the New.** Since many writers and editors still continue to use the older spelling, though with more or less diversity in details, we append a list of the more important points regulated by the Prussian rules.

1. *Ä, Æ, ù, Å, æ*, are to be preferred to *Ae, Æ, Ue, Aeu*. The same in Roman type.

2. *Ä* and *äu* are to be preferred to *e* and *eu* in words which have kindred with *a*, *au*; hence *rüchen* (on account of *Rache*); *Ärmel* (*Arm*); *räumen* (*Raum*); but *echt*, not *ächt*, *Spring*, not *Springen*, *leugnen*, not *läugnen*, etc. There are, however, a few exceptions; thus *edel* (in spite of *Adel*), *Etern* (in spite of *alt*).

a. In a few cases *ä* and *e* distinguish words of different meaning; e.g., *Ähre*, *ear of grain*, and *Ehre*, *honor*; *Lärche*, *larch*, and *Lerche*, *lark*.

3. *ai* is written only in a few words, of which the more common are *Bai*, *Gain*, *Kaiser*, *Laie*, *Mai*, *Maib*, *Mais*. Elsewhere *ei* is used. Observe, however, the distinctive spellings: *Laib*, *loaf*, and *Leib*, *body*; *Saitte*, *string*, and *Seite*, *side*; *Waise*, *orphan*, and *Weise*, *tune*.

4. The use of doubled vowels is somewhat restricted, though by no means done away with. Thus the following words are to be spelled with a single vowel: *bar*, *Barschaft*, *Herb*, *Herde*, *Los*, *losen*, *Losung*, *los*, *Maß*, *quer*, *Schaf*, *Scham*, *Schale*, *Schar*, *Schoß*, *selig*, *Star*, *Wage*, *Wagen*, *Ware*.

5. *Je* is preferred to *i* in *gieb*, *giebst*, *giebt*, and in the verbal ending *ieren*; but *i* to *ie* in *hing*, *sing*. The spelling distinguishes *Fiber*, *fiber*, from *Fieber*, *fever*; *Mine*, *mine*, from *Miene*, *expression*; *Lid*, *eyelid*, from *Lied*, *song*; *Stil*, *style*, from *Stiel*, *stem*; *wider*, *against*, from *wieder*, *again*.

6. Except in *Stadt*, *city*, which is thus distinguished from *Statt*, *place*, the combination *dt* is to be written only where *t* is inflectional, as in *lädt*, *wandte*, *gesandt*. Write therefore *tot*, not *todt*; *Brot*, not *Brodt* nor *Brod*; so also *Schwert*, *gefcheit*, *Ernte*.

7. The endings *ich* and *ig* are to be distinguished in writing, though pronounced alike; hence *Hittich*, *Pfirich*, *Leppich*, but *Honig*, *Eßig*, *Käfig*. For others consult the 'word-list,' or *Duden*.

8. Except in *Ephau*, *ivy*, *ph* is to be used only in foreign words, as *Philosophie*, *Philister*. Write, therefore, *Adolf*, *Rudolf*, *Westfalen*.

a. As to the use of initial *v* and *f* (*vor* but *für*, *fließen* but *Bließ*), consult the dictionary.

9. *ö*, not *ß*, is to be written in the pronominal forms, *des*, *weß*, *dies* and their compounds, and also in the suffix *nis*.

a. Medial *j* becomes *ß* before a suffix of derivation, but not before an inflectional *t*; hence, *Häschen*, from *Hase*; *Röschen*, from *Rose*; *weislich*, from *weise*; but *reist*, from *reisen*.

b. In Roman type the rules prescribe that *ß* be represented by *fs*, or else by a specially-cast digraph. But non-German printers usually employ *sz* or *ss*. The latter is open to the objection that it does not distinguish *jj* from *ß*.

10. *Th* is to be written only in foreign words, as *Thee*, *Thema*, *Theorie*, and in a few native words in which *th* before the vowel takes the place of *h* after the vowel, as a sign of length; e. g., *Thor* (= *Loth*), *thun*, *Thal*. Write, therefore, *Tier*, *Teil*, *Rat*, *raten*, *wert*, *Reichtum*. This is upon the whole the most important and characteristic rule of the official spelling.

11. Three concurrent consonants are avoided in some cases (by dropping one), permitted in others, e. g., *dennoch* (i. e. *denn noch*), *Mittag*, *Schiffahrt*; but *Bettuch*, *Stillleben*, *allliebend*.

a. Final *h* before the suffix *heit* is dropped; e. g., *Roheit*. So, too, *Hoheit*, from *hoch*; but *Weichheit*, from *weich*.

b. The plural of *See*, *Armee*, is either *Seen*, *Armeen*, or *Seen*, *Armeen*.

12. In foreign words *f* is written for a guttural *c*, *g* for the affricate; as *Katalog*, *Klasse*, *kerikal*, *Zirkel*, *Offizier*. But a good many exceptions are allowed, especially in case of French words; e. g., *Coupé*, *Geber* or *Zeber*, *Concept* or *Konzept*. When in doubt whether to write *c*, *f* or *g*, consult Duden's dictionary.

13. The use of initial capitals is greatly restricted. Nouns used adjectively, as *ein bißchen*, *ein paar*, *das ist schade*; adverbially, as *abends*, *nachts*, *vormittags*; prepositionally, as *kraft*, *mittels*, *trotz*, *mangels*, or as parts of a verbal phrase, as *stattfinden*, *insaud setzen*, are to be written with a small initial.

a. This is the most difficult subject that the rules deal with, and they leave it in a rather unsatisfactory condition. When in doubt consult Duden.

b. Adjectives from names of persons have a small initial when their meaning is general; e. g., *die luther'sche Kirche*, *the Lutheran church*; but *die Lu'therische Bibelübersetzung*, *Luther's translation of the Bible*.

c. Adjectival phrases, such as *im ganzen*, *fürs erste*, *bei weitem*, *des weiteren*, etc., have no initial capital.

14. The apostrophe is to be used sparingly, for the purpose of marking the suppression of a letter usually written. But on this point the rules are not very precise, and there is much diversity of usage. Omit the apostrophe at any rate in *aufs*, *unterm*, etc., and in the genitive of proper names that do not end in a sibilant.

4. **The Roman Letters** are extensively used in scientific writings of every kind. In using the Roman letters many writers, particularly philologists, discard altogether the initial capital of nouns and thus avoid the most serious practical difficulty of German orthography.

APPENDIX II

ENGLISH-GERMAN COGNATES.

1. The Relation of English to German is a subject which belongs rather to comparative linguistics than to German grammar, and can not be studied to the best advantage without some knowledge of Old English, Old German, Gothic, Latin, Greek, Sanskrit and general phonetics. Such knowledge is not presupposed for the users of this book. At the same time it is important that every student who approaches German by way of English, learn to recognize the familiar words of his mother tongue in their unfamiliar German forms, and acquire the habit of thinking clearly and correctly, if not profoundly, concerning the relationship of cognates. To this end, it is hoped, the following paragraphs will be found helpful. What is here given, however, is only a very elementary introduction to a large and difficult subject.

a. The most valuable of all helps for the study of German words in their relation to cognate forms in other languages is Kluge's *Etymologisches Wörterbuch der deutschen Sprache*.

2. The Indo-European Family of Languages. German and English belong to the Germanic (sometimes called Teutonic) branch of the Indo-European (also called Aryan and Indo-Germanic) family of languages. The Indo-European family has ten branches, three of them Asiatic and seven European. The Asiatic branches are the Indic, Iranic and Armenian. The European branches are the Hellenic, Italic, Germanic, Slavic, Baltic, Keltic and Albanian.

a. Observe that these names are the names of 'branches' put forth in ancient times by the Indo-European parent-stem. Each one of them has branched again and again, thus giving rise in our day to a large number of separate languages and dialects variously related to one another.

1. When we say that the languages of the ancient Hindus, Persians, Greeks, Italians, Germans, Slavs, etc., belong to the same 'family,' this means that the remote ancestors of these various peoples once dwelt together, forming a single community and speaking a common language. Where this pro-ethnic Indo-European home was located—

whether in Asia or in Europe,— when the dispersion began and how it proceeded, are still moot questions.

2. The Indo-European parent-speech is known to us in a measure through the process of restoration. By a comparison of cognate forms, as they actually appear in the derived languages, scholars have been able to reconstruct the alphabet, the grammar, and in part the vocabulary, of the parent-speech. Thus Eng. *brother*, Lat. *frāter*, Gk. *φράτηρ*, Sansk. *bhrātar-*, point back to an I.-E. parent-form **bhrāter* (a prefixed * is used to distinguish ideal reconstructions from words historically known).

3. **The Germanic Branch of the Indo-European Family.** There was a time during which the ancestors of the various peoples now known to us as Germanic, having parted from the Indo-European parent-stock, still dwelt together in one community and spoke a common language. Later this Germanic stock parted into three branches, the eastern, the northern and the western. The eastern branch is known from the extinct Gothic alone. The northern branch gave rise to the Scandinavian languages, Danish, Swedish, Icelandic and Norwegian. The western branch gave rise to German, English, Dutch, Flemish and Frisian.

1. Where the pro-ethnic home of the Germanic race was situated is not precisely known, nor have we any historical remains of their language in this stage of its history. It is possible, however, by comparison of derived forms, to reconstruct the alphabet, the grammar, and in large part the vocabulary, of the Germanic parent-speech. Thus Gothic *brōthar*, Old English *brōthor*, Old High German *bruodar*, Old Low German *brōthar*, and Old Icelandic *brōthir*, point back to a Germanic **brōthar*.

4. **Phonetic Change.** In every language the pronunciation of words is more or less subject to change. Through a modified mode of utterance a sound is converted into another sound or ceases to be heard. In this way, given time enough, the pronunciation of a word may change to almost any imaginable extent. Thus Eng. *ten* is the same word as Latin *decem*, only it is pronounced differently.

1. But changes of pronunciation do not take place at hap-hazard. When a particular tendency to change sets in, at a given time and in a

given language, it does its work thoroughly and uniformly. For example, if the tendency is to convert *d* into *t*, it will convert *d* into *t* *everywhere*, unless there is some interfering cause. Such a uniformly operating tendency to change of pronunciation is called a phonetic law. The principal causes that interfere with the uniform operation of phonetic laws are the position of the sound with respect to other sounds or to the accent, and the attracting influence—analogy—of other words.

2. Spelling is often an imperfect and deceptive representation of sounds, and is much more conservative than pronunciation. One of the most important maxims that the student of linguistics has to learn, is to think in terms of sounds, not in terms of letters.

5. The Germanic Shifting of Consonants. If, now, we compare a large number of Indo-European words, ideally restored, with their Germanic descendants, ideally restored, we shall find that the latter have undergone changes both in their vowels and in their consonants. One set of these changes, affecting the explosive consonants, or stops, is of fundamental importance in the study of English and German etymology, viz.: The Indo-European voiced aspirates *bh*, *dh*, *gh*, become, in Germanic, the voiced stops *b*, *d*, *g*; the voiced stops *b*, *d*, *g*, become voiceless, giving *p*, *t*, *k*, and the voiceless stops *p*, *t*, *k*, become spirant, giving *f*, *th*, *h*.

1. The following examples will illustrate :

Indo-European	Greek.	Latin.	Germanic.	English.
*bhrāter	φράτηρ	frater	*brōthar	brother
*dhē, *dhō	θῆναι	facio	*dōn	do
*ghans-	χῆν	(h)anser	*gans	goose
*dwo	δύο	duo	*two	two
*genu	γόνυ	genu	*kniwa	knee
*pād-	πούς (ποδός)	pes (ped-is)	*fōt	foot
*trejis	τρεῖς	tres	*thrijis	three
*kun-	κύων (κυνός)	canis	*hun-dos	hound

a. There are some exceptions to this law due to the operation of special causes. But a discussion of these, or of the changes undergone by the vowels and non-explosive consonants, would take us too far a-field for the present purpose. Consult Brugmann's *Grundriss der vergleichenden Grammatik*, vol. 1.

6. **The High German Shifting of Consonants.** If we examine, in turn, the consonantal system of High German, we shall find it to have undergone a second shifting of consonants, which differentiates High German more or less completely from all the other Germanic languages. This second shifting consists in the conversion of Germanic *d* into *t*, *t* into *s* or *ts*, *th* into *d*, and *p* into *f* or *pf*. Thus Gc. **dago*-, Eng. *day*, becomes Ger. *Tag*; Gc. **two*, Eng. *two*, Ger. *zwei*; Gc. **itan*, Eng. *eat*, Ger. *essen*; Gc. **thrijis*, Eng. *three*, Ger. *drei*; Gc. **diupa*, Eng. *deep*, Ger. *tief*.

1. The High German shifting began in the 7th century, or earlier, in South Germany, and spread thence northward with diminishing thoroughness. Except the conversion of *th* into *d*, it did not affect the Low German dialects. Even in South Germany the time at which the change began, and the thoroughness with which it was carried through, vary with the different dialects.

a. The two shiftings described in this and the last section are often called, after one of their discoverers, 'Grimm's Law.' The first is known in German as *die germanische*, the second as *die hochdeutsche Lautverschiebung*.

2. German words borrowed from other languages previous to the High German shifting shared in the general change, as *für*, from Lat. *curtus*, Eng. *curt*; but words borrowed after the shifting retain their original consonants, as *Titel*, from Lat. *titulus*, Eng. *title*. Thus the form of a word may give a clue to its provenience and the date of its adoption.

3. English, which has grown out of an amalgamation of Low German dialects carried into Britain in the 5th and 6th centuries, preserves unchanged the Germanic *d*, *t*, *th* and *p*, which High German shifted to *t*, *s* or *ts*, *d*, and *f* or *pf*. But in some other respects German has been more conservative than English. This will appear from the following detailed statements.

7. **The Labials** correspond, in English and German, as follows:

1. Eng. *p* = Ger. *f*, *ff*, *pf*; e. g., *up* - *auf*; *ripe* - *reif*; *sleep* - *schlafen*; *hope* - *hoffen*; *plight* - *Wißicht*; *camp* - *Lampf*; *plant* - *Pflanze*.

a. *Pf* is the regular representative of original *p* in words borrowed previous to the High German shifting, as in *Pflanze*, from Lat. *planta*;

pfropfen, from Lat. *propago*. A Ger. *p* corresponding to an Eng. *p* is evidence of late borrowing; e. g., *Pein* - pain; *Pech* - pitch; *plump* - plump.

b. A preceding *f* prevents *p* from shifting; e. g., *spin* - *spinnen*; *lisp* - *lispeln*.

2. Eng. *b* initial = Ger. *b*; e. g., *bear* - *Bär*; *break* - *brechen*; *bid* - *bieten*; *burst* - *bersten*.

a. While Eng. preserves an initial Gc. *b* unchanged, it converts a medial Gc. *b* into *v* and a final Gc. *b* into *f*, *ff*. Hence Ger. *b* medial = Eng. *v*, and Ger. *b* final (pronounced as *p*) = Eng. *f*, *ff*; e. g., *haben* - have; *Knabe* - knave; *sterben* - starve; *ab* - of, off; *Dieb* - thief; *halb* - half. Exceptions are due to late borrowing on the one side or on the other; e. g., *Ebbe* - ebb; *Giebel* - gable.

3. Eng. *f* initial = Ger. *f* (sometimes written *v*); e. g., *foot* - *Fuß*; *feather* - *Feder*; *fly* - *fliegen*; *father* - *Vater*; *fleece* - *Blies*.

a. Eng. *f*, *ff*, medial or final, may either preserve an original Gc. *f* unchanged, or it may come from Gc. *b* (see above, 2, a). In the former case it will appear in Ger. as *f*, *ff*, in the latter as *b*; e. g., *hoof* - *Fuß*; *stiff* - *steif*; *wolf* - *Wolf*; *wife* - *Weib*; *life* - *Leib*; *of* - *ab*; *calf* - *Kalb*.

b. Eng. *ft* = Ger. *ft*; e. g., *soft* - *sanft*; *drift* - *Trift*; *craft* - *Kraft*.

4. Eng. *v* initial hardly occurs except in borrowed words (*vat* and *vizen* should be *fat* and *fixen*), where it corresponds to Ger. *v*, sometimes to *f*, rarely to *w*; e. g., *vers* - *Vers*; *vane* - *Flähne*; *vetch* - *Wicke*.

a. Eng. *v* medial usually represents Gc. *b*, in which case it corresponds to Ger. *b*, in a few cases to *f*; e. g., *over* - *über*; *salve* - *Salbe*; *live* - *leben*; *devil* - *Teufel*; *oven* - *Ofen*. Medial *v* = *v* is evidence of late borrowing; e. g., *slave* - *Sklave*.

8. The Dentals correspond as follows :

1. Eng. *t* = Ger. *z*, *tz*, *ss*, *s*, *ß*; e. g., *two* - *zwei*; *twig* - *Zweig*; *sit* - *sitzen*; *cat* - *Katze*; *eat* - *essen*; *water* - *Wasser*; *this* - *dies*; *that* - *das*; *lot* - *Los*; *bite* - *beißen*; *foot* - *Fuß*.

a. Observe that *z*, *tz*, *ss*, *s* and *ß* are five ways of writing two sounds, viz., the affricate *ts* and the voiceless sibilant *s*. The affricate is written *z* when initial, and also after *l*, *n*, *r*, but *tz* after a short vowel, where it takes the place of *zz* from Gc. *tt*. Hence, *tin* - *Zinn*; *salt* - *Salz*; *mint* - *Münze*; *heart* - *Herz*; *heat* - *Hitze* (Gc. **hittja*); *cat* - *Katze* (Gc. **katta*). The simple voiceless sibilant is written *ss* when medial after a short vowel, but *ß* when final, or medial after a long vowel. In a very few words, however, final *s* takes the place of *ß*. Hence, *let* -

lassen; mete - messen; write - reissen; shoot - schießen; shot - Schuß; vat - Faß; that - das; lot - Los.

b. A preceding spirant (f, s, ð) prevents t from shifting; e. g., craft - Kraft; oft - oft; strong - streng; breast - Brust; might - Macht; plight - Pflicht. So, too, the combination tr does not shift; hence, true - treu; tread - treten; bitter - bitter (Ge. * bītr); otter - Otter (Ge. * ōtr). Other exceptions are due to late borrowing; e. g., temple - Tempel (from Lat. *templum*); senat - Senat (from Lat. *senatus*). Bottom - Boden presents an irregularity that has not yet been fully explained.

2. Eng. d = Ger. t; e. g., daughter - Tochter; day - Tag; ford - Furt; hard - hart; hold - halten; heed - hüten; ~~(side)~~ Zeit. Observe that Ger. t is sometimes badly written th; hence, door - Thür; do - thun; dale - Thal.

a. A preceding n, and sometimes a preceding l, prevented Ge. d from shifting in Ger.; hence, bind - binden; send - senden; wild - wild; bold - bald (but old - alt, and cold - kalt). Notice that in und - and, although the final b is pronounced as t, and can not occur medially (as the b of wild may in wilde), we have no real case of Ge. d shifting to t. It comes under the general rule that all voiced final consonants have become voiceless in Ger. - Except after u and l, Ger. b corresponding to Eng. d is evidence of late borrowing; e. g., Dogge - dog; Dedde - deck.

3. Eng. th = Ger. b; e. g., three - drei; thin - dünn; feather - Feder; loathe - leiden; both - beide; heath - Heide.

a. A very few exceptions to this rule as father - Vater, weather - Wetter, are due to the fact that Eng. th is an interloper, taking the place (under Norse influence) of an older d. The Old English ancestors of *father* and *weather* are *fæder* and *weder*. Another small group of exceptions, as thousand - tausend, thaw - tauen, are due probably to an early assimilation of the initial stop to the voiceless consonant which usually preceded it.

4. Eng. s = Ger. s, ð, þ; e. g., soap - Seife; send - senden; glass - Glas; less - los; horse - Ross; breast - Brust.

a. But Ge. initial s before w is regularly converted in Ger. into sh; hence, swine - Schwein; swell - schwellen; sweat - Schweiß. So, too, in the standard pronunciation before p and t, though the sound is written s; hence, stead - Statt; steel - Stahl; spin - spinnen; sprout - Sproß. For Eng. sh see below (§ 9, 1, a).

9. The Gutturals correspond as follows:

1. The Ge. voiceless stop k either remains unchanged, being written in Eng. as c, k, ck, and in Ger. as t, t; or else it becomes in Ger. the spirant ch and in Eng. the affricate tsch (written sometimes as ch, again

as *tek*). Hence, Eng. *c, k, ck, ch, tch* = Ger. *t, d, d*; e. g., kiss – küssen; cow – Kuh; bake – backen; seek – suchen; weak – weich; chalk – Kalk; churl – Kerl; lick – lecken; stick – Stuck; watch – wachen; ditch – Teich; stretch – strecken.

a. Ge. *sk* becomes Eng. *sh*, Ger. *sch*; e. g., shape – schafften; shoot – schießen; fish – Fisch; rash – rasch.

2. The Ge. voiced stop *g* remains unchanged in Ger. when initial; when medial or final, it is usually (but not in all dialects) converted into a spirant, though still written as *g*. In Eng. it is generally unchanged when initial, though in several words it has become, after passing through a spirant stage, a palatal semivowel (written *y*). When medial or final, it usually became first spirant, then semivocalic, and the semivowel combined with a preceding vowel to form a diphthong. Our spelling preserves it as *y* or *w*. Examples: geben – give; groß – great; gelb – yellow; gestern – yesterday; sagen – say; Tag – day; legen – lay; Auge – eye; schlug – slew; Bogen – bow; Magen – maw; Vogel – fowl; Regen – rain; folgen – follow; Talg – tallow; Sorge – sorrow.

a. The Ge. combination *gj* becomes in Eng. a voiced affricate, written *dg*, in Ger. *đ*; e. g., edge – Ede; ridge – Rücken; bridge – Brücke.

3. The Ge. guttural spirant *h* appears initially both in Ger. and Eng. as the breath *h* – *h*; e. g., heart – Herz; horn – Horn; have – haben. Medially it appears in Ger. as silent *h*, finally as silent *h* or as *ch*. In Eng. it has either disappeared entirely, or it appears in our spelling as *gh*, which is either silent or labialized to an *f*-sound; e. g., sehen – see; zehn – ten; nah – nigh; hoch – high; roh – rough; Flucht – flight; durch – through; lachen – laugh; äh – tough.

10. The Liquids, Nasals and Semivowels *l, r, m, n, ng, j, w*, usually correspond in the two languages, the Ger. *j* being the orthographic equivalent of Eng. *y*. Observe, too, that the old labial semivowel *w* has become spirant in modern Ger. Examples: learn – lernen; old – alt; red – rot; heart – Herz; man – Mann; stem – Stamm; lamb – Lamm (the Eng. *b* is an orthographic superfluity); nut – Nuss; find – finden; sing – singen; long – lang; year – Jahr; yoke – Joch; wine – Wein; wit – wissen.

a. A noteworthy difference is seen, however, in the fact that Ger. retains, while Eng. drops, an original *n* before a spirant in the accented syllable; e. g., ander – other; fünf – five; Gans – goose; saft – soft.

b. In a few words Ger. final *n* corresponds to Eng. final *m*; e. g., Busen – bosom; Besen – besom; Boden – bottom.

11. The Vowels and Diphthongs. The correspondence of vowels and diphthongs is a much more difficult and complicated subject than that of the consonants. To the beginner it will seem altogether chaotic. Compare, e. g., the pairs: Vater – father; Stamm – stem; Nacht – night; schlafen – sleep; sanft – soft; lachen – laugh. Here German *a* has six different representatives in English, and conversely Eng. *a* with its various sounds is diversely represented in German.

1. It must not be supposed, however, that the changes undergone by the vowels, in either language, are any less subject to law than those undergone by the consonants. It is only that the laws are very much more intricate, especially in Eng. with its deceptive historical spelling. There are no simple and general rules that would be of any value, and to give accurate detailed rules would carry us too far into the realm of historical phonetics. The vocalism of Eng. and Ger. can not be studied intelligently without a knowledge of Old and Middle English and of Old and Middle High German.

APPENDIX III.

THE GERMAN SCRIPT.

I.—SELECTED WORDS SHOWING CAPITAL AND SMALL LETTERS WITH
ROMAN EQUIVALENTS.

Abart, Ahrnenkränze, Auslaut,
 Abart, Ahrenkränze, Auslaut,
 Auserwähltes, Liban, Lianro,
 Auseres, Biber, Cicero,
 Gimpilla, Eupii, Efrn,
 Chinchilla, David, Ehre,
 Tisffang, Jäger, Handfabe,
 Tischfang, Gegend, Handkabe,
 Altis, Jägerjunge, Kahlkopf,
 Altis, Jägerjunge, Kahlkopf,
 Lufeling, Mitmenschen, Neptun,
 Lehrling, Mitmensch, Neptun,

Obaron, Olgötze, Pagen,
 Oberon, Olgötze, Pappel,

Quinquannium, Rührnarr,
 Quinquennium, Rühreier,

Sanskrit, Schriftsprache, Straßß,
 Sanskrit, Schriftsprache, Straße;

Tüllfüßel, Temperatur, Trotzloß,
 Schlüssel, Temperatur, Trotzloß,

Uhu, Überbürdung, Vivisektion,
 Uhu, Überbürdung, Vivisektion,

Wernwolf, Xerxes, York,
 Wernwolf, Xerxes, York,

Lütz, Zickzack,
 Lady, Zickzack!

II.—THE LETTER ON PAGE 121 OF THIS GRAMMAR.

Göttingen, den 23. Juni, 1893.
 Mein lieber Frau!

Euchlich sagt ein dein
 langes Abschieden gebrochen, dein
 Brief vom 12. dinstags Monats ist
 mir schon in die Hände gekommen.
 Für die Aufreißer, die du mir
 aus der Heimat gibst, dank ich
 dir herzlich, obwohl unsere Freunde
 mir zum Teil über dieselben Dinge
 geschrieben hatten. Ich schreibe dir
 einen Brief, daß du dir gut
 hast, und daß du einen Gesand-
 ten hast, um der Disziplin zu stur-
 ben. Die Aufschrift eines Kai-
 sers nach Siegen war mir sehr
 interessant. Aber du wirst alles
 erfahren! Und wie Pörsen

VOCABULARY.

III.—THE SONG AT THE BEGINNING OF SCHILLER'S WILHELM TELL.

Es läßt sich der Ton, er lautet zum Lachen,
 Der Knabe spielt ein am grünen Gesträuch,
 Er hört er ein Klängen,
 Wie Flöten so süß.
 Wie Stimmen der Engel
 Im Paradies.
 Und wie er erschaut in seliger Lust,
 Er spülen die Wasser ihn in die Lust,
 Und ab rüst aus den Tausen:
 Lieb Knabe bist mein!
 Ich lobte den Tölpel,
 Ich zinf' ich formin.

VOCABULARY.

EXPLANATIONS.

The following abbreviations are used in the grammar and vocabularies:

<i>acc.</i> accusative.	<i>Gr.</i> Grimm.	<i>pers.</i> person(al).
<i>adj.</i> adjective.	<i>indecl.</i> indeclinable.	<i>pl(u).</i> plural.
<i>adv.</i> adverb, or adverbial conjunction.	<i>I.-E.</i> Indo-European.	<i>plup.</i> pluperfect.
<i>art.</i> article.	<i>inv.</i> imperative.	<i>poss.</i> possessive.
<i>aux.</i> auxiliary.	<i>indef.</i> indefinite.	<i>ppl.</i> participial.
<i>cf.</i> compare.	<i>ind(ic).</i> indicative.	<i>pple.</i> participle.
<i>comp.</i> comparative.	<i>inf.</i> infinitive.	<i>pres.</i> present.
<i>conj.</i> conjunction.	<i>inter.</i> interrogative.	<i>prep.</i> preposition.
<i>dat.</i> dative.	<i>interj.</i> interjection.	<i>pret.</i> preterite.
<i>def.</i> definite.	<i>Kl.</i> Klopstock.	<i>pron.</i> pronoun.
<i>dem.</i> demonstrative.	<i>L.</i> Lessing,	<i>rel.</i> relative.
<i>Eng.</i> English.	<i>Lat.</i> Latin.	<i>refl.</i> reflexive.
<i>Ex.</i> exercise.	<i>lit.</i> literally.	<i>S.</i> Schiller.
<i>f.</i> feminine noun.	<i>Lu.</i> Luther.	<i>s.</i> strong.
<i>fem.</i> feminine.	<i>m.</i> masculine noun.	<i>sing.</i> singular.
<i>Fr.</i> French.	<i>mas(c).</i> masculine.	<i>sub.</i> subordinating.
<i>fut.</i> future.	<i>mx.</i> mixed.	<i>subj.</i> subjunctive.
<i>G.</i> Goethe.	<i>n.</i> neuter noun.	<i>superl.</i> superlative.
<i>Gc.</i> Germanic.	<i>neu(t).</i> neuter.	<i>U.</i> Uhland.
<i>gen.</i> genitive.	<i>nom.</i> nominative.	<i>v.</i> verb.
<i>Ger.</i> German.	<i>num.</i> numeral.	<i>W.</i> Wieland.
<i>Gk.</i> Greek.	<i>perf.</i> perfect.	<i>w.</i> weak.

English words printed in heavy-faced type are cognate with the German vocabulary-word preceding. A hyphen shows that only a part of the English word is cognate with the German, or *vice versa*. Brackets enclose cognates which are obsolete, imaginary, or such as do not now translate the German word. An English word printed in italics is *borrowed* from the same source as the corresponding German word. For the principal parts of strong verbs see § 331.

VOCABULARY.

Abend, *m. s. 2*, even-ing.
Abenteuer, *n. s. 1*, adventure.
aber, *conj.*, but, however.
a'bhängen (von), *v. s.*, depend (on),
 [ab — off].
abhängig, *adj.*, dependent.
Ablaut, *m. s. 2*, ablaut, gradation.
a'breifen (aux. *sein*), *v. w.*, depart,
 [-rise].
a'bschließen, *v. s.*, close up.
Abchnitt, *m. s. 2*, section.
a'bweichen, *v. s.*, differ, [-wenken].
Accusati'o, *m. s. 2*, accusative.
ach, *interj.*, oh! ah!
Adjektiv, *n. s. 2* (*pl. se or sa*), *adjective*.
adjektivisch, *adj.*, adjective.
Adverb, *n. s.* (*pl. se, sia, or sien*), *adverb*.
adverbiell, *adj.*, adverbial.
ähnlich, *adj. (dat.)*, similar.
Akt, *m. s. 2*, act.
all, *pron. adj.*, all, every.
allein, *adv.*, alone.
allerdings, *adv.*, to be sure, [of all things].
allerlei, *adj.*, all sorts of.
allgemein, *adj.*, general.
als, *sub. conj.*, than, when, **as**.
also, *adv.*, so, then, [also].
alt, *adj.*, old.
Alter, *n. s. 1*, old age.
Altertum, *n. s. 3*, antiquity (§ 91).
Amerika'ner, *m. s. 1*, American.
amüsie'ren (sich), *v. w.*, enjoy (*amuse*) one's self.
an, *prep. (dat. and acc.)*, on, by, at.
a'n'bieten, *v. s.*, offer.
Anblick, *m. s. 2*, view, sight.
ander, *adj.*, other.
anderthalb, *adj.*, one and a half, (§ 118, 3, b).
Anfang, *m. s. 2* (*pl. ä*), beginning;
 — **sbuchstabe**, *m. w.*, initial letter,
 [-stave]; **anfangs**, *adv.*, in the beginning, at first, (§ 251, 2).
a'nfangen, *v. s.*, begin.
a'ngaben, *v. s.*, give, state.
A'ngel'genheit, *f. w.*, affair.
a'ngenehm, *adj.*, pleasant.
ängstigen (sich), *v. w.*, torment one's self, be anxious.

a'nfommen, *v. s.*, arrive.
a'n'lauten, *v. w.*, begin (of a sound);
 anlautend, *ppl. adj.*, initial.
a'nnehmen, *v. s.*, take (on), assume;
 sich — (*gen.*), interest one's self in,
 take charge of.
a'npassen (sich, *dat.*), *v. w.*, conform,
 [-pass].
Anrede, *f. w.*, address.
anstatt, *prep. (gen.)*, in—stead of.
antworten, *v. w.*, answer.
Apfel, *m. s. 1* (*pl. ä*), apple; —
 schuß, *m. s. 2* (*pl. -üsse*), apple—
 shot.
Appositio'n, *f. w.*, apposition.
Arbeit, *f. w.*, work.
A'rbeiter, *m. s. 1*, workingman.
ärgern (sich), *v. w.*, be vexed, angry.
arm, *adj.*, poor.
Art, *f. w.*, kind, sort.
Art'ikel, *m. s. 1*, article.
Arznei, *f. w.*, medicine.
Arzt, *m. s. 2* (*pl. ä*), physician.
auch, *adv.*, also, too, [also].
auf, *prep. (dat. and acc.)*, on, upon,
 [up].
aufeinander, *adv.*, one after an—
 other.
Aufgabe, *f. w.*, exercise.
au'shalten (sich), *v. s.*, stay.
aufrecht, *adj.*, sincere, frank, [up—
 right].
au'ssparen, *v. w.*, save up, [-spare].
Auge, *n. m.*, eye (§ 98).
Augenblick, *m. s. 2*, moment.
Augenschein, *m. s. 2*, view, [-shine].
aus, *prep. (dat.)*, from, out of.
Ausdruck, *m. s. 2* (*pl. ä*), expres—
 sion.
au'sdrücken, *v. w.*, express.
au'seina'nderse'tzen, *v. w.*, explain.
Auslassung, *f. w.*, omission, [out—
 let—ing].
Ausnahme, *f. w.*, exception.
außer, *prep. (dat.)*, except, out—side
 of, [outer]; **äußerst**, *adv.*, exceed—
 ingly.
außerde'm, *adv.*, besides.
Ausicht, *f. w.*, view, [out—sight].
Ausprache, *f. w.*, pronunciation.
au'sprechen, *v. s.*, express, pronounce.
Ausstellung, *f. w.*, exposition.

- Bahnhof**, *m. s. 2* (*pl. ö*), station, depot.
bold, *adv.*, soon, [**bold**].
bang(e), *adv.*, anxiously; — **machen**, *with dat.*, to trouble.
Bank, *f. s. 2* (*pl. ä*), **bench**.
Bart, *m. s. 2* (*pl. a*), **beard**.
Bau, *m. s. 2* (§ 275, 2, *a*), building.
Baum, *m. s. 2* (*pl. äu*), tree, [**beam**].
beantworten, *v. w.*, answer.
bedeuten, *v. w.*, signify, mean.
bedeutend, *ppl. adj.*, significant; *as adv.*, notably.
Bedeutung, *f. w.*, meaning.
Bedienung, *f. w.*, service.
beeilen (*sich*), *v. w.*, hurry.
befinden (*sich*), *v. s.*, **find** (one's self), 'do.'
beginnen, *v. s.*, **begin**.
begreiflich, *adj.*, comprehensible, [**-gripe**].
Begriff, *m. s. 2*, idea, conception, [**-grip**].
behalten, *v. s.*, keep, [**behold**].
behandeln, *v. w.*, treat, [**-handle**].
Behandlung, *f. w.*, treatment.
behaupten, *v. w.*, assert.
bei, *prep. (dat.)*, **by**, at, at the house of.
beide, *pron., adj.*, **both**, two.
beiderlei, *adj.*, of **both** kinds.
beinahe, *adv.*, almost, [**-nigh**].
Beispiel, *n. s. 2*, example.
bekannt, *adj.*, known; *as noun*, acquaintance.
Bekanntheit, *f. w.*, acquaintance.
belohnen, *v. w.*, reward.
bemerken, *v. w.*, notice, re-**mark**.
bequem, *adj.*, comfortable, [**-quem** = come].
bereit, *adj.*, **-ready**.
Berg, *m. s. 2*, mountain.
berühmt, *adj.*, famous.
Beschreibung, *f. w.*, description.
besehen, *v. s.*, look at.
besitzen, *v. s.*, possess.
besonder, *adj.*, special; — **&**, *adv.*, especially.
Beforgnis, *f. s. 2*, fear, solicitude, [**-sorrow**].
bestehen, *v. s.*, consist.
besteigen, *v. s.*, climb.
Besuch, *m. s. 2*, visit.
besuchen, *v. w.*, visit, [**beseech**].
betonen, *v. w.*, accent, [**-tone**].
Betonung, *f. w.*, accent.
betrachten, *v. w.*, consider, look at.
beträgen, *v. s.*, amount to.
betreffen, *v. s.*, concern.
Bett, *n. n.*, **bed**, (§ 280, 1).
Bettler, *m. s. 1*, beggar.
Beutel, *m. s. 1*, purse.
Bewegung, *f. w.*, motion.
Bewohner, *m. s. 1*, inhabitant.
bezahlen, *v. w.*, pay.
bezeichnen, *v. w.*, denote.
beziehen (*sich*, *auf*), *v. s.*, refer (to).
Bezug, *m. s. 2* (*pl. ü*), reference, regard.
biegen, *v. s.*, bend.
bieten, *v. s.*, offer, **bld**.
Bild, *n. s. 3*, picture.
bilden, *v. w.*, form.
Bildung, *f. w.*, formation.
Billet, *n. s. 2* (*pl. -ette*), ticket.
billig, *adj.*, cheap, moderate.
billigen, *v. w.*, approve.
Bindevokal, *m. s. 2*, connecting vowel.
bis, *prep. (acc.)*, up to, until; — *an*, clear to, as far as.
bisweilen, *adv.*, at times.
bitten, *v. s.*, ask; (*ich*) *bitte*, please.
blasen, *v. s.*, blow, [cf. **blast**].
Blatt, *n. s. 3*, leaf, [**blade**].
bleiben, *v. s.*, remain, [**be-leave**].
Bleistift, *m. s. 2*, lead-pencil.
blenden, *v. w.*, blind, dazzle, [**blend**].
blid, *m. s. 2*, glance.
Blitz, *m. s. 2*, flash, lightning.
Blume, *f. w.*, flower, [**bloom**].
brauchen, *v. w.*, need, [**brook**].
brechen, *v. s.*, **break**.
Brief, *m. s. 2*, letter, [**brief**].
bringen, *v. w.* (§ 330), **bring**.
Bruder, *m. s. 1* (*pl. ü*), **brother**.
Buch, *n. s. 3*, **book**; — *bandel*, *m. s. 1*, book-trade; — *bandlung*, *f. w.*, book-store; — *stabe*, *m. w.*, letter, [**-stave**].
buchstäblich, *adj.*, literal.
Charakter, *m. s. 2* (*pl. -et're*), *character*.
charakterisiren, *v. w.*, characterize.
charakteristisch, *adj.*, characteristic.
Chor, *n. s. 2* (*pl. ö*), choir.
da, *adv.*, there; *sub. conj.*, as, since.
dagegen, *adv.*, against it, on the other hand.
daher, *adv.*, therefore.
daneben, *adv.*, besides.
Dame, *f. w.*, lady, *dame*.

dami't, *adv.*, therewith, with that, with it.

Dank, *m. s. (no pl.)*, thanks.

danke, *v. w. (dat.)*, thank.

dann, *adv.*, then.

dara'n, *adv.*, thereon, of that.

darauf, *adv.*, thereupon.

darbieten, *v. s.*, offer.

darin, *adv.*, therein, in it.

darstellen, *v. w.*, represent.

darüber, *adv.*, about that, about it, [thereover].

daru'm, *adv.*, there-fore.

daß, *sub. conj.*, that.

Dativ, *m. s. 2*, dative.

dauern, *v. w.*, last, continue, [dure].

davo'n, *adv.*, of it, of that.

dazu, *adv.*, besides, withal.

Declinatio'n, *f. w.*, declension.

Demokrat, *m. w.*, democrat.

Demonstrati'v, *n. s. (pl. se or -a)*, demonstrative.

denken, *v. w. (§ 330)*, think.

denn, *conj.*, for; *adv.*, then.

der, die, das, *art.*, the; *dem.*, that; *rel.*, who, which, that.

deuten (auf), *v. w.*, point (to).

Deutsch, *n. (incl.)*, German, [Dutch]; deutsch, *adj.*, German.

Deutschland, *n.*, Germany.

dicht, *adj.*, close, dense, [tight].

Dichter, *m. s. 1*, poet.

dieß, *pron. (dem.)*, this.

dicmal, *adv.*, this time, [-mole].

Ding, *n. s. 2*, thing.

Director, *m. m.*, director (§ 98).

doch, *adv.*, yet, still, though.

Doktor, *m. m.*, doctor (§ 98).

Dom, *m. s. 2*, cathedral, dome.

Dorf, *n. s. 3*, village, [thorp].

Dorfbewo'hner, *m. s. 1*, villager.

Dörfchen, *n. s. 1*, little village.

dort, *adv.*, yonder, there.

Drama, *m. m.*, drama.

draußen, *adv.*, outside, (br for bar; außen, from aus).

drinnen, *adv.*, therein, inside.

droben, *adv.*, up there.

drüben, *adv.*, over there.

drei, *num.*, three.

du, *pron.*, thou (§ 301).

dumm, *adj.*, stupid, [dumb].

dunkel, *adj.*, dark.

durch, *prep. (acc.)*, through.

Durchschnitt, *m. s. 2*, average, [through-cut].

dürfen, *v. w.*, be permitted, (§ 189).

eben, *adv.*, even, just.

Ebene, *f. w.*, plain, [even].

Edelmann, *m. s. 3*, nobleman.

eigen, *adj.*, own.

ei'gentlich, *adj.*, real, actual.

Ei'gentum, *n. s. 3*, property, [own-dom].

Eigentümlichkeit, *f. w.*, peculiarity.

ein, *art.*, a, an; *num.*, one.

einander, *pron. (incl.)*, each other, one another.

Eindruck, *m. s. 2. (pl. ü)*, impression.

einige, *pron. adj.*, some.

einlassen, *v. s.*, with sich, enter upon, go into.

ei'nmal, *adj.*, once; einma'l, just, pray.

einschließlich, *adv. (gen.)*, including, inclusive of.

ei'nschränken, *v. w.*, limit.

Einsicht, *f. w.*, insight.

einstweilen, *adv.*, for the present, (einz, from ein; weilen from Weile, while).

ei'ntreten, *v. s.*, take place.

einzig, *adj.*, only, single (from ein).

Eisenbahn, *f. w.*, railway, [iron-way].

elend, *adj.*, wretched.

Eltern, *pl. only*, parents, [elders].

Ende, *n. m.* (*gen. -s*), end.

enden, *v. w.*, end.

endlich, *adv.*, finally.

Endung, *f. w.*, ending.

Engländer, *m. s. 1*, Englishman.

englisch, *adj.*, English.

entfernt, *adv.*, distant, (from fern, far).

enthalten, *v. s.*, contain.

entsprechen, *v. s. dat.*, correspond.

er, *pron.*, he.

Erfindung, *f. w.*, invention, [out-finding].

ergözen, *v. w.*, delight.

erinnern (sich, *gen.*), *v. w.*, remember.

erfalten (sich), *v. w.*, take cold.

erkennen, *v. w. (§ 330)*, recognize.

erklären, *v. w.*, explain, (klar, clear).

erkranken, *v. w.*, sicken, be taken sick.

erlügen, *v. s.*, invent for deception, [-lie].

ermüden, *v. w.*, tire, fatigue.

erscheinen, *v. s.*, appear.

erst, *adj.*, first, [erst].

erstaunt, *pple.*, astonished.

erwarten, *v. w.*, expect.

erwidern, *v. w.*, reply, (widern — with).

erzählen, *v. w.*, relate, tell.

es, *pron.*, it, there, (§ 303).

etwa, *adv.*, about, approximately.

etwas, *pron. indef.*, something, some-
what.
etymolo'gisch, *adj.*, etymological.

euer, *pron. poss.*, your.
Euro'pa, *n.*, Europe.
ewig, *adv.*, everlasting, [aye-].

fähig, *adj.*, capable, fit, suited.
fahren, *v. s.* (aux. *sein*), travel, [fare].
Fall, *m. s. 2* (*pl. ä*), case, [fall].
fallen, *v. s.*, (aux. *sein*), fall.
falsch, *adj.*, false, wrong.
Famili'e, *f. w.*, family.
Feder, *f. w.*, pen, feather.
fehlen, *v. w.*, fail; was fehlt, with *dat.*,
what is the matter?
Fehler, *m. s. 1*, mistake.
Feiertag, *m. s. 2*, holiday.
Feld, *n. s. 3*, field.
Felsen, *m. s. 1*, rock, (§ 279, 2, a).
Femini'num, *n.* (*pl. -a*), feminine
noun.
Fenster, *n. s. 1*, window.
Ferien, *f.* (*pl. only*), vacation.
fertig, *adj.*, ready; — mit, through
with.
Fest, *n. s. 2*, festival, feast.
Fieber, *n. s. 1*, fever.
finden, *v. s.*, find.
finster, *adj.*, dark.
flektieren, *v. w.*, in-flect.
Fleiß, *m. s.* (*no pl.*), industry.
fleißig, *adj.*, industrious.
flection, *f. w.*, in-flection.
flectionslos, *adj.*, uninflected.
Fluß, *m. s. 2* (*pl. -üße*), river.
Folge, *f. w.*, sequence, order.
folgen, *v. w.*, follow.

Form, *f. w.*, form.
fort, *adv.*, away, forth.
fortfahren, *v. s.* (*intransitive*), con-
tinue.
fortsetzen, *v. w.* (*transitive*), continue.
Fossil, *n. m.* (*pl. -ien*), fossil.
Frage, *f. w.*, question.
fragen, *v. w.*, ask.
französisch, *adj.*, French.
Frau, *f. w.*, wife, Mrs.
Fräulein, *n. s. 1*, young lady, Miss.
freilich, *adv.*, to be sure, [freely].
fremd, *adj.*, strange, foreign.
fremde, *f. w.* (*no pl.*), foreign land.
Freude, *f. w.*, joy, pleasure.
freuen, *v. w.*, rejoice; es freut mich, I
am glad.
Freund, *m. s. 2*, friend; Freundin,
f. w., lady friend.
freundlich, *adj.*, friendly, kind.
Friede, *m. m.* (*gen. -es*), peace.
frisch, *adj.*, fresh.
froh, *adj.*, happy.
früh, *adv.*, early.
Frühling, *m. s. 2*, spring.
fühlen, *v. w.*, feel.
führen, *v. w.*, lead, carry on.
für, *prep.* (*acc.*), for.
furchtsam, *adj.*, timid, [fright-
some].
Fuß, *m. s. 2* (*pl. -üße*), foot.

Gallerie, *f. w.*, gallery.
ganz, *adj.*, all (§ 109, 3).
gar, *adv.*, quite, altogether.
Garten, *m. s. 1* (*pl. ä*), garden,
[yard].
Gärtner, *m. s. 2*, gardener.
Gast, *m. s. 2* (*pl. ä*), guest.
Gasthaus, *n. s. 3*, inn.
Gebäude, *n. s. 1*, building.
geben, *v. s.* give; es giebt (with *acc.*),
there is, there are.
Gebirge, *n. s. 1*, mountains.
Gebrauch, *m. s. 2* (*pl. ä*), use, usage.
Geburt, *f. w.*, -birth, — tag, *m. s.*
2, birth-day.
Gedanke, *m. m.* (*gen. -es*), thought,
idea.
gedenken, *v. w.* (§ 330), intend.
Geduld, *f. w.*, patience.
Gefahr, *f. w.*, danger, [-fear].
gefährlich, *adj.*, dangerous.
gefallen, *v. s.* (*dat.*), please.

gefaßt, *ppl. adj.*, composed, calm.
gegen, *prep.* (*acc.*), against, [a-
gain].
Gegend, *f. w.*, region.
Gegensatz, *m. s. 2* (*pl. ä*), contrast.
gegenüber, *prep.* (*dat.*), opposite.
gehen, *v. s.*, go; das geht nicht, that
won't do.
gehören, *v. w.* (*dat.*), belong to.
Geist, *m. s. 3*, intelligence, spirit,
ghost.
Geld, *n. s. 3*, money, [yield].
gelegentlich, *adj.*, occasional.
gelten, *v. s.*, have at stake, involve,
[yield].
gemischt, *ppl.*, mixed.
Gemüt, *n. s. 3*, feeling, soul, (from
Mut, mood).
genau, *adj.*, exact, careful.
geneigt, *ppl. adj.*, inclined.
Genetiv, *m. s. 2*, genitive.
genug, *adj.*, enough.

genügen, *v. w.*, be enough, suffice.
 gerade, *adv.*, exactly, just, [-rath-er].
 gern, *adv.*, gladly; — lesen, to like to read.
 Geschäft, *n. s.* 2, business, (from *ſchaffen*, do).
 geschehen, *v. s.* (aux. *sein*), happen, be done.
 Geschenk, *n. s.* 2, present, (from *ſchenken*).
 Geschichte, *f. w.*, story, history, (from *geschehen*).
 geschickt, *adj.*, skillful.
 Geschlecht, *n. s.* 3, gender, sex.
 Geschmack, *m. s.* 2, taste, [-smack].
 Gesellschaft, *f. w.*, society.
 geist, *pple.*, suppose (§ 369, 3).
 Geiſtenſt, *n. s.* 3, ghost, spook.
 Gespräch, *n. s.* 2, conversation, (from *ſprechen*).
 geſtehen, *v. s.*, confess.
 geſtern, *adv.*, yesterday.
 geſund, *adj.*, well, healthy, [-sound].
 Geſundheit, *f. w.*, health.
 gewaltig, *adj.*, powerful.
 gewinnen, *v. s.*, gain, -win.
 gewiß, *adj.*, certain; *adv.*, certainly, to be sure, [-wit].

haar, *n. s.* 2, hair.
 haben, *v. w.*, have.
 halb, *adj.*, half.
 halten, *v. s.*, hold, consider.
 Hand, *f. s.* 2 (*pl.* *ä*), hand.
 Handel, *m. s.* (no *pl.*), trade, commerce, [handle].
 handeln, *v. w.*; es handelt ſich um, it is a question of.
 Handlung, *f. w.*, shop, store.
 hangen, *v. s.*, hang.
 Haupt, *n. s.* 3, head; — art, *f. w.*, principal kind; — ſatz, *m. s.* 2 (*pl.* *ä*), principal sentence; — ton, *m. s.* 2 (*pl.* *ö*), principal accent; — wort, *n. s.* 2, noun.
 Haus, *n. s.* 3, house.
 Häuschen, *n. s.* 1, little house, cottage.
 Heimat, *f. w.*, home, [home-].
 heiß, *adj.*, hot.
 heißen, *v. s.*, be called, [be night].
 heiter, *adj.*, cheerful.
 Held, *m. w.*, hero.
 helfen, *v. s.*, help.
 herauſbekommen, *v. s.*, make out, get out. (berauſ, here-out).
 Herbſt, *m. s.* 2, autumn, [harvest].
 hereinführen, *v. s.*, set in.
 Herr, *m. w.* (§ 94, 1), gentleman, sir, Mr.
 herrlich, *adj.*, glorious, splendid.

Gewitter, *n. s.* 1, thunder-storm, [-weather].
 Gewohnheit, *f. w.*, habit, wont.
 gewöhnlich, *adj.*, usual.
 Gipfel, *m. s.* 1, peak, summit.
 Glaube, *m. m.* (*gen.* *enſ*), faith, belief, [be-lief].
 glauben, *v. w.*, be-lieve.
 gleich, *adj.*, -like; *adv.*, directly.
 gleichlautend, *adj.*, like-sounding, identical in sound.
 gleichviel, *adv.*, no matter, just the same.
 Glück, *n. s.* (no *pl.*), -luck, fortune.
 glücklich, *adj.*, happy.
 glücklicherweise, *adv.*, fortunately, [lucky-wise].
 Grad, *m. s.* 2, degree, grade.
 Grammatik, *f. w.*, grammar.
 greifen, *v. s.*, grasp, grip(e).
 groß, *adj.*, great.
 Grund, *m. s.* 2 (*pl.* *ä*), reason, ground; — princip, *n. m.* (*pl.* *ien*), fundamental principle; — form, *f. w.*, principal part.
 gründlich, *adj.*, thorough.
 gut, *adj.*, good; *adv.*, well.
 Gymnaſium, *n. m.*, gymnasium.

herzlich, *adj.*, heart-y, cordial.
 heulen, *v. w.*, howl.
 heute, *adv.*, to-day; heututage, *adv.*, nowadays.
 heutig, *adv.*, of to-day, to-day's.
 Hexe, *f. w.*, witch.
 hier, *adv.*, here.
 Hilfsverb, *n. m.* (*pl.* *en or a*), auxiliary, [help-verb].
 Himmel, *m. s.* 1, heaven, sky.
 Hindernis, *n. s.* 2, hindrance, difficulty, [hinder-mess].
 Einsicht, *f. w.*, respect, [-sight].
 hinter, *prep.* (*dat.* and *acc.*), behind, after.
 hinübergehen, *v. s.*, go over.
 hoch, *adj.*, high (§ 109, 1).
 höchstens, *adv.*, at the most.
 hoffen, *v. w.*, to hope.
 Hoffnung, *f. w.*, hope, [hope-ing].
 höflich, *adj.*, polite.
 holen, *v. w.*, fetch.
 Holz, *n. s.* 3, wood, forest.
 honorar, *n. s.* 2, fee.
 hören, *v. w.*, hear.
 hübsch, *adj.*, pretty.
 Hügel, *m. s.* 1, hill.
 hundert, *num.*, hundred.
 Hut, *m. s.* 2 (*pl.* *ä*), hat, [hood].
 hüten (ſich), *v. w.*, be on one's guard, [heed.]

ich, *pron.*, I.
Idio'm, *n. s. 2*, *idiom*.
ih'r, *poss.*, her, their, its; **Ihr**, your.
immer, *adv.*, always.
Imperati'o, *m. s. 2*, *imperative*.
in, *prep. (dat. and acc.)*, in, into.
inde'm, *sub. conj.*, while, since.
inde'ssen, *adv.*, meanwhile.
Indicati'o, *m. s. 2*, *indicative*.
i'ndirekt, *adj.*, *indirect*.

ja, *adv.*, yes.
Jahr, *n. s. 2*, *year*; — **es'st**, *n. s. 2*, annual festival; — **es'tag**, *m. s. 2*, anniversary; — **es'seit**, *f. w.*, season.
Jahrhu'ndert, *n. s. 2*, century.
Janua'r, *m. s. 2*, *January*.
jed-, *pron.*, every, each.

Kaffee, *m. s. (no. pl.)*, *coffee*.
Kahn, *m. s. 2 (pl. ä)*, boat, row-boat.
kalt, *adj.*, cold.
Kamera'd, *m. w.*, comrade.
Kasten, *m. s. 1*, box.
Kasus, *m. (pl. Kasus)*, case.
Kauf, *m. s. 2 (pl. ä)*, purchase.
kaufen, *v. w.*, buy.
Kaufmann, *m. s. 3*, merchant, [chap-man].
kein, *adj.*, no, not a, none.
kennen, *v. w. (§ 330)*, know, [ken].
kenntnis, *f. s. 2*, knowledge.
Kennzeichen, *n. s. 1*, sign, characteristic, [ken-token].
Kerl, *m. s. 2*, fellow, [churl].
Kind, *n. s. 3*, child.
Klasse, *f. w.*, class.
Kleid, *n. s. 3*, garment, [cloth].
klein, *adj.*, small.
Kleinigkeit, *f. w.*, trifle, small matter.
klimmen, *v. s. (aux. sein)*, climb.
knöpfen, *v. w.*, knock.
Kloster, *n. s. 1 (pl. ö)*, convent, cloister.
Knabe, *m. w.*, boy, [knave].
kommen, *v. s.*, come.
Komparati'o'n, *f. w.*, comparison; — **fähig**, *adj.*, capable of comparison.

Infiniti'o, *m. s. 2*, *infinitive*.
Inhalt, *m. s. 2*, contents, [in-hold].
interessant, *adj.*, interesting.
Interesse, *n. m. (gen. -s)*, interest.
interrogati'o, *adj.*, interrogative.
intransiti'o, *adj.*, intransitive.
Inversio'n, *f. w.*, inversion.
invertie'ren, *v. w.*, invert.
irgend, *pron. incl.*, any, some.
Irrtum, *m. s. 3*, error, [err-dom].

jedenfalls, *adv.*, at any rate.
jedermann, *pron. incl.*, every one.
jemals, *adv.*, ever.
jemand, *pron. indef.*, some one.
jetzt, *adv.*, now.
Juli, *m. s.*, July.
Juni, *m. s.*, June.
jung, *adj.*, young.

Komparati'o, *m. s. 2*, *comparative*.
Komparie'ren, *v. w.*, compare.
Kompositio'n, *f. w.*, composition.
Kompo'situm, *n. (pl. a)*, compound, composite word.
konditiona'l, *adj.*, conditional.
königlich, *adj.*, royal, **kingly**.
Konjugatio'n, *f. w.*, conjugation.
Konjunctio'n, *f. w.*, conjunction.
Konjuncti'o, *m. s. 2*, subjunctive.
können, *v. w. (§ 189)*, can, be able.
Koncert, *n. s. 2*, concert.
Kopf, *m. s. 2 (pl. ö)*, head, [cup].
Kopfsch., *n. s. 2*, headache, [-woe].
Kost, *f. w.*, fare, board, [cost].
Kosten, *f. (pl. only)*, cost(s).
kosten, *v. w.*, cost.
Kraft, *f. s. 2 (pl. ä)*, force, strength, [craft].
krank, *adj.*, sick, ill, [crank].
Krankheit, *f. w.*, sickness, disease; — **es'fall**, case of sickness.
kümmern, *v. w.*, trouble.
künftig, *adj.*, coming, next.
kurie'ren, *v. w.*, cure.
Kursus, *m. (pl. Kursus or Kurse)*, course.
kurz, *adj.*, short, [curl].
kürzlich, *adj.*, lately.

lächeln, *v. w.*, smile.
lachen, *v. w.*, laugh.
Laden, *m. s. 1 (pl. ä)*, store, shop.
Lage, *f. w.*, situation, [lay].
Land, *n. s. 2-3*, land, country.

lang, *adj.*, long.
langweilig, *adj.*, dull, tedious, [long-while-y].
lassen, *v. s.*, let, cause.
latei'nisch, *adj.*, Latin.

Laufburſch, *m. w.*, errand-boy.
 laufen, *v. s.*, run, [leap].
 Laut, *m. s.* 2, sound.
 lauten, *v. w.*, purport, run.
 lauter, *adj.*, exclusively, none but.
 leben, *v. w.*, live.
 Leben, *n. s.* 1, life, [live].
 lebhaft, *adj.*, lively.
 legen, *v. w.*, lay.
 Lehrer, *m. s.* 1, (man) teacher; —in,
f. w., woman teacher.
 leicht, *adj.*, light, easy.
 leid, *adj.*, disagreeable; es thut mir —,
 I am sorry [loath]; —er, *adv.*,
 unfortunately, alas.
 leiden, *n. s.* 1, suffering, trouble,
 [loathe].
 leise, *adj.*, softly, in low tone.
 Lektion, *f. w.*, lesson.
 Lektüre, *f. w.*, text for reading, [lect-
 ure].
 lernen, *v. w.*, learn.
 Lesebuch, *n. s.* 2, reading-book, reader.

lesen, *v. s.*, read.
 Leser, *m. s.* 1, reader.
 lest, *adj.*, last.
 Leute, *pl. only*, people.
 Licht, *n. s.* 3, light.
 lieb, *adj.*, dear, [lie]; —haben, to
 like, [have lie].
 Liebe, *f. w.*, love; —brief, *m. s.* 2,
 love-letter.
 lieben, *v. w.*, love.
 liebenswürdig, *adj.*, lovely, [love-
 worthy].
 liebgewinnen, *v. s.*, grow fond of.
 liegen, *v. s.*, lie, be situated.
 links, *adj.*, left.
 Liste, *f. w.*, list.
 loben, *v. w.*, praise, [love].
 lohnen (sich), *v. w.*, to be worth while.
 los, *adj.*, rid of, free from, loose,
 —less.
 Luft, *f. s.* 2 (*pl. ä*), air.
 lustig, *adj.*, jolly, [lusty].

machen, *v. w.*, make.
 Mädchen, *n. s.* 1, girl, maiden,
 [maid-kim].
 man, *pron. indef.*, one, [man].
 manch, *pron. adj.*, many, many a.
 Mangel, *m. s.* 1 (*pl. ä*), lack, want.
 Mann, *m. s.* 3, man.
 Mark, *f. w.*, mark.
 Meer, *n. s.* 2, sea, [mere].
 mehrere, *adj.*, several, [more-].
 Mehrheit, *f. w.*, majority, [more-
 hood, i. e., more-ness].
 mehrmals, *adv.*, frequently.
 Meile, *f. w.*, mile.
 meilenweit, *adv.*, for miles.
 mein, *pron. poss.*, my, mine.
 meinen, *v. w.*, mean.
 meistens, *adv.*, most-ly.
 Menge, *f. w.*, mass, multitude.
 Mensch, *m. w.*, man, mankind, (from
 Mann).
 menschlich, *adj.*, human.
 Messe, *f. w.*, fair, mass.

Mineral, *n. m.* 2 (*pl. sten*), mineral.
 Minute, *f. w.*, minute.
 mit, *prep. (dat.)*, with, [mid in
 mid-wife].
 mittheilen, *v. w.*, impart, tell, [—deal].
 mittel, *adj.*, middle.
 Mittelpunkt, *m. s.* 2, central point.
 modal, *adj.*, modal.
 Mode, *f. w.*, fashion, mode.
 Modus, *m. (sing. indecl. pl. Modi)*,
 mode.
 mögen, *v. w.* (§ 189), may, wish, like.
 möglich, *adj.*, possible, (from mögen).
 Monat, *m. s.* 2, month.
 Morgen, *m. s.* 1, morning; —luft, *f. s.*
 2 (*pl. ä*), morning air; as *adv.*,
 morgen, to-morrow.
 müde, *adj.*, tired.
 Mühe, *f. w.*, pains, trouble.
 Museum, *n. m.* 2 (*pl. -en*), museum.
 Musik, *f. w.*, music.
 müssen, *v. w.* (§ 189), must, be obliged.
 Mutter, *f. s.* 1 (*pl. ä*), mother.

nach, *prep. (dat.)*, after, to, [nigh].
 nachahmen, *v. w.*, imitate.
 Nachbar, *m. m.*, neighbor.
 nachdem, *sub. conj.*, after.
 Nachricht, *f. w.*, report, news, tidings.
 nachschlagen, *v. s.*, consult, look up
 (in a dictionary).
 Nacht, *f. s.* 2 (*pl. ä*), night.
 nah, *adj.*, near, nigh (§ 114, 2).

Name, *m. m.* 2 (*gen. -nē*), name;
 —nēvetter, *m. m.*, namesake.
 nämlich, *adv.*, namely, that is to
 say.
 Narr, *m. w.*, fool.
 naß, *adj.*, wet, [nas-ty].
 Nation, *f. w.*, nation.
 Natur, *f. w.*, nature; —schönheit, *f.*
 w., beauty of nature.

natürlich, *adv.*, naturally, of course.
Rebel, *m. s. 1*, fog, mist.
neben, *prep. (dat. and acc.)*, beside, along with.
Nebenfluß, *m. s. 2 (pl. -üsse)*, tributary.
Nebenfaß, *m. s. 2 (pl. ä)*, subordinate clause.
nehmen, *v. s.*, take.
nein, *adv.*, no, [*neme*].
nennen, *v. w. (§ 330)*, name.
neu, *adj.*, new.
Neugierde, *f. w.*, curiosity.
neugierig, *adj.*, curious, [glorig, eager for].

neulich, *adv.*, lately, [*newly*].
nicht, *adv.*, not, [*naught*].
nichts, (§ 330, 2) nothing.
niedrig, *adj.*, low.
niemals, *adv.*, never.
niemand, *pron. indef.*, no one.
noch, *adv.*, yet, still, nor.
Nominativ, *m. s. 2*, nominative.
normal, *adj.*, normal.
Not, *f. s. 2*, need, distress.
Notfall, *m. s. 2 (pl. ä)*, case of need.
nötig, *adj.*, necessary, [*needy*].
Número, *m. (indcl.)*, at No.
nun, *adv.*, now, well.
nur, *adv.*, only, just.

o, *interj.*, O, oh.
ob, *sub. conj.*, whether; als —, as if.
Obdach, *n. s. 3*, shelter, [*-thatch*].
oben, *adv.*, above.
obwohl, *sub. conj.*, although.
oder, *conj.*, or.
Ofen, *m. s. 1 (pl. ä)*, stove, [*oven*].
offenbar, *adj.*, evident, [*open-*].

öffnen, *v. w.*, open.
oft, *adv.*, often, oft.
öfters, *adv.*, often (*comp. of oft*).
ohne, *prep. (acc.)*, without.
Onkel, *m. s. 1*, uncle.
optativ, *adj.*, optative.
Ort, *m. s. 2-3*, place.
Ostern, *w.*, *pl. only*, Easter.

Paar, *n. s. 2*, pair; ein paar, a few.
Palast, *m. s. 2 (pl. ä)*, palace.
Paradigma, *n. m. (pl. -men)*, paradigm.
Park, *m. s. 2 (pl. also Parks)*, park.
Partizip, *n. s. (pl. -e, -ia or -ien)*, participle.
Perfekt, *n. s. 2*, perfect.
Person, *f. w.*, person.
persona'l, *adj.*, personal.
persönlich, *adj.*, personal.
Pflicht, *f. w.*, duty, [*plight*].
Philosophie, *f. w.*, philosophy.
Photographie, *f. w.*, photograph.
Platz, *m. s. 2 (pl. ä)*, place, seat.
plaudern, *v. w.*, chat.
Plural, *m. s. 2*, plural.
Politik, *f. w.*, politics.
Polizei, *f. w.*, police.

Polizist, *m. w.*, policeman.
Post, *f. w.*, mail, post.
prächt, *adj.*, splendid.
Prädika't, *n. s. 2*, predicate.
Präfix, *n. s. 2*, prefix.
präparieren, *v. w.*, prepare.
Präpositio'n, *f. w.*, preposition.
Präsens, *n. (sing. indcl., pl. Präsens-tia)*, present.
Präterito-Präsentia, *n. (pl.)*, preterite-presents.
Präteritum, *n. (pl. -a)*, preterite.
Preis, *m. s. 2*, price.
Prinzip, *n. m. (pl. -ien)*, principle.
Profeßor, *m. m. z.*, professor.
Pronomen, *n. (pl. -mina)*, pronoun.
Prozent, *n. s. 2*, per cent.
Prüfung, *f. w.*, trial, proving.
Punkt, *m. s. 2*, point.

quälen (*sch*), *v. w.*, be tormented, be bored.

quer, *adv.*, across, [*queer*].

Rand, *m. s. 3*, edge, border.
rash, *adj.*, fast, [*rash*].
Rat, *m. s. (no pl.)*, advice.
raten, *v. s.*, guess, advise.
Räuber, *m. s. 1*, robber; Straßen —, footpad.

rechnen, *v. w.*, reckon, count.
recht, *adv.*, right, very.
Rede, *f. w.*, speech; —teil, *m. s. 2* part of speech.
reden, *v. w.*, talk.
redlich, *adj.*, honest, candid.

Reblichkeit, *f. w.*, honesty.
 Reflexiv, *n. s.* (*pl. -e or -a*), reflexive.
 Regel, *f. w.*, rule.
 regelmäßig, *adj.*, regular.
 Regen, *m. s.* 1, rain.
 Regenschirm, *m. s.* 2, umbrella.
 regieren, *v. w.*, govern.
 regnen, *v. w.*, rain.
 reich, *adj.*, rich.
 Reise, *f. w.*, journey, [*rise*]; — same:
 ra'b, *m. w.*, traveling companion
 (comrade).
 Reiz, *m. s.* 2, charm.

Relativ, *n. s.* (*pl. -e or -a*), relative.
 respectiv, *adv.*, or as the case may
 be.
 richten, *v. w.*, regulate, [*righten*].
 richtig, *adj.*, right, correct.
 Richtung, *f. w.*, direction.
 Rolle, *f. w.*, rôle, part.
 Roman, *m. s.* 2, novel, romance.
 Rückkehr, *f. w.*, return.
 Rücksicht, *f. w.*, regard.
 Rückweg, *m. s.* 2, return.
 ruhen, *v. w.*, rest.
 ruhig, *adj.*, quiet.

Sache, *f. w.*, affair, thing, [*sake*].
 sächlich, *adj.*, neuter, (from *Sache*).
 Sage, *f. w.*, tradition, story, [*say*].
 sagen, *v. w.*, say.
 Salamander, *m. s.* 1, salamander.
 Satz, *m. s.* 2 (*pl. -ä*), sentence.
 Satzglied, *n. s.* 3, clause, member (of
 a sentence).
 sauer, *adj.*, bitter, sour.
 Scene, *f. w.*, scene.
 Schade, *m. m.* (*pl. Schäden*), injury,
 loss; daß ist schade, that is a pity,
 [*scathe*].
 schätzen, *v. w.*, value, esteem.
 Schauspieler, *m. s.* 1, actor.
 scheinen, *v. s.*, seem, shine.
 Schelm, *m. s.* 2, rogue, scamp.
 schenken, *v. w.*, present, give.
 schießen, *v. s.*, shoot.
 Schlacht, *f. w.*, battle.
 schlagen, *v. s.*, strike, [*slay*].
 schlecht, *adj.*, bad.
 schließen, *v. s.*, infer, conclude.
 schlimm, *adj.*, bad, [*alim*].
 Schlittschuh, *m. s.* 2, skate, [*slide-*
shoe].
 Schloß, *n. s.* 3 (*pl. -öffer*), castle.
 Schluß, *m. s.* 2 (*pl. -üsse*), end, close.
 schnell, *adj.*, swift; *adv.*, swiftly.
 schon, *adv.*, already, quite.
 schön, *adj.*, beautiful, lovely, [*shoen*].
 Schönheit, *f. w.*, beauty.
 schrecklich, *adj.*, terrible.
 schreiben, *v. s.*, write, [*shrive,*
scribe].
 Schreibweise, *f. w.*, way of writing.
 schreiten, *v. s.* (*aux. sein*), step.
 Christstiller, *m. s.* 1, writer, author.
 Schritt, *m. s.* 2, step.
 schuldig, *adj.*, indebted.
 Schule, *f. w.*, school.
 Schuljahr, *n. s.* 2, school-year.
 Schüler, *m. s.* 1, scholar, pupil.
 Schuster, *m. s.* 1, cobbler.
 Schuß, *m. s.* 2 (*pl. -üsse*), shot.

schwach, *adj.*, weak.
 schweigen, *v. s.*, to be silent.
 schwer, *adj.*, heavy, hard.
 Schwester, *f. w.*, sister.
 schwierig, *adj.*, difficult.
 Schwierigkeit, *f. w.*, difficulty.
 Schwindsucht, *f. w.*, consumption.
 See, *f. w.* (*pl. Seen or Eeten*), sea,
 ocean; — reise, *f. w.*, voyage.
 sehen, *v. s.*, see.
 Sebenswürdigkeit, *f. w.*, sight,
 [something worth seeing].
 sehn, *v. w.*, long.
 sehr, *adv.*, very, [*sore*].
 sein, *poss.*, his.
 seit, *prep.* (*dat.*), since.
 Seite, *f. w.*, side.
 selbst, *pron.*, self, myself, etc.
 selten, *adj.*, rare, [*seldom*].
 setzen, *v. w.*, set, seat; sich —, to sit
 down.
 sicher, *adj.*, sure.
 Sie, *pron.*, you; sie, she, they; her,
 them.
 Sieg, *m. s.* 2, victory.
 Silbe, *f. w.*, syllable.
 singen, *v. s.*, sing.
 singular, *m. s.* 2, singular.
 Sinn, *m. s.* 2, sense, mind.
 sittlich, *adj.*, moral.
 sitzen, *v. s.*, sit.
 so, *adv.*, so.
 soeben, *adv.*, just now, [*so-even*].
 sofort, *adv.*, at once.
 sogar, *adv.*, actually, even.
 genannt, *adj.*, so-called.
 solch, *pron.*, *adj.*, such.
 sollen, *v. w.* (§ 180), shall, ought.
 Sohn, *m. s.* 2 (*pl. -ä*), son.
 Sommer, *m. s.* 1, summer.
 sonderbar, *adj.*, strange.
 sondern, *conj.*, but.
 Sonnabend, *m. s.* 2, Saturday, (*eve*
 of Sun-day).
 sonst, *adv.*, else, otherwise.

Sorge, *f. w.*, care, [**sorrow**].
Spaß, *m. s. 2 (pl. ä)*, jest.
spät, *adv.*, late.
Spaziergang, *m. s. 2 (pl. ä)*, walk.
spielen, *v. w.*, play.
Sprache, *f. w.*, language.
Sprachstufe, *f. w.*, linguistic stage.
sprechen, *v. s.*, speak.
Spruchwort, *n. s. 3*, proverb.
Spruch, *m. s. 2 (pl. ü)*, saying.
Spur, *f. w.*, trace.
Staat, *m. m.*, state.
Stadt, *f. s. 2 (pl. ä)*, city, [**stead**, *i. e.*, place].
Stamm, *m. s. 2 (pl. ä)*, stem; —**vo-**
tal, *m. s. 2*, stem-vowel.
stark, *adj.*, strong, [**stark**].
stattfinden, *v. s.*, take place, [**find**
stead].
stecken, *v. w.*, put, **stick**.
stehen, *v. s.*, **stand**.
steigen, *v. s.*, (*aux.* **sein**), climb.
Stelle, *f. w.*, passage, place.
Stellung, *f. w.*, position.
sterben, *v. s. (aux. sein)*, die, [**starve**].

stets, *adv.*, always, [**stead-ily**].
Stimme, *f. w.*, voice, vote.
stimmen, *v. w.*, tally, coincide.
Stimmung, *f. w.*, mood.
Strafe, *f. w.*, **street**; —**räuber**, *m. s. 1*, footpad, [**street-robber**].
Strecke, *f. w.*, stretch, distance.
Streich, *m. s. 2*, prank, trick, **stroke**.
Streit, *m. s. 2*, strife, conflict.
Strom, *m. s. 2 (pl. ö)*, **stream**.
Stück, *n. s. 2*, piece, play, [**stick**].
Student, *m. w.*, **student**.
studieren, *v. w.*, **study**.
Studium, *n. m.* (*pl. -ien*), **study**.
Stufe, *f. w.*, stage.
Stuhl, *m. s. 2 (pl. ä)*, chair, [**stool**].
Stunde, *f. w.*, hour, lesson.
Stütze, *f. w.*, prop, support.
Subjekt, *n. s. 2*, **subject**.
subordinieren, *v. w.*, **subordinate**.
Substantiv, *n. s. 1 (pl. -e or -a)*, **sub-**
stantive.
Summe, *f. w.*, **sum**.
Superlativ, *m. s. 2*, **superlative**.
Sympathie, *f. w.*, **sympathy**.

Tag, *m. s. 2*, **day**.
täglich, *adj., adv.*, **daily**.
Tanz, *m. s. 2 (pl. ä)*, **dance**; —**platz**,
m. s. 2 (pl. ä), dancing-place.
Tasche, *f. w.*, pocket; —**geld**, *n. s. 3*,
pocket-money.
Taugenichts, *m. (incl.)* good-for-
nothing.
Teil, *m. s. 2*, part, [**deal**]; *n. s. 2*, share.
teilen, *v. w.*, share, [**deal**].
Tempus, *n. (sing. incl., pl. Tem-*
pora), **tense**.
Tende'nz, *f. w.*, **tendency**.
Termi'n, *m. s. 2*, **term**.
teuer, *adj.*, **dear**, expensive.
Teufel, *m. s. 1*, **devil**.
Text, *m. s. 2*, **text**.
Thal, *n. s. 3*, valley, **dale**.
Thaler, *m. s. 1*, thaler, dollar.
Thatjade, *f. w.*, fact, [**deed-**].
Thea'ter, *n. s. 1*, **theater**.

thun, *v. irreg. (§ 185)*, **do**.
Thür(e), *f. w.*, **door**.
Tier, *n. s. 2*, animal, [**deer**].
Tisch, *m. s. 2*, table, [**dish**].
Titel, *m. s. 1*, **title**.
Tochter, *f. s. 1 (pl. ö)*, **daughter**.
Tot, *m. s. 2 (no pl.)*, **death**.
toll, *adj.*, mad.
Ton, *m. s. 2 (pl. ö)*, **tone**, stress.
tot, *adj.*, **dead**.
tragen, *v. s.*, wear.
Transpositio'n, *f. w.*, **transposition**.
traurig, *adj.*, sad, sorrowful.
treffen, *v. s.*, hit, hit upon.
trennbar, *adj.*, separable.
trennen, *v. w.*, separate.
treten, *v. s. (aux. sein)*, step, **tread**.
treu, *adj.*, **true**, faithful.
trocken, *v. w.*, dry.
trösten, *v. w.*, comfort, [**trust**].
Turm, *m. s. 2 (pl. ü)*, tower.

übel, *adj., adv.*, **evil**, amiss.
über, *prep. (dat. and acc.)*, **over**,
about.
überall, *adv.*, everywhere, [**over-**
all].
übergang, *m. s. 2 (pl. ä)*, transition.
überhaupt, *adv.*, in general, at large.
[over-head].

überlegen, *v. u.*, ponder, consider.
übersetzen, *v. w.*, translate.
übersicht, *f. w.*, synopsis, general sur-
vey, [**oversight**].
übrig, *adj.*, remaining, [**over-**].
Ufer, *n. s. 1*, bank, shore.
Uhr, *f. w.*, clock, [**hour**].
um, *prep. (acc.)*, at, about.

u'mbringen, *v. w.* (§ 330), **kill**.
 Umgebung, *f. w.*, environs.
 Umlaut, *m. s. 2*, urlaut, mutation.
 Umstand, *m. s. 2* (*pl. ð*), circumstance.
 un'angenehm, *adj.*, **un-pleasant**.
 unbeant'wortet, *adj.*, **unanswered**.
 u'nbedeutend, *adj.*, insignificant.
 u'nbestimmt, *adj.*, indefinite.
 u'nbetont, *adj.*, unaccented.
 und, *conj.*, **and**.
 unerträ'glich, *adj.*, intolerable.
 U'nsfall, *m. s. 2* (*pl. ð*), accident.
 u'nflektiert, *adj.*, uninflected.
 u'ngeduldig, *adj.*, impatient.
 u'ngefähr, *adv.*, about.
 Universität, *f. w.*, **university**.
 unmit'telbar, *adj.*, immediate.
 unmö'glich, *adj.*, impossible.

u'npersönlich, *adj.*, impersonal.
 U'nruhe, *f. w.*, unrest, concern.
 unser, *poss.*, our.
 Unsinn, *m. s.* (*no pl.*), nonsense.
 unten, *adv.*, below, down.
 unter, *adj.*, lower, [**under**].
 unter, *prep.* (*dat. and acc.*), **under**,
 among.
 unterbre'chen, *v. s.*, interrupt.
 unterne'hmen, *v. s.*, undertake.
 unterscheiden (*sich*), *v. s.*, differ.
 Unterscheidung, *f. w.*, distinction.
 U'nterschied, *m. s. 2*, difference.
 unterwe'rfen, *v. s.*, submit.
 untrenn'bar, *adj.*, inseparable.
 Ursprung, *m. s. 2* (*pl. ð*), origin,
 [ur = out].
 urprünglich, *adj.*, original.

Vater, *m. s. 1* (*pl. ð*), **father**.
 Verab'redung, *f. w.*, agreement, ar-
 rangement.
 Verb(um), *n.* (*pl. Verba*), *verb*.
 verbessern, *v. w.*, correct, [**-better**].
 Verbindung, *f. w.*, combination.
 verein'igt, *ppl.*, united, [**-one-**].
 verfallen, *v. s.*, **fall** a prey.
 Verfasser, *m. s. 1*, author.
 vergehen, *v. s.* (§ 185), pass, [**for(e)-**
 go].
 vergessen, *v. s.*, **forget**.
 vergeuden, *v. w.*, waste.
 verhalten (*sich*), *v. s.*, be related.
 Verhältnis, *n. s. 2*, relation.
 verlangen, *v. w.*, wish, want, [**-long**].
 verlassen, *v. s.*, leave; *sich* — auf, rely
 upon.
 Verlauf, *m. s. 2* (*pl. ðu*), course.
 verloren, *ppl.*, lost, [**forlorn**].
 vermeiden, *v. s.*, avoid.
 Vermögen, *n. s. 1*, property.
 versammeln, *v. w.*, gather, assemble.
 verschieden, *adj.*, different.
 verschmätzt, *adv.*, shrewdly.
 verschwinden, *v. s.* (*aux. sein*), vanish,
 disappear.
 versetzen, *v. w.*, answer, transpose.

versichern, *v. w.*, assure.
 verstehen, *v. s.* (§ 185), understand.
 versorgen, *v. s.*, offend.
 versuchen, *v. w.*, try.
 verweilen, *v. w.*, tarry, [**-while**].
 Vetter, *m. m.*, cousin.
 viel, *pron., adj., adv.*, much.
 vielleicht, *adv.*, perhaps.
 Viertel, *n. s. 1*, quarter; —jahr, *n. s.*
 2, quarter-year; —stunde, *f. w.*,
 quarter-hour.
 Vogel, *m. s. 1* (*pl. ð*), bird, [**fowl**].
 Vokal, *m. s. 2*, vowel.
 Volk, *n. s. 3*, folk, people; —glaube,
 m. m., popular belief.
 voll, *adj.*, **full**.
 vollenden, *v. w.*, complete, finish,
 [**-end**].
 von, *prep.* (*dat.*), from, of.
 vor, *prep.* (*dat. and acc.*), before,
 [**fore**].
 vorbe'gehen, *v. s.*, precede.
 vorig, *adj.*, last, former.
 vo'rkommen, *v. s.*, occur.
 vo'rlesen, *v. s.*, read aloud.
 vormittags, *adv.*, in the forenoon.
 Vor'falle, *f. w.*, prefix.
 Vorstellung, *f. w.*, performance.

wach, *adj.*, a-wake.
 Wahl, *f. w.*, choice, election.
 wahr, *adj.*, true.
 während, *sub. conj.*, while; *prep.*
 (*gen.*), during.
 wahrscheinlich, *adj.*, probable.
 Wald, *m. s. 3*, forest, [**wold**].

Wand, *f. s. 2* (*pl. ð*), wall.
 Wanderung, *f. w.*, wandering, trav-
 el.
 Wandlung, *f. w.*, change.
 wann, *adv. inter.*, when.
 warm, *adj.*, warm.
 warten, *v. w.*, wait.

waru'm, *adv. inter.*, why.
 was, *pron. inter.*, what.
 weder, *conj.*, neither; weder . . . noch,
 neither . . . nor.
 Weg, *m. s. 2*, way.
 wegen, *prep. (gen.)*, on account of.
 weglassen, *v. s.*, omit.
 Weib, *n. s. 3*, woman, wife.
 weiblich, *adj.*, feminine, [wife-ly].
 weil, *sub. conj.*, because, [while].
 Weihnachten, *v. pl.*, Christmas.
 Weihnachtsgeschenk, *n. s. 2*, Christmas present.
 Weise, *f. w.*, manner, mode, wise.
 weiß, *adj.*, white.
 weit, *adj.*, wide, broad.
 Welt, *f. w.*, world.
 wenig, *adj.*, little; ein —, a little.
 wenigstens, *adv.*, at least.
 wenn, *sub. conj.*, if, when.
 wer, *pron. inter.*, who.
 werden, *v. s.*, become, [worth].
 werfen, *v. s.*, throw, cast, [warp].
 Werk, *n. s. 2*, work.
 weshalb, *adv. inter.*, why.
 Wetter, *n. s. 1*, weather.
 wichtig, *adj.*, important, weighty.
 wie, *adv.*, how, as, [why].
 wieder, *adv.*, again, [with].
 wiederaufnehmen, *v. s.*, resume.
 wiedergeben, *v. s.*, render.
 wiederholen, *v. w.*, repeat.
 wiedersehen, *v. s.*, see again; auf Wiedersehen, good-bye.

willkommen, *adj.*, welcome.
 Wind, *m. s. 2*, wind.
 Winter, *m. s. 1*, winter.
 wirklich, *adv.*, really.
 Wirt, *m. s. 2*, landlord, man-of-the-house.
 Wirtin, *f. w.*, landlady.
 wissen, *v. w. (§ 330)*, know, [to wit].
 wo, *adv.*, where.
 Woche, *f. w.*, week.
 wöchentlich, *adv.*, weekly.
 wofür, *adv.*, for what.
 wohl, *adv.*, probably, I presume, well.
 woher, *adv.*, whence.
 wohnen, *v. w.*, dwell, live, [cf. to
 wohn, with its ppl. wohnt].
 Wohnort, *m. s. 2*, abode, dwelling-place.
 Wohnung, *f. w.*, dwelling, residence.
 Wolke, *f. w.*, cloud, [welk-in].
 wollen, *v. w. (§ 189)*, will.
 Wort, *n. s. 2-3*, word; — folgt, *w.*,
f. word-order; — verständig, *w. f.*,
 phrase.
 Wörterbuch, *n. s. 3*, dictionary.
 worum, *adv.*, about what, why.
 wozu, *adv.*, to what end, what for.
 wundern, *v. w.*, cause to wonder; mich
 wundern's, I wonder.
 Wunsch, *m. s. 2*, (pl. ä), wish.
 wünschen, *v. w.*, wish.
 Wurzel, *f. w.*, root, [wort].
 wurzelhaft, *adj.*, radical.

zählen, *v. w.*, count, [tell].
 zehn, *num.*, ten.
 Zeichen, *n. s. 1*, sign, token.
 Zeichnung, *f. w.*, drawing.
 zeigen, *v. w.*, show, [teach].
 Zeile, *f. w.*, line.
 Zeit, *f. w.*, time, [tide].
 Zeitung, *f. w.*, newspaper, [tiding].
 Zeitpunkt, *n. s. 3*, verb.
 zerfallen, *v. s. (tn)*, be divided (into).
 ziehen, *v. s.*, draw, [tow].
 ziemlich, *adv.*, pretty, tolerably.
 Zimmer, *n. s. 1*, room, [timber].
 Zischlaut, *m. s. 2*, sibilant.
 zu, *prep.*, to, at, for; *adv.*, too.
 zufrieden, *adj.*, content.

Zug, *m. s. 2* (pl. ä), train, [tug].
 zunächst, *adv.*, next.
 zurück, *adv.*, back, [-ridge].
 zusammen, *adv.*, together.
 Zuschauer, *m. s. 1*, spectator.
 Zuschuß, *m. s. 2* (pl. äße), addition,
 increase.
 zu'tragen (ist), *v. s.*, happen.
 zu'träglich, *adj.*, beneficial.
 zwar, *adv.*, to be sure, forsooth, (zu
 wahr).
 zwei, *num.*, two.
 Zweikampf, *m. s. 2* (pl. ä), duel.
 zwischen, *prep. (dat. and acc.)*, be-
 tween.

a, an, ein.

able, to be — to, können (§§ 189-191).

about, adv., etwa, ungefähr; prep., über, um (*acc.*), von (*dat.*); **news —** the elections, Nachrichten über die Wahlen; **to care —, sich kümmern um; to talk —, sprechen von; there is nothing difficult — it, es ist nichts Schwieriges darin.**

above, oben.

accent, Betonung, f. w.

according to, nach (*dat.*).

account, on — of, wegen (*gen.*); on my —, meinestwegen.

acquaintance, to make the — of, kennen lernen (*acc.*).

across, adv., quer.

action, Handlung, f. w.

adjective, Adjektiv, n. s. 2; Eigen- schaftswort, n. s. 3; **adj.,** adjektivisch.

adverb, Adverb, n. s. (*pl. -e, -en*).

after, prep., nach (*dat.*); — all, am Ende.

again, wieder.

against, gegen (*acc.*).

ago, adv., vor (*dat.*); an hour —, vor einer Stunde.

air, Luft, f. s. 2 (*pl. ü*).

all, all, ganz; — the modal auxili- aries, alle modalen Hilfsverba.

allow, to be —ed to, dürfen (§§ 189-191).

along, mit; come —, kommen Sie mit; — with, zugleich mit.

already, schon.

also, auch.

always, immer.

American, Amerikaner, m. s. 1.

among, unter (*dat.*).

and, und.

animal, Tier, n. s. 2.

another (additional), noch ein; (dif- ferent), ein anderer.

answer, beantworten, w.

any, irgend (§152); have you — money? hast du etwas Geld? — one, jemand, irgend jemand; not — thing, nichts.

appear, erscheinen, s.

article, Artikel, m. s. 1.

as, wie, als; not so good —, nicht so gut wie; as you say, wie du sagst; — if, als ob; — if any one did not, als ob nicht jeder, or wer nicht.

ashamed, to be —, sich schämen, refl. w.

ask, fragen, w.

at, an (*dat. and acc.*), um (*acc.*), zu (*dat.*); — the window, an dem Fenster; — ten o'clock, um zehn Uhr; — home; zu Hause; — your house, bei Ihnen zu Hause; — any rate, jedenfalls; — No. 2, Numero zwei; — once, sofort; — the most, höchstens.

author, Verfasser, m. s. 1.

auxiliary, Hilfsverb, n. s. (*pl. -en* or *-a*).

awake, adj., wach.

away, fort.

back, adv., zurück.

bad, schlecht.

be, sein; to — of a declension, zu einer Declination gehören; to — to do, thun sollen; to — to be explained, zu erklären sein; that is, das heißt; the form should —, die Form sollte lauten.

because, weil, sub. conj.

before, prep., vor (*dat. and acc.*); there are four days — Christmas, es sind vier Tage bis Weihnachten.

beggar, Bettler, m. s. 1.

begin, anfangen, s.

being, human —, Mensch, m. w.

believe, glauben, w.

belong, gehören, w.

below, prep., unter (*dat. and acc.*); the picture —, das Bild darunter.

best, best; this word is — translated,

dieses Wort wird am besten . . . übersetzt.

better, besser.

between, zwischen (*dat. and acc.*).

birthday, Geburtstag, m. s. 2.

book, Buch, n. s. 3.

bore, quälen, w.

both, beide; both . . . and, sowohl . . . als (auch).

box, Kasten, m. s. 1.

building, Gebäude, n. s. 1.

business, Geschäft, n. s. 2; on — of state, in Staatsgeschäften.

but, aber.

buy, kaufen, w.

by, bei (*dat.*), with the passive, von (*dat.*); — the window, am Fenster; translated —, übersetzt durch; — what tokens, an welchen Zeichen, or woran.

can, können (§§ 189-191).

care, to — about, sich kümmern, refl. w. an (*acc.*).

careful, to be —, sich hüten, refl. w.

case, Fall, m. s. 2 (*pl. ä*).

certain, gewiß; to know for —, gewiß (or sicher) wissen.

chair, Stuhl, m. s. 2 (*pl. ä*).

characteristic (of), charakteristisch (für).

cheap, billig.

chief, Haupt-; — stress, Hauptton, *m. s. 2 (pl. 5)*.

Christmas, Weihnachten, *pl.*

city, Stadt, *f. s. 2 (pl. 5)*.

claim, they — to have seen . . . , man will . . . gesehen haben.

class, Klasse, *f. w.*

clause, Satzglied, *n. s. 3*.

clock, Uhr, *f. w.*; city —, Stadtuhr.

coffee, Kaffee, *m. s. (no pl.)*.

cold, to take —, sich erkälten, *refl. w.*

combination, Verbindung, *f. w.*

come, kommen, *s.*

comfortable, bequem.

company, Gesellschaft, *f. w.*

comparative, Komparativ, *m. s. 2*, erste Steigerung, *f. w.*

compare, komparieren, vergleichen, *w.*

comparison, Komparation, Steigerung, *f. w.*

dance, tanzen, *w.*

dangerous, gefährlich.

dark, dunkel.

daughter, Tochter, *f. s. 1 (pl. 5)*.

day, Tag, *m. s. 2*.

dear, teuer.

declension, Deklination, *f. w.*

democrat, Demokrat, *m. w.*

demonstrative, Demonstrativ, *n. s. (pl. s. a or e)*.

denote, bezeichnen, *w.*

depend, abhängen, *s.*, von (*dat.*); a'n- kommen, *s.*, auf (*acc.*).

dependent, abhängig.

dictionary, Wörterbuch, *n. s. 3*.

each, jed- (§ 153).

early, früh.

either, with negatives, auch; nor I —, ich auch nicht.

election, Wahl, *f. w.*

emphatic, betont.

end, Ende, *n. m.*; to — in, enden, endigen, *w.*, au'sgehen, *s.*, auf.

ending, Endung, *f. w.*

English, englisch.

enjoy, to — one's self, sich amüsieren, *refl. w.*

enough, genug.

entire, ganz.

errand-boy, Laufbursch, *m. w.*

etymological, etymologisch.

composition, Komposition, *f. w.*

compound, Kompositum, *n. (pl. es)*.

concern, betreffen, *s.*; so far as I am —ed, was mich betrifft.

concerned, in Sorge; not —, ohne Sorge.

concert, Konzert, *n. s. 2*.

conform, sich anpassen, *refl. w. (dat.)*.

conjugation, Konjugation, *f. w.*

conjunction, Konjunktion, *f. w.*

connecting vowel, Bindevokal, *m. s. 2*.

consult, an'schlagen, *s.*, in (*dat.*).

contain, enthalten, *s.*

contrast, Gegensatz, *m. s. 2 (pl. 5)*.

correct, adj., richtig.

correspond, entsprechen, *s.*

cost, kosten, *w.*

cottage, Häuschen, *n. s. 1*.

count, rechnen, *w.*

country, Land, *n. s. 2-3*.

course, of —, natürlich.

differ, ab'weichen, *s.*

difference, Unterschied, *m. s. 2*.

different, verschieden.

difficult, schwierig.

difficulty, Schwierigkeit, *f. w.*

directly, gleich.

director, Direktor, *m. m.*

do, machen; to — an exercise, eine Aufgabe machen; that will —, das genügt; that won't —, das geht nicht.

doctor, Doktor, *m. m.*

doubt, Zweifel, *m. s. 1*; no —, wohl.

down, unten.

drawing, Zeichnung, *f. w.*

dull, langweilig.

even, sogar; — if, wenn auch, *sub. conj.*

evening, Abend, *m. s. 2*; — paper, Abendzeitung, *f. w.*

ever, jemals.

everlasting, ewig.

every, jed- (§ 153); — other day, alle zwei Tage.

example, Beispiel, *n. s. 2*.

except, prep., außer (*dat.*); — on, außer an.

exception, Ausnahme, *f. w.*

exercise, Aufgabe, *f. w.*

explain, erklären, *w.*

express, v., an'stellen, *w.*

expression, Ausdruck, *m. s. 2 (pl. 5)*.

fact, Thatfache, *f. w.*
family, Familie, *f. w.*; — festival, Familienfest, *n. s. 2*
far, weit; so — as, soweit.
fare, Rost, *f. w.* (no *pl.*).
fashion, Mode, *f. w.*; it is the —, es ist in der Mode.
fast, adj., schnell.
father, Vater, *m. s. 1* (*pl. ä*).
feel, to — concerned, in Sorge sein; the fresh air — a good, die frische Luft thut einem wohl.
fellow, Kerl, *m. s. 2*.
feminine, Femininum, *n. (pl. =a)*; adj., weiblich.
few, wenige; a —, einige.
field, Feld, *n. s. 3*.
find, finden, *s.*; to — one's self, sich befinden.

gardener, Gärtner, *m. s. 1*.
gender, Geschlecht, *n. s. 3*.
general, allgemein.
genitive, Genetiv, *m. s. 2*.
German, deutsch.
get, werden, *s.*; hosen, *w.*; where did you — that? woher haben Sie das?
girl, Mädchen, *n. s. 1*.
give, geben, *s.*; a'ngeben; — the third person, geben Sie die dritte Per-

habit, Gewohnheit, *f. w.*
half, halb; Hälfte, *f. w.*; the first —, die erste Hälfte; — past nine, halb zehn; two and a half, zwei und ein halb, or drittehalb.
hardly, kaum.
have, haben; to — to, müssen (§§ 189-191).
he, er.
head, Kopf, *m. s. 2* (*pl. ä*).
headache, Kopfschmerz, *n. s. (no pl.)*.
hear, hören, *w.*
her, acc., sie; *dat.*, ihr.
here, hier.
high, hoch (§ 109).

I, ich.
idea, Begriff, *m. s. 2*.
idiom, Idiom, *n. s.*; Sprachgebrauch, *m. s. (pl. ä)*.
if, wenn, *sub. conj.*; — whether, ob, *sub. conj.*
imitate, nachahmen, *w.*
important, wichtig.
in, in (*dat.* and *acc.*); — the coun-

fine, schön.
first, erst; in the — place, erstens.
footpad, Straßenräuber, *m. s. 1*.
for, *prep.*, für (*acc.*); — example, instance, zum Beispiel; — the present, einstweilen; to know — certain, gewiß (sicher) wissen; — *conj.*, denn.
force, Kraft, *f. s. 2* (*pl. ä*).
forget, vergessen, *s.*
form, Form, *f. w.*; bilden, *w.*; — of expression, Ausdrucksform, *weib.*
former, der erstere.
forty, vierzig.
fossil, Fossil, *n. m. s. (pl. =ten)*.
four, vier.
fresh, frisch.
friend, Freund, *m. s. 2*.
from, von (*dat.*).
further, weiter.

son (an); to — headache, Kopfschmerz machen.
glad, froh; to be —, sich freuen, *refl. w.*; I am — to hear that, ich höre das gern.
go, gehen, *s.*
good, gut; — evening, guten Abend.
govern, regieren, *w.*
grammar, Grammatik, *f. w.*
guess, raten, *s.*

him, acc., ihn; *dat.*, ihm.
himself, emphatic, selbst; *refl.*, sich.
hold, gelten, *s.*
home, adv., nach Hause.
hope, hoffen, *w.*
hot, heiß.
hour, Stunde, *f. w.*
house, Haus, *n. s. 3*; little —, Häuschen, *n. s. 1*.
how, wie; — about, wie verhält es sich mit.
however, indessen.
human being, Mensch, *m. w.*
hundred, hundert.
hurry, sich beeilen, *refl. w.*

try, auf dem Lande; — the evening, am Abend; — order to, um zu, *w. inf.*; a genitive — a, ein Genetiv auf s; — there, brennen; — view of, bei, nach (*dat.*); — other words, mit andern Worten.
indeed, in der That, allerdings; yes —, ja wohl.
indefinite, unbestimmt.

indicative, Subjektiv, *m. s. 2*; **present** —, Subjektiv des Präsens.
inflect, flektieren, *w.*
inflection, Flexion, *f. w.*
initial, anlautend.
inseparable, untrennbar.
instance, Beispiel, *n. s. 2*.
instead of, anstatt (*gen.*).
interesting, interessant.

into, in (*acc.*).
intransitive, intransitiv.
invention, Erfindung, *f. w.*
inversion, Inversion, *f. w.*
irregular, unregelmäßig.
it, es; translate by forms of *er* or *se* when referring to *maso.* or *fem.* noun.

journey, Reise, *f. w.*

just, *adv.*, nur; — ask, fragen Sie nur; — now, eben jetzt.

keep, to — awake, wach bleiben, *s.*
kind, Art, *f. w.*; what — of, was für (§ 145).
know, — to be acquainted with, ken-

nen, *w.* (§ 330); — to have learned, wissen, *w.* (§ 190).
known, bekannt; it is —, man weiß.

lack, Mangel, *m. s. 1 (pl. ä)*.
lady, Dame, *f. w.*; young —, Gön-
 lein, *n. s. 1*.
large, groß.
last, letzt, vorig; the — days, die letz-
 ten Tage; — year, voriges Jahr.
late, spät.
Latin, lateinisch.
latter, der letztere.
leaf, Blatt, *n. s. 3*.
learn, lernen, *w.*
lesson, Lektion, *f. w.*
let, translate by subj.; — us go, gehen
 wir.
lie, liegen, *s.*
life, Leben, *n. s. 1*.
light, Licht, *n. s. 3*; *adj.*, leicht.
like, *adv.*, wie.

like, gern haben; I should — com-
 pany, ich hätte gerne Gesellschaft; to —
 to do, gern thun; to — best, am lieb-
 sten haben.
line, Zeile, *f. w.*
little (size), klein; (quantity), wenig;
 a —, ein wenig.
live, leben, *w.*; — dwell, wohnen, *w.*
London, London; — weather, Lon-
 doner Wetter.
long, lang; *as adv.* lang(e).
look, to — at, betrachten, *w.*; to —
 up, nachschlagen, *s.*
love, lieben, *w.*
lovely, schön.
low, niedrig.
luck, Glück, *n. s. (no pl.)*.

majority, Mehrheit, *f. w.*
make, machen, *w.*; to — the ac-
 quaintance of, kennen lernen, *w.*; to
 — out, herausbekommen, *s.*
man (— human being), Mensch, *m.*
w.
many, viele.
mark, Mark, *f. w.*
matter, Sache, *f. w.*; what is the —
 with her? was ist ihr? was fehlt ihr?
may, mögen, dürfen (§§ 189-191).
me, *acc.*, mich; *dat.*, mir.
mean, meinen, *w.*; bedeuten, *w.*; I —,
 ich meine; the word —s, das Wort be-
 deutet.
meaning, Bedeutung, *f. w.*

meet, treffen, *s.*; I have never met the
 genitive of *es*, ich habe den Genetiv
 von *es* nie kennen gelernt.
mineral, Mineral, *n. m. (pl. sien)*.
miserable, elend.
mistake, Fehler, *m. s. 1*.
mixed, gemischt.
modal, modal.
mode, Modus, *m. (sing. indecl.; pl.*
Modi).
moment, Augenblick, *m. s. 2*; I can-
 not this —, ich kann *es* im Augenblicke
 nicht.
money, Geld, *n. s. 3*.
more, *comp.* (§§ 111-114); mehr
 (§ 158).

most, *superl.* (§§ 111-114); a — interesting city, eine höchst (äußerst) interessante Stadt; at the —, höchstens.
mother, Mutter, *f. s. 1 (pl. s.)*.
motion, Bewegung, *f. w.*
much, viel.

museum, Museum, *n. m. (pl. Museen)*.
must, müssen (§§ 189-191).
my, mein.
myself, *emphatic*, selbst; *refl., acc.* mich, *dat.* mir.

need, brauchen, *w.*
neuter, Neutrum, *n. s. (pl., Neutra)*; *adj.*, sächlich.
never, niemals.
nevertheless, trotzdem, nichtsdestoweniger.
new, neu.
newspaper, Zeitung, *f. w.*
nice, hübsch.
night, Nacht, *f. s. 2 (pl. s.)*.
nine, neun.
no, *adj.*, kein; *adv.*, nein; — worse, nicht schlechter; once and — more,

einmal und nicht wieder; — doubt one needs a long time, man braucht wohl eine lange Zeit.
nonsense, Unsinn, *m. s. (no pl.)*.
nor, noch; — I either, ich auch nicht.
normal, normal.
not, nicht; — a, kein.
nothing, nichts.
notice, bemerken, *w.*
novel, Roman, *m. s. 2*.
now, nun, jetzt; — here is something, hier ist nun etwas; — guess, raten Sie einmal, nun einmal.

occasional, gelegentlich.
occur, vorkommen, *s.*
of, usually translated by genitive; von (*dat.*), especially before proper names; the residence — Professor Schmidt, die Wohnung von Herrn Professor Schmidt; a majority of 200 votes, eine Mehrheit von 200 Stimmen; a quantity — minerals, eine Menge Mineralien; characteristic —; charakteristisch für; — course, natürlich.
offend, verstoßen, *s.*
oh, o; — that's it! ach so!
old, alt.
omit, weglassen, *s.*; with ge — ted, mit Auslassung des ge.
on, auf (*dat. and acc.*); — the side, auf der Seite; — your head, auf dem

Kopfe; — the first of May, am ersten Mai; — business of state, in Staatsgeschäften; — account of, wegen (*gen.*); — my account, meinetwegen.
once, einmal, einst; — more, wieder.
one, *adj.*, ein; *indef. pron.*, einer, man.
oneself, *refl.*, sich.
only, *adv.*, nur; (time), erst.
or, oder.
order, Folge, *f. w.*; word —, Wortfolge; in — to, um zu, *with inf.*
ordinary, gewöhnlich.
other, ander.
otherwise, sonst.
ought, I —, ich sollte (§§ 189-191).
our, unser.
outside, draußen.
over yonder, drüben, dort drüben.

pair, Paar, *n. s. 2*.
palace, Palast, *m. s. 2 (pl. s.)*.
paper, Zeitung, *f. w.*
paradigm, Parabigma, *n. m. (pl. -men)*.
park, Park, *m. s. 2 (pl. also Parks)*.
part, Teil, *m. s. 2*; (— share), *n. s. 2*.
participle, Partizip, *n. s. (pl. -s, -ien)*.
passage, Stelle, *f. w.*
past, half — nine, halb zehn.
pen-drawing, Federzeichnung, *f. w.*
people, Leute, *pl. s.*; — live, die Leute leben.
perfect, Perfekt(um), *n. s. (pl. -s)*; — participle, Partizipium Perfekti.

perhaps, vielleicht; — I ought to, ich sollte wohl.
person, Person, *f. w.*
personal, personal, Personal-.
photograph, Photographie, *f. w.*
physician, Arzt, *m. s. 2 (pl. s.)*.
picture, Bild, *n. s. 3*.
plty, it is a —, es ist schade.
place, Ort, *m. s. 2-3*; in the first —, erstens; to take —, Ra'tfinden, *s.*
play, Stück, *n. s. 2*.
pleasant, angenehm.
please, bitte.
pluperfect, Plusquamperfekt(um), *n. s. (pl. -s or -en)*; — subjunctive, Konjunktiv Plusquamperfekti.

plural, Plural, *m. s. 2.*
 pocket, Tasche, *f. w.*
 point, Punkt, *m. s. 2*; it is on the — of striking, es will eben schlagen.
 politics, Politik, *f. w.*
 poor, arm.
 position, Stellung, *f. w.*
 possible, möglich.
 praise, loben, *w.*
 pray, nur; — come along, kommen Sie nur mit; how old are you, —? wie alt sind Sie denn?
 precede, vorhergehen, *s.*
 prefix, Präfix, *n. s. 2.*
 prepare, präparieren, *w.*
 preposition, Präposition, *f. w.*
 present, Geschenk, *n. s. 2*; (tense), Präsens *n. s. (sg. incl., pl. stia)*; for the —, einstecken.

presume, I —, wohl.
 preterite, Präteritum, *n. s. (pl. -a)*; — presents, Präterito-Präsensia, *n. pl.*
 pretty, *adj.*, hübsch; *adv.*, ziemlich.
 price, Preis, *m. s. 2.*
 principal parts, Grundformen, *f. pl.*
 probable, wahrscheinlich; that is probably an invention, das mag wohl eine Erfindung . . . sein.
 professor, Professor, *m. m.*
 pronoun, Pronomen, *n. s. ; (pl. -mina).*
 pronunciation, Aussprache, *f. w.*
 put, to — into German, ins Deutsche übersetzen; to — up with, sich (etwas) gefallen lassen.

quantity, Menge, *f. w.*
 quarter, Viertel, *n. s. 1*; a — to 10, drei Viertel (auf) 10.

question, Frage, *f. w.*; it is a — of, es handelt sich um (*acc.*).
 quiet, ruhig.
 quite, ganz.

rain, regnen, *w.*
 rate, at any —, jedenfalls.
 read, lesen, *s.*; (aloud), vorlesen, *s.*
 reader, Lesebuch, *n. s. 3.*
 reading, Lektüre, *f. w.*
 ready, bereit.
 real, wirklich.
 reason, Grund, *m. s. 2 (pl. ä).*
 recognize, erkennen, *w.* (§ 330).
 refer to, sich beziehen auf, *refl. s.*
 regard (to), Rücksicht, *f. w.* (auf).
 relation, what is the — of, wie verhält sich.
 relative, Relativ, *n. s. (pl. -e or -a).*

remaining, übrig.
 remember, sich erinnern, *refl. w.* (*gen. or an w. acc.*).
 represent, darstellen, *w.*
 residence, Wohnung, *f. w.*
 respect, Hinsicht, *f. w.*
 right, richtig; — good, recht gut; — before, gerade vor.
 rogue, Schelm, *m. s. 2.*
 room, Zimmer, *n. s. 3.*
 root, Wurzel, *f. w.*; — syllable, Wurzelhafte, *f. w.*
 royal, königlich.
 rule, Regel, *f. w.*

salamander, Salamander, *m. s. 1.*
 same, the —, derselbe (§ 134).
 say, sagen, *w.*
 saying, Spruch, *m. s. 2 (pl. ä).*
 season, Jahreszeit, *f. w.*
 seat, Platz, *m. s. 2 (pl. ä)*; to take a —, Platz nehmen.
 second, der zweite; —ly, zweitens.
 section, Abschnitt, *m. s. 2.*
 see, sehen, *s.*
 seem, scheinen, *s.*
 sense, Sinn, *m. s. 2.*
 sentence, Satz, *m. s. 2 (pl. ä).*
 separable, trennbar.
 separate, trennen, *w.*
 several, mehrere (§ 158).

shall, future, werden (§ 168, 2); *modal*, sollen (§§ 180–191).
 she, sie.
 short, kurz.
 show, zeigen, *w.*
 sibilant, Sischlaut, *m. s. 2.*
 sick, krank.
 side, Seite, *f. w.*
 sight, Sehenswürdigkeit, *f. w.*
 since, *prep.*, seit (*dat.*).
 singular, Singular, *m. s. 2.*
 sir, mein Herr.
 sister, Schwester, *f. w.*
 sit, sitzen, *s.*; to — down, sich setzen, *refl. w.*
 six, sechs.

skate, Schlittschuh, *m. s. 2.*
so, so; (— accordingly, then), also;
 — far as I am concerned, was mich
 betrifft; — far as I remember, so-
 weit ich mich erinnere; — I have (in
 answers), daß habe ich auch; — very
 strange, so seltsam.
some, irgend ein, einig- (§§ 150, 152);
 — more, noch einige.
something, etwas.
sometimes, bisweilen, zuweilen.
somewhat, etwas.
son, Sohn, *m. s. 2 (pl. ð).*
soon, bald.
sorry, I am —, es thut mir leid.
sort, what — of, was für (§ 145).
speak, sprechen, *s.*
special, speciell.
spook, Geistes, *n. s. 3.*
stand, stehen, *s.*
state, Staat, *m. m.*
station, Bahnhof, *m. s. 2 (pl. ð).*
stem, Stamm, *m. s. 2 (pl. ð);* —
 -vowel, Stammvokal, *m. s. 2.*

step, treten, *s.*
still, *adv.* (time, degree), noch; (ad-
 versative) doch.
strange, sonderbar, seltsam.
stress, Ton, *m. s. 2 (pl. ð).*
strike, schlagen, *s.*
strong, stark.
student, Student, *m. w.*
subject, Subjekt, *n. s. 2.*
subjunctive, Konjunktiv, *m. s. 2.*
subordinate, subordinieren, *w.*
such, solch.
suffice, genügen, *n.*
superlative, Superlativ, *m. s. 2;*
 zweite Steigerung, *f. w.*
suppose, meinen, *w.*; — it were, ge-
 setzt (*pple.*), daß es . . . wäre.
sure, sicher; to be —, freilich, aller-
 dings; —ly, gewiß; they —ly know,
 man weiß doch wohl.
syllable, Silbe, *f. w.*
synopsis (of), Übersicht, *f. w.* (über).

take, nehmen, *s.*; to — cold, sich erkäl-
 ten, *refl. w.*; to — place, statfinden,
s.; to — a seat, Platz nehmen; to
 — umlaut, Umlaut annehmen.
talk, reden, *w.*; there is much —
 about, es wird viel geredet über.
taste, Geschmack, *m. s. 2.*
teacher, Lehrer, *m. s. 1.*
tell, sagen, *w.*
ten, zehn.
tense, Tempus, *n. s. (sing. incl., pl.*
Tempora), Zeitform, f. w.
than, als.
thank, danken, *w.*; (I) — you, danke.
that, *dem. pron.*, daß; jener (§ 129);
rel. pron., der, die, das; welcher,
 welche, welches (§§ 136 ff.); *sub. conj.*,
 daß.
the, *def. art.*, der (§ 72).
them, *dat.*, ihnen, *acc.*, sie; there are
 six of —, es giebt deren sechs.
then, denn; (*temporal*) dann.
there, dort, da; — is, — are, es giebt,
 also es ist, es sind (§ 340); in —, brin-
 gen;
they, sie; *indef.*, man.
thing, Ding, *n. s. 2;* any such — as,
 so etwas wie.
think, denken, *w.* (§ 330); to — of,
 an (*acc.*) . . . denken.
third, der dritte.
this, dies; — evening, heute abend.
thoroughly, gründlich.

though, *sub. conj.*, obgleich, obwohl;
adv., doch; wasn't it warm —, war es
 doch warm.
three, drei.
through, durch; — with, fertig mit.
ticket, Billett, *n. s. 2 (pl. -ette).*
time, (duration), Zeit, *f. w.*; (occa-
 sion), Mal, *n. s. 2;* this —, diesmal;
 what —, wie viel Uhr; once upon a
 —, einmal.
to, usually dative; zu; — the con-
 cert, ins Konzert; — London, — the
 station, nach London, nach dem Bahn-
 hofe; to step — the window, ans
 Fenster treten.
to-day, heute; —'s lesson, die heutige
 Lektion.
token, Zeichen, *n. s. 1.*
to-morrow, morgen.
to-night, heute abend.
too, zu; auch.
transition, Übergang, *n. s. 2 (pl.*
ä).
translate, übersetzen, *w.*
transpose, vertauschen, *w.*
treat, behandeln, *w.*
trouble, Mühe, *f. w.*
true, wahr.
twelve, zwölf.
twenty, zwanzig; twentieth, der zwan-
 zigste; the — first, —, der einund-
 zwanzigste.
two, zwei.

usual, *Usual*, *m. s. 2*.
under, *unter* (*dat. and acc.*).
understand, *verstehen, s.*
upon, *auf* (*dat. and acc.*); *once — a time, einmal*; — *the whole, im ganzen*.

verb, *Verbum, n. s. (pl. -a)*.
very, *sehr*; — *much (degree), sehr*;
 — *well (— all right), schon gut*; *he is doing — well, es geht ihm sehr gut*.

wait, *warten, w.*
want (— *ask, desire*), *verlangen, wünschen, w.*; (— *need*), *brauchen, w.*
warm, *warm*.
watch, *Uhr, f. w.*
way, *Weg, m. s. 2*; *in the — of, in* (*dat.*); *the — home, der Heimweg, Rückweg*.
we, *wir*.
weak, *schwach*.
weather, *Wetter, n. s. 1*.
week, *Woche, f. w.*
well, *gut*; *he has done that —, das hat er gut gemacht*; *I am doing well, ich besinde mich wohl*; *interj., nun*.
what, *inter. pron., was*; *rel. pron., welcher* (§ 144); — *sort, kind of, was für* (§ 145).
when, *inter., wann*; *sub. conj., wenn*; *you answer, the question yourself —, Sie beantworten die Frage selbst, indem*.
where, *wo*; — *lies the difficulty?* *worin liegt die Schwierigkeit?*

year, *Jahr, n. s. 2*.
yes, *ja*; — *indeed, jawohl*.
yesterday, *gestern*.
yet, *noch, doch*.
yonder, *dort*.
you, *du* (§ 303, 4); *ihr* (*pl. of du*); *Sie* (*polite address*); *acc., dich, euch*,

usage, Gebrauch, m. s. 2 (pl. -en).
use, *gebrauchen, w.* — *spend, anbringen*, (§ 330).
usual, *gewöhnlich*.

view, *in — of all that, nach alle dem*.
vote, *Stimme, f. w.*
vowel, *Vokal, m. s. 2*.
voyage, *Reise, f. w.*

whether, *sub. conj., ob*.
which, *rel. pron., der, welcher* (§ 136).
who, *inter. pron., wer*; *rel., welcher*; *he —, wer* (§ 140).
whoever, *wer auch*.
whole, *gan*.
why, *inter., warum*; *interj., doch*.
will, *future, werden* (§ 186, 2); *modal, wollen* (§§ 189-191).
window, *Fenster, n. s. 1*.
wish, *wünschen, w.*
with, *mit* (*dat.*).
withal, *bagu*.
without, *ohne* (*acc.*).
wonder, *I — whether, ich möchte wissen, ob*; *how late is it, —, wie spät ist es wohl*.
wood, *Holz, n. s. 3*.
word, *Wort, n. s. 2-3*; *word-order, Wortfolge, f. w.*
world, *Welt, f. w.*
worse, *worst, schlechter, schlechter*.
write, *schreiben, s.*

Sie; *dat., Dir, euch, Ihnen*; *indef., man*.
young, *jung*; — *lady, Fräulein, n. s. 1*.
your, *bein, euer, Ihr*.
yourself, *emphatic, selbst*; *refl.* (§§ 201, 202).

INDEX.

The numbers refer to sections. For strong verbs consult the list in § 331.

- a**, pronunciation of, 15; written instead of aa, App. I, 3, 4.
ā, pronunciation of, 22; as umlaut of aa, 85, 1, a; **Ä** and **Œ**, App. I, 3, 1.
ab, prep. 377.
aber, 379, 1; **ober aber**, 379, 3.
ablaut, 328, 2; classes, 329; in derivation, 334, 1, 286.
abstract nouns, use of art. with, 226; plu. of, 238, 1, a.
accent, 61-4; in compound verbs, 207, 4; in compound nouns, 399; in compound particles, 408.
accusative, use of, 265-9; with verbs, 265-5; cognate, 264; two objects, 265, 345, 1; adverbial, 266; absolute, 267, 269, 3; with prepositions, 268, 376, 2; with adjectives, 269; in impersonal constructions, 265, 1, 2, 263, 3.
active voice, 71, 164; with passive force after *lassen*, etc., 366, 1, a and 2, b.
address, nom. in, 243; pronouns of, 121, 301.
adjectives, inflection, 101-9, 286-9; comparison, 111-14, 292-6; derivation, 289-91; composition, 404-6; syntax, 286-96; without inflection, 101, 286, 109, 2-4; strong, 102-5; weak, 106-7; strong or weak, 288; as substantive, 108, 290; in predicate, 110, 289; irregularities of inflection, 109; of comparison, 114, 296; with gen., 252; with dat., 260; with acc., 269; with prepositions, 291; repetition necessary, 232, 2; orthography of proper adjectives, 4, 3, and App. I, 3, 13, b.
adjective clauses, 414.
adverbial clauses, 415.
adverbs, 216; classification, 371; primitive, 372; relation to adj., 373; from nouns, 374; comparison, 375; ordinal, 299, 1; relative, 316; prepositional, 376, 5, a; position of, 96, 424; combined with substantive inf., 365, 2, a; with partitive gen., 253, 3; for rel. pron., 139, 2.
After, 388, 1.
age, 234, 2.
ai, pronunciation, 27; limited use, App. I, 3, 3.
al, pl. of nouns in, 275, 4, a; neuter nouns in, 280, 2.
all, 146, 317; **alle**, 317, 1; **alles**, 317, 2; **allmo**, 316, 3.
allein, 379, 1.
allenfalls, 288, 1, a.
aller, 294, 1; **allerliebſt**, 294, 1, a.
Alphabet, German, 2; script, 7.
als, 381, 1, a; with predicate nom., 242, 2, 271; with appositive, 265, 3, 271, 1-3; with following rel., 314, 3; for **als ob**, 359, 3, a; in comparisons, 381, 1, a; omitted after *jo*, 381, 1, A.
als ob, **als wenn**, with unreal subj., 359, 3.
als wie, in comparisons, 381, 1, a.
am, with superl., 112, 294, 5; in superl. of adv., 375, 2.
an, 377.
ander, 147; **anberſ** = *else*, 253, 2, c; **anberthalb**, 118, 3, b.
angſt, 260, 2, b.
anſtatt, 377; with inf., 367, 6.
Ant, 388, 2; **Antwort**, 235, 2.
antworten, construction with, 257, 1, a.
apostrophe, in gen., 284, 1, b; cf. also App. I, 3, 14.
apposition, 270-2, 285; immediate, 270; mediate, 271; spurious, 272.
appositional, gen., 246, 4, a; predicate, 110, 1, 289, 1, 368, 2, 369, 2.
Armut, 235, 1, a.
artig, 390, 1.
article, 72-3; use, 223-32; see under *def.* and *indef.* art.
Attas, pl. of 281, 1, a.
au, pronunciation, 28.
äu, pronunciation, 31; **Ä**, not **Œ**, App. I, 3, 1.
auch, 380, 1, a, b; in *indef.* rel. clauses, 140, 2, 341, 1, m.
auf, 377; **auf baß**, 381, 1, c.
auferſtehen, 345, 1.

aufe, in superl. of adv., 112, 2, 375, 2.

aus, **außer**, **außerhalb**, 377.

auserslefen, 343, 1.

auxiliaries, of tense, 171-2; use, 168,

1-2, 323; omission, 324; periphrastic and causal, 325; modal, 188-94, 332-3; of voice, 195, 344.

ay, 29, 1.

b, pronunciation, 35; in Eng. cognates, App. II, 7, 2.

Band, pl. of, 276, a.

bange, 260, 2, b.

Bant, 275, 1, a.

bar, 390, 2.

Bau, pl. of, 275, 2, a.

be., 208, 1, a, 396, 1.

begegnen, 263, 1, b.

bei, 377.

beide, 148; **beides**, 148, 1.

bevor, 341, 1, 381, 1.

bezahlen, 263, 1, c.

binnen, 377.

biß, prep., 377; sub. conj., 381, 1.

bitten, with double object, 265, 1, a.

bleiben, with inf., 366, 3.

Boot, pl. of, 275, 3.

borrowed words, accent, 64; gender, 236; declension, 281-2.

brauchen, inf. for perf. pples., 326, 2, b.

Brett, pl. of, 276, a.

Buchstabe, gen. of, 279, 2, a.

c, pronunciation, 36; in new spelling, 36, 1, App. I, 3, 12.

capital letters, use of, 4; in pronouns of address, 301, 5; in verbal phrases, 342, 2, b and 3, a; cf. also App. I, 3, 13.

case, 70; see under nom., gen., etc.

causal clauses, dependent, 415, 5.

ch, pronunciation, 37.

ch, as intensive stem suffix, 395, 1.

-chen, 79.

Chor, gender and decl., 275, 3.

Christian names, pl. of, 284, 3, b.

chß, pronunciation of, 37, 5.

ç, 2, 2; pronunciation of, 36, 2.

cognates, Eng. and Ger., 1, 2, and App. II.

collective nouns, congruence of verb with, 346, 1.

comma, use of, 6.

comparative clauses, 415, 7.

comparison of adjectives, 111-14, 292-6; of adverbs, 216, 2, 375.

composition of nouns, 399-403; adjectives, 404-6; verbs, 206-14, 341-3; particles, 63, 1, 408.

concessive clauses, 415, 4.

conditional mode, 169, 3, 362.

conditional sentences, 359, 415, 3.

conjugation, 171-93, 323-31; **weak**, 174-8; **strong**, 179-85, 328; **mixed**, 186.

conjunctions, 218, 378-81; **general connectives**, 379; **adverbial**, 380; **subordinating**, 381, 415.

connecting vowel, use of, 169, 176, 327; **dropped in strong verbs**, 183.

consecutive clauses, 415, 9.

consonants, classification, 33; **pronunciation**, 34-60; **representation in Eng. cognates**, App. II.

d, pronunciation, 38; in Eng. cognates, App. II, 8, 2.

da(r), in compounds, with prep., 122, 2, 132, 310, 413, 1, c, 367, 6, a; with verb, 341, 1.

da, added to rel., 316, 2; with rel. force, 316, 3; as sub. conj., 381, 1, b.

damit, 381, 1, c.

daß, as absolute subject, 131, 1; referring to persons, 309, 4; for *was* referring to sentence, 315, 2.

daß, 381, 1, d; omission of, 360, a.

dative, formation, 77, 2, 81, 2, 84, 2, 89, 94; meaning, 70, 256; use, 256-62; with verbs, sole object, 257; secondary object, 258; of interest, 259; ethical, 259, 4; with adjectives, 260; with

nouns, 261; with interjections, 261, 1, a; with prepositions, 376, 3, 4; = **possessive**, 227, a, 259, 1, a; with *von* = **Danfen**, 257, 1, a. [gen., 247, etc, 387, 1.

declension, 66; of articles, 72-3; nouns, 76-100, 273-85; foreign nouns, 281-2; proper names, 99-100, 284-5; adjectives, 101-18, 286-8; of pronouns, 120-63.

definite article, 72; use, 223-32; **contractions**, 223; omission, 224; use with proper names, 225; generic, 226; = **possessive**, 227; **distributive**, 228; in phrases, 229; **repetition**, 232.

demonstratives, 129-35, 309-11; = **personal pron.**, 122, 2, a.

Denkmal, pl. of, 276, *a*.
benn = *for*, 379, 2; = *then*, 380, 1; = *than*, 381, 1, *a*; with concessive subj., 386, 1, *a*.
denominative verbs, 394.
dependent clauses, 413-15.
dependent order; see *word-order*.
der, art., 72; dem., 129, 181, 309; rel., 186, 188, 314.
derivation, 384-98; general principles of, 384; nouns, 385-8; adjectives, 389-91; verbs, 392-6; pronouns and particles, 397-8; see further under *composition*.
derjenige, 123, 311.
derer, 309, 2.
Derø, 309, 5.
derfelbe, 124, 311, 1, 397.
des, 309, 1, *a*.
deshalb, **deswegen**, 132, 1.
desto, 381, 1, *f*.

e, pronunciation, 16; dropped in inflection of adjectives in *el*, *en*, *er*, 287; dropped in comparison, 113, 3, 292, 2; use as connecting vowel, 176, 183, 327.
er, as nominal suffix, 387, 2; in adverbs, 373, 3; omission of, in *inv.*, 153, 2, 327, 3 and 2, *a*.
ebe, **eber**, 296, 3.
el, pronunciation, 29.
el, 93, 387, 3.
ein, indef. art., 73; num., 116, 297; pron., 116, 1, 149, 1, 318.
einander, 304, 2.
einig, 150, 319.
eins, 297, 318, 1 and 1, *a*.
einsundderfelbe, 311, 1, *c*.
einsverleiben, 348, 1.
eitel, 286, 5.
effeln, 263, 1, *b*. [395, 2.
el, nouns in, 79, 387, 4; as verbal suffix, 396, 2, *c*.
en, nouns in, 79; as adjective suffix, 390, 3; as verbal suffix, 392, 1; in sing. of weak feminines, 277, 1.
ens, in gen., 97, 2, 279, 2; in ordinal adverbs, 299, 1; in absolute superlatives, 375, 2, *a*.

f, pronunciation, 39; in Eng. cognates, App. II, 7, 3.
fach, 299, 1, 390, 6.
factitive verbs, 393, 1; factitive object, 263, *a*, 264, 1; predicate, 110, 1, *b*.
fahren, with *inf.*, 366, 4.
fällig, **fältig**, 390, 7.

determinatives, 129, 123-5, 311.
dialects, 8, 221; loss of pret. in, 351, 1, *c*.
dies, inflection, 129; use, 129; absolute subject, 130, 2.
dieweil, derivation, 408, 2.
diesseits, 377.
digraphs, 2, 2.
diminutives, 118, 3, *b*.
diminutive suffixes, 79, 387, 4, 395, 2.
Ding, pl. of, 276, *a*.
diphthongs, 2, 2, 26-31.
doch, 280, 1, *a*, *c*.
Dorn, pl. of, 279, 1, *a*.
Druck, pl. of, 275, 2, *a*.
du, orthography, 4, 2, 301, 5; use in address, 301, *a*, 1; declension, 120.
dünfen, 263, 1, *b*, 330, *a*.
durch, as prep., 377; as prefix, 212, 341, 3.
dürfen, 188, 189, 191, 1, 323.
Dutch, relation to German, 1, 1, App. II, 3.

entr, 208, 1, *b*, 396, 2.
entgegen, 377.
entlassen, 249, 2, *a*.
entweder, 379, 3.
er, inflection, 120; use *n* address, 301, 2.
er, 208, 1, *c*, 396, 3.
er, nouns in, 79, 387, 5; adjectives in, 390, 4; as verbal suffix, 395, 3.
erei, 387, 3.
erinnern, 249, 3, *a*.
erlei, 299, 1, 390, 5.
ern, weak verbs in, 177; as adjective suffix, 390, 3.
erß, 114, 5, 296, 3.
erß, 388, 3, 391, 1.
es, special uses of, 122, 3, 303; omission with impersonal verbs, 304, 2; as gen., 252, 1, *a*, 265, 1, *d*, 300, 2.
etlich, 150, 319, 1, *a*.
etwas, 151; with *adj.*, 105, 2, 253, 2, *a*; as *adv.*, 320, 1.
eu, pronunciation, 30; for *ie* in archaic verb forms, 328, 3, *a*.
exclamation, nom. in, 243; gen. in, 255; dat. in, 261, 1, *a*; *inf.* in, 367, 7.
exclamatory sentences, 410, 1, 420, 2.
ev, 29, 1.

fast, **fest**, 373, 3.
feld, **weisen**, 279, 2, *a*.
feminine nouns, uninflected in sing., 77, 1; exception, 277, 1; with *ss* in compounds, 400, 2, *a*.
final clauses, 415, 8.
finden, with *inf.*, 366, 3.

Stoß, pl. of, 275, 3.

fragen, 265, 1, a.

Fräulein, gender, 233, 2, a; with name, 235, 1, b.

frei, 252, 1, b.

fühlen, with inf., 366, 2 and 2, b.

g, pronunciation, 40; in Eng. cognates, App. II, 9, 2.

gan, uninflected, 109, 3.

Ge-, as prefix of nouns, 388, 4; of adjectives, 391, 2; of verbs, 396, 4; as augment of pple., 167, 1, 326.

geboren, 344, 2.

gegen, gen, 341, 1, 377.

gegenüber, 377.

Gehalt, pl. of, 276, a.

gehen, with inf., 366, 4, 369, 5.

Gehim(er)rat, inflection, 401, a.

gemäß, 377.

gender, 69; determination of, 75; rules for, 233-7; by meaning, 233; by form, 234; in compounds, 235; in borrowed words, 236; variable, 237.

genitive, formation of, 80, 84, 1, 89, 94, 97, 2, 99, 1, 100, 1; use, 245-55; with nouns, 246; with verbs, sole object, 248; with verbs, secondary object, 249;

für, 377; with verbs of regarding, 265, 3, c.

Fürst, 278, 1, b.

future, 168, 353; present used for, 249, 1; not expressed by wollen, 338, 3, a.

future perfect, 168, 353.

partitive gen., with verbs, 250; with adjectives, pronouns and adverbs, 253; adverbial (place, time, manner), 251, 374; with adjectives, 252; in exclamations, 255; with prepositions, 376, 5; substitutes for, 100, 1, 247.

German language, relation to Eng., 1 and App. II; historical periods, 220; literary language and dialects, 221; good German, 8, 222.

Germanic languages, App. II, 3; shifting of consonants in, App. II, 5.

gern, comparison of, 375, 1.

gerundive, 370.

Gesicht, pl. of, 276, a.

gibt (es giebt), 263, 3, a, 303, 1, a, 340.

glauben, 257, 1, a.

-gleichen, 127, 2, 132, 2, 306, 2.

Grimm's Law, App. II, 6, 1, a.

Gunst, zu Gunsten, 275, 1, a.

h, pronunciation, 41; in Eng. cognates, App. II, 9, 3.

haben, conjugation, 171-2; use as aux., 168, 1, 323, 201, 1; impersonal use of, 263, 3, a, 303, 1, a; with inf., 366, 3 and 7.

-haft, 390, 8.

halb, uninflected, 109, 3; halber, 289, 2, b.

-halb, -halben, -halber, 127, 306, 1, 377.

-halb, in diminutives, 118, 3, b.

Hand, 240, 1; zu Handen, vorhanden, etc., 275, 1, a.

Haupt, pl. of, 276, a.

heißen, perf. pple. of, 326, 2, b; with dat., 265, 1, b; with inf., 366, 2 and 2, a; with predicate inf., 366, 5; with predicate, perf. pple., 369, 6.

-heit, 93, 387, 6.

helfen, with acc., 263, 1, b; perf. pple. of, 326, 1, b; with inf., 366, 2 and 2, a.

her, 210, 2.

Herr, pl. of, 94, 1; as title, 278, 1, b; once used in address, 301, 2.

Herr, 97, 2, a.

hier, 132, a.

High German, 220; High German shifting of consonants, App. II, 6.

hin, 210, 2.

hinter, as prep., 377; as prefix, 212, 1.

hoch, 109, 1, 114, 2.

Hohepriester, Hohelied, inflection, 401, a.

hören, use of inf. for perf. pple., 188, 3, a, 326, 2, b; with inf., 366, 2 and 2, b.

hundert, 115, 1, 297, 4.

hyphen, use of, 6, 400, 4.

i, pronunciation, 17; never doubled, 14, 1, a.

ich, inflection, 120; omission, 302, 3.

-icht, 387, 7, 390, 9.

ie, pronunciation, 17, 2.

-ie, nouns in, 93, 2.

-ieren, verbs in, 174, 1, a, 326, 2, a, 395, 4.

-ig, as suffix of adjectives, 390, 10; of verbs, 395, 5.

ih, in address, 301, 1; omission of, 302, 2, 363, 1.

Ihro, 308, 1.

immer, in indef. rel. clauses, 140, 2, 381, 1, m.

imperative, 71; tenses of, 168, 4; omission of e in, 327, 2; use of, 363; substitutes for, 363, 3; passive inv. with sein, 344, 1.

impersonal verbs, 204-5, 339-40; with

mehrer, 158, 319, 3.
meiner, comparative of *mein*, 308, 2.
meiB, **meiBend**, 295, 3.
Middle German, 220, 2.
miB, 212, 2, 388, 5.
mit, 377.
mittels, **mittelf**, 377.
mittler, 296, 2. [conjugation, 186.
mixed declension, 76, 3, 97-8, 279-80;

n, pronunciation, 46; in cognates, App. II, 10.

nach, **nachst**, 377.
nachahmen, 263, 1, c.
Nacht, **nachts**, 275, 1, a.
neben, **nebst**, 377.
negation, double, 410, b; pleonastic, 410, 1, c.
nennen, construction with, 265, 2.
-ner, 387, 5.
ng, pronunciation, 47.
nicht, with *gen.*, 320, 2; pleonastic use of, 410, 1, c.
nichts, 159, 320, 2; with *adj.*, 105, 2, 253, 2, a.
niemand, 160, 321, 2.

o, pronunciation, 18.

ö, pronunciation, 28.

ob, prep., 377; sub. conj., 381, 1; als *ob*, 359, 3 and 3, a.

obgleich, **obichon**, **obwohl**, 381, 1, g.

oberhalb, 377.

object-clauses, 360, 361, 413.

p, pronunciation, 48; in Eng. cognates, App. II, 7, 1.

paar, **Paar**, 319, 1.

Parf, pl., 275, 2, a.

participle, 71, 167; used as *adj.*, 101, 3; when compared, 292, 1; syntax of, 368-70; pres. pple., 368; perf. pple., 369; gerundive, 370.

passive, 195-9, 344-5; conjugation, 196; impersonal use of, 198, 345, 2; substitutes for, 199; formed with *sein*, 344, 1.

perfect, 168, 349, 3; use of, 351.

person, congruence of verb in, 347.

persons, names of, 99, 284-5.

personal pronouns, 120, 300-4; omission of, 302; place taken by man, 321, 1; adjective after, 105, 4, 288, 4.

pf, pronunciation, 49; in cognates, App. II, 7, 1, a.

pfege, construction with, 248, 1, a.

ph, pronunciation, 48, 1; use in new spelling, App. I, 3, 8.

modal auxiliaries, 188-94, 332-38, 326, 2, b.

modes, 71, 165; use of, 354-63.

mögen, 188-9, 191, 3, 193, 2, 335.

Wort, pl. of, 275, 2, a.

multiplicatives, 299, 1.

-mut, in compounds, 285, 1.

müssen, 188-9, 191, 4, 336.

-nis, 83, 85, 2, 237, 2, a, (1), 387, 10.

noch, 380, 1, e.

nominate, 241-4; as subject, 241; as predicate, 242; in address, 243; absolute, 244.

normal order, see under word-order.

nouns, 74-100, 278-85.

number, of nouns, 69, 238-40; plu. or sing. lacking, 238; redundant plu., 239; sing. for plu., 240; congruence of verb in, 346; see under plu. and sing.
numerals, 115-18, 297-99; cardinals, 115-7, 297; ordinals, 118; with part, *gen.*, 253, 1; derivatives, 118, 299.

nun, 380, 1, f, g.

nur, in relative clauses, 140, 2, 381, 1, m.

ober, 379, 3.

ohne, 377; with *inf.*, 367, 6.

Old German, 220, 1.

-or, nouns in, 97, 3, 279, 3.

Ort, pl. of, 275, 2, a.

Orthography, 3, and Appendix I.

plural, of nouns, formation, 81, 85, 90, 94, 97; lacking, 238; redundant, 239; sing. used for, 240; umlaut in, 274, 1, 275, 1, 2, 3, 4, a, 276; double plurals, 274-6; of abstracts, 238, 1, a; pl. verb with sing. subject, 346, a.

possessives, 125-8, 305-8; strong forms, 125; weak, 126; compounds, 127, 306; congruence, 128; ambiguous, 307, 1; postpositive, 308; repetition, 282, 2.

predicate, nom., 242; after *lassen* with *inf.*, 366, 1, a; appositive, 271, 368, 2, 369, 2; predicate *adj.*, 110, 289; *inf.*, 366, 5.

prefixes, inseparable, 208, 396; separable, 210, 341-3; doubtful, 212, 341, 3; of derivation, 384, 2, 388, 391.

preposition, 217, 376-7; with *gen.*, *dat.*, etc., 376; list, 377.

present, 168; use, 349.

preterite, 168; use, 350; **pret.-pres. verbs**, 188.

- pronouns**, 119-63, 300-22; see under
personal, relative, etc.
pronunciation, 8-64; standard of, 8.
- q, qu**, pronunciation, 50.
quantity of vowels, 14.
- r**, pronunciation, 51; in cognates, App. II, 10
reciprocal pronoun, 123, 3, 304, 2.
reflexive pronoun, 123, 201, 304; verbs, 201-3; with gen., 249, 3.
reiten, with inf., 366, 4.
relative pronoun, 136-41, 314-16; substitutes for, 139; never omitted, 137, 1; compound, 314, 2; adverbs, 316; clauses, 137, 413-14; comparison, 294, 375, 2.
roots, 384, 2.
rufen, 263, 1, c.
- s**, pronunciation, 52; *s, ſ, ſſ, ß*, App. II, 8, 1, a.
ſ, as plural-sign, 282, 284, 3; as adverbial suffix, 374, a.
ſagen, construction after, 258, 1, a.
ſal, 83, 234, 3, a, 387, 11.
ſam, 390, 15.
ſamt, 377.
ſch, pronunciation, 53; in Eng. cognates, App. II, 8, 4, a, 9, 1, a.
ſchaft, 93, 387, 12.
ſchild, pl. of, 276, a.
ſchmeiſſeln, 263, 1, b.
ſchmuck, pl. of, 275, 2, a.
ſchon, 372, 1; relation to *ſchön*, 373, 3.
script, German, 7, App. III.
ſehen, with inf., 366, 2 and 2, b; perf. ppl. of, 326, 2, b.
ſehr, comparison, 375, 1.
ſein, verb, 171-2; use of as aux. of tense, 323; of voice, 195, 1, 2, 344; with predicate inf., 366, 5.
ſein, poss., 128, 2, 307; *ſeiner Zeit*, 307, 2, a.
ſeit, 377; as subj. conj., 381, 1.
ſeitens, 376, 5, a.
ſeits, 306, 3.
ſelb, *ſelbender*, 299, 2.
ſelber, *ſelb*, 124, 289, 2, b, 304, 3, 311, 3, 397, 1.
ſellig, 390, 16.
sentences, 409-12; dependent clauses, 412-15.
separable prefixes, 206-7, 210-11, 341-3.
sequence of tenses, 361.
ſich, 304; orthography, 4, 2; in subordinate clause, 304, 1; as reciprocal, 123, 3, 304, 2.
ſie, 381, 3, 4, 5; with *imv.*, 172, 3.
- singular**, for plural, 240; with more than one subject, 346, 3.
ſo, as resuming particle, 200, 2, 380, 1, h; as subj. conj., 381, 1, h; as rel., 316, 1; *ſo ein*, 135, 1, a; *ſo etwas*, 151, 1.
ſolch, 135, 311, 2; inflection, 135, 1.
ſollen, 188-9, 191, 5, 387.
ſonder, 377.
ſondern, 379, 1.
ſporn, pl. of, 279, 1, a.
ſpotten, 248, 1, a.
ſſ, see under *i*.
ſtatt, 377; with inf., 367, 6.
ſtehen, with inf., 366, 3.
ſterben, with gen., 248, 1, b.
strong declension, of nouns, 273, 78-6, 274-6; first class, 79-82, 274; second class, 83-6, 275; third class, 88-91, 276; of adjectives, 102-5.
strong conjugation, 328, 174, 179-85; list of strong verbs, 331.
subject accusative with inf., 367, 3, a.
subjunctive, 71, 172; use of, 355-61; kinds of, 355; imperative, 356; concessive, 356, 1; optative, 357; potential, 358; diplomatic, 358, 1; dubitative, 358, 2; unreal, 359; dependent, 360, for conditional, 362, 1.
substantive adjective, 108, 290, 2; inf., 365; clauses, 413.
suffixes, in general, 384; of nouns, 387; of adjectives, 390; of verbs, 395; of adverbs, 374.
superlative, 111-14, 294-6; predicate superl., with *am*, 112, 294, 5; uninflected superl. as adv., 111, 4, a, 373, 2, b, 375, 3; of adverb, 112, 2, 113, 1, 375.
syllabication, 5.
syllables, open and closed, 14, 2, a.

t, pronunciation, 54; in cognates, App. II, 5, 1.
Teil, gender, 235, 3.
teils, 206, 3.
teil, 118, 3.
temporal clauses, 415, 2.
Tenor, pl. of, 275, 4, a, 279, 3, a.
tenses, 168; use of, 248-53; progressive tense forms lacking in Ger., 248, 1; sequence of, 261.
th, pronunciation, 55; limited use of, in new spelling, App. I, 8, 10.
thun, as aux., 226.

u, pronunciation, 17.
ü, 2, 2; pronunciation, 24.
über, 277.
um, as prep., 277; as doubtful prefix, 212, 241, 3; with inf., 267, 1, a, 5, b.
um . . . wissen, 127, 277.
um, Latin nouns in, 280, 2.
umlaut, nature of, 21; how written, 21, 1; as sign of plu., 81, 1, 274, 1, 85, 1, 275, 1, 2, 90, 276; in comparison, 111, 292; caused by suffix, 272, 3, 284, 2, 287, 289, 2; in pres. of strong verbs, 192, 228, 3; in pret. subj. of strong verbs, 179, 228, 4, a; as a factor in derivation, 284, 2.

u, pronunciation, 57; in cognates, App. II, 7, 4.
ver-, 208, 1, c, 296, 5.
verb, 71, 164-215, 228-70; see voice, mode, etc.; irregular strong verbs, 185; list of strong verbs, 231; irregular weak verbs, 230; verbs with gen., 248-50; with dat., 257-8; with acc., 262-5.
verloren gehen, 269, 5.
vermöge, 277.
verfichern, 249, 1, a, 263, 1, a.
viele, 161, 222; vieles = vielerlei, 222, 2.

w, pronunciation, 58; in cognates, App. II, 10.
Wagen, pl. of, 274, 1, a.
während, 277, 281, 1.
wann, 281, 1, i, m.
warten, 248, 1, a.
wärts, 272, 2, a.
was, inter., 143, 212; as rel., 141, 215; as indef., 162, 220; = warum, 212, 3.
was für, 145, 213.
weak declension, of nouns, 273, 76, 2, 92-5, 277-8; of adjectives, 106-7, 238.
weak verbs, 174, 175-8; use of connect-

ive, expression of, 229; gen. of, 251, 2; acc. of, 266, 2.
titles, 217, 1; inflection of, 276, 1, b; in connection with names, 285; sing. title with plural verb, 246, a.
Tob, pl. of, 275, 2, a.
transitive verbs, 164, 1; inflected with haben, 222; compounds, 262, 2.
trigraphs, 2, 2 and 2, a.
troß, 277.
Tuch, pl. of, 276, a.
tum, 28, 224, 2, a, 287, 12. [58.
u, 2, 2 and App. II, 8, 1; pronunciation,

un-, accent of words in, 62, 3, 238, 6, 291, 3.
unangesehen, 277.
und, with inversion, 279, 4.
unbeschadet, 277.
unfern, unweit, 276, 5, b.
ungeachtet, 277.
-ung, 28, 287, 14.
unter, as prep., 277; as doubtful prefix, 212, 241, 3.
unterhalb, 277.
ur-, 238, 7, 291, 4.
-us, Lat. nouns in, with pl. in -en, 281, 1, a; pl. of proper names in, 284, 3, d.

voice, active and passive, 71, 164, 244-5.
voll-, 212, 2; voller, 289, 2, b.
von, 277; with dat. as substitute for gen., 247; with passive verbs, 197; gen. of names in, 285, 3, a.
vor, 277.
vowels, 11-25; quantity of, 14; modification (umlaut), 21.
vowel-change in strong verbs, in pres., 179, 182, 228, 3 and 3, a; in pret. (ablaut), 179-80, 228-9.

ing vowel in, 176, 227; in -eln and -ern, 177; irregular weak verbs, 230.
wegen, 277; wegen, 127, 206, 1.
Zeithnachten, 275, a.
weil, 281, 1, j.
weisse, 251, 3, a, 274, 2.
weich, rel., 136, 139; inter., 144, 213; indef., 162, 219, 1, a; derivation, 297, 2.
wenig, 163, 222.
wenn, 281, 1, k, 259, 259, 3, a.
wer, inter., 142-4, 212; rel., 140, 215; indef., 162.
werden, conjugation, 171; use as aux. of tense, 168; of voice, 195, 1, 2, 244; of

- conditional, 168; *warb* and *murbe*, 328, 4; *worben*, 326, 2, c.
wes, 143, 1, a, 312, 1, 315, 3.
wes-, 139, 1.
wider, 212, 1, 377.
wie, 242, 2, 271, 2, 265, 3, a, 381, 1, l, m.
wieder, 214, 1, 341, 3.
wiffen, 188, 190.
wo, 381, 1, m, 316; *wo(r)-*, 139.
wohl, 372, 1, 375, 1, 380, 1, g.
wollen, 188-9, 191, 6, 338, 344, 1.
 word-formation, 384-98; see under derivation and composition.
- word-order*, 87, 96, 142, 173, 187, 194, 215, 416-426; the normal order, 416, 1, a, 417; the inverted order, 416, 1, a, 418; the interrogative order, 416, 2, 419; the dependent order, 416, 3, 420; position of adjuncts, 421, 6; of the noun, 421; of the verb, 422; of objects, 423; of adverbs, 424; of dependent infinitives, 425; of dependent clauses, 426.
Wort, pl. of 276, a.
Wunder, *es* nimmt mich, 265, 1, d; *was* Wunder, 252, 2, b.
- z*, pronunciation, 59.
- z*, pronunciation, 60; in cognates, App. II, 8, 1.
-zen, in verbs, 395, 6.
zer-, 208, f, 396, 5.
zu, 377; with inf., 364, 367; position in inf. of compounds, 207, 2; with dat.
- for predicate, nom., 242, 1, b; forming gerundive, 367, 4, 370; with dat. after verbs of making, etc., 265, 2, a.
zwischen, 297, 1, a.
zwischen, 377.
zwo, *zwote*, 297, 1, a.

1

2

DEUTSCHE GEDICHTE.

WITH INTRODUCTION AND NOTES BY

CAMILLO VON KLENZE,

Instructor in Chicago University.

xiv + 331 pp. 16mo. 90 cents. Postage 8 cents.

An attractive and reasonably full collection, prepared expressly for school and college use, of German ballads and lyrics of the first order, to which are added a few student and popular songs. About fifty poets are represented.

The introduction sketches the growth of ballad and lyric poetry in Germany, and touches on the relation of German poetry to antecedent and contemporary poetry of other nations. The most notable composers who have set the selections in this book to music are named in connection with each piece. To make room for as many poems as possible, the notes are confined to indicating the place of the selections in the life and work of the respective poets, and explaining obscurities and real difficulties in the text.

Willard Humphreys, Professor in Princeton College:—The selection of German poems by von Klenze I am much pleased with, and shall probably order some copies next autumn for my classes.

H. H. Boyesen, Professor in Columbia College:—An admirable collection of German lyrics, well adapted for the use of college classes. The biographical and critical notes are of the right kind, lucid, scholarly, and instructive; and the poems are selected with good judgment.

George T. Files, Professor in Bowdoin College:—It seems to me we have long since felt the need of some volume of selected poems, such as just issued—complete enough to offer a good variety, and yet compact and easy to handle.

J. T. Hatfield, Professor in Northwestern University, Ill.:—A delightful book, worth its weight in gold.

R. W. Moore, Professor in Colgate University:—Just such a book as I have been wanting for a long time. The selection of the poems is most satisfactory, the introduction gives the student a clear idea of the relation the various lyric poets hold to one another and to literature in general, and the notes give enough information about the particular poems to help the reader appreciate the circumstances under which they were written. I am especially pleased with the constant attention paid to the relation between the poems and the music to which they have been set.

Charles Bundy Wilson, Professor in University of Iowa:—A gem. The selections are wisely made, and the notes are interesting and scholarly.

Isabella Watson, Instructor in Carleton College, Minn.:—I like von Klenze's selection very much, and think it a beautiful little book.

HENRY HOLT & CO., 29 West 23d Street, New York.

GERMAN TEXT-BOOKS

PUBLISHED BY

HENRY HOLT & CO., NEW YORK.

*These books (excepting texts) are bound in cloth unless otherwise indicated.
Postage ten per cent additional.*

Grammars and Readers.

Blackwell's (J. S.) German Prefixes and Suffixes. 16mo. 137 pp.	\$0 60
Bronson's (T. B.) Easy German Prose. (Stories by Hauff, Andersen and Grimm, and Poems.) 16mo. 597 pp.	1 25
Harris' (Chas.) German Reader. 12mo. 360 pp. (Aug. '95).	
Jagemann's (H. C. G. von) Elements of German Syntax. 12mo. 170 pp.	80
Joynes-Otto (The) First Book in German. 12mo. 116 pp. Boards.	30
— Introductory German Lessons. 12mo. 252 pp.	75
— Introductory German Reader. 12mo. 282 pp.	95
Klemm's (L. R.) Lese-und Sprachbücher. 12mo.	
Kreis I. Bds. 79 pp.	25
“ II. Bds. 81 pp.	30
“ “ (Vocab.) 104 pp.	35
“ III. Bds. 110 pp.	35
“ “ (Vocab.) 146 pp.	40
Kreis IV. Bds. 151 pp.	40
“ V. Bds. 164 pp.	45
“ VI. Bds. 188 pp.	50
“ VII. Bds. 260 pp.	60
See also <i>Histories of German Literature.</i>	
Otis' (C. P.) Elementary German. Edited by H. S. WHITE of Cornell. <i>New edition</i> , revised by W. H. CARRUTH of the University of Kansas. 16mo. 477 pp. (<i>The Roman-type edition sent only when specially ordered.</i> 80c.)	80
— Introduction to Middle High German. With selections from the <i>Nibelungen Lied</i> , notes and vocabulary. 8vo. 156 pp.	1 00
Otto's (E.) German Conversation-Grammar. Revised and in part rewritten by WM. COOK. 12mo. Half roan.	1 30
— Elementary German Grammar. 12mo. 315 pp.	80
— Progressive German Reader. Edited by Prof. E. P. EVANS. 12mo. 239 pp. Half roan.	1 10
Storme's (G.) Easy German Reading. 16mo. 256 pp.	75
Thomas' (Calvin) German Grammar. 12mo. 411 pp. (Aug. '95).	
Whitney's (W. D.) Compendious German Grammar. 12mo. 472 pp. Half roan.	1 30
— Brief German Grammar, based on the author's "Compendious German Grammar." 16mo. 143 pp.	60
— German Reader. 12mo. 523 pp.	1 50
— Introductory German Reader. 16mo. 399 pp.	1 00

Henry Holt & Co.'s German Text-Books.

Whitney-Klemm German by Practice. 12mo. 305 pp.....	\$0 90
— Elementary German Reader. 12mo. 237 pp.....	80

Dictionary.

Whitney's (W. D.) Compendious German Dictionary. (German-English and English-German.) 8vo. 900 pp.....	2 00
---	------

Grammars and Readers entirely in German.

Fischer's (A. A.) Elementary Progressive German Reader. 12mo. 126 pp.....	70
Schrakamp (J.) and Van Daell's (A. N.) Das deutsche Buch. Consists chiefly of short easy extracts from good literature. Illustrated. 12mo. 156 pp....	65
Spanhoofd's (A. W.) Das Wesentliche der deutschen Grammatik. 16mo. 187 pp.....	60
Wenckebach's (C. & H.) Deutsches Lesebuch, for schools and colleges. 12mo. 361 pp.	80
Wenckebach (C.) and Schrakamp's (J.) Deutsche Grammatik für Amerikaner. Can be used with beginners. 12mo. 298 pp.	1 00

Composition and Conversation.

 *See also Natural Method.*

B onson's (T. B.) Colloquial German, with or without a Teacher. With summary of grammar. 16mo. 147 pp.....	65
Fischer's (A. A.) Practical Lessons in German. Can be used by beginners. 12mo. 156 pp.....	75
— Wildermuth's Einsiedler im Walde. Arranged as a basis for conversations. 12mo. 115 pp.....	65
— Hillern's Höher als die Kirche. Mit Wörterklärung. 12mo. 96 pp.....	60
Huss' (H. C. O.) Conversation in German. 12mo. 224 pp.....	1 10
Jagemann's (H. C. G. von) German Composition. Selections from half a page to several pages. Vocab. 12mo. 245 pp.	90
Keetels' (J. G.) Oral Method with German. 12mo. 371 pp.....	1 30
Joyne-Otto (The) Translating English into German. Ed. by Profs. RHODES MASSIE and E. S. JOYNES. 12mo. 167 pp.	80
Fylodet's (L.) German Conversation. 18mo. 279 pp.....	50
Sprechen Sie Deutsch? 18mo. 147 pp. Boards.....	40
Teusler's (F. J.) Gains for German Conversation. Cards in box..	80
Wenckebach's (C. & H.) Deutscher Anschauungs-Unterricht. Conversation and some Composition. 12mo. 451 pp.....	1 10
Williams' (A.) German Conversation and Composition. 12mo. 147 pp.....	80

Postage 10 per cent additional. A complete catalogue of Henry Holt & Co.'s educational publications or a list of their works in general literature will be sent on application.

Henry Holt & Co.'s German Text-Books.

Natural Method.

Heness' (G.) Der neue Leitfaden. Beim Unterricht in der deutschen Sprache. 12mo. 402 pp.	\$1 20
— Der Sprechlehrer unter seinen Schülern. 12mo. 187 pp.	1 10
Kaiser's (H. C.) Erstes Lehrbuch. 12mo. 128 pp.	65
Stern's (S. M.) Studien und Plaudereien. <i>I. Series. New Edition.</i> 12mo. 262 pp.	1 10
Stern's (S. M. & M.) Studien und Plaudereien. <i>II. Series.</i> 12mo. 380 pp.	1 20

Histories of German Literature.

Francke's (Kuno) German Literature in its Chief Epochs. A brief account in English. 16mo. (Oct. '95.) pp.	
Klemm's (L. R.) Abriss der Geschichte der deutschen Literatur. 12mo. 395 pp.	1 20
Gostwick (J.) and Harrison's (R.) German Literature. (In English.) Large 12mo. 600 pp.	2 00

Texts.

(Bound in boards unless otherwise indicated.)

Andersen's Bilderbuch ohne Bilder. Vocab. (SIMONSON.) 104 pp.	30
— Die Eisjungfrau u. andere Geschichten. (KRAUSS.) 150 pp.	30
— Ein Besuch bei Charles Dickens. (BERNHARDT.) With portraits. 62 pp.	25
— See <i>Bronson's Easy German under Grammars and Readers.</i>	
Auerbach's Auf Wache; with Roquette's Der gefrorene Kuss. (MACDONNELL.) 126 pp.	35
Baumbach's Frau Holde. Legend in verse. (FOSSLER.) 105 pp.	25
Benedix's Doctor Wespe. Comedy. 116 pp.	25
— Der Dritte. Comedy. (WHITNEY.) 29 pp.	20
— Der Weiberfeind. Comedy. Bound with Elz's Er ist nicht eifersüchtig and Müllers Im Wartesalon erster Klasse. With notes. 82 pp.	30
— Eigensinn. Farce. Bound with Wilhelm's Einer muss heirathen. With notes. 63 pp.	25
Beresford-Webb's German Historical Reader. Events previous to XIX. century. Selections from German historians. 310 pp. Cloth.	90
Carové's Das Maerchen ohne Ende. With notes. 45 pp. Paper	20
Chamisso's Peter Schlemihl. (VOGEL.) Ill'd. 126 pp.	25
Claar's Simson und Delila. Ed. in German. (STERN.) 55 pp. Paper.	25
Cohn's Ueber Bakterien. (SEIDENSTICKER.) 55 pp. Paper..	30
Ebers' Eine Frage. (STORR.) With picture. 117 pp.	35
Eckstein's Preisgekrönt. (WILSON.) Story. 125 pp. (Nov. '95.)	
Eichendorff's Aus dem Leben eines Taugenichts. 132 pp.	30

Postage 10 per cent additional. Descriptive list free on application.

Henry Holt & Co.'s German Text-Books.

Els's Er ist nicht eifersüchtig. Comedy. <i>See Benedix</i>	\$0 30
Fouqué's Undine. With Glossary. 137 pp.....	35
— <i>The same.</i> (VON JAGEMANN.) Vocab. 220 pp. Cloth..	80
— Sintram und seine Gefährten. 114 pp.	25
Freytag's Die Journalisten. Comedy. (THOMAS.) 178 pp....	30
— Karl der Grosse, Aus dem Klosterleben, Aus den Kreuz- zügen. With portrait. (NICHOLS.) 219 pp. Cloth.....	75
Friedrich's Gänschen von Buchenau. Ed. with easy German notes. (Stern's Comedies, No. 7.) 59 pp. Paper.....	35
Gerstäcker's Irrfahrten. Ed. for beginners. (M. P. WHITNEY.)	
Görner's Englisch. Comedy. (EDGREN.) 61 pp. Paper.....	25
Goethe's Dichtung und Wahrheit. Selections. With portrait, (VON JAGEMANN.) Cloth. pp.	
— Egmont. Tragedy. (STEFFEN.) 113 pp.....	40
— <i>The same.</i> (DEERING.) Cloth.....	
— Faust, Part I. Tragedy. (COOK.) 229 pp. Cloth.....	48
— Götz von Berlichingen. <i>Romantic Historical Drama.</i> (GOODRICH.) Cloth.	
— Hermann und Dorothea. Poem. (THOMAS.) 126 pp.....	30
— Iphigenie auf Tauris. Tragedy. (CARTER.) 113 pp. Cloth	48
— Neue Melusine (in Nichols' Three German Tales.) Cloth	60
Grimm's (H.) Die Venus von Milo; Rafael und Michel-Angelo. 139 pp.	40
Grimm's (J. & W.) Kinder- und Hausmaerchen. With notes. 228 pp.	40
— <i>The same.</i> (OTIS.) Vocab. 351 pp. Cloth.....	1 00
— <i>See Bronson's Easy German under Grammars and Readers.</i>	
Gutzkow's Zopf und Schwert. Comedy. (LANGE.) 163 pp. Paper	40
Hauff's Das kalte Herz. Illustrated. 61 pp.....	20
— Karawane. (BRONSON.) With Vocab. 345 pp.....	75
— <i>See Bronson's Easy German under Grammars and Readers.</i>	
Heine's Die Harzreise. (BURNETT.) 97 pp.....	30
Helmholtz's Goethe's naturwissenschaftliche Arbeiten. Scien- tific monograph. (SEIDENSTICKER.) Paper.....	30
Hey's Fabeln für Kinder. Ill. and Vocab. 52 pp.....	30
Heyse's Anfang und Ende. 54 pp.....	25
— Die Einsamen. 44 pp.....	20
— L'Arrabiata. (FROST.) Vocab. 70 pp.....	25
— Mädchen von Treppi; Marion. (BRUSIE.) xiii+89 pp...	25
Hillern's Höher als die Kirche. Ill. and Vocab. (WHITLESEY.) 96 pp. ..	25
Historical Readers. <i>See Beresford-Webb, Freytag, Schoenfeld,</i> <i>Schrakamp.</i>	
Jungmān's Er sucht einen Vetter. Ed. in easy German. (STERN.) 49 pp. Paper.....	25
Kinder-Komödien. Ed. in German. (HENNESS.) 141 pp. Cl.	48
Kleist's Verlobung in St. Domingo. Cloth. <i>See Nichols</i>	60
Klense's Deutsche Gedichte. An attractive and reasonably full collection carefully edited. 331 pp. With portraits. Cloth	90

Postage 10 per cent additional. Descriptive list free on application.

Henry Holt & Co.'s German Text-Books.

Knortz's Representative German Poems. German and best English metrical version on opposite pages. 12mo. 373 pp.....	\$3 00
Königswinter's Sie hat ihr Herz entdeckt. Ed. in easy German. (Stern's Comedies, No. 3.) 79 pp. Paper.....	35
Körner's Zriny. Oriental Tragedy. (RUGGLES.) 126 pp.....	50
Lessing's Emilia Galotti. Tragedy. (SUPER.) 90 pp.....	30
— Minna von Barnhelm. Comedy. (WHITNEY.) 138 pp. Cl.	48
— Nathan der Weise. Drama. <i>New Edition</i> (BRANDT.) xx + 225 pp. Cloth.....	
Meissner's Aus Meiner Welt. Vocab. (WENCKEBACH.) 127 pp. Cloth.....	75
Von Moser's Der Bibliothekar. Farce. (LANGE.) 161 pp.....	40
— Der Schimmel. Farce. Ed. in easy German. (Stern's Comedies, No. 2.) 55 pp. Paper.....	25
Mügge's Riikan Voss. A Norwegian tale. 55 pp. Paper....	15
— Signa, die Seterin. A Norwegian tale. 71 pp. Paper..	20
Müller's (E. R.) Elektrischen Maschinen. (SEIDENSTICKER.) Ill'd. 46 pp. Paper.....	30
Müller's (Hugo) Im Wartesalon erster Klasse. <i>See Benedix</i>	30
Müller's (Max) Deutsche Liebe. With notes. 121 pp.....	35
Nathusius's Tagebuch eines armen Fräuleins. 163 pp.....	25
Nibelungen Lied. <i>See Vilmar, below, also Otis, under Readers.</i>	
Nichols's Three German Tales : I. Goethe's Die neue Melusine. II. Zschokke's Der tote Gast. III. H. v. Kleist's Die Verlobung in St. Domingo. With Grammatical Appendix. 226 pp. 16mo. Cloth.....	60
Paul's Er muss tanzen. Ed. in easy German. (STERN.) 51 pp. Paper.....	25
Princessin Ilse. (MERRICK.) 45 pp.....	20
Poems, German and French, for Memorizing. (N. Y. Regents' requirements.) 15 in each language. 35 pp. Paper....	10
<i>See also von Klenze, Knortz, Simonson, and Wenckebach.</i>	
Putlitz's Badekuren. Comedy. With notes. 69 pp. Paper..	25
— Das Herz vergessen. Comedy. With notes. 79 pp. Paper.....	25
— Was sich der Wald erzählt. 62 pp. Paper.....	25
— Vergissmeinnicht. With notes. 44 pp. Paper.....	20
Richter's Walther und Hildegund. <i>See Vilmar.</i>	
Von Riehl's Berg Neideck. (PALMER.) Portrait. 76 pp.....	30
— Fluch der Schönheit. (KENDALL.) 82 pp.....	25
Roquette's Der gefrorene Kuss. <i>See Auerbach</i>	35
Rosen's Ein Knopf. Ed. in German. (STERN.) 41 pp. Paper	25
Scheffel's Ekkehard. (CARRUTH.) Romance. Ill'd. 500 pp. Cloth. (Oct. '95.)	
— Trompeter von Säckingen. (FROST.) Poem. Ill'd. 310 pp. Cloth.....	80
Schiller's Jungfrau von Orleans. Tragedy. (NICHOLS.) New Ed. 203 pp. (Cloth, 60c.) bds.....	40
— Lied von der Glocke. Poem. (OTIS.) 70 pp.....	35

Postage 10 per cent additional. Descriptive list free on application.

Henry Holt & Co.'s German Text-Books.

Schiller's Maria Stuart. Tragedy. <i>New Ed.</i> (JOYNES.) Portraits. 232 pp. Cloth.....	\$0 60
— Neffe als Onkel. Comedy. (CLEMENT.) 99 pp. Bds....	40
— Wallenstein Trilogy, complete. Tragedy in three plays: Wallenstein's Lager, Die Piccolomini, and Wallenstein's Tod. (CARRUTH.) Ills. and map. 1 vol. 515 pp. Cloth..	1 00
— William Tell. Drama. (SACHTLEBEN.) 199 pp. Cloth..	48
— <i>The same.</i> (PALMER.) Portrait and Vocab. pp. Cloth	
Schoenfeld's German Historical Prose. (Oct. '95.)	
Schrakamp's Erzählungen aus der deutschen Geschichte. Through the war of '70. With notes. 294 pp. Cloth.....	90
— Berühmte Deutsche. Glossary. 207 pp. Cloth.....	85
— Sagen und Mythen. Glossary. 161 pp. Cloth.....	75
Scientific Monographs. See Cohn, Helmholtz, and E. R. Müller.	
Simonson's German Ballad Book. 304 pp. Cloth.....	1 10
Storm's Immensee. Vocab. (BURNETT.) 109 pp.....	25
Tieck's Die Elfen: Das Rothkäppchen. (SIMONSON.) 41 pp..	20
Wilmar's Die Nibelungen. With Richter's "Walther und Hilde- gund." The stories of two great German epics. 100 pp. Bds.	35
Wenckebach's Schönsten deutschen Lieder. About 800 poems, . proverbs, and songs (with music). Hf. mor. \$2.00; cloth.	1 20
Wichert's An der Majorsecke. (HARRIS.) Comedy. 45 pp. (Aug. '95.)	
Wilhelmi's Einer muss heirathen. Comedy.....	25
See Benedix.	
Zschokke's Neujahr's Nacht and Der zerbrochene Krug. (FAUST.)	
— Toter Gast. (In Nichols' Three German Tales.) Cloth...	60

Postage 10 per cent additional. A complete Catalogue of Henry Holt & Co.'s educational publications or a list of their works in general literature will be sent on application.





1. The first part of the document is a list of names and dates.

